W.,10,000,—10/11/00.

Croydon Public Libraries.

Central Reference Library.

Accession No. 8626 Class No. 942.01

Besides the class topic, other topics treated of in this book are as follows :—

Topic No.	Pages.	Topic No.	Pages.

BROMLEY LIBRARIES

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/storyofenglandro0000fred

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

U 21984.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

THE CHRONICLE

OF

ROBERT MANNING OF BRUNNE.

[*All Rights Reserved.*]

THE STORY OF ENGLAND

BY

ROBERT MANNING OF BRUNNE,

A.D. 1338.

EDITED

FROM MSS. AT LAMBETH PALACE AND THE INNER TEMPLE,

BY

FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL,

M.A. TRIN. HALL, CAMBRIDGE; HON. DR. PHIL., BERLIN.

PART I.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE,
BY EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE,
PRINTERS TO THE QUEEN'S MOST EXCELLENT MAJESTY.

And to be purchased, either directly or through any Bookseller, from
EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE, EAST HARDING STREET, FLEET STREET, E.C.; or
ADAM AND CHARLES BLACK, 6, NORTH BRIDGE, EDINBURGH; or
HODGES, FIGGIS, & Co., 104, GRAFTON STREET, DUBLIN.

1887.

9 942.01

8626

BROMLEY PUBLIC LIBRARIES
AL 45
CLASS
L 65
ACC.
01796 9307
[942 01]

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. Robert of Brunne, a forerunner of Chaucer.

§ 2. His personal history. Born at Bourne, in Lincolnshire, lived at Sempringham, p. ii.

§ 3. The Priors of Sempringham, A.D. 1288–1332, p. iv.

§ 4. Robert of Brunne, a member of the Gilbertine Order: sketch of the life there, p. vi.

§ 5. Robert of Brunne's later life, and his motives in writing his books, p. xii.

§ 6. His Chronicle is Fiction; his *Handlyng Synne* is History: sketch of its pictures of English Life in 1303 (p. xiv), and the kind of man it shows him to have been, p. xv.

§ 7. Robert of Brunne's *Chronicle*, and its sources, p. xviii.

§ 8. The cause of its issue in the Rolls Series of Chronicles, p. xix.

§ 9. The two MSS. of the *Chronicle*, p. xix.

§ 10. The mark for the part of it not englished from Wace, p. xxi.

§ 11. Robert of Brunne's dwelling-places, p. xxi.

§ 12. Apologies for delay, p. xxii.

§ 1. Among the forerunners of Chaucer, a leading place has always been given to Robert of Brunne. The cheeriness of the man, his wish to help his careless mates along, his sketches of the England of his day, his striving to be simple and easy in style, so that he might be understanded of common folk,—all these qualities have disposed his readers in his favour, and led them to link him with his great successor, who, at the end of his century, painted those undying pictures of the Canterbury Pilgrims which have delighted, and will delight, all after time.

For individuality and independence, Robert of Brunne cannot compare with the writer miscalled Robert of

Gloucester, who could leave his historical authorities in order to lament the sad state of his English fellows, and denounce the cruelty and oppression of their Norman lords.[1] Like the architect of Lincoln's Inn Hall, Robert of Brunne can assure his hearers and readers that in his production "there is not a single thing for " which I haven't a precedent." As compared with the author of that delightful satire, "*The Land of Cokaigne*," Robert of Brunne is dead and dull. Yet in both his chief works there is much to value, and the worth of them in matter of language has been of late triumphantly vindicated by the author of "*Old and Middle English*" (Macmillan, 1878), Mr. T. L. Kington-Oliphant.

§ 2. Of Robert of Brunne's personal history we know nothing besides what he has told us himself; and even this little was somewhat obscured till Mr G. F. Warner, of the British Museum, printed, in 1881, in his Catalogue of the Dulwich MSS., the right reading of a line in the *Handlyng Synne*. The probable Midland MS. of that poem, with initial *qu* for *wh* words, which was quoted by Halliwell in his *Glossary*,[2] I have not been able to trace since it passed through his hands.[3] It is thus in the same case as the incomplete Trinity MS. of St. Margaret, once printed by Hickes,[4] and reprinted,—the

[1] In Brunne's *Handlyng Synne* there is plenty of this, but it is in the way of business, and founded more or less on his original, William of Wadington.

[2] See the extracts in vol. i. under *ayer* 128/2, *ayre* 127/11, *bretenyd* 210/1, *ferd* 353/1, *golsoght* 409/1, *Roylly* 439/2; and in vol. ii. under *lake* 502/1, *mede* 547/1, *negon* 577/2, *nente* 574/1, *okere* 587/1, *olypraunce* 587/2, *pardenelle* 605/2, *pigace* 622/1, *quine* (*qwyne*, whence) 659/1, *quome* 660/2, *spice* 783/1, &c.

[3] I went up to the place of its former owner, Mr. Bowes, Streatlam Castle, near Barnard Castle, Durham, in the hope of seeing it, but it was not in the muniment room there, and Mr. Bowes's secretary knew nothing of it.

[4] *Thesaurus*, vol. i., p. 224.

MS. having meantime vanished,—by Mr. Cockayne (*St. Marharete*), through a publisher in 1862, and through the Early English Text Society in 1866.

Robert of Brunne's first notice of himself is at the beginning of his *Handlyng Synne*, A.D. 1303, an englishing by him, with additions, of the French *Manuel des Pechiez*, by a fellow countryman of his, William of Wadington, written in Edward the First's reign. Of this English treatise there are two complete vellum MSS. of the end of the fourteenth century, which are nearly the same in the words of the text, and of which I edited, in 1862 (for the Roxburghe Club), the earlier Harleian MS. 1701, in the British Museum, with collations of the slightly later Bodleian MS. 415, alongside of their original, Wadington's French treatise, from Harl. MS. 273, collated with Harl. 4657. There is also a paper fragment of the English version in the Dulwich College Library.[1] This *Handlyng Synne* Robert of Brunne dedicates—

[*Harl. MS.* 1701.]	[*Dulwich MS.*, 24.]
To alle crystyn men vndir sunne,	[Two lines torn off.]
And to godë men of brunne,	
And speciali alle be name	And specyally alle be name.
þe felaushepe of sympryng-hame,	þe felaschepe of Sympryng-hame.
Roberd of brunnë greteþ ȝow—	Robert of Brunne gretiþ ȝow
In al godenesse þat may to prow—	In al goodness þ^{t} may be prow.
Of brymwake yn kesteuene,	Of Brunnë Wakë[2] in Kesteuene.

[1] Dulwich College MS. No. xxiv, Paper, ff. 21 quarto. *Manuel de Pecche.* A fragment, ending at the 9th century with the story of Jephtha, being lines 1-2897 of Furnivall's edition. Written in a rough ill-formed hand of the early part of the 15th century by a scribe named Rose (f. 16)—1881. Dulwich College MSS. x, edited by G. F. Warner, p. 347-8.

[2] The name of the present wapentake in which Bourne is, is Aveland, in Kesteven. The reading of the Dulwich MS. is evidently right, as it makes the line four measures, whereas the Harleian and Oxford MSS. make it only three

Syxe myle be syde sympryng- ham euene !	Sixe myle fro Sympryngham euene.
Y dwelled yn þe pryorye	I duellyd in þ^t priory.
Fyftene ȝere yn cumpanye,	Xv ȝear in good cumpany.
In þe tyme of gode dane Ione	In þ^e tyme of goode Dan John.
Of camelton, þat now ys gone ;—	Of Cameltone þat now is gon.
In hys tyme was y þere ten ȝeres	[1] In his tyme was I ther x ȝerys.
And knewe and herd of hys maneres ;—	And knew and herd of his goode manerys.
Syþyn with dane Ione of clyn- tone,	Siþþin w^t dan John [2] Clattone.
Fyue wyntyr wyþ hym gon y wone :	V ȝear w^t hym gan I wone.
Dane felyp was mayster þat tyme	Dan Philipp was mayster þ^t tyme.
þat y began þys englyssh ryme ;	þ^t I began þis ynglysche ryme.
þe ȝeres of grace fyl þan to be	þ^e ȝeer of grace fil þan to be.
A þousynd & þre hundred & þre.	A m^l ccc. and þre.

(p. 3, l. 57–76, of my edition.)

§ 3. Now Sempringham, in Lincolnshire, is well known as the Mother-House of the Gilbertine Order, founded by Sir Gilbert de Sempringham, about A.D. 1139, for monks and nuns to live in the same building, though separated from each other; and it is the better known from the amusing satire on it, *L'Ordre de bel Eyse*, printed by the late Thomas Wright in his Camden Society volume, "*Political Songs of England*" *t.* John—Edw. II., 1839, p. 137–148. This central house of the Order being only some six miles from Brunne, or Bourne, Robert Manning's birth-place, we cannot wonder that he joined

---

with "Brymwake." The mistake probably arose from the original of the latter MSS. writing *Brunne* "Bruñ," and the copier mistaking the mark of contraction for the dash used instead of a dot to *i*, and thus reading *brim*, wrote that down as "brym." Not knowing the Dulwich MS., Sir F. Madden, and we who followed him, went wrong as to Brunne being in the wake of its own name. See a letter by Professor Hales in *The Academy*, Jan. 1887.

[1] p. 348 of Mr. Warner's book.

[2] MS. John John.

it. The Austin Abbey at Brunne itself, was for males only.[1]

According to Browne Willis's list of "Names of some "of the Priors" of Sempringham, "out of the Registers "of Lincoln," *Mitred Abbeys*, ii. 121 (par. 1719), "Philip "de Burton, prior of St. Edmund's at Cambridge, [was] "admitted [2] on the 2d of the Cal. of August 1298." But in the British-Museum Additional Charter, 20,652, John de Cameltone appears as Prior of Sempringham in 1298.[3] If he became prior in 1288,—to make Robert of Brunne's needed ten years—then his predecessor, Roger de Bolingbrok, who was "elected and confirm'd the Id. of April "1283,"[4] must have died in 1288 instead of 1298,[5] as Willis says. He must also have been succeeded by John of Clinton[6] (or John Clatton), who must have been prior for the five years 1298–1303;[5] and then Philip de Burton got the post: his name, says Dugdale, VI. ii., 947, "occurs in 1311: he died in 1332." Further search in the Lincoln Registers will doubtless confirm Robert of Brunne's names and dates.

§ 4. From the way in which Robert of Brunne speaks of priests in his *Handlyng Synne*, and the awe he has of

---

[1] St. Gilbert . . composed his rule out of those of St. Austin and St. Benedict, the women following the Cistercian regulation of St. Benedict's rule, and the men the rule of St. Austin, to which the founder added some especial statutes of his own. Dugdale, vol. VI., pt. ii., p. iii*., after p. 945.

[2] Can this mean admitted to some lower office; and not to the priorate till 1303?

[3] Warner, *Dulwich Catalogue*, p. 347.

[4] His predecessor was "John de "Hamerton, prior of Malton, con- "firm'd the 3d of the Id. of May "1276. He died about the latter "end of March 1282."—Willis.

[5] Warner, *ibid.*

[6] Not "John de Glyndon [who] "was elected and confirm'd the 9th "[29th, says Dugdale] of the Cal. "of August 1332. He died or "resigned An. 1341."—Willis.

them,[1] I assume that he was not in full orders, but more likely a lay brother or a canon of the Gilbertine Order. The post I should pick out for him was that of the *Magister* fit to teach the novices,[2] and no doubt the brethren unable to read their Office. He was evidently a highly educated man for his time, but he lived a hard life, poorly clad, poorly fed,[3] and forbidden to talk.[4] The difficulty of realizing Robert of Brunne's daily life and surroundings is great, from our not knowing how far the monastic rules had, in his day, been relaxed to the freedom or license of Chaucer's time. But if they were adhered to in the main from A.D. 1303 to 1338, as they are printed in *Dugdale*, vol. VI., Part ii., p. xxix–xcvii, the following sketch, drawn up by Mr. W. H. Utley, pictures the life led at Sempringham, as also at Sixille, in Lincolnshire, a

---

[1] *p.* 251, *of Lechery.*

Of prestës kan y sey no þyng; 8088
(So seyd y at þe bygynnyng,)
Noþer of clerkys neuer a deyl;
Þey wote what ys ylle and weyl.

Wm. of Wadington.

De fols prestres rien ne dirrum,
Car nus la sus premis auum
Qe des clers rien ne dirrum.

What Robert of Brunne said "at the bygynnyng" is at p. 2 of my edition, not englishing any French :—

Of þys clerkys wyl y nouȝt seye; 37
To greuë hem y haue grete eye,
For þey wote þat ys to wetyn,
And se hyt wel before hem wrytyn. 40

[2] Dugdale's *Monasticon*, vol. VI., Part ii., p. lx.* Fratres de consensu et voluntate prioris et conventu canonicorum suscipiantur; suscepti statim laboribus certis assignentur; carucis videlicet, et hujusmodi laboriosis. Deputetur autem noviciis magister, qui ydoneus sit ad mores instruendos et docendum ordinem.

[3] Dugdale's *Monasticon*, p. lix.* Eo tempore quo inchoata est monachorum de Sempringham religio, venerunt monachi de ordine Cisterciæ in equitatu et apparatu humillimo, et abjecto cultu, contenti victu paupere. Cum quibus venerunt laici ad laborem promptissimi, in vestitu paupere, contenti victu pauperum; olera et legumina computabant divitias, et aquæ potus erat satis placidus, grangiis morantibus; et nichil amplius ex ordine. Quod audientes plurimi de communi laboriosorum genere nobis servientes in victu paupere, obtabant Deo vivere apud nos in eorum ordine.

[4] Dugdale's *Monasticon*, vol. VI., Part ii., p. lv.* Qui infringit silentium manifeste jejunet in pane et aqua, vel vapulet in capitulo.

priory founded by a knight named Gresle or Greslie, for men and women.

About the year 1139, Saint Gilbert established his first priory, the one at Sempringham, as a retreat for a number of poor maidens whom he had imbued with a desire for continual chastity and for the monastic life. At first they were served only by a number of other poor maids, but these desiring also to enter the cloister, lay brothers were appointed to serve them, and priests to minister to them. This gave its whole character to the order in after times ; and the brothers and the canons were little more than attendants, temporal and spiritual, to the nuns and sisters. The two sexes lived together within the same enclosure, but were separated from each other by a high wall, the only communication between the two portions being a small window, furnished with a turn-table, through which food and other necessaries were passed.

From seven to thirteen canons were attached to each establishment, with a prior at their head ; the nuns being similarly subject to a prioress. The functions of the canons were to administer the Sacrament and to conduct the services in the chapel. On high feast days, both sexes met in the church of the nuns, but they were separated by a cloth, so that they could not see each other. No organ or music of any kind was allowed, nor any pictures or carvings, " lest they divert the mind " from prayer and contemplation." The officiating priests were enjoined to carefully cover the neck, so that it might not be seen bare.

The life of the lay brothers in this order was a somewhat hard one. The rule they were under resembled that of the Cistercians, who endeavoured to restore the severity of the original Benedictine ordinances. They wore an under garment of ram's skin, with a tunic of white material lined with common skins, and over all a grey mantle of coarse cloth reaching nearly down to the heels. A pair of shoes, which were to " last a year and

" be mended on occasion," completed their attire. None were admitted to the priory until they were twenty-four years of age. The canons and the brothers ate in separate refectories, but their manner of living and food were nearly alike. No flesh was allowed, except to the sick, and then only when it was very necessary. Beer was the only beverage; but if the supply ran short, wine might be used, well watered. No man was to drink more than a measure and a half of any intoxicating liquor, under penalty of drinking nothing but water for forty days. All the food was prepared by the nuns and the sisters, and passed through the small window before mentioned, the turn-table being so arranged that it was not possible to see to the other side. Stringent regulations were made with regard to the attendants at this window. A lay brother, "mature, discreet, peaceable, " bland, modest, of good repute amongst all," was appointed to serve at the men's side, whilst on the other, the nuns and sisters were never to serve alone, but always two or three together.

The daily life of the monastery was similar to that of other foundations, save that everything was more or less subservient to the welfare of the nuns. "The " brothers are to serve the nuns," says one of the ordinances, "and to see that their house is in all respects " better furnished than their own." The chief nun had the care of all moneys, &c.; and when any purchases had to be made, money was given to the canons or brothers through the window, and the accounts were afterward adjusted there.

One can see with the mind's eye Robert Mannyng serving at the window perhaps as the discreet, peaceable, bland, modest brother of good repute, afore-mentioned, contriving now and then to exchange a word or two with the sisters on the other side. Or he may have been the "trusty brother" appointed to overlook the hired women who occasionally came to help the nuns and sisters to comb the wool, to prevent any communi-

cations between the sacred and the secular workers. Or perhaps he was that other brother who was sent yearly to the farms to see that all went well, and to send the produce of the geese, hens, bees, &c. to the nuns. Had he had a taste for agriculture—we cannot say that his books show any—he might have been one of the farmer-brothers who lived always on, and managed, a farm; but, as he tells us (p. iv. above), he "dwelled yn the pryorye" of Sempringham.

The regulations regarding the conduct of these farms are interesting. No women were ever to be allowed on them without the express permission of the prior; and when they were hired to work, either as milkmaids or as reapers, the brother in charge was to have no direct dealings with them of any kind. If he needed to speak to any of them, he was commanded to have some one with him to listen to the conversation. Trusty fellows were to be hired, who would obey the behests of the brothers, and convey their commands to the petticoated toilers. They were to look after the milkmaids and reapers, and see that they did their work properly. No milkmaid was to milk in or near the farmstead where the brother might perchance see her, but always in the fields; nor must the lay brothers ever work amongst or near the women in the fields. A "mature layman" was to be appointed to superintend the field work, and to see that there was no idling or shirking. At harvest time, the women reapers who were hired were not to live within the enclosure, but in little houses "with doors," some little distance away. Another trusty lay person was appointed to furnish them with all necessaries, and the brother superintendent had a small window or peep-hole through which he could see what was going on amongst them, but through which he was forbidden to talk. "Young and pretty women," the ordinances expressly say, "are to be especially shunned." The farmer brothers were not allowed to brew any beer on the farms themselves. Sufficient quantities were sent

from the priory at Christmas, Easter, and Whitsuntide, along with a small amount of cash to defray any necessary expenses.

Whatever vocation Robert Mannyng may have had, however, the ordinary routine of the monastery would be much the same. To rise early, and then go to prayer, breakfast, and labour; prayers, dinner, and labour; prayers, supper, and sleep, each day throughout the year. None were to be taught in the monastery save the novices. The lay brothers were not allowed any books, and learned only the *Pater Noster*, the *Credo*, the *Miserere*, and other necessary prayers. What knowledge any of them had, therefore, must have been obtained before they entered the Order. Nor was anything allowed to be written in the monastery by either brother or canon, without the knowledge and permission of the prior. This is, no doubt, why Robert of Brunne says that Dan Robert of Malton, the prior, caused him to write his Chronicle "for felawes sake, when they wild solacë make."

Occasionally a diversion would come in the shape of the periodical visit of the head prior of the order, or his deputy, or the annual visit of the head prioress, who went round all the houses to see that everything went right and nothing went wrong; "to correct what needs "correction, to instruct the ignorant, and to commend "the virtuous and the diligent," as the ordinances put it. Sometimes the diversion would be the visit to the fair of two of the canons and a lay brother, who were to buy what was necessary for the monastery and the farms.

Many and minute are the commands of St. Gilbert respecting the behaviour of the brothers towards the sisters.

The priests, when they entered the nuns' house, were to have always a number of persons accompanying them, and the nuns were to have their faces covered in their presence. The canons were only to visit the nuns to

administer the Sacrament or to perform other religious offices. The prior, the cellarer, and the storekeeper might consult with the prioress on matters of business, but in as few words as possible, and always with others standing near. On no account was there to be any gossiping or talebearing. The lay brothers were never to enter the nuns' enclosure, "save in case of fire, thieves, &c." The nuns and sisters washed the linen of the canons, but not that of the lay brothers. The latter had either to do their own washing, or to get the porter to find some poor people who would do it for them. The women in the monasteries were also permitted to sew for the men, but they were on no account to cut out, make, or mend their breeches for them. The head prioress and the nuns who accompanied her on her annual journey round the nuns' houses were to have an escort consisting of a canon and a lay brother, whose duty it was to protect them and to supply them with all necessaries. There was to be no more conversation between them than was absolutely necessary, and the men were enjoined to retire to a respectful distance whenever the women had to descend from the waggon in which they travelled. On these journeys the women were never to lodge in the same houses as the men, if it could possibly be helped. There were many other regulations and devices of a similar nature, all designed to reduce temptation as much as possible. Incontinent monks were to be stripped of their habits and expelled, never to return, or else be imprisoned. Incontinent nuns were not to be sent abroad to corrupt others, but to be shut up in a little hut separate from the rest, there to repent of their sin, and to remain until death should bring release.

Such were the principal rules of life for those who entered the Gilbertine Order, as they appear in the ordinances of its founder. That at Sempringham the discipline was tempered by the weaknesses of human nature, *L'Ordre de bel Eyse* renders probable, and later writers do not always give satisfactory accounts of the

Gilbertine monasteries elsewhere. They were, of course, all broken up at the dissolution, and were evidently not important foundations.

§ 5. Robert of Brunne's *Handlyng Synne* was written in 1303. After thirty-five years' waiting, he produced his *Chronicle*, or "*Story of England*," in 1338. In it the account he gives of himself is (p. 5, l. 135–144):—

" Of Brunne I am, if any me blame,
" Robert Mannyng is my name;—
" Blissed be he, of God of heuene,
" þat me, Robert, with gude wille neuene!—
" In þe third Edwardes tyme was I
" Whēn I wrote alle þis story,
" In þe hous of Sixille I was a throwe:
" Danȝ Robert of Maltone[1] þat ȝe know,
" Did it wryte for felawes sake,
" Whēn þai wild solacë make."

Further on in his *Chronicle*, Part II., Robert of Brunne tells us that he had been at Cambridge, where was another Gilbertine House, and had there known Robert of Bruce and his brothers, Thomas and Alexander, of whom Alexander was the best artist of his time, and made a carven king. At the feast which Robert of Bruce made at Cambridge, evidently before he was king, Robert of Brunne was present. The Bruces were Yorkshire folk, and Cambridge was their natural University. Robert of Brunne's words are,—

Now of kyng Robyn salle I ȝit speke more,
& his broþer Tomlyn—Thomas, als it wore,[2]—
& of sir Alisandere þat me rewes sore,
þat both com in skandere for dedes þei did þore.
Of arte he had þe maistrie; he mad a coruen king

[1] Malton was another Gilbertine House in Yorkshire: its priory church is engraved in Dugdale, VI., ii.

[2] The side note is "De Thoma *et* Alexandro *fratrib*us Roberti Brus, et capcione eo*rum*."

In Cantebrige to þe clergie, or his broþer were kyng.
Siþen was neuer non, of arte so þat sped,
Ne bifore bot on, þat in Cantebrigge red.
Robert mad his fest; for he was þore þat tyme,
And he sauh alle þe gest, þat wrote & made þis ryme.

(Inner Temple MS., leaf 193, back; and Hearne's *Langtoft*, p. 336–7.)

If, as I suppose, Robert of Brunne was not full canon, but a lay brother of his Order, he cannot have entered it till he was 24. If he did so at that age, he would be 39 when he wrote his *Handlyng Synne*, in 1303, and 74 when he produced his *Chronicle*, in 1338. But whatever his age, his helpful cheery spirit was the same at both dates. He wrote his *Handlyng Synne* for unlearned men, to keep them out of mischief at their games and ale:—

For lewdë men y vndyrtoke
On englysshe tunge to make þys boke.
For many ben of swyche manere,
þat talys and rymys wyl bleþly here:
Yn gamys & festys, at þe ale,
loue men to lestene trotëuale,
þat may falle ofte to vylanye,
To dedly synne or oþer folye;
For swyche men haue y made þys[1] ryme,
þat þey[2] may weyl dyspende here tyme.
(p. 2–3, l. 43–52, ed. 1862.)

He wrote his *Chronicle* "in simple speech . . . for "love of simple men" (p. 3, l. 73, 77), not in quaint English and strange speech, but in light ryme:—

" And þerfore for þe comonalte
" þat blythëly wild listen to me,
" On lightë lange I it begañ,
" for luf of þe lewed mañ,

[1] þys, Bodl. MS.; þat, Harl. MS. | [2] þy, Bodl.; Harl. omits "þey."

" to tellë þam þe chaunces bolde,
" þat here before was don & tolde.
" For þis makyng I wille no mede
" bot gude prayere when ȝe it rede;
" þerfore, [alle] ȝe lordes lewed,
" For whom I haf þis Inglis schewed,
" Prayes to God he gyf me grace;
" I trauayled for ȝour solace."

As an early social reformer, as a lover of the poor, one who wished to give them knowledge, to lead them to higher things; as a language reformer too,—one who did much to make English flexible and easy, to lessen the friction of ideas travelling on the rails of words into brains,—Robert of Brunne is worthy of all honour; while for his pictures of English social life, in the English tongue, he has, I venture to say, no equal before Chaucer.

§ 6. Of his two main works, the *Handlyng Synne* and the *Chronicle*,[1] the former is history, fact; the latter, fiction, though it finds a place in this series of National Memorials. The *Chronicle* englishes the romances of Geoffrey of Monmouth and Wace, with a few additions from Bede, &c. The *Handlyng Synne*, in its comments on the Cardinal Virtues and Vices, the Ten Commandments, Creeds, Sacraments, &c., tells of the sins of English men and women — the faults of their children too—as Wadington saw them in Edward I.'s

[1] " Medytacyuns of þe soper of our lorde Ihesu; and also of hys passyun; and eke of þe peynes of hys swete moder, Mayden Marye, þe whyche made yn Latyn, Bonaventure Cardynall" (ed. J. M. Cowper, Early English Text Society, 1875) may or may not be Robert of Brunne's. (Mr. Cowper and Mr. Oliphant hold that it is: in Germany I am told that a different opinion prevails.) It follows the *Handlyng Synne* in the Harleian and Bodleian MSS., though without attribution to him. It contains no definite characteristics of him, so far as I can see.

time, and as they were under Robert of Brunne's eyes in 1303. Save the King and Court, all classes of society come under their critic's lash. As I have said before (*H. S.*, p. viii–xi.), the Earl and Knight at their robbery (p. 212, l. 6792, l. 6815–17); the Lord in his grasping (p. 71, l. 2201–2); the Rich Man in his oaths (p. 23, l. 669), his adultery (p. 95, l. 2931), his gluttony (p. 207, l. 225–6), his sloth (p. 135), and his indulgence to his children in their insolent ways (p. 155, l. 4910–17); the Landowner in his covetousness (p. 187, p. 293); the Priest with his "mare" or concubine (p. 248, l. 7981); the Judge and Assizer in their harshness (p. 44, p. 49, p. 171–2); the Lawyer with his wicked counsels (p. 170, l. 5413); the Merchant in his usury (p. 174, l. 5546); the Trader at his tricks (p. 187); the Scold in her household (p. 93, l. 2936, &c.); the Flunkey of the time at his riotous supper (p. 227); the Poor in their sufferings (p. 76, 169, 172, 213); the Bearded Bucks (p. 102, l. 3212); the Beauties with their saffron wimples (p. 110) and whitened faces (p. 102, l. 3221), all pass under Robert of Brunne's review; and none without those individualising touches which show that he had studied from the life. He must have seen the rich man's sluggardry, and heard his yawns on Sunday mornings, when he was late for mass, or shirked it (p. 135, &c.), as well as been witness of the shrew's airs and "veyes moy sy" (p. 94, l. 2941), ere he could have put his sketches on parchment or paper. And one can fancy his monkish disgust at hearing men in church chattering, telling tales, asking where they could get the best ale (p. 143, l. 4546–7), and thinking what much better fun it would be at the ale-house, or larking with girls (l. 4538–40), as well as share his indignation at seeing poor men kept shivering all day in the cold, crying at rich men's gates for alms (p. 215, l. 6899–6900), or getting them only with beating and abuse (p. 210, l. 6728). For Robert of Brunne's other qualities, some

humour we may allow him for his bear's bow,[1] his Zenon hanging by the *hand*, not by the *neck*, I understand (p. 69, l. 2122), and his cut at wives in general, "they "do not wrong, except all day."[2] Still, monkish as he is, he can praise a good wife, p. 62, l. 1904–13 :—

Ne no þyng ys to man so dere,
As wo*m*manys loue yn good manere.
A gode wo*m*man ys ma*n*nys blys,
þere here loue ryȝt and stedfast ys ;
þere ys no solas vndyr heuene,
Of al[lë] þat a man may neuene,
þat shulde a man so mochë glew,
As a gode wo*m*man *þat* loueþ trew ;
Ne derer ys none yn goddys hurde
þan a chaste wo*m*man *with* louely wrde.

Robert of Brunne is too an appreciator of good company (p. 127, l. 4028), and a lover of music (p. 150–1), though a doubter of singers' morals, — "ful selde ys synger "gode yn thew" (p. 97, l. 3062),—a hater of false pride ;[3] cautious too, not believing in men with "lagheyng "wurdys," "floursheđe wurdys, and oþerwhyle louely" (p. 97, l. 3066–9), liking plain speech, and not the "tyfede wurdys þat slykede are" (p. 365, l. 11,765), knowing the difference between a gentleman in deed and a lord in name,[4] and aware that kings are fools, as

---

[1] þe bere to hym loutede, and made feyre chere,
Feyre chere as a bere myghte make. p. 128, l. 4043–4.

[2] But how as eu*er* men preche or spelle,
Of prestës wȝues men here eu*er* telle ;
Of ouþ*er* wyues y wyl noghte say,
þey do not wrong—but al [þe] day. p. 247, l. 7936–39.

[3] þat pourë prydë, God hyt loþes,
þat make[s] he*m* proude of ouþ*er* me*n*nys cloþys.
p. 110, l. 3462–3.

[4] Speaking of a Norfolk lord who takes in good part a churl's reproof, Robert says :—
þyr are but fewë lordës now
þat turne a wrde so wel to prow ;
But who so seyþ hem any skylle,
Mysseye aȝen fouly þey wylle.
Lordynges–þyr are ynow of þo ;
Of gentyl men, þyr are but fo.
(*glost* fewe). p. 279, l. 8713–18.

well as other folk (below, p. 1, l. 16, 17). Also a man that will not take shamming excuses (p. 77, l. 2385–8), but will call a spade a spade:—

> He ys no morë crystyn man
> Þan who so kallyþ a blak oxe 'swan.'
> (p. 137, l. 4321–2.)

Altogether a direct, straightforward, practical man, with many right sympathies, working in a sensible way for the improvement of his fellow countrymen, teaching them morals and history, their relation and duties to God and man. But he is not a "muscular Christian," to judge from his condemnation of "wrastlynges" (though only on Holy Days and in Holy Places, p. 33, l. 994–5; p. 117, l. 3690; p. 278, l. 8989), squires' games (p. 146, l. 4628), and tournaments, where, for a woman's fancy, a man may be so

> bete þere for here loue,
> Þat he ne may sytte his hors aboue,
> Þat *per*auenture yn alle hys lyue
> Shal he neu*er* after þryue.
> (p. 146, l. 4614–17.)

Lechery is the source of jousting and tourneys, he says. (l. 4632.)

His lecturing of and against women—specially those who tempt priests—is very frequent. Perhaps the three points he presses most, are the duty of almsgiving and charity (p. 231–3); the shame and sin of earls and rich men beating the poor (p. 212–13), carrying off their wives and daughters (p. 231, l. 7420–7), robbing and otherwise oppressing them (p. 71–2, p. 76, p. 187, p. 213, l. 6815); and the evil of men's leaving to executors the duty of giving gifts to Holy Church for the good of their souls (p. 195–203, &c.): this, a point which all religious writers felt in their inmost hearts. The three peculiarities which he notes as English, in contrast with foreign customs, are, the Saturday half-holiday—keeping

the afternoon holy to the Virgin (p. 28, l. 845, &c.); Englishmen's impatience of reproof (p. 132, l. 4160–9); and their sin of envy, on which he cites a proverb :—

> And englys men namëly (= especially)
> Are, þurghe kynde, of hertë hy.
> A forbysyn ys toldë þys,
> Seyd on frenshe men and on englys:
> " That frenche men synne yn lecherye,
> " And englys men yn enuye."
>
> (p. 131, l. 4150–5.)

§ 7. As to his *Chronicle*, which Robert of Brunne wrote, not for the learned, but for the lewëd, that they might have

> " solace and gamen,
> " In felawscip whēn þai sitt samen."
>
> (p. 1, l. 9, 10.)

and that they might know, of their kings, " which were " fools and which were wise " (l. 16, 17), he starts with Noah and the Deluge (p. 7), then traces the genealogy of Locrin, king of Britain, to Noah, through Æneas (p. 9–15), tells the story of the Trojan war (under the guidance of Dares Phrygius) to p. 25; and then, on p. 26, begins to english Wace on the settlement of Æneas in Italy (p. 15–28), the birth and Grecian wars of Brutus (to p. 46), his landing in France, and battles there (to p. 62), and then his arrival at Dartmouth, p. 62. After this, Wace is followed, with a bit from Bede here and there (p. 555, 562, 579), from Langtoft and Geoffrey of Monmouth (p. 571–574, 577), till this volume, Part I. of the *Chronicle*, ends, and Robert of Brunne describes what he will tell us in his Second Part, which he will english from Peres of Langtoft, and which Hearne printed in two volumes 8vo. in 1725, reprinted 1800. Langtoft's French *Chronicle* appeared in this Rolls Series in two vols., i. 1866, ii. 1868, edited by the late Thomas Wright.

§ 8. The present volume is, then, not a contribution to English history, but to the history of English. It was (with the approval of the then Master of the Rolls) authorised by my friend, the late Sir Thomas Hardy, because it was in name a "Chronicle;" because, the Second Part being so widely known, the First was of course often asked for and wanted; and because Sir Thomas thought it only fair that, amongst so much worthless repetition in Latin as the Rolls Series must of necessity contain, there might well be one rendering of our early historic legends in useful English. He wished, and most legitimately say I, to give us students of the history of English words and syntax a lift by the way. For the like reason he also consented to the insertion in this book of the List of Manning's Rymes, to contrast with our Chaucer Ryme Index, and show that the latter poet's *-ye* rule [1] was not observed by the earlier one.

Were this the place then, a disquisition on the language and dialect of Robert of Brunne should follow here. But such an essay would be inadmissible; and, moreover, Mr. Kington Oliphant [2] has dealt so sympathetically and ably with our debt to Robert Manning in this regard, that I, at least, should have little to add to his main view here, much as there is undoubtedly yet to be done elsewhere.

§ 9. Robert of Brunne's Chronicle exists in two manuscripts, one at the Lambeth Library, of the old ribbed paper of about the middle of the fourteenth century, which has lost its first leaf, and the other on vellum, before 1400 A.D., in the Inner Temple Library, Petyt

---

[1] Chaucer made the ending *-ye* two syllables, and didn't ryme it with the adverbial *-ly*, &c.

[2] *Old and Middle English*, 1878, Chapter VI. The Rise of the New English. Robert of Brunne, "The Patriarch of the New English," (p. 588); (p. 427–474; also p. 575–80, and p. 585–8).

MSS. No. 511, vol. 7. These MSS. differ in dialect. The Petyt MS. is more consistently Northern in forms, I believe, than the Lambeth MS., and if I had judged by the consonance of the forms (the participial-*and*, for instance), inside the lines with those at the ends of them, or their rymes, I might possibly have been bound to make the Petyt MS. the basis of my text.[1] But knowing that the Midland was a mixed dialect, not consistently Northern, and that the MSS. of the *Handlyng Synne* showed this mixture, I concluded that the Lambeth MS., which also had a mixture of forms, was more likely to represent Robert of Brunne's actual writing than the more consistently Northern Petyt MS. This was the judgment of my friend, Dr. Richard Morris, then our highest authority on the subject, and I willingly followed it. I still believe it right. The question then rose whether I should be justified in repeating, hundreds of times, every Petyt *scho, sall, suld,* &c., for every Lambeth *scheo, schal, schalt, schul, scholden, schold,* &c., and so swelling the various readings inordinately. I concluded that I should not be so justified, and I have accordingly given some samples of these changes, and then dropped the collation of them. If I live long enough, I shall no doubt print the whole of the Petyt MS. in the Early English Text Society's Extra Series, and then the dialect question between the two MSS. can be settled.

The contractions of the MS. have been expanded, and the expansions printed in italics in the text.

The occasional pronunciations conjecturally suggested between brackets after some of the ryme-endings (p. 589, 593, &c.), the reader should disregard. They are not trustworthy.

---

[1] But the Northern forms often spoil the rhythm: *see* N. *suld*, p. 16, l. 463; for M. *scholden*, &c. The characteristic differences of dialect between Lincolnshire and Yorkshire in the early part of the 14th century are not easily to be found out.

§ 10. As there is but little in Robert of Brunne's English which is not a translation of Wace's French Chronicle, I have put a dot (·) before every line which is not due to Wace, or at least, Wace as shown by the Paris MS. du Roi, No. 27, printed by Le Roux de Lincy, Rouen, 1836. Readers can therefore tell by a glance at any page, what in it is Manning's own, or got from a source other than Wace.

§ 11. Some ten years or more ago, when I hoped that this Introduction would have been at once written, I went to Robert of Brunne's dwelling places,—Bourne, Sempringham, and Six Hills (as Sixille is now called), to see the country where he was born and lived.

Bourne I found a fair-sized market town,[1] of one long street (1¼ miles), with a fine Norman Church, (3,060 inhabitants in 1861,) and for its railway station, a genuine Elizabethan house, well-treed; a large round spring or pond, Bournewell, close at hand, with the Bourne running from it, and with records of excavations in which the remains of the old castle which once dominated the town were found. The country round is very flat; the edge of the old fen district lies a little to the east, and this made me at one time think that the "Brymwake" of the *Handlyng Synne* MSS. might possibly be the brim or edge-wake. The town is 97 miles N. by W. of London, and 35 miles S.S.E. of Boston.

To Sempringham, or the fields and 93 scattered houses (in 1841) so called, the surgeon of Folkingham, three miles off, was kind enough to drive me.[2] The church, engraved in Dugdale, vol. VI., part ii., stands on a knoll whose grass evidently covers the ruins of former buildings. It has one fine Norman doorway which Robert of Brunne may well have seen, though the rest of the building

[1] The chief trade of the place is leather and wool. It has several large tanyards.

[2] The hamlet is 106 miles by coach road from London.—Clarke, *Brit. Gaz.*

must be of later date. On the level ground below are the ruins of the Hall, which is said to have been mainly built out of the stones of Sempringham Priory; and as we walked along the grass-covered walls, we started, on the yard-high top of one of them, a hare, which had there made its form.

Priory gone; the Hall built out of it too; but Robert of Brunne, in his copyists' books of paper and skin, is left to tell us what the builders and stones have failed to tell. A walk across the fields to a farmhouse to ask the road, produced in answer one of Robert's words, "Yes, "that's the *gainest* way." And next day I went to Six Hills, as Sixille is now called.

A little village or hamlet is Six Hills, 5 miles from Market-Rasen station, and 150 by railroad from London. It had 25 houses and 205 inhabitants in 1841 (Clarke). It is cottaged and gardened up to the top of the brow of land, partly circling it. A dull flat road leads to it, lightened only on the day I was there by a solitary swan on a pond in some landowner's grounds. On walking up the hamlet hill, a chance look to the right showed Lincoln Cathedral standing grandly on the horizon, on its hill: a view to which Robert of Brunne's eyes surely often turned. Below was an old rubble shed, partly pulled down, which was said to have been part of the grange of the ex-Priory in the hamlet: no other remains were to be heard of.

§ 12. Twice before, in the many years since this text was begun, have I made collections of notes, &c. for preparing a fit Introduction to this Chronicle. The first time, all my notes, disappeared while workmen were in the house during a long country holiday that I took. The second time, last year, I must have left in some shop, railway, or omnibus, the bound and noted volume of the text, with a Paper on the dialect and phonetics of the Lambeth MS. which Dr. Henry Sweet had most kindly prepared for me. Now, under great pressure

of other work, the present Introduction has been written, on the urgent remonstrance of the Deputy Keeper of the Records. I can only ask mercy for its shortcomings, and for the long delay which has taken place in the production of the book; pleading also that this delay has not been due to mere laziness, though I acknowledge that it was wrong in me to do other work and leave this volume undone. I thank all the Rolls authorities, many, alas, now no longer with us,[1] for their great forbearance; and also Mr. Sidney J. Herrtage, now the editor of Cassell's *Encyclopædic Dictionary*, for his help in the Indexes and Glossary.

[1] Two Masters of the Rolls, as well as Sir T. Duffus Hardy, kindly took great interest in my work for the Early English Text, Chaucer, and New Shakspere Societies.

16 May, 1887.

Ye Story of Englande

als Robert Mannyng wryten it fand,
& on Englysch has it schewed.

---

[1] **Incipit *Prologus* de Historia Britannie *transumpta* per Robertum *in* mate*r*na ling*ua*.**

. Lordynges *that* be now here,		Listen to the story of England, as Robert Mannyng found it, and Englished it
. if ȝe wille listene & lere		
. Aȝt *the* story of Inglande		
. als Robert Mannyng wryten it fand,	4	
. & on Inglysch has it schewed,		
. not for þe lerid bot for þe lewed,		for the solace of those who know not Latin or French,
. ffor þo þat in þis land[e] wone		
. þat þe Latyn no Frankys cone,	8	
. ffor to haf solace & gamen̄		
. In felawschip when̄ þai sitt samen.		when they sit togeth er.
. And it is wisdom for to wytten		And it is wise to know who first won England,
. þe state of þe land, & haf it wryten,	12	
. what manere of folk first it wan,		
. & of what kynde it first began ;		
. And gude it is for many thynges		and to hear which kings were fools and which were not,
. for to here þe dedis of kynges,	16	
. whilk were foles, & whilk were wyse,		
. & whilk of þam couthe most quantyse,		which did wrong, and which did right,
. and whilk did wrong, & whilk ryght,		
. & whilk maynten[e]d pes & fyght.	20	

[1] The first 198 lines are from the Inner Temple MS., Petyt MSS. No. 511, vol. 7. The dots on the left of certain lines show that the lines dotted are not translated from Wace, as he is shown by the Paris MS. du Roi, No. 27, printed by Le Roux de Lincy, Rouen, 1836.

All this I'll tell you:

. Of þare dedes sall be my sawe;
. & what tyme, & of what lawe
. I sall yow schewe fro gre to gre
what happened from Noah to Æneas;
. sen þe tyme of sir Noe,
. ffro Noe vnto Eneas,
. & what betwix þam was;
. And fro Eneas till Brut*us* tyme,
from him to Brutus; and then to Cadwallader, the last of the Briton kings.
. . . . . .
. ffro Brutus till Cadwaladres,
. þe last Bryton þat þis lande lees.
. All þat kynde & all þe frute
. þat come of Brut*us*, þat is þe Brute;
. And þe ryght Brute is told nomore
. þan þe Brytons tyme wore.
. After þe Bretons þe Inglis camen,
After them came the English,
. þe lordschip of þis lande þai namen,
. Southe & northe, west & est,
. þat calle mēn now þe Inglis gest.
. when þai first [came] amang þe Bretons,
. þat now ere Inglis, þan were Saxons;
before whom were Saxons.
. Saxons Inglis hight alle oliche; [leaf 1, col. 2.]
The English landed at Sandwich, in Vortigern's days,
. þai aryued vp at Sandwyche
. In þe kynges tyme Vortogerne,
. þat þe lande walde þam not werne.
. þat were Maysters of alle þe toþire,
under Hengist and Horsa,
. Hengist he hight, & Hors his broþire;
. þes were hede, als we fynde,
. where-of is comen oure Inglis kynde.
and were heathens 150 years among the Britons, till St. Augustine converted them.
. A hundrethe & fifty ȝere þai com
. or þai receyued cristendōm;
. So lang woned þai þis lande in,
. or þai herde out of Saynt Austyn,
. Amang þe Bretons *with* mykelle wo,
. In sclaundire & threte, & *in* thro.
Of the English, Piers of Langtoft tells.
. þes Inglis dedes ȝe may here,
. as Pers telles alle þe manere.
Master Wace frenchized all
. One Mayst*er* Wace þe ffrankes telles,

. þe Brute, aſt̄ þat þe Latyn spelles, — the Latin *Brute* till Cadwallader's time;
. ffro Eneas tiſt̄ Cadwaladre;
. þis Mayster Wace þer leues he.
. And ryght as Mayster Wace says, — & I follow Wace,
. I telle myn Inglis þe same ways;
. ffor Mayster Wace þe Latyn alle rymes — because Piers often hops over much of the Latin.
. þat Pers ouerhippis many tymes.
. Mayster Wace þe Brute alle redes,
. & Pers tellis alle þe Inglis dedes;
. þer Mayster Wace of þe Brute left, — But where Wace stops, Piers begins, and tells the English story, & I follow him.
. ryght begynnes Pers [þer] eft,
. And tellis forth þe Inglis story,
. & as he says, þan say I.
. Als þai haf wryten̄ & sayd,
. haf I alle in myn Inglis layd,
. In symple speche as I couthe, — I've written in as simple English as I could,
. þat is lightest in mannes mouthe.
. I mad noght for no disours,
. ne for no seggers, no harpours,
. Bot for þe luf of symple men̄ — for love of simple men who can't make out hard English.
. þat strange Inglis can̄ not ken̄;
. ffor many it ere þat strange Inglis
. In ryme wate neuer what it is;
. And bot þai wist what it mente, — If they couldn't make out me, my writing would be no good.
. ellis me thoght it were alle schente.
. I made it not forto be praysed, [leaf 1, back.]
. bot at þe lewed men̄ were aysed.
. If it were made in ryme couwee, — I don't write for praise, but to benefit the unlearned. And if I'd bothered them with *couvé* or *baston*, some must have come to grief.
. or in strangere or enterlace,
. þat rede Inglis it ere inowe,
. þat couthe not haf coppled a kowe,
. þat outhere in couwee or in baston
. som suld haf ben fordon,
. so þat fele men þat it herde
. suld not witte howe þat it ferde:
. I see in song, in sedgeyng tale — In tales of Erceldoun & Kendale,
. of Erceldoun & of Kendale,

I see that none repeat them as they were written; and specially the best story, *Sir Tristrem*,

. Non þam says as þai þam wroght,
. & *in* þer sayng it semes noght; 96
. þat may þou here *in* sir Tristrem;
. ouer gestes it has þe steem,
. Ouer alle *that* is or was,
. if menn it sayd as made Thomas; 100

is always spoilt,

. But I here it no manⁿ so say,
. þat of som copple som is away;
. So þare fayre sayng here befornⁿ
. is þare trauayle nere forlornⁿ; 104

by the repeaters wanting to show off their own cleverness.

. þai sayd it for pride & nobleye,
. þat non were suylk as þei;
. And att þat þai wild ouerwhere,
. att þat ilk witt now forfare. 108
. þai sayd *in* so quante Inglis
. þat many one wate not what it is.
. þerfore [I] henyed[1] wele þe more [[1] MS. henþed]
. In strange ryme to trauayle sore; 112

Besides, I'm too dull to write strange words;

. And my witte was oure thynne
. So strange speche to trauayle in;
. And forsoth I couth[e] noght
. so strange Inglis as þai wroght; 116

and men besought me to write my story in easy ones.

. And menn besoght me many a tyme
. to turne it bot *in* light[e] ryme;
. þai sayd, if I *in* strange it turne,
. to here it manyon suld skurne; 120
. ffor it ere names full selcouthe
. þat ere not vsed now *in* mouthe;

So I have written it for the commonalty,

. And þerfore for þe comonalte
. þat blythely wild listen to me, 124
. On light[e] lange I it beganⁿ, [leaf 2, back, col. 2.]

for love of the unlearned, to tell them the chances of old;

. for luf of þe lewed manⁿ,
. to telle þam þe chaunces bolde
. þat here before was don & tolde. 128

and I ask no reward but the prayers of my hearers,

. ffor þis makyng I witt no mede
. bot gude prayere when ȝe it rede;
. þerfore, [alle] ȝe lordes lewed,

. ffor wham I haf þis Inglis schewed,
. Prayes to God he gyf me grace,—
. I trauayled for ȝour solace;—
. Of Brunne I am, if any me blame,
. Robert Mannyng is my name;
. Blissed be he of God of heuene
. þat me, Robert, with gude wille neuene;
. In þe third Edwardes tyme was I
. whēn I wrote alle þis story,
. In þe hous of Sixille I was a throwe;
. Danz Robert of Maltōn þat ȝe know,
. did it wryte for felawes sake,
. whēn þai wild solace make.

for whose solace I have worked.

Of Brunne I am, Robert Mannyng's my name;

and I wrote this story in King Edward III.'s time

for my fellows' delight.

Dares Frigius, qui historiam Troianorum scripsit, ait se militasse vsque dum Troia capta est, hosque duces se vidisse cum indutie essent & partim prelio interfuisse.

. Dares the Freson of Troie first wrote,
. & putt it in buke þat we now wote;
. he was a clerk and a gude knyght,
. when Troie was lorn he sawe þat fight;
. Alle þe barons wele he knewe,
. he tellis þer. stature & þer hewe,
. long or schorte, whyte or blak,
. alle he telles, gude or lak.
. Alle þer lymmes, how þai besemed,
. In his buke has Dares demed,
. Both of Troie & of Grece,
. whatkyns schappe was ilka pece;
. Of manyon he reknes & sayes,
. both of Troiens & of Gregeis,
. þat it were oure long to telle,
. & many wald not þer-in duelle
. þare names alle forto here,
. bot þe Latyn is fayre to lere.

Dares the Freson first wrote of the loss of Troy.

He tells the stature and hue of all the barons who fought there,

both Trojans & Greeks.

[leaf 2.] **Ego Galfridus Arthurus Monemutensis, qui hanc historiam Britonum de eorum linguа in nostram transferre curaui, dimitto fortunas successoribus meis scribendas.**

Geoffrey of Monmouth turned a book out of Breton speech into Latin,

. Geffrey Arthure of Minumue,
. fro Breton speche he did remue,
. & made it alle in Latyn
. þat clerkes haf now knawyng in.
. In Gloucestre was fonden a buke
. þat þe Inglis couthe not rede no luke,
. On þat langage þai knew no herde;

at the request of Erle Roberde of Gloucestre.

. bot an erle þat hyght Roberde,
. he prayed þat ilk clerk Geffrey
. to turne it fro þat speche away
. In-to Latyn, as it mente,
. þat þe Inglis mot know þe entente;
. ffor Geffrey knew þe langage wele,
. In Latyn he broght it ilka dele.

Then came Mayster Wace, in 1055,

. Siþen com a clerk, Mayster Wace,
. to make romance had he grace,

and turned the Latin into French rhyme, up to Cadwaladre's time.

. & turned it ro Latyne,
. & rymed it in Frankis fyne
. vnto þe Cadwaladres;
. no forer, þer makes he ses.
. Als Geffrey in Latyn sayd,
. so Mayster Wace in Frankis layd;
. þe date of Criste was þan þis lyue,
. A thousand ȝere fifty & fyue.

Afterwards Pers of Langtoft

. Than com out of Brydlyngton
. Pers of Langtoft, a chanon;

put the same story into different verse,

. Als Mayster Wace þe same he says,
. bot he rymed it oþer ways;

from Eneas, through the Brut, to the English deeds; fairer language was never read.

. he begynnes at Eneas,
. of alle þe Brute he tellis þe pas,
. & s[i]þen[1] alle þe Inglis dedis;
. feyrere langage non ne redis.

[1 *or* syen]

. After þe Inglis kynges he says þer pris
. þat all in metir fulle wele lys;
. And I, Robert, fulle fayn wald bringe
. In Inglis tonge þer faire saiynge.
. [1] God gyve me grace wel to spede, [leaf 1, Lamb. MS.]
. þys rym on Englische for to rede.

And I, Robert, would fain turn their fair speech into English words.

Genealogia primi regis Troge & Enee a Noe et Saphet vsque ad Loquerinum [2] deducta.

. Now of þe story wyl we [3] gynne:
. Whan God took wreche of Kaymes [4] synne,
. þe erthe was waryed in his werk—
. Als y [5] þe bible seys þe Clerk/,—
. & þerfore God sente a flood
. þat [6] fordide al flesche & blood,[7]
. Man & best þat beren lyues,
. Bot foure men & foure wyues.
. So mykel was þenne [8] mannes trespas,
. þat alle þat euer of Adam was
. Wyþynne a þousand ȝer & mo,
. In þat flod were lorn alle þo.
. Bot Noe & his þre sones
. And þeir wyues—þe bible hit mones—
. Wer none worthi in Godes sight,
. Ne non bot þese þat liueden [9] ryght.

Through Cain's sin the earth was cursed,

and God sent a flood which destroyed all flesh,

save four men and four women,

Noe and his three sons,

---

[1] The Lambeth MS. begins here, and the text is printed from it. A modern hand has put the following title to the MS.:—"A Chronicle of "England, in olde Englishe meeter, "from Brute to *King* Richarde y^e^ "·I·, made by Piers of Langtofte, "chanonne of Bridlington, and "putte into Englishe ryme by Ro- "bert de Brunne iuxta Depinge .v. "infr. f. lxxiij." The various readings are from the Petyt MS.

[2] lo*crinum*.

[3] A later hand has struck out *wyl* (wille P.) and prefixed *be* to *gynne*.

[4] *wreke of Caym*.

[5] MS. scratched over with a pen. "*as in*," P.

[6] *&*.

[7] The later hand puts *both* for *al*, and *all* before *blood*; as also *both* before *Man* in the next line, and *& left* before *Bot* in the line after.

[8] *þan*. [9] *lyued*.

. þyse were þo [1] þat skaped þe deþ,
Shem, Ham, and Japhet, and their wives. . Noe, Seem, Cam, & Sapheþ,[2]
. And þer wyues þat [3] wiþ þem [4] nam;
. þo þat now ar, of þys folk þey [5] cam.

These sons divided the world into three parts, . þyse [6] Noe sones, ȝe han [7] wel herd
. How þey departed al þys werd: [8]
. þey departed [it] [9] in þre parties,
. And names gaf at þeir deuis,
Asia, Africa, and Europe. . Assye, Aufryk, & Europe;
. þys ar [10] þe parties, wel y hope.
Shem took Asia; . Sem was þe eldest: [11] he ches Assye;
Ham, Africa; . Cam took Aufryk til [12] his partie;
Japheth, Europe. . Saphet, [13] Europè [14] he took;
. & þus þey parted, [15] als seyþ þe book.

Tot terre sunt in vniuerso mundo.

. How many landes in ilk of þyse,
. Ilk a partie haþ þeyr [16] assise:
Asia had 15 divisions. . In Assye fiftene landes are,
. Bot þer names we seye no [17] mare:
. India, Assery, and Partye,
. Sire, Perce, Mede, Mesapotanie,
. Capadoce, Palestine, & Armenye,
. Cylyce, Cades, & Arrabye,
. Al Egipte, & Lybye;
. þyse ar [18] þe landes in Assye.

---

[1] *þes were þai.*
[2] *Iapheth.*
[3] *þai.*
[4] *þam.*
[5] *ere of þes aught.*
[6] *This.*
[7] *haf.*
[8] *þe werlde.*
[9] *parted it.*
[10] *þes ere.*
[11] *was eldest.*
[12] *to.*
[13] *Iapheth.*
[14] The accent is in the MS.
[15] *& þis departid.*
[16] *has* þer.
[17] *na.*
[18] *ere.*

. ∫∫ Tyl Aufryk twelf landes longe,[1] Africa had 12.
. þat Cam til his p*ar*tie gan fonge : [2]
. Cireneus, Pentapolys, & Lyddya,
. Ethiope, T*ri*politan, & Pysancia,[3] 244
. Gentulye,[4] Natabrie, Numidye,
. Maurytan & Tynguytanie ;
. Sirtes þe more & þe lasse,
. ffor þe twelfte teld hit es. 248
. ∫∫ ffiftene [5] landes ar in Europe, [leaf 1, col. 2.] and Europe (where the pope lives) 15.
. Saphethes p*ar*tie, þ*er* dwelleþ [6] þe Pope :
. Romanie,[7] Calabr*e*, Poille, & Spayne,
. Massedoigne & Alemaygne, 252
. Tracye, Dalmank, & Pamonie [8]
. Lange-dok, ffr*a*unce,[9] Acquitonie,
. Brytaigne, Irland,—þyse arn [10] þe best,—
. And al þe Northe toward þe west. 256
. Now schal [11] we telle as we fynde This is the genealogy of Eneas :
. How Eneas com of Saphethes [12] kynde ;
. ffol merk hit ys for to here,
. Bot algate a man may lere. 260

Genealogia, si*ue* generacio.

. Noe þat God saued fro [13] deþ. 1, Noah,
. His sone was cald sire [14] Saphet. 2, Japhet,
. Iauan, his sone þat cam [15] of hym, 3, Javan,
. He hadde a sone þat hight Setym ; [16] 264 4, Setym,

---

[1] *lang.* [leaf 2, back.]
[2] *parte vnderfang.*
[3] *Bizancia.*
[4] *Getulie.*
[5] *ffouretene.* To make 15, the pope's dwelling must be counted as one land.
[6] *was Iapheth parte* þer *es.*
[7] *Rome.* (*Poille* is omitted.)
[8] *Dalmatik, Pannonie.*
[9] *Cologne, Galle.*
[10] *þes be.*
[11] *salt.*
[12] *Iaphet.*
[13] *Noe god saued fro* þe.
[14] *was sir.*
[15] *com.*
[16] *Cetim.*

5, Ciprius,
. Setymes[1] sone, Cipri*us* hight,
. A man of ffame & of myght;
. So mikel þ*at* tyme was his fame,
(who gave his name to Cyprus,)
. þe lande of Cipr*e* of[2] hym had name.
. Of þys noble sir*e* Cypri*us*,
6, Cretus,
. Was a sone þ*at* hight[3] Cretus;
. þis Cretus an ilde he augte,[4]
(from whom Crete was called,)
. þe name of hym Cret hit laughte.
. Cretus sone hyghte Cellius,
7, Celus,
8, Saturn,
. And Celli*us* sone was Sat*urnus*;
9, Jupiter,
. Sat*urnus* sone highte Iubiter,
(who was learned in astronomie,
. In astronomie he lerede fer.
. þis ilk Iubit*er* had twey[5] wyues,
had two wives,
. Kynges doughtr*es*, faire lyues;
May & Electra, daughters of king Atlas,
. þ*at* on[6] hight Maye, þ*at* o*þer*[7] Electra,
. þe[8] ffader hight Aclas[9] of þem twa;
. ffor Aclas alle hise men calde,[10]
. Mons Aclatis[11] ȝif hit now halde;
. þe[12] hil was so hey, as men hit leet,[13]
. þ*at* heuen (men seye) hit vnder-feet.[14]
. þys noble kynge sire Aclas,[15]
and a tree that bore golden apples
. In his orchard[16] a tre þ*er* was,
. þ*at* gilden apples hit bar ere-more[17]
. Al þe tyme þ*at* apples wore;[18]
. & alwey on dragon hem kepte;[19]
which were stolen).
. Syn[20] were þey stolen þe while[21] he slepte.

---

[1] *Cetim.*
[2] *for.*
[3] *meñ called.*
[4] MS. *augste*; P. has *aught.*
[5] þis *Iubit*er *had twa.*
[6] þe *ton.*
[7] þe *to*þer.
[8] þer.
[9] *Atlans.*
[10] *for Atlans a hitt men called.*
[11] *Atlantis.*
[12] þat.
[13] *so hij meñ lette.*
[14] *sayd it vndersette.* ? feet=took.
[15] *Atlas.*
[16] *lordschip.*
[17] *euermore.*
[18] *tymes* þat *appilles are.*
[19] *Alle tymes a dragoñ* þam.
[20] *Siþen.*
[21] *whils.*

. þys Iubit*er* lay dame Maye by,
. & gat on hure[1] sire M*er*cury;
. Of Electra he gat an oþer,
. Dardanu*m*, M*er*curi*us*[2] brother.
. Iubit*er* loued wel more Maye
. And M*er*cury þan þe oþer twaye,
[3]. Wel more Maye & M*er*curiu*m*
. þan Electra or Dardanu*m*.[3]
. ffor loue of Maye he dide calle
. þe monthe of May þ*at* we knowe[4] alle;
. ffor in that month made þey feste,
. þ*at* time þey helden most honeste.[5]
. þys Darda[n]u*m* gaf hym to chiualrie;
. M*er*cury gaf hi*m* al to clergie.
. ſ þys Dardan*us* was a noble kyng*e*, [leaf 1, back.]
. Hys Godes schewed hym mykel þyng*e*,
. & bed hi*m* gon[6] til Ytalye,
. Toward Samo, þorough Tracye;
. (Tracie for-sothe ys a lond,
. Samo a contre, y vnderstond;)
. þe whilk Dardan þorow maistr*ie*
. Mad hem[7] boþ on, Samo-Tracye;
. Samo-Tracie haþ[8] his deuise.
. Syþen he wente in-til[9] ffrise,
. & gaf hit[10] name when he þ*er* cam,
. After him self Dardaniam;
. þe name of ffryse calde Dardanye,
. Als he calde Trac*ye* Samotracye.
. Of þys Dardan com a sone
. Erectori*us*,[11] þ*at* þer gan wone.

(who took to chivalry,

and was bidden by his gods to go to Italy.

He united Samos and Thrace into Samothracia,

and named Frisia Dardania).

10, Dardanus,

11, Ericthonius,

---

[1] *of hir.*
[2] *Mercury.*
[3] P. omits these two lines.
[4] *knaw.*
[5] þ*ai helde fairest & Mest.*
[6] P. omits *gon.*
[7] *Made* þam.
[8] *at.*
[9] *vnto.*
[10] P. omits *hit.*
[11] *Erictonius.*

. þys Erectorius a sone he gat,
12, Tros, . Troius[1]; a noble man was þat
. Of rightfulnesse & pitee;
. Ouer alle oþer praised was he
. ffor a rightful man & hende,
. Of hym ys mynsyng wiþ-outen ende,
. ffor he made a cite of ioye
(who built Troy). . After his name, &[2] calde hit Troye;
. Of þys Troye, þys[3] stori mones,
. Com of hym to[4] noble sones,
13, Assaracus, . þat on[5] hight Ile, þat oþer Asserak,
. þys wer þer names, þe stori spak;
(whose brother Ilus built Ilium, . Ile was after his ffader kynge,
. He made a cite of fair byggynge,
. And after him selue[6] made hit ryght,
. Ilye after Ile hit hight.
& had a son Laomedon, whom . Of þis Ile a sone was on,
. & his name was Laomedon;
. þys Laomedon a bataille chees;
Hercules slew; . He was slayn wyþ Ercules.
. Of Troye was mad destructione
. þorow Iason, kynge Pelles sone.
. Of þys nys nought to tellen her,
. ffor hit ys nought of oure mater.
Laomedon begat Priam, . Of Laomedon com Priamus,
. Volcontus, and Ysypilus;
. & a doughter of him cam,
. Hure name was Esionam.
. ſſ Of Pryamus, eldest & mor,
& he Hector, and six other sons and daughters). . He had a sone men cald Ector,
. & oþer syxe, & doughtres two,
. þe names may ȝe here of þo;

---

[1] *Troys.*
[2] *& after his name.* [leaf 3.]
[3] *troys þe.*
[4] *tuo.*
[5] *þe tone.*
[6] *self.*

. Alysaundre, Parys, Deyphebum,
. Elenim,[1] Troyl, Amphimacum;
. & two doughtres þat of him cam,
. Cassandram & Pollixenam.
. Of Troies bifore an oþer sone,
. Asserak, ȝe herde me mone.
. of þys Asserak now geten es
. A sone men callede Kapes;
. & of Kapes Enches was,
. An[d] of Enches cam Eneas:
. þys ys þe kynde, fro gre til[2] gre, [leaf 1, back, col. 2.]
. Bytwyxten[3] Eneas & Noe.
. ¶ Bot now donward hit ys þus,
. ffro Eneas vntil[4] sire Brutus:
. Sire Eneas hadde sones twa,
. Askaneus was by dame Creusa;
. I þe bataille of Troye y-monge[5] þe pres,
. Hys wyf Creusa þere he[6] les.
. ¶ Whan þe Duk sire Eneas
. ffro þe bataille a-scaped was,
. He cam in-to[7] þe lond of Latyne,
. & þer wedded dame Lauyne.
. Latin highte þenne þe[8] landes
. þat men sayn þat Rome in[9] standes.
. By dame Lauyne þat leuedy[10]
. He gat a sone þat highte Syluy;
. Hys eldeste sone Ascaneus,
. He gat a child[11] Cycillius;[12]
. þylke Cycylli[13] gat þat man

356 360 364 368 372 376 380

14, Capes.
15, Anchises.
16, Eneas.
17, Ascaneus,
(Eneas also begat Silvius on Lavinia).
18, Cycillius.

---

[1] *Helenum.*
[2] *to.*
[3] *betuen.*
[4] *titt.*
[5] the *y* has been altered.
[6] þer *he hir.*
[7] *com to.*
[8] *þan þo.*
[9] þer *meñ says* þat *rome.*
[10] *lady.*
[11] *soñ* (or *sone*).
[12] "ascane siluius" substituted by a later hand; P. has *Sisillius.*
[13] *siluius* in the later hand; P. has þat *ilk Sisilli.*

19, Brutus. . Brut*us*, þat al þys land first wan.
20, Locrin (and his brothers). . Of Brut*us* cam sire Lokeryn,
. Kamber, Albanak, Euen, Iulyn: 384
. How þey departed þys land in þrynne,
. þat may ȝe heren wel wyþynne.
. Now haue y s[eyd][1] al þe kynde
. Vntil Lokerynes,[2] as we ffynde; 388
Reversing the genealogy of Assaracus, we have, . Now ageynward vntil[3] Noe,
. Schortly to seye, wilt[4] þou se
. þe kynde of alle þat y er of[5] spak,
. And of Troies sones,[6] Ile & Asserak/. 392

20, Lokeryn. . Lokeryn com of Brutus,
19, Brutus. . Brut*us* was geten of Cicill*ius*;
18, Cycillius. . Cicilli, Askane*us* sone was,
17, Ascaneus. . & Askane*us* com of Eneas,[7] 396
16, Eneas. . Eneas com of Enchise;
15, Anchises. . Enches, Kapes sone was he;
14, Capes. . Capes com of Asserak;
13, Assaracus. . Asserak, of Troies blod he brak,[8] 400
12, Tros. . Troies cam of Eryctonius,
11, Ericthonius. . Erycton com of Dardanus,
10, Dardanus. . Dardan[9] com of Iubit*er*,
9, Jupiter. . Iubit*er* was Sat*urnus* heyr, 404
8, Saturnus. . Sat*urnus* cam of Cellius,
7, Celus. . & Seli*us* cam of sire Cret*us*,
6, Cretus. . And Cret*us* cam of Cyprim,
5, Ciprius. . & Cipr*ius* cam of Setym, 408
4, Setym. . Setym com of Iauan,
3, Javan. . & Iauan of Saphet[10] gan,
2, Japhet. . And Saphet[10] cam of sire Noe:
1, Noah. . Of Asserak þys ys þe degre. 412

---

[1] MS. rubbed. *sayd.*
[2] *vnto Loqeryn.*
[3] *vnto.*
[4] *witt.*
[5] *I are.*
[6] *of troys.*
[7] *sir Eneas.*
[8] *blode brak.*
[9] ? MS. *Dardari.*
[10] *Iaphet.*

. Now schul we seye of ylke[1] *parti*:
. Ector cam of Pryamy,
. Priam*us* com of Laomedon,
. Laomedon of Ile gan;[2]
. Ile cam of Troyus,
. & Troyus of Erectoni*us*;
. Erector[3] cam of kynge Dardan,
. Dardan*us* of Iubit*er* ran,
. And Iubit*er* cam of Sat*urnus*,
. And Sat*urnus* of Celius,
. Celius com of Cret*us*, [leaf 2.]
. And Cret*us* com of Cypri*us*,
. Cipri*us* of Cetym gan,
. & Cetyn com of Iauan;
. Iauan, Iaphethes[4] sone was he,
. And Saphet[4] com of sire Noe:
. Of Troius sones þyse ar þe kyndes,
. þat bothe in-to Noe byndes.

And reversing the genealogy of Ilus, we get,
16, Hector.
15, Priam.
14, Laomedon.
13, Ilus.
12, Tros.
11, Erichthonius.
10, Dardanus.
9, Jupiter.
8, Saturnus.
7, Celius.
6, Cretus.
5, Cyprius.
4, Cetym.
3, Javan.
2, Japhet.
1, Noah.

. Now, lordynges, hit were to witen
. Whi þe bataille of Troye was smiten:
. þe laste meschaunce & þe peyne
. Was for þe Quene of Grece, Eleyne;
. þe kynges wyf of Grece scheo[5] was,
. þat Parys rauisched[6] þorow a cas.
. þat werre was in tyme ser,
. & lasted[7] two & twenty ȝer.
. ffor þat werre þe barons fledde
. þat weren in Troye born & fedde;
[8]. How hit bigan, þe laste bale,
. Listneþ, & [I] schal telle þe tale,[8]
. Of Troye þe firste destructione,
. þat cam[9] þorow Iasan, Pelles sone,

The battle of Troy was fought for Helen, queen of Greece, whom Paris ravished.

Troy was first destroyed by Jason,

[1] *sall we say of Ile.* [leaf 3, back.]
[2] *began.*
[3] *Ericton.*
[4] *Iaphet.*
[5] *scho.*
[6] *rauyst.*
[7] *lastand.*
[8] P. omits these two lines.
[9] *com* (for þat *cam*).

who won the ram with the fleece of gold,

. þat wan the Ram wiþ the fles[1] of golde,
. þat neuere man of erthe molde
. Mighte hit[2] wynne byfore wiþ fyght,
. Bot sire Iasan þe gode knyght[3]
. Whan[4] þe Ram wyþ[5] gilden flees,

& levelled Troy;

. & stryed Troye wiþ alle þe cites;

but Priam built it again,

. Bot þe kyng sire Pryami
. Bigged hit a-geyn fol noblely,[6]
. & vitailled hit of ston & corn;[7]
. Was hit neuer so fair biforn;

though since its last ruin it has never been rebuilt.

. Bot siþen þe laste sorewe & peyne
. Was hit neuere bygged ageyne.

Here is the tale of its fall.

. How hit bygan, þe laste bale,
. List[8] a partie of þe tale.

Exe de Troia de qua causa bellum fuit ammotum.

. In Troye was a Duc of prys,

Paris was Priam's son,

. Pryamy sone þat highte Parys.

and the custom then was that none but knights

. Custume was bi þo dawes,
. In tyme of þe elde lawes,
. Knygtes scholden[9] kepe bestes,
. Als y haue herd rede[n] in gestes.
. þe Bible wytnesseþ[10] wel þys þynge
. Of Moyses & Dauid þe kynge;
. Schold[11] non bot of gentil blod,
. Erl or duc, or also[12] god,

should keep beasts;

. Bestes kepe, bot he were knyght,
. & stalworthe in armes for to fyght,

---

[1] *fleez.*
[2] *Mot it.*
[3] MS. *knynght.*
[4] wañ.
[5] *with* þe.
[6] *nobly.*
[7] *& vouted it oft ston att corn.*
[8] *Listes.*
[9] *suld.*
[10] *wittnes.*
[11] *suld.*
[12] *als.*

. And hardy, & of hon*ur*,
. He kepte bestes y[1] þe past*our*,
. Swylk on was þys ilke Parys,
. A duk hardi, & a knyght wys;[2]
. He kepte bestes in þe feld
. As a knyght armed wiþ scheld.
. Als Parys[3] sat at his hole,
. Out fro Grece *þer* cam a bole;
. To Paris bestes was his draught,
. And wiþ Parys bole he faught.

so Paris

keeps beasts in the field.

To his beasts comes a bull from Greece, and fights with Paris's bull,

Exe pugn*um* int*er* Taur*um* Troie & Taur*um* Grec*ie*.

[leaf 2, col. 2.]

. ℣ Ilkon oþ*er* gan faste assaill*e*,
. & Parys biheld þeir bataill*e*;
. þey foughte so longe,[4] hit was a wonder,
. Bot at þe laste þey ȝede a sonder.
. An oþ*er* day he com ageyn,
. & foughte to-gydere, þys boles tweyn;
. So foughte þei mani daies longe,
. ffelenou*s*[5] batailles & fol stronge.
. Paris seide, " Now schal y se
. " Whilk is worthi to haue þe gre,
. " & whilk of hem maistri schal haue,
. " To coroune hym y vouch*e* hit saue."[6]
. ℣ A day þei foughte fol felonlike,
. & stalworly[7] to-gyder gon stryke;
. So longe þey foughte, þ*at* atte[8] laste
. þe bole of Troye doun was caste.

one day,

two days,

many days;

and Paris

resolves to crown the conqueror.

At last the Trojan bull is beaten, and

---

[1] *in.*
[2] *hardy knyght & wys.*
[3] *as þis Paris.*
[4] *þai faught so long.*
[5] *felons.*
[6] *vouchsaue.*
[7] *stalworþely.*
[8] *long þai faught at þe.*

Paris gives the Grecian bull the crown.

. When Parys saugh his bole doun,
. þe bole of Grece he gaf þe croun;
. & þat was gret *cur*tesye,
. To gyue þe bole þe maist*rie*,
. & late hym gon corouned quit[1]
. þat hadde ydon his bole despit.

Three witches, called ladies,

. þere biside þre wicches ware,
. Ladies were cald, & in þe eyr dide fare;

see this bull-fight,

. þyse þre stoden & byheld[2]
. þe boles batail*le* in þe feld,
. & pr*a*ised mikel sir*e* Paris
. þat he gaf þat[3] bole þe pris;
. þey seide he was a man of skyl
. þat gaf þe dom as fel *þer* til;
. ffor he þat was þe pris worþy,
. He corouned hym,[4] and gaf þe maistri.
. þyse þre leuedies were of might;

Juno, Pallas, and Venus,

. þe pr*i*ncipale,[5] Iuno scheo hight;
. þat oþer Pallas, þe þrydde Ven*us*,
. Alle þre leuedies highten[6] þus.
. Iuno, scheo was gyu*e*re of myght,
. Pallas gaf wysdam & right,
. Dame Ven*us*, sche[7] gaf loue til man.

and begin to argue which of them is fairest.

. Bytwyxte[8] þise þre a strif bigan,
. Whilk of hem[9] were fayrest:
. At Paris dom þei wolde[10] hit kest.
. Dame Iuno seide, "hit am y;"
. þat oþer seid, "nay truely![11]

They agree to refer the question to Paris.

. "To Paris dom we gr*a*unten alle,
. "þe whilk of vs fairest schal falle."

---

[1] *quite.*
[2] *þe þre stode & behelde.*
[3] *þe.*
[4] *he crouned.*
[5] *þat mast was*
[6] *ladyes hight*
[7] *scho.*
[8] *betuex.*
[9] *þam.*
[10] *dome þai wald.*
[11] *certanly.*

ſ De consilio Iuno et adulac*ione* sua.

. Dame Iuno seide hu*re* auys,
. " We schal don hit vpon[1] Parys,
. " & he schal ben oure[2] domes man."
. þe o*þere*[3] seide, " We gr*a*unte þan."
. " Now," sche[4] seide " we gr*a*unten al;
. " Go we now & make a bal,
. " & gyue we hit[5] Parys alle þre,
. " And pr*e*ye we hym for specialte
. " To gyue hit hure þ*a*t semes best,
. " Of vs þre whilk ys[6] fairest."
. þys ilke conseil þey toke til[7] pay;
. Whan hit schold be þey sette a day.

They'll make a ball, and ask Paris to give it to the fairest of them,

on a certain day.

ſ Lege *per* totum vlterius.

. Here þ[8] now of a quynte wyle,[9] [leaf 2, back.]
. How eche of þo þoughte o*þer* gyle.[10]
. Ar þat day com þat þey set,
. Iuno wiþ sire Parys met:
. " Paris," scheo seyþ, " y schal ȝow[11] seye
. " A pr*i*uete by-twixte vs beye:[12]
. " We þre ladies han[13] ordeyned so
. " þ*a*t alle þre-schulle come þe to,
. " & take þe a bal, & preye þe
. " To gyue hit þe fairest of vs þre;
. " & wham þou gyue[14] hit, ys oure deuis,
. " Scheo schal[15] for eu*e*re bere þe prys.

Before that day Juno tells Paris

what they ladies are going to do,

---

[1] *satt do it on.*
[2] *he satt oure.*
[3] þat o*þer.*
[4] *scho.*
[5] *& gyf it.*
[6] *þre to be.*
[7] *to.*
[8] *Here.*
[9] *quante gyle.*
[10] *how alle þre thoght a wyle.*
[11] *scho said .I. satt þe.*
[12] *tueye.*
[13] *haf.*
[14] *whom þou gyffes.*
[15] *scho satt.*

and prays him to give her the ball;
then she'll set him above all in Troy.

. " & ȝif y myghte biseke þe so,
. " þou woldest[1] gyue hit me, Iuno;
. " I schal þe[2] graunte þorow my power,
. " In Troye schold neuere[3] be þy per."
. Parys seide, "dame, graunt mercy!
. Right as þou wilt, al so wil y."[4]

She gone, Pallas prays him too for the ball,

. Whan scheo was gon, cam Pallas
. ffor þat same þat Iuno was;
. Scheo preied Parys, als scheo had seyd,
. þat þe bal were til hure y-leyd:

and promises him wisdom over all.

. "Of wysdam y schal gyue þe grace
. " Ouer alle oþer in ilk a place."
. Parys seide, þat was curteys,
. "Hit may be, lady, ȝyt as þou seys."

Last comes Venus, tells him

. ∫∫ Whan scheo was gon, cam dame Venus,[6]
. & to Parys scheo seide[7] al þus:
. "Parys," scheo seide,[7] "we ladies are
. " þre in gret þought & in care;
. " & þou may bate al þat gilt[8]
. " Of vs alle ȝif þat þou wylt.
. " Y am," scheo seide,[7] "on of þo
. " þat ys in þought to þe to go.

she is coming to be judged by him,

. " A day we set to þe to come,
. " ffor to stonde al at þy dome;
. " A bal," scheo seide,[7] "we schul[9] þe brynge,
. " & preie þe vpon alle þynge
. " þou gyue hit hure þat fairest semes,
. " ffor þy dom vs alle quemes.

and if he'll give her the ball, she'll give him the fairest lady alive.

. " & ȝif þou gyue hit me, Parys,
. " I schal[9] þe gyue a loue of pris,
. " þe fairest lady þat now lyues,
. " ffor þe bal, ȝif[10] þou hit me gyues."

---

[1] *wild.*
[2] *I satt.*
[3] *ne suld.*
[4] *als þou wilt þañ wiłt .I.*
[5] *to hir layd.*
[6] *com Venus.*
[7] *scho said.*
[8] *abate þat gylte.*
[9] *satt.*
[10] *ȝ.* [leaf 4, back.]

. ſ Parys þoughte, & stod þen stille ; . Paris thinks,
. To þat loue *turn*d al his wille ; 584
. He seide, "Iuno hyghte[1] me poer ; he cares not for power
. " *þerof*," he seid, "ys no mester ;
. " Kynges[2] sone y am, & lord schal be ; (being a king's son),
. " Poer ynow schal come to me. 588
. " & Pallas highte me gret wysdam ; nor wisdom
. " In Troye nis wyser þan y am ;[3] (there's no wiser than he in Troy) ;
. " Of þyse gyftes ys no ned ;
. " To loue þat lady ys al my sped." 592 love is his need.
. To þat gift his herte gaf al :
. " Ven*us*," he saide, "þou getes þe bal So he promises the ball to Venus.
. " ȝyf þou me hold þat þou hast het,[4]
. " þou getest[5] þe bal at ȝoure day set." 596
. þey *gra*unted boþe atter[6] pay,
. & com alle þre at þer day, On the day fixed the three witches come.
. & bytok[7] Parys þe bal ;
. At his dom þey stoden[8] al. 600
. Parys tok þe bal in his hand :[9] [leaf 2, back, col. 2.] Paris decides
. " So faire ladies ar none lyuand ;[10]
. " Bot me þynkes[11] of ȝow þre
. " Dame Ven*us* semes fairest to be. 604 that Venus is the fairest, and gives her the ball.
. " Haue here þe bal, dame Ven*us* ;
. " ffairest to be, me þynkeþ ryght[12] *þus*."
. þys lady Ven*us* was al glad,
. þe oþ*er*e[13] were for wrayth al mad ; 608 The others are mad with rage.
. Ven*us* held[14] wiþ hym *cer*teyn,
. þe oþ*er*e boþe were hym ageyn ;
. Poer & wysdam he forsok ;
. & wo*m*man loue, þ*er*-til he tok. 612

---

[1] *hett.*
[2] *kyng.*
[3] *wisere of troie es ne yan .I. am.*
[4] *kalde þat þou has hette.*
[5] *getes.*
[6] *at* þer.
[7] *betaght.*
[8] *þai stode.*
[9] *in hande.*
[10] *ere non lyffande.*
[11] *thynk.*
[12] *thynk reght.*
[13] *to*þer.
[14] *was.*

Venus tells Paris to provide furs, jewels, purple and fine linen;

to take a ship

with a fine bed in it covered with cloths of gold,

go to Greece, land where the queen is,

and she'll yearn

to see his wares;

but he's not to show them unless she'll go on board;

and that she'll do,

for woman craves what man forbids her.

. ſſ Dame Ven*us* seide to[1] sire Parys,
. " þou schalt don at myn auys:[2]
. " P*ur*uey þe," scheo seide, " veir & grys,
. " ffair*e* iueles, & pourpre[3] & bys; 616
. " Do dight a schip wiþ sail & ore
. " Ryght as þou a marchaund wore;
. " Of all*e* queyntise þ*at* þou may se,
. " Haue[4] vn-to þy schip wyþ þe; 620
. " Do make þ*er*inne a fol fair bed,[5]
. " Wiþ cloþes of gold hit be al[6] spred;
. " þy schip wiþoute be fol fair[7] dight,
. " Lykynge to þ*at* lauedy[8] sight. 624
. " þ*er*inne[9] to Grece schalt[10] þou wende;
. " In an hauene schalt[10] þou lende
. " þ*er* þe kynge ys, & þe Quene;
. " & whan scheo haþ þe schip al[11] sene, 628
. " Scheo schal ȝerne[12] on alle wyse
. " ffor to se þy marchaundise;
. " Bot loke þou schewe non of þo,
. " Bot scheo wile in to þy schip[13] go; 632
. " & whan scheo her*es* þ*at* tydynge,[14]
. " Scheo schal praie ful faste[15] þe kynge
. " To gyue hir*e* leue to se þy ware,
. " To bye þ*er*of þ*at* so rich*e* are. 636
. " [16]Loke þou schewe noma*n* nought
. " Til þ*at* sche first be hider brought,[16]
. " ffor out of wyt wo*m*men[17] ȝernes
. " þ*at* men forbedes hure, & wernes. 640

[1] *said tiẗ.*
[2] *saẗ do at my deuys.*
[3] *purpure.*
[4] *haf.*
[5] *a fuẗ fayre bedde.*
[6] *gold be it aẗ.*
[7] *fuẗ faire.*
[8] *likand to* þat *lady.*
[9] MS. þer*ime.*
[10] *saẗ.*
[11] *scho has þi schippe.*
[12] *Scho saẗ ȝern.*
[13] *in to schippe.*
[14] *tiþing.*
[15] *Scho saẗ pray full fast.*
[16-16] *luke* þou *schew no* mañ *nought of* þe
bot he wiẗ in to þe *schippe go.*
[17] *witte* womañ.

." & whan scheo his brought vnto[1] þy schip,		Then he's to take her by the hand,
." By þe hand redy þou hure kyp,[2]		
." & curteysly þat scheo be led,		
." & set hure faire opon[5] þy bed;	644	set her on the bed,
." Do cortine hit al aboute		curtain it all round,
." þat scheo se nought wyþynne ne[4] wyþoute,		
." & whan scheo ys on þy bed set,		
." Loke wel þat þy schip be get;	648	
." Lat non come vnder þy telde		
." Mo þan þou may lightly welde;		
." Loke þy schip be[5] vnfest,		then cast off the ship,—
." & þy folk be al[6] prest;	652	
." And what þynge þat sche wil craue,		let the queen have everything she wants,
." Do hit hure redy for to[7] haue,		
." þat scheo tende to no þynge elles		that she may
." Bot til þat ware þat þou hure selles.	656	attend to nothing else,
." Whan redy ys þyn apparail,		
." Lat þy men haue vp þe sayl,[8]		hoist up the sails,—
." & loke[9] þou be to myle or þre		
." Ar scheo wite[10] wyþynne þe se;	660	
." & do þenne þat lady to wyte		and then let her know how his jewels will suit her.
." How þy iueles wyl hure syte."		
. Parys dide as Venus kende,	[leaf 3.]	
. & dighte þe schip,—wel he[11] wende,—	664	Paris does as Venus tells him,
. Wyþ alle queintyse þat was[12] gay,		fits out his ship,
. & aryued vp[13] þer þe kinge lay.		and lands where Menelaus is.
. Menlaus hightè þe kynge;		
. He sente to wyte what maner þynge	668	He asks what Paris has to sell:
. Was in þe schip for to selle.		
." Riche iueles," þey gan him telle,		Rich jewels, *in* the ship, not

---

[1] *bot whe̅ is broght in to.*
[2] *kippe.*
[3] *o̅n.*
[4] *scho se no thyng.*
[5] *it be.*
[6] *att.*
[7] *redy to.*
[8] *þat þi me̅n haf vp þi saile.*
[9] *at.*
[10] *Or scho* (no *wite*).
[11] *his schippe wele .I.* [leaf 5.]
[12] *were.*
[13] *vp* omitted.

out of it.
. " Bot non ne mighte for gold ne[1] fe
. " Out of þe schip gete ought to se."
Helen
. þat herde telle þe quene Heleyne.
. Nyght & day sche dide[2] hire peyne,
. Of þe kynge to haue grauntyse
. To se þat ylke marchaundyse.
gets leave to see them,
. What wyþ wel oþer[3] wyþ wo,
. Leue scheo gat[4] þyder to go.

¶ Exe de Raptu Helene Regine Grecie.

and goes on board.
. Vnto þe schip was scheo brought:
Paris
. Parys þe [duk][5] forgat he nought
. þat he ne dide as Venus bad.
. ffor þe quene comynge he was fol glad;
. ffaire iueles forth þey drowe,[7]
shows her fair jewels;
. & schewed þe[8] lady right ynowe;
. & whyles þei richesse bifore hure caste,
his men hoist the sail,
. þer sayl þey drow vp by þe maste.
. þys lady Heleyne gaf no tent,
. Me non of hures, how þe schip out went;
and when they are two or three miles from land,
. Wyþynne a þrowe, to[9] mile or þre
. Was þe schip wyþynne þe se.
. ¶ Whan þey weren fro þe lond,
Paris welcomes Helen;
. Parys tok þe quene by þe hond:
. "Welcome," he saide,[10] "art þou to me!
. " ffor þe cam y[11] to þys contre;
. " Now[12] y haue þe, mykel is my ioye,
and tells her her beauty shall rejoice all Troy.
. " þy fairehede schal mende[13] al Troye;

---

[1] *no.*
[2] *scho did.*
[3] *wele or.*
[4] *scho gate.*
[5] *duke.*
[6] *þe quene com in his herte was glad.*
[7] *þai droghe.*
[8] *þat.*
[9] *tuo.*
[10] *Welcom Heleyne.*
[11] *I com.*
[12] *ffor.*
[13] *satt amend.*

. " þou were me gyuen ;[1] þat gyft y haue ;
. " Al my trauaille, y vouche hit saue."
. Y kan nought sey of þat leuedy — If Helen is not sorry,
. Whe*þer* scheo was glad or sory ;[2]
. Bot whan hure lord þe kyng hit wist, — Menelaus is.
. Ioye to make him ne lyst ;
. After his barons alle he sent — He sends for his barons,
. & schewede he*m* how þat[3] he was schent ; — tells them how his queen has been stolen from him ;
. 'þat a schip of Troye was comen,
. þe quene þorow treson þey[4] nomen.'
. Whan þei alle wiste þys[5] grete despit,
. Wiþ o wille þey seyde fol tyt, — and they vow
. þei scholde neue*re* reste ne lende
. To struye[6] Troye wyþouten ende. — to destroy Troy for ever.
. Here-fore bigan þe sorewe and peyne,
. þe slaughtre of Troye, for þys Heleyne ;
. þys[7] slaughter was yn bataille seer, — The strife lasts twenty-two years.
. & lasted[8] two & twenty ȝer
. Bytwyxte þe Troiens & þe Gregeys, [leaf 3, col. 2.]
. Als þe stories wytnesses & seys.
. At a batalle þat þey set,[9] — The last battle
. Troye & Grece at ones met,
. At which[10] bataille þe Troiens lees,
. & fledde fro þat mykel prees.
. þat mighte fle, fledde ay-whore,[11]
. & Troye destruyed for eue*re* more. — the Trojans lose,
. Al þe werd[12] makes ȝyt menynge — and Troy is
. How Troye was struyed for þys þynge ; — destroyed,
. Clerkes wyse yn boke hit wrot, — as wise clerks
. þorow whiche wrytynge wel alle hit wot[13] ; — write.

---

[1] *was gyfeñ.*
[2] *whedire scho were or sary.*
[3] *þam how.*
[4] *has.*
[5] *þe.*
[6] *destroye.*
[7] *þe.*
[8] *Lastand.*
[9] *at ones Troie & Grece þai mette.*
[10] *þat.*
[11] *fled aschore.*
[12] *world.*
[13] *þorghe þer writyng we it wote.*

. þey write[1] þe names of þe kynges
. & of alle þe[2] oþer lordynges,
. Whilke were men of most honur,
. þat fledde fro þe[2] grete stour.

Duke Eneas flees,

A gret lord of Troye þer was,
Men calde duk Eneas;

ffor[3] þat grete slaughter he fled,

with his son Askaneus,

Hys sone Askaneus wiþ hym led;
Sone ne doughter had he namo
Whan he fledde þe cite fro;

leaving his wife Creusa behind.

In þe slaughtre a-monge þe pres,
Hys wyf Creusa, he hure les.[4]
. þys Eneas fledde him self to saue,
. Hys sones lif & his to haue;[5]

Eneas fits out twenty ships,

Wyþ mikel vitaille & tresor good
He charged twenty schipes on flood.
He dwelte longe in þe se,
& many perille[6] ascapede he.
Wyþ alle þe wo þat he gan dreye,

and lands in Italy

He cam to þe lond of Ytalye.
(7 Italye was kalled þenne

(where Rome now stands),

þe land þat Rome now standes ynne:7
Of Rome þat ilke tyme was nought,
Ne longe after was hit wrought.)
Eneas þat had al þat trauaille,
What in se[8] & in bataille,
Atte laste he gan aryue
In Ytalye, a lond plentyue.

by the water of Tiber.

9 By þe water of Tyber land þey nome,
By whilk water now standeþ Rome.9

---

[1] *wrote.*
[2] þat. [Geoffrey and Wace begin.]
[3] *ffro.*
[4] Wace, p. 5, l. 85–89.
[5] *withouteñ* ouþer ȝoman *or knaue.*
[6] *perille* omitted.
[7–7] *Ytalie was* þañ þe *name* þat *land* þer *now men Rome ame.*
[8] *in* þe *se.* [leaf 5, back.]
[9–9] þe *water hate Tiber* þer þai *londe nome* be þat *water standes Rome.*

De Rege Italye siue Latinor*um*.

Þe kynge of þe land, Latyn he[1] hight, — Latinus the king
A riche man, & mykel of myght,
& hadde[2] ynow his lond to welde,
Bot þat he was smyten in-to[3] elde.
He worschiped muche[4] sire Eneas, — honours Eneas
& fayn of hys comynge was,
& seide, 'ȝyf he wolde leue stille, — and offers him land,
He wolde[5] gyue hym land at wylle.'
Latynes þe kynge, he[6] had non eyr
Bote a maide[7] swythe fayr;
þys damysele highte Lauyne.
Þe kyng seyde, "Scheo schal[8] be þyne; — and his only daughter
" I wyle þat [þou][9] after myn endynge [lf. 3, bk.] Lavinia, so that
." My doughter wedde, & be þou[10] kynge." after his death Eneas may be
Bot þer-til graunted nought þe quen; king.
. Scheo wold þat an oþer had[de][11] ben.
. ffor he dide nought as wold[12] his wyfe,
þerfore ros a newe strife:
ſſ Þer biside a riche man, — But Turnus,
Turnus he highte, lord of Tuskan; — lord of Tuscany,
þys Turnus hadde yloued[13] Lauyne, — who has long loved Lavinia,
& herde seye þat þe kyng Latyne
Had gyuen his doughter sire Eneas,
And hadde enuye þat hit so was,
ffor Turnus had loued hure longe ar hee,
& hadde grauntise[14] his wif to be;

---

[1] *he* omitted.
[2] *Rychesse.*
[3] *in.*
[4] *myhett.*
[5] *witt.*
[6] *Latyn þe kyng.*
[7] *madeñ.*
[8] *sho satt.*
[9] þou.
[10] *þe.*
[11] *scho þat anoþer had.*
[12] *als wald.*
[13] *had lufed.*
[14] *grauntise had.*

challenges Eneas to fight for her.

He bed his body, his ouer myght,
Wyþ Eneas al-one to fyght.
. Sire Eneas was þer-of fayn,

Eneas kills Turnus,

Þey faught[1] togyder, Turnus was slayn,

weds Lavinia, s king,

Eneas wedded þe[2] mayden ȝynge;
Þen was scheo quen, & he[3] was kynge.
Þanne fond[4] he non þat hym noyed,
. Ne nought of his lond destruyed;
Siþen he wedded Lauyne his wyfe,

and reigns in peace.

He held þe lond wyþouten strife.
In pes foure ȝer he regned wel;

He builds a castle,

Wyþynne þe ȝeres he made a castel,

and calls it Lavioune.

& gaf hit name þorow euery[5] toun
After dame Lauyne, Lauyoun.
In þe ferþe ȝer, last of his lyf,

Lavinia conceives,

Of hym conceiued Lauyne his wyf;

but Eneas dies before the birth of her child,

& er þe child fel to be born,
Sire Eneas was ded byforn.[6]
When Lauynes[7] tyme was fulfyld,
Of hure was born (as grace hit wild,)

Silvius Pollynius.

A knaue child, men kald him Syluius;
Hys to-name was Pollynius.[8]

Ascanius

Askaneus, Eneas oþer sone
Þat com wyþ him, (as ȝe wel mone,)[9]

succeeds Eneas,

After his fader þe lond he tooke,
. His brother Syluius he dide hit[10] looke,
. Syluius[11] his half brother was,
. Gete of his ffader kynge Eneas.

builds a city, Alba,

Askaneus dide make a citee,
Þe name Albe þan[12] gaf hit he;

---

[1] *smyte.*
[2] þat.
[3] *he.* Lamb. MS. *scheo.*
[4] *Siþen fand.*
[5] *thorgh ilka.* [leaf 5, back, col. 2.]
[6] *ore was Eneas dede beforne.*
[7] *Lauine.*
[8] *Postomius,* Wace, p. 5, l. 80; *Enéam,* MS. du Roy, 7515[3.3.] Colb., *ib.*
[9] *I gan ȝow mone.*
[10] *to.*
[11] *Silui.*
[12] þan omitted.

Askaneus let dame Lauyne take[1]
[þe castell þat Eneas did make;]
& al þat lond þat fel þer-til,
Dame Lauyne held hit at hire wyl.
þe mawmet þat Eneas brought fro Troye,
In Lauyon he sette hem[2] wyþ ioy;
Sythen com Askaneus his sone,
Brought þem tyl[3] Albe þer he gan wone;
& þer-inne hadde þey neuere rest,
ffor o þe morn þe[y][4] were ageyn al prest
At þe castel of Lauyon,
& wold[5] nought dwelle in Albe toun:[6]
He ne wiste, ne was certeyn, [leaf 3, back, col. 2.]
On[7] what nanere þey come ageyn.
He regned foure & þrytty ȝer
In pes wyþouten wo & wer.

and removes Eneas's Trojan gods from Lavyon to Alba; but they won't stop there, and go back to Lavyon every morning.

Ascanius reigns thirty-four years,

Whan Askaneus made[8] his endynge,
Syluy his broþer regned kyng,
þat was born of dame Lauyne,
þe heritage he hadde in lyne.
¶ A sone þen had Askaneus
His brother, highte Sysillius.[9]
þys ylke childe Sysilly
Loued Lauynes nece, & lay hure by—
& sche sone wax wiþ childe—
Als yonge men do þat ben wylde.
¶ þe kynge dide his clerke[10] calle,
& bad hem loke þer bokes[11] alle,

and is succeeded by Silvius.

Ascanius's son, Sysillius,

lies by Lavinia's niece,

(as wild young men will,)

and Silvius asks what will come of the child.

---

[1] *dame take.* The next line is from P.
[2] *sett þam.*
[3] *to.*
[4] *þe morn þai.*
[5] *wilde.*
[6] *Albe his toun.*
[7] *In.*
[8] *did.*
[9] *his name was Sisillius.* [leaf 6.]
Qui estoit només Silvius :
Le nom à son oncle porta,
Mais poi vesqui, et poi dura.
Wace, p. 6, l. 112–114.
[10] *clerkes.*
[11] *bad þam cast lotes.*

Hic natus est Brutus.

'What schold of þat child bycome,[1]
. Good or wykke,[2] what man*er* dome.'
Þey seide, 'þey founde (als þeym was wo,)
"He'll kill his father and mother, leave the land, ffader & moder scholde he[3] sloo,
& out of londe go for þat chaunce,
And siþen come to god cheuysance;
Passe he scholde mani[4] a stour,
and come to great honour." & syþen come to[5] gret hon*ur*.'
Þey founde syþen, als þey seyde,
His mother dies in child-birth, her boy is named Brutus, þat of his burþe[6] his moder deide;
His moder deide al so swiþe;
Þe child lyuede; þey were al bliþe.
Brutus, þus his name þey teld,
and when he is fifteen Whan he was of fiftene ȝer[7] eld,
His ffader & he to wode þey went,
. To venerye he gaf his tent;
An herde of hertes sone þey met,
At a *tri*ste[8] to schete, Brut*us* was set;
he accidentally shoots his father, He auysed hym opon an hert,—
. Hys ffader passed bytwixt ou*er*thwert,—
& wyþ þat schote his ffader he slow;
Al vnwylland þat draught he drow.[9]
. Whan Brut*us* sey[10] hys ffader ded,
. He nyste what was best to red;[11]
and then for fear runs away to Greece, where he finds the folk of Troy in servage . ffor deȝl & drede awey he nam
Tyl Grece fro when his fader cam;[12]
Þe folk of Troye *þer* he fond,
Þat lyuede in *se*ruage y þe lond.[13]
Elenu*m*, Pryamyes[14] sone,

---

[1] *childe com.*
[2] *itt.*
[3] *he suld.*
[4] *mony.*
[5] *titt.*
[6] *whẽ he was born.*
[7] *was fiften ȝere.*
[8] *at triste.*
[9] *bot his willand not it drouh.*
[10] *sawe.*
[11] *best rede.*
[12] *vntitt þe londe of Grece he cam.*
[13] *in þat londe.*
[14] *Priami.*

. Wyþ sext þowsand þer gan[1] wone,
& ȝyt mo lordynges ynowe,
þat [þe][2] Gregeys to seruage drowe,
. þat Pyrrus held in his truage.
. Achilles sone was þenne of age.

to the Greeks under Pyrrus.

Brutus was þer bot a þrowe,
þat many his name gon wel[3] knowe.
ffor his grete[4] hardynesse,
ffor curtesye & for largesse,
Mykel louede hym his owen kynde,
& oþer til hym were ful mynde.
Grete gyftes þey gon hym[5] gyue,
& seyde, " ȝyf we myght frely lyue,
" Ouer vs alle we wolde[6] þe make
" Kynge,[7] ȝyf þou wost[8] vndertake.
" Oure folk ys waxen for þe maystri,
. " & stalworthe are, & right[9] hardy:
" ȝyf we had on þat we dredde,
" þat vs in-til[10] bataille ledde,
" & mayntened vs, & lered al so
. " What in bataille we scholden do,
" Syker scholde he haue[11] al oure seruage
" To ffredom brynge,[12] or a-suwage.
" Seuen[13] þousand now we are
" Of knyghtes[14] to bataille ȝare,
" Wyþoute seriauntz & oþer pytaille[15]
" þat ar nought for to sette in taille.
" ȝyf þou wilt vnder-take þys þynge,
" We wyl þe make our alder kyng,[16]

Brutus soon gains much love from the Trojans, who say that they'll make him their king [leaf 4.] if he'll lead them to battle, and win them freedom: they are 7000 strong in knights, besides footmen not worth counting.

[1] *gañ he.*
[2] *þe.*
[3] *his name manyon gañ.*
[4] *myketꝫ.*
[5] *gyftes forto.*
[6] *attꝫ wittꝫ.*
[7] *duc*, Wace, p. 10, l. 182.
[8] *wild.*
[9] *futꝫ.*
[10] *vnto.*
[11] *I trowe he suld.*
[12] *bringe.* Lamb MS. *kyng.*
[13] See " sext," l. 870, above. (*six*, Wace, p. 10, l. 177.)
[14] *knyghtes redy.*
[15] *sergeantes & oþer pedale.*
[16] *duc.* Wace, p. 10, l. 182.

. " & at þy biddynge we wyl bowe:
" Doute þe nought, we are ynowe;"

Meanwhile Assarakus is born,

. Als þey til hym spek often[1] *þus,*
A bacheler me*n* calde Assarakus
Was born ỳ þe lond of Grece;

half Greek,

Of *þa*t blod he hadde a spece,
ffor his ffader was Gregeys,

half Trojan,

Hys moder of Troye, þe stori seys;
. Hys ffader was a lordynge,
. þe most of þe lond saue þe kynge,
And gat hym opon bastardie

and a bastard.

. By on of Troye in rybaudie;
. & for he gat hym on his rage,

His father gives him three castles,

He gaf hym in he*ri*tage
þre casteles *þa*t weren gode,

which his brothers try to take from him.

. Tyl his cloþynge & his fode.
Hys brethren wold han[2] reft hit hym,
Bot he bar hym so stout & grym;[3]
ffor þe Trogens wiþ hym helde,

But the Trojans help him,

þe boldeloker[4] bar vp his schelde,
ffor he was on *þa*t wolde þem saue,
& at his castles recet to[5] haue.
Wyþ his conseil & hys soco*ur*

choose Brutus king, who

Made þey Brut*us* þeyr gouerno*ur*.[6]

Brut*us* sey[7] & vnderstod
Hys folk was alle strong & god,
. And hym self wel of myght
. þeym for to fende & to[8] fight.

victuals the castle, and gathers all the Trojans into it.

He dide enforce[9] þe casteles[10] wel;
Hys folk he warned ilk a del,

---

[1] *titt spak oft.*
[2] *his breþer wild haf.*
[3] *brym.* [leaf 6, back.]
[4] *boldelyer.*
[5] *castett rescet.* ? *retet*, Lamb. MS.
[6] The Petyt MS. adds—
& with his witt & his lokyng
*Was sir Brut*us *choseñ kyng.*
[7] *sawe.*
[8] þam *forto defende in.*
[9] *did force.*

& bad hem to þe casteles[1] drawe,
. þo þat were of Troyes lawe,—
Men & wymen & children[2] ylkone
. þat to hym hadde mad *þer* mone—
& þider scholde *þer* godes[3] lede,
. Vntil þo casteles[4] for doute & drede.
. Whan þey hadde *þer* godes lad,
. Byside þe casteles busked[5] & spred,
. & Brut*us* saugh his men wel dyght
. All redy vnto þe fyght,
Brut*us* dide write a bref, [leaf 4, col. 2.]
Vnto sir*e* Pandras, kyng & chef;
þys ys þe lettre[6] þat he sent,
þe latyn, y vnderstonde,[7] *þus* ment:

When Brutus sees that all is right, and his men ready for battle, he sends king Pandras a letter, saying,

∫ Epi*sto*la Bruti ad Regem Grecoru*m*.

" For þe schame & þe outrage
" þat ys don þe noble lynage
" Of kynge Dardan, our auncesso*ur*,
" At meschef ys in deshon*ur*,
" In cheytifte longe haue[8] þey leyn,
" Bot now þey hope to come ageyn;
" Wiþ[9] o wille alle haue þey spoken,
" In o conseil alle ar þey loken—
. " [10]& wyþ þeym alle y am leued—
. " Me to haue to *þer* heued;[10]
. " I sende to þe *þer* alder sawe,
" þat to þe wode þey wil hem drawe;
" *Þer* ys hem leue*re* lyue yn wo,
" In wyldernesse wyþ bestes go,

" The outraged descendants of Dardanus have long been slaves, but now mean to be free. They have chosen Brutus to be their king, and will rather live free with beasts in the wilderness,

[1] *castell.*
[2] *childere.*
[3] *þer godes þidere suld þei.*
[4] *vnto þe castell.*
[5] *castell bussed.*
[6] *brefe.*
[7] *þat latyn vndrestode.*
[8] *caytifte long haf.*
[9] *In.*
[10–10] *Me to haf vnto* þer *heued. & with* þam *all I am beleued.*

" ffor to haue þer wille fre,[1]
than in thraldom have plenty in Greece. " þan in þraldam haue plente;
" No maugre þou þeym cone
" þaw þey wolde[2] in fredom wone;
It is their nature to have freedom, and they'll fight for it. " Hit ys þer kynde fredom to haue;
" [3]ffor þat whylom was[3] lord, now ys he knaue.
" Merueille þe nought ȝyf[4] þey haue grace,
" ffraunchise & fredom to purchace,
" ffor ilk man wolde—ȝyf he[5] myght—
" In fredom lyue, als hit ys[6] ryght.
" þerfore þey pray þe wiþ gode wille—
" And y comaunde for drede of ylle—
Henceforward then, Pandras, set them free." " þat heþen forward þou graunte hem fre,
" & namore[7] in þy seruage be.
" Sire kyng, we aske[8] þe bot skyle;
" Graunt vs to go wher þat[9] we wyle."

King Pandras wonders at the demand, Whan þe kyng had herd[10] þys writ,
Hym merueillede out of wyt
þat þe Trogens were risen on heighte,
þat þey wolde ben fre oþer feyghte.[11]
summons his lords, and He dide swythe make somons
ffor alle his erles and barons,
& ffor his broþer sire Antygon,
tells them that the Trojans have rebelled. Sire Anacleton, & oþer on;
He telde hem þey of Troye were rysen,
& þoughte to make hem alle agrisen.
He raises an army, ¶ Whan Brutus wiste al þer bost,
þat þe kyng purueyed an host,
Byforn y þe kynges weye
but Brutus lies in ambush with 3,000 men, Brutus did hym enbusche[12] & leye
Wiþ þre þousand armed & mo,

[1] *ffor haf witt* þer *fre.*
[2] *þat þe witt.*
[3–3] *þat owe be.*
[4] *ne meruett þe if.*
[5] *ilk wild be at* þer.
[6] *to lif as.*
[7] *no more.*
[8] *Sire we ask.*
[9] *go where.*
[10] *kyng herde.*
[11] *þei wild be fre or þei wild feght.*
[12] *busse.*

Þer[1] kyng Pandras wende sauely go.
Bot Brut*us* ros of his enbuschement,[2] attacks Pandras,
& slow al þat he myghte hent;
Þe Gregeys schadden[3] sone asonder;
Þey were vnarmed, hit was no wonder;
Intil a water highte[4] Akalon, drives many Greeks into the water Akalon,
Þyder in flowe[5] many on,
And drenkled[6] þere a wel gret frape; [leaf 4, back.]
Þe oþere he closed, [t]hey[7] myghte nought skape;
Many were drenkled,[6] and mo were slayn, slays more, and Pandras flees.
Þe kynge þer fledde wiþ[8] gret payn.

De bello inter Brutum & Regem Grecorum.

Þe kynges broþer Antygonus, His brother Antigonus
He sey þe chaunce fel on þem þus;
His folk he relyed[9] hym to, collects his men, and
. ffor to assay eft what þey might do;[10]
. " Schamely," he sais, "ar we desconfit!
. " Lat hem nought passe fro vs so quit."
Whan þey were to-gyder y-comen,
Ageyn þe Trogens boldely þey nomen;[11] attacks the Trojans,
Þanne bigan a scharp bataille;
Egrely þe parties gonne assaille
Wiþ bowe & spere, &[12] swerdes dynt;
Bot atte þe laste[13] þe Gregeys tynt.
At þat metyng (among ylkon) who take many Greeks prisoners.
Taken was sire Antygon,

[1] Þe.
[2] *bussement.*
[3] *schad.*
[4] *hate.*
[5] Þei *fled.*
[6] *dronkend.*
[7] Þei.
[8] *kyng fled with futt.* [leaf 7.]
[9] *relied* þam.
[10] *& seid fraist ȝitt what we may do.*
[11] MS. *nonen.*
[12] *with lance with.*
[13] *so scharpe* Þei *com.*

. & an oþer,[1] sire Anacletoun.
& best of hem[2] were born doun:
Þyse two prisons,[3] Brutus þem led;
. Of þeym of Grece, fewe[4] þer fledde.

Pandras

Pandras þe kyng had sorw in sight[5]
þat he was so al desconfit,
& þat his brother taken was;
gets more help, and comes again to the ambush,
He com ageyn into þat pas,
& wende haue founde Brutus þore,—
Help he hadde, & purueyed more,—
but Brutus is safe in his castle,
Bot Brutus was til his castles[6] gon[7]
Wiþ Antygo & Anacleton;[8]
He warnysched hem wiþ men of armes,
. ffor he dredde deseite & harmes.
where Pandras hastes to besiege him,
. Whon þe kyng fond hym þer nought,
To bisege þe castel he þought;
. Vnto þe sege he hym hastede
. His purueaunce he wold were wastede;
Berfreys dide make to gyue assaut
. þat Brutus mought falle y þe[9] faut;
and assault him with mangonels.
To mangeneles[10] he dide make stones,
Brutus's men shoot with arbalists, cast trees,
Wiþ þer assaut to casten alle at ones.
Þey wyþynne stode in karneles,
Wyþ arblastes[11] schotten ageyn quarels,
& grete tres ful vnryde

---

[1] *& a lord.*
[2] *& þe most of* þam.
[3] *þe to preson.* Wace has *Cals (ceux) anmena Brutus a soi*, p. 16, l. 305.
[4] *fo.*
[5] *& site.*
[6] *to his castell.*
[7] *Si mist le siège à Parantin.*
Ce quida que Brutus i fust
Et ses prisons mis i éust;
Mais il fu el boscage entrés
Et ses prisons i a menées.
Wace, p. 16, l. 310–15. For *Parantin* the MS. de Ste-Genev. reads *Paladin*, which may be "*Pa-lantenus*, a little town of which Pausanias and Xenophon have spoken." Le Roux de Lincy, *ib.*
[8] *Anacletun & Antigone.*
[9] *with.*
[10] *magnels.*
[11] *alblastes.*
[12] *þe.*

Þey caste agein on ylk a side;
Enginours þey hadde wyþynne[1] ynowe,
[2]At þeym wyþouten ageyn to þrowe,[2]
Þat non dyrste comen[3] þe wal ney,
Bot for drede hel[d] þeym a drey[2];
Þey casten[4] wyldfyr wiþ[5] engynes.
Brent *þer* bretaxkes, ropes, & lynes,
Cables, cordes, tymber *þer* was.[6]
Who was þen wo bot[7] kyng Pandras?
Bot he[8] saw hit myghte nought vaille,
Þeyr assaut ne þeyr trauaylle;
He drow hym þeþen, & gaf hym[9] place, [lf. 4, bk. col. 2.]
& bygan faste to manace;
He dyde make for fens a dyk
Aboute þe castel a gret stryk,
& closed yn al Brutes host,
Þat non myght skape by no[10] cost.
Þe kyng dide ȝyt pale hit[11] efte;
Bot þre entres, non[12] was left.
Þe kyng dide so wel loke þo,
Þat non of hem myghte passe hem[13] fro
To do Brut*us* no suwaute,[14]
So wel was loked ylkan[15] entre.

and burn their besiegers' engines with wild fire,

till Pandras's attack is repulsed.

Pandras then digs a ditch all round Brutus's host,

so that no one can get out.

ſ De obsidione Bruti *per* Regem Grecor*um*.

Þe sege was hard to þeym wyþynne,
& þey wyþoute myghte nought wynne,
Ne nought ne schold, of ful fer[16] longe,

Brutus's men are hard pressed,

---

[1] *had* þei *with* þam.
[2–2] Þat þei *without agayn* þam *throwe.* [leaf 7, col. 2.]
[3] MS. *comem.*
[4] *kast.*
[5] ? MS. *wiy.*
[6] *Tot l'ont mis em poldre et en cendre.* Wace, p. 17, l. 335.
[7] *was wo bot* þe.
[8] *The kyng.*
[9] *þiem & gaf* þam.
[10] *ascape at.*
[11] *did it palace* ȝitt.
[12] *nouht.*
[13] *hym.*
[14] *suate.*
[15] *ilk.*
[16] *of futt.*

ȝyf hit ne were for honger stronge;
þe faute þey dredde comynge byforn,[1]
having little corn, and ask him what they shall do.
þe host was mykel, & lite[2] had corn;
þey asked Brutes of conseill,
What þey schold do for more vitail:
. "Conseile vs er hit be goon,
. " Hit ys to[3] late whan we haue non,
" Whan we haue nough[t][4] vs to fede,
" þe castel most we ȝelde[5] nede."
. þus þey seide, þe men were wyse,
He thinks of a plan,
& Brutus bypoughte hym of queintise:
Queyntise bihouede[6] hym nedly þenke,
þat his enemy schold waite[7] a blenk;
& mykel peril byhoues hym haue,
þat auntres hym his frend to saue.
Brutus had yn his prison
Antygon & Anacleton;
and tells his prisoner Anacletus that he may save his own life and the king's brother's,
Brutes tok hym by þe top,
& seide, "Hedles schal þou hop[8]!
. " Bot þou do als y þe seye,
" Of myn hand[e] schalt þou deye,[9]
" Boþe þe kynges broþer and þou;
" & boþe myght þou saue now."[10]
"Sire," he seide, "do ȝour wille!
" How[11] mygh[t] y vs saue fro ylle,
" Sey me, sire, on what manere;
" & ȝyf y may, y wol ȝow here."
if he'll go to the Grecian sentinels,
Brutus seyde, "þou schalt[12] go
" Alone to nyght, wyþouten mo,[13]

[1] *Defaut þei dred comand aforn.*
[2] *litett.*
[3] *futt.*
[4] *haf non.*
[5] *vs ȝelde.*
[6] *behoues.*
[7] *satt wate.* The next two lines are omitted in P.
[8] *hedeles satt þou hoppe.*
[9] *Mal cuivert, fait il, jà morras.* Wace, p. 19, l. 375.
[10] *may þou saue ȝow.* [leaf 7, back.]
[11] In the Lambeth MS. *Bot ȝyf y* are dotted under for omission, and *how* is written over.
[12] *salt.*
[13] *To-nyght at bedtyme without me.*

" To þeym þat loke þat on[1] entre,
" & sey til hem als y sey þe:
" Sey þou hast stolen þe kynges brother
" Out of prison, & non oþer;
" In to þe wode þou hast[2] hym led,
" Bot ferrer may[3] þou nought, for dred,
" ffor þo men þat þe wode loke,
" þat hym ne þe þey ouertoke;
" Bot ilkon, bid hem come wiþ þe,
." þat noman byhinde be;
" & we schul be busched[4] þer biside,
" & ȝyf y may, þey schol[5] abyde
" þat þey ne go nought vs to wrye,
" Ne [nought] desturble me my weye."
Anacletus graunted wel,
.ȝyf Brutus wold be tryst[6] as stel
þat his lyf he wolde[7] hym saue.
Brutus dide hym sykernesse haue.
.Anacletus, forþ he went,
.& dide als Brutus had hym sent.

tell them he has rescued the king's brother,

and ask them to fetch him from the wood, (while Brutus lies in ambush and seizes their post.)

Anacletus agrees to this.

At bed-tyme, when men were in[8] rest,
Brutus wiþ his folk was[9] prest,
& wel armed wente þer weye
þer he knew by o valeye.[10]
In þe wode.bisides þat entre
He busched hem in parties þre.
When al were busched, man & stede,
Anacletus bygan[11] hym spede,
& com to þem þat kepte þe pas,
.& seide, fro Brutus stolen he was.

Brutus puts his men in ambush in a valley in three divisions, and Anacletus goes to the Grecians who keep the pass,

---

[1] *þe ton.*
[2] *has.*
[3] *& farþere myght.*
[4] *satt be bussed.*
[5] *satt.*
[6] *were treste.*
[7] *wild.*
[8] *to.*
[9] *att.*
[10] þer *he had purueied in a valeie.*
[11] *he gan.*

Alle þey kende[1] hym þat *per* were,
& asked hym how he com þere;
Sire Antigon, þe kynges broþer,
þey askede ȝif[2] he lyuede als oþer.
He seide, "þe kynges brother & y
" Ar skaped out fol queyntely;
" In þe wode y haue hym hid
." ffor sight of men, ȝyf so bityd,
." ȝyf ony had *per*seyued vs
." & lad vs[3] a-geyn til Brut*us*;
" Bot alone dar he nought go,
" *per*fore come y after mo;
" þe gyues aboute his fet þey rynge,
" & alone dar y[4] hym nought brynge;
" Comes wyþ me, y schal ȝow lede
" *per* he ys, & has gret drede."
þey trowed hym, þat he soþ seyde,
& schet forthe al in a breyd,[5]
In to þe wode alle on a route,
þey þoughte[6] of no treson ne doute.
Anaclet*us* forþ þem led
Tyl Brut*us* folk, þer þey wer spred;
& Brut*us* *per*seyued al þer pryde,[7]
& bylapped hem on ylk a[8] side
So þat non ne myghte skape,
Bot al wor flayd[9] at o frape;
Com neu*er*e non of þo a-geyn
þat myghte þem warne, knyght ne swayn.

tells them he has hidden Antigonus in the wood,

and they must come there and fetch him.

The Grecians believe this, and rush off to the wood,

past Brutus's ambush.

Brutus surrounds them, and kills every man.

---

[1] *knew.*
[2] *where.*
[3] *& led.*
[4] *& I alon dar.*
[5] *att a braid.*
[6] *& thouth.*
[7] *tide.*
[8] *vmbilapped* þam oñ *ilk.*
[9] *were slone.*

De capcione Regis Grecorum per Anacletum.

Þen parted Brutus his host in þre,
& sette þem alle in certeynte,
How priuely þey schold[e][1] go
Wyþoute noise, wyþoute wo,
Neyþer byhynde ne byforn,
" Ne smite nought noman[2] born,
" Tyl y come þer þe kyng lys,
" & men wyþ me of god auys.
" & whan y am at his pauyloun,
" Þen schal y blowe[3] a gret soun,
" Myn horn þat ȝe wel knowe,
" A blast to ȝow y schal blowe.
" [4]Þen spares non, bot sles on fast
" (When þat y haue blowe þat blaste,)[4]
" Slepyng, wakyng,[5] þat ȝe may fynde,
" þat ys of þe Gregeys kynde."
When þat Brutus his horn blew,
Hys men hit herde þat hit wel[6] knew;
Þen spared þey non, bot slow al doun;
On & oþer, erl & baroun,
Þey slowe þem alle right at þer wille,
On slepe þey founden hem fol stille;
Hadde þey[7] no grace ne pouste
To armen þem, neyþer[8] to fle.
Byhinde, bifore, on þeym þei cam,
Vneþes any a-wey þer nam;
ȝyf ani a-scaped þorow a[9] chaunce,
ȝit bifel þem as foule a chaunce;[10]

1152 He then divides his host into three,

and orders all to go quietly through the enemy's camp

1156

till he reaches the king's

[leaf 5, col. 2.] pavilion;

1160 then he, Brutus, will blow a blast on his horn,

and his men

1164 are to kill every one of Greekish kind they can find.

1168 This is done;

1172

all the Greeks

1176 are slain,

---

[1] *sulde.*
[2] MS. *nomam.*
[3] *I satt blawe.*
[4–4] *& whan I haf blowen a blaste, Spares non bot slo att faste.*
[5] *Slepand wakand.*
[6] *& wele it.*
[7] *had.* [leaf 8.]
[8] *ne.*
[9] *thorgh.*
[10] *it fell þam a foule vengeance.*

or fall from rocks,
Of[1] grete roches þey fulle al doun,
. & al fur[2]-frusched bak & croun,
or are drowned;
Oþer þey were drowned[3] in watres depe,
. Vneþes myghte ony þem[4] kepe.

king Pandras is taken prisoner,
Brutes tok þe kyng Pandras
& al þat in his pauylon was.
Wyþoute ani kynes ylle
Vnto þe morn he held hem stille.
At morn y[5] þe sonne rysynge,
Brutus led Pandras þe kynge
and put in hold,
Vntil his[7] castel, his owen hold,
& dide hym kepe wiþ knyghtes bold.
and his treasure is distributed by Brutus.
Syþen tok Brutus al þe tresour
þat he hād wonnen[7] yn þat stour,
& gaf his knyghte largely,
. & als til oþer fol corteysly.[8]

Next day Brutus asks his commons
Þat oþer[9] day, conseil he tok
Amanges[10] þe commune, & bad hem lok
What were to done of kyng Pandras,
þat in his prison holden was,
whether Pandras is to be killed or set free.
Wheþer þey redden hym for to slo,[11]
Oþer quytly let hym go:
" Conseilles wel now alle of þys,
" þat non ne seye þat y do mys."
Some advise
Many on seyde þeir auys,
Of on & oþer þat weren wys:
that they shall settle in Pandras's land;
þys conseyl was ofte an honde,[12]
To take partie of þe londe,[13]
& euere haue hit in heritage
ffrely wyþouten seruage,

---

[1] *On.*
[2] *att to-.*
[3] *Or were dronkend.*
[4] *couth any þam.*
[5] *In þe mornynge at.*
[6] *Vnto þe.*
[7] *won.*
[8] *& oþer yerof had curtasy.*
[9] *þe toþer.*
[10] *thorgh.*
[11] MS. *flo.* P. has *red hym forto slo.*
[12] *oñ hand.*
[13] *a partie of þe land.*

& to haue acquitaunce
Of þe barons for alle chaunce.
Oþer seye,[1] þat þer ware,
" þem were bettere elle[2] whare;
" Aske we leue at þe kynge,
" & go we seke vs oþer wonynge
" Wyþ oure children[3] & oure wyues;
" ffor þo[4] þat hates, alday striues."
Þyse to skyles forþ þey kest,[5]
Whylk to take were þe best.
¶ A knyght vp styrte als þey spek þus—
His name was sire Membricius—
" Alle þe reson[6] ȝe haue forþ brought,
" þe beste of alle ne se ȝe[7] nought;
" Sertes, þys were our most profit:
" Wiþ loue & leue he queþe[8] vs quyt,
" & gyue vs shipes in to wende,
" & of his vitaille,[9] als he ys hende,
" & oþer þyng þat we haue nede,
" To chargen hem wiþ vs to lede,
" & til oure lord Brutus, our kynge,
" Ignogyn his doughter ȝynge.
" Lete vs þenne go do[10] our beste,
" & seke vs land opon[11] to rest;
" ffor ȝif we dwelle on þeym[12] here,
" We be þeym neuere lef[13] ne dere;
" What we dide ones, þey schold wel[14] þenk,
" & wait[15] vs wyþ a wykked blenk;
" Schal we neuere rightly haue pees,

others that they shall go elsewhere. [leaf 5, back.]

Membricius counsels them to go away, getting ships and food from Pandras, and his daughter Ignogyn for Brutus, as the Greeks will never like them, remembering

[1] *seid.*
[2] *elles.* [leaf 8, col. 2.]
[3] our *childere.*
[4] *þi.*
[5] *þis two skilles forth þei cast.*
[6] *resons.*
[7] *alle seie ȝe.*
[8] *quede.*
[9] *& of vitaile.*
[10] *þan.*
[11] *londoñ.*
[12] *with þam.*
[13] *leue.*
[14] *þat we did now þan salt þei.*
[15] *wate.*

" Bot wait[1] vs wyþ som wykked res.
" Gret ferly ne were hit nought,
the woe the Trojans have wrought them, and the men they have slain: " ffor mykel wo we haue þem wrought, 1240
" ffor we han slayn of þer kynde
" þat we myghte eyþer take[2] or fynde;
" þerfore syker mot ȝe be,
" Be sure the Greeks will revenge this : " Whan þey se tyme, or haue pouste, 1244
" þys bale wil þey eft vs brewe,
" Oure olde skaþes[3] þey wille make newe;
" & þus men seys, & ofte ys founde,
from old sores come grievous wounds. " Of old sor comeþ greuous wounde. 1248
" Non of vs alle—wel y wene—
" þat we naue don hem treye & tene;
" þer frendes þorow vs han þey lorn,
" Or þer godes a-wey han born, 1252
" & þo þat lyuen,[4] þat now ar left,
" Vengaunce on vs þey wyl seke eft;
They must increase, we decrease; and if they get a chance, they'll kill every Trojan." " ffor þey wil[5] waxe & we schal[5] wanye;
" When we ben fewe,[6] þey schol[5] be manye;
" ȝyf we ought falle, & þey ought ryse, 1257
" þey schul[5] til vs do[7] swylk iustise
" þat alle our Troiens ilkon schold[5] deye.
" þerfore y rede ȝow, chese þe w[e]ye,[8] 1260
" ȝyf þat oure kyng þerto wyl rede;
" & elles gos our kynde[9] to dede."
All agree to follow Membricius's advice. þen cried þey alle, & speke at ones,
"[10] Sire Membryce says wel ffor þe nones! 1264
" At þys conseill consente we alle;
"[11] No bettere for ne mai byfalle.[10]"
They fetch Pandras, Þe kyng þey broughte forþ anon, [leaf 5, back, col. 2.]
And his broþer sire Antygon, 1268

---

[1] *wate.*
[2] *myght ouertake.*
[3] *mysdedis.*
[4] *lyf.*
[5] *salt.* [leaf 8, back.]
[6] *be fo.*
[7] *be.*
[8] *ȝe chese þe weie.*
[9] L. has *kyng*; P. *kynde.*
[10–10] *Bien dit, bien dit, ce dient tuit.* Wace, p. 28, l. 560.
[11] *Non better for vs may falt.*

& askede hym leue fo[r] to go — and ask him
Wiþouten any more wo;
þey asked hym what þey wold haue, — for all they want,
& ȝif he vouched on þem saue, 1272
& his doughter to be *þer* quen, — and for his daughter.
Als hit[1] was ordeyned he*m* bytwen.
þen sey þe kyng[2] *þer* myght was more — Pandras sees he
þan his was; þ*at* dred he sore. 1276
He gr*a*unted hem ylk a del — must give way:
To gon at *þer* wylle wel:[3]
" At ȝoure wille ȝe me[4] haue,
" & my doughter ȝe me[4] craue; 1280
" Y se y may non o*þer*[5] do,
" Myn enemy most y gyue hure[6] to;
" [7]My moste fo & my feloun — he promises
" Schal haue my doughter to warisoun. 1284 — his daughter,
" Bot of o þyng ys my ioye,[7]
" He ys þe doughtiest man of Troye,
" & comen of þe nobleste blod:
" þ*at* now gladeþ most my mod.[8] 1288
" I gr*a*unte ȝow schipes ȝour folk to lede, — ships, and food.
" & vitailles þ*at* ȝe haue nede,
" Wel more þan ys ȝoure deuise,
" ȝyf þ*at* þys[9] lond may hit suffise." 1292
¶ þen sente þe kyng[10] his messegers — Pandras sends
Vntil þe hauenes & costes sers,[11]
þ*at* alle þe schipes on wat*er* myght saille — for ships
Schuld ben brought tyl o ryuaille, 1296
þere þey schold chese þe beste, — for the Trojans to choose from,
þ*at* weren most o*þer* strengeste.[12]

---

[1] þ*at*.
[2] *þe kyng sawe.*
[3] *þare awen wille.*
[4] *may.*
[5] *no noþer.*
[6] *bos me gyf hir.*
[7–7] Omitted in P.
[8] *þat me gladdes most in mode.*
[9] *if at þe.*
[10] *The kyng sent.*
[11] *in costestes seres.*
[12] *or strangest.* [leaf 8, back, col. 2.]

When þey had chosen at þer pay,
and they soon provision them. þey charged þey[m] fro day to[1] day,
& of þe beste in ylk a[2] contre
þey ledde to schip[pe][3] gret plente.

Pandras gives his daughter in marriage to Brutus, Þe kyng dide his doughter brynge,
& gaf hure Brut*us* in weddynge,
And dide hym bett*er*e in[4] alle wyse
Þan Brut*us* asked, or any of hyse;

and presents gifts to the knights. ffor alle þat *per* were,[5] baroun & knyght,
þey geuen hym after *per* myght.[6]

∫ Recessus Troianor*um* de terra Grecor*um*.

The Trojans When þe Troianes were al dight
Wyþ seyl vpon þe mast vpright,[7]
. Wiþ anker & ore, & o*þer* ware,
. & were al redy for to fare,
. When þe wynd was wel þem lent,
set sail . þey toke *per* leue, & forþ þey went.
. When þey were redy to saille;
in 304 ships, þre hundred schipes *per* was in taille,[8]
& foure mo, þe story seys,
When þey dep*ar*ted fro þe Gregeys.
and after two days Two dayes þey sailled, & two nyght,
þat lond ne hauene reche þey ne myght;[9]
þe þrydde day in þe euen tyde, [leaf 5.]
arrive at Leogise, In Leogise þey gon to[10] ride.
a waste island, Leogyse, þat ys[11] an ilde;
þat tyme was hit wast & wylde;

---

[1] *charged* þam *day be.*
[2] *ilk.*
[3] *led to schippe.*
[4] *oñ.*
[5] *For ilkan.*
[6] *had gyft of hym after his ryght.*
[7] *vp oñ mast oñ hyght.*
[8] *Þei were be tale.*
[9] *Þei myght.*
[10] *gañ.*
[11] *Þañ es.*

Man ne woman, non þey fond, — uninhabited
ffor outlandes hadden[1] wasted *þat* lond,
& þe godes a-wey had born.
Bot bukke[2] & do, & hert wyþ horn, — 1328 except by deer,
In *þat* ilde þey founde ynowe
þat þey slowe, & to þe schip[3] drowe, — of which the Trojans kill
& stored þem wel of venyson — great store.
þat lasted hem a long seson. — 1332
Als þey wente þorough *þat* contre, — Then they come
þey come vntil[4] a wast cite,
& founde *þer*-inne a temple stande, — on a temple
. *þat* whilom þe folk mys-lyuande — 1336 where the mis-believing folk
. Worschiped *þer*-inne Maumetry,— — once worshipped
Dyane in lyknesse of o lefdy;[5]— — Diana in the
Wyþ man[6] lyknesse þe fend dide take, — likeness of a woman,
In *þat* liknesse þe folk dide make — 1340
. An ymage, & worschiped *þat* same. — and made an
Dyane was þe[7] ffendes name, — image of her
In *þys temple* stod yn a gage[8]
Swich an Erlyk man[9] ymage; — 1344
þe folk *þat* hadde *þer* recet,[10]
Leued on *þat* ylke[11] Maumet;
þat fend telde þem mykel *þynge* — which foretold
To holden hem yn mys-leuyn*ge*. — 1348 things to keep the people in
On fele mane*r*s scho scheweid he*m* syngne, — unbelief.
*Þer*fore whilom þey held hur*e* dygne.
. To Brut*us* þe*n*ne[12] was hit told, — This is told to
. How yn a te*m*ple *þat* was old — 1352 Brutus,
. ffond þey an ymage
. *þat* whilom hadde gret *ser*uage

---

[1] *had.*
[2] *buk.*
[3] *to schippe.*
[4] *þei vnto.*
[5] *a ladie.*
[6] *Womañ.* I keep *Wyþ man* in the text on account of the earthly "*man*" in l. 1344.
[7] *þat.* [leaf 9.]
[8] *stode a cage.*
[9] *suilk a maner like an.*
[10] MS. *retet.* (*Fr.* recet.)
[11] *oñ þat.*
[12] *þañ.*

. Of þe folk þat þer was wone,
& þe tokene ȝit wil we mone.

and he takes 12 of his peers

Brutes tok twelue of his peres,
Eldest, and of faire maneres,

and a priest, Sir Gerion,

& a prest of þer lawe,
Sire Gerion, als seiþ þe sawe.

goes in to the image

Brutes alone to þe ymage gan[1] loute,
& alle þe oþere lefte[2] wyþoute;
In his right hand, whan he com yn,

with a cup of hind's milk, and wine, and asks Diana

He broughte a coppe wyþ[3] milk & wyn
þat milked was of a whit hynde;
Bysoughte Diane wyþ hertly[4] mynde
Scheo wolde hym schewe som certein þynge

what good land he and his may live in in peace.

In word, oþer elles oþer[5] toknynge,
What good land he myghte wone ynne,
In pes, he, & al his kynne:
. Ouyde witnesseþ[6] hit, & seys
. þat hit is non oþer weys:

¶ Diua potens nemorum, terror siluestribus apris, Cui licet [?].[7]

He prays nine times,

Nyne tymes he made hys[8] preyere
Wyþ softe wordes &[9] symple chere,

kneels nine times,

. Wiþ nyne knelynges byfore þe auter, [leaf 6, col. 2.]
. Als scheo was a god[10] of power;

circles the altar and kisses it nine times, throws the milk in the fire,

Nyne syþe[11] he ȝede aboute,
& kiste þe auter, & gan hit loute.
þe milk þat he abouten bar,
In a fyr he caste hit þar;

---

[1] *Brutus gan þe ymage.*
[2] *he alone þei left.*
[3] *of.*
[4] *He souht Diane with herte-fulle.*
[5] *worde or oþer.*
[6] *witnes.*
[7] licet [?] amfractus.
[8] þis.
[9] *soft wordes in.*
[10] *was godes.* P. transposes this line and the line above it.
[11] *siþes.*

Afterward,—*þus* we fynde,— spreads the
He tok þe skyn of *þat*[1] hynde, hind's skin on
& spredde hit *þer* on þe grounde, the floor,
& slepte *þer*on a wel god stounde. 1384 sleeps on it,

∫ De Visione Bruty.

Brut*us* hym þoughte,[2] when he was leyd, and dreams
Diane com to hym & seyd: that Diana
" Ou*er* ffrance, toward þe west, tells him to go
" Is an Ilde, on of þe best; 1388 beyond France
" ffol lykynge[3] ys *þer* wonyng, to a pleasant
" & plentiuous of ylka þyng; isle,
" ffruit to bere, god ys *þat*[4] lond;
" þe Geauntz haue hit now in hond; 1392 then in the
" Albion ys now þe name, giants' hands,
" þorow þe schal hit haue o*þer* fame, even Albion,
" þer schal þou gynne a newe Troye, and there make
" Til al þy kynde[5] newe ioye, 1396 a new Troy,
" & þe kynde *þat* comes of þe,
" þorow al þe werld worschipd schul be; and beget a
" & *þat* Ilde þou hast of[6] herd, renowned race.
" Wiþ se on alle halue ys sperd."[7] 1400

Brut*us* ros, & vp hym set, Brutus
He þoughte on hys drem *þat* he met,
& þanked Dyane hure gode wille;
And ȝyf scheo myghte his drem fu[l]fulle,[8] 1404 vows to build
þat he myghte *þat* Ilde take, in the Isle
In hure name he scholde do make
A te*m*ple god, an[9] ymage hende, a temple and
& worschipe hit[10] til his lyues ende. 1408 image to Diana.

---

[1] *þe.*
[2] *Brutus thouht.* [leaf 9, col. 2.]
[3] *wele likand.*
[4] MS. þer.
[5] *to att þi kyne.*
[6] *þat þou has.*
[7] MS. *spred*; P. has *on ilk half is sperde.*
[8] *fulfille.*
[9] *&.*
[10] *hir.*

He tells his friends his dream.
He telde[1] his drem sire Gerion,
& til þise[2] oþer twelue ylkon.
They take to their ships,
So glad þey were, forth þey ȝode
Til þer schipes þat were on flode;
sail off,
þeir seilles drowe þey right on hey,[3]
Byfore þe wynd faste þey fley;[4]
. Vmwhile west, vmwhile est,[5]
and are driven
þer[6] schipes driuen in many tempest;
. What wyþ wele, what wiþ wo,
þe þrittyþe day,[7] lesse ne mo,
into the sea of Africa.
In-to þe se of Aufryke
They pass the lake of Salynes,
þey comen,[8] & passed a gret stryke,
A low[9] water of Salynes,
& oþer Loughes of Phylestynes,[10]
and Rusticiadan;
þe grete Lough of Rusticiadan,[11]
and between the hills of Dazaran are attacked by robbers, but fight their way through them.
Bitwyxte þe hilles of Dazaran,[12]
þey mette robbours of outlandes;
þorow þem[13] þey passed wyþ dint of handes,
ffor þey gon hem faste for to[14] assaille;
þe Trogens passede al þeir bataille,
And tok[15] þer vitaille ylk a del [leaf 6, back.]
þat þey were stored of[16] so wel.
þey passede þe water of Maluan,[17]
The Trojans land at Mauritania,
& aryuede y þe lond of Maurytan,
þer þey come vnto þe lond,
& tok þe vitaille þat þey fond.[18]

1412 1416 1420 1424 1428 1432

---

[1] *& tolde.*
[2] *to þe.*
[3] *reght hie.*
[4] *with þe wynd gan þei flie.*
[5] *est vmwhile west.*
[6] *ere.*
[7] *In thritty daies. en trois jors,* MS. du Roi, No. 27; *en trente jors,* MS. du Roi, 7515[3·3·] Colb., Wace, p. 34, note *b.*
[8] *com.*
[9] *A lough of.*
[10] *Et les Auteus as Philistins,* Wace. C'est un port d'Afrique, appelé *Autels des Philènes* (*Philenorum Aræ*). De Lincy from Michaud, p. 35.
[11] *Rusciodan,* Wace. *Rusicada* est une ancienne ville d'Afrique, située en Numidie, près du fleuve Thapsa. De Lincy, p. 35.
[12] *montaignes d'Azaré,* Wace. *Montes Azariæ*: De Lincy, p. 35.
[13] *þorgh.*
[14] *þam fast.*
[15] *had.*
[16] *of stored.*
[17] Now *Muluya*: De Lincy, p. 36.
[18] *londe . . fonde.*

ffro þat o se vntil þat oþer
þey robbede alle on & oþer;
þey charget al þat þey myght lede,
Set vp þer sayl, & forþ þey ȝede.

¶ Transfretauerunt versus Hyspanniam & ibi inuenerunt Coryneum.

Wyþ alle *þer* schipes & al þer pres
þey comen to þe Merkes[1] of Erkules;
. Ercules was so doughti[2] man,
. Out of Troye þider he cam
. By se: als he wan by londe,
A piler of bras *þer* þey fonde,
þat he dide sette for honour,
þat he was þider conquerrour.
Þer fond þey Nykeres[3] þat myry song,
Out of þe weye to turne hem[4] wrong,
. Or to[5] forgete *þer* schip to stere,
þorow *þer* song þat þey schold here.[6]
So ar þo Nykeres faste[7] aboute
To brynge schipmen *þer* hit ys[8] doute,
. To som swelw[9] to turne or steke,
Oþer a-geyn roches to breke;
þerfore hit ys a gret peril,
Schipmen for to liste[10] þer tyl.

1436 plunder,
and sail
1440 to the bounds of Hercules,
1444 where he had set up a pillar of brass in his own honour.
Here they find Sirens, who
1448 sing to turn them wrong,
and who try
1452 to lead shipmen to some whirlpool
or rock.
1456

---

[1] MS. *comem. com to markes.*
[2] *was douhty a.*
[3] *Nikers.*
Seraines sont monstre de mer,
Des ciés poent femes sambler;
Poisson sunt del nombril aval.
Wace, p. 37, l. 735.
P. inserts after *song,*—
þat *drecched* þam *ferly long.*
In þe *west see es* þer *wonynge;*
As women mery þei *synge*
& þo þat *listen to* þer *song/*
[4] þer *weie* þei *turne.*
[5] *þei.*
[6] *for* þer *songe* þat þei *here.*
[7] *nykeres fast.*
[8] *it es.*
[9] *suelhu* (swallow).
[10] *to listene.*

But the Trojans do not listen to them,

Þe Trogens knewe[1] þer song wel,
Þey lystned to þem neuere a del;
Þey had herd tellen þer byforen[2]
How schipes had ben wyþ hem forloren.[3] 1460

and sail on to Spain,

Wyþ peyne þey passede at þat tyde,[4]
Vpon Spayne þer fflete gan ryde,

where they find folk of Trojan race,

Þer[5] þey fond at o ryuage
Gret folk of þe Troiens[6] lynage, 1464
Þat on of þer auncessour[7]
ffled fro Troye out of þe stour,
Als þey dide ilk a man
Whan þey of Grece to Troye cam.[8] 1468

whose leader is Corineus,

Coryneus highte þeir ledere,
& meintened hym[9] in pes & were.
He was a man als a Geaunt,
Tyl hym þey drowe alle[10] to waraunt. 1472
Þys Coryneus, he hadde gret ioye
When þey[11] wyste þey were of Troye;
To Brutes men þey were[12] ful meke,
& asked ȝyf þey ȝede lond to seke, 1476
Þat þey myghte fynde til þeir[13] prow;

who offer to go with them,

Þey seyde, "We wole wenden[14] wiþ ȝow."

and do sail in their company

So Coryneus & his partie
Wente forth in Brutes compaignie.[15] 1480
¶ Whan þeyr fflote wyþ al þer wayne [lf. 6, bk., col. 2.]
Turnede fro þe lond of Spaigne,

---

[1] Þe *Troiens knew.*
[2] *tell beforn.*
[3] *scippes were for* þam *lorn.*
[4] l. 756–64 of Wace are not translated.
[5] MS. þat. þer, P.
[6] *of troie.*
[7] *Que Anthénor, un des barons,* Wace, l. 776, p. 38.
[8] *troie wañ.*
[9] *he mantend* þam.
[10] *as.*
[11] *he.* (L. *he* altered to þey.)
[12] *he was.*
[13] *mot fynd vnto* þer: and puts this line after the next.
[14] *will wend.*
[15] P. adds—
Brutus luffed wele Corineus
a frende of hym for sir brutus.

On þeyr right hand toward Peyto, towards Poitou.
þe wynd to þat half bar hem to[2];
þore þe se receiues Leyre, All reach the mouth of the Loire.
Alle þe fflote com wyþ gret eyre.—
. Leyre rennes þorow many contre,
. And euere[3] he metes wiþ þe se.—
. Boþe þer fflute gon þer dwelle[4]
. Seuen daye, fullyke[5] to telle. After seven days they land,
Out of þe schipes þey wente grete route,
& spredde þe contre alle aboute.
Goffar was kyng of Peyters;[6] and Goffar, king of Poitou, sends
He sente knyghtes & squiers
To waite[7] who made on hym pres,
& whether þey soughte werre oþer[8] pees:
Numbert he highte, þat bar message, Numbert to ask who they are.
ffor he knew diuerse langage.

Corineus was go for[9] to chace, Numbert finds Corineus, hunting,
. Venison to take of grace;
Wyþ hym were two hundred[10] men
To serche aboute in feld & fen.
Wyþ Numbert mette Coryneus, and asks him by whose leave he kills the king's deer,
& Numbert spak til hym right þus:
" By whas[11] leue & whas[11] warant
" Are ȝe here alle chasand?[12]
. " & by whas conseil are ȝe[13] here
. " ffor to destruye þe kynges dere?
" He[re] ne scholde ȝe make[14] chace against the king's express command.
" Bot þorow me or þe kyinges grace;
" & þe kyng forbed ilkon
" þat noman scholde take her non.

[1] *perto.*
[2] *bare þam so.*
[3] þer.
[4] þer *flotes boþe* þer *gan duelle.*
[5] *days fully.*
[6] *perters.*
[7] *witt.*
[8] *or.*
[9] *was gone.*
[10] trois cens. Wace, l. 812.
[11] *whos.* [leaf 10.]
[12] *chasant.*
[13] *& be whos rede ere.*
[14] *suld ȝe mak no.*

" How dar ȝe do sylk[1] a þyng
" Wyþouten leue of þe kyng?"
¶ Corineus spak al so hym[2] þought:
Corineus says he cares nothing for Goffar " Of ȝour kyng ne wite we nought;
" ffor hym ne wol[3] we leue to do,
" Ne for his bode come hym to;
or his messenger. " We knowe þe for no messeger,[4]
" Ne hym self, þey[5] he were her."
Numbert shoots at Corineus, who dodges, Numberté sone his bowe bent,
& schet[6]; bot Corineus bleynt.[7]
Corineus was wroþ, y trowe;
He sesede Numbertes bowe,
and kills Numbert. & brak his bowe on his heued:[8]
His felawes fledde, & lefte hym ded,[9]
And wenten to telle[10] kyng Goffar
How men a-wey his venison bar;
& ilkaday þey telde[11] hym how
þat Coryneus Numbert slow.

¶ Bellum inter Goffar & Troianos.

Goffar swears vengeance. Goffar swor he schold[12] hym venge:
Of mikel folk he made a renge
ffor to falle[13] on Brutes ost;
Brutus orders & Brutus aspied on[14] what cost,
& sente vntil his fflute on flod,
his non-fighters on board, þat raskayl[15] to þe schip al ȝoð,

---

[1] *suylk.*
[2] *as he.*
[3] *will.*
[4] *messengere.*
[5] *þof.*
[6] *schotte.*
[7] *glent.*
[8] *Parmi le chief tant l'embati*
Que la cervelle en espandi.
Wace, l. 833–4.
[9] *fled & dede hym leued.*
[10] *& ȝede & talde.*
[11] *Ilka dele þei tolde.*
[12] *suore he suld.*
[13] *com.*
[14] *spied be.*
[15] þat þare *rescaile.* (*ringaille*, Wace, l. 846.)

And *per* vitaille wyþ hem lede [leaf 7.]
Tyl þey wyste how þey schold[1] spede:
" Ne comes nought[2] out, y ȝow forbede,
" Tyl *þat* y come, for doute & drede." 1540
Hys men of armes *þat* wiþ hym war,[3] and with his men of arms attacks Goffar.
þey went a-geyn þe[4] kyng Goffar.
þer hostes sone to-gydere mette,
Wyþ spere & swerd[5] to-gedere sette; 1544
þe Peyteuynes wel on þeym sought,
þe Trogens stode, þey[6] failled nought,
þey stoden wel a gret p*ar*ty, Victory is
Non wyste ho schold haue þe[7] maystri. 1548 doubtful,

Coryne*us* for tene wax al wod[8] till Corineus
þat þe Peyteuyns so wel stod.
Out of þe renge he ȝede biside,
& ches hi*m* folk *þat* dirste abyde,[9] 1552 with some staying men
& t*ra*uersed þe Peyteuynes bataille. traverses the enemy's line,
þe*n*ne bygan þey mykel[10] to faille; and they give
þorow þe[11] host he made hem weye, way.
On ilk a side he dide þem deye. 1556
Corine*us* *per* his swerd he lees;[12] Corineus loses his sword, but
An ax he wan sone yn[13] *þat* pres, seizes an axe,
(As auentu*r*e fel, hit cam til[14] hande,)
Agaynes *þat* mought *per*[15] noma*n* stande, 1560
Neyþer[16] byhynde ne byforn;
þat he oue*r*-rought,[17] þe lif was lorn. and kills every one he hits.
þe Peyteuines stode & byhelde
How Coryne*us* faught in þe felde; 1564

---

[1] *he suld.*
[2] *com not.*
[3] *was.*
[4] *ageyn to.* [leaf 10, col. 2.]
[5] *with dynt of launce.*
[6] *&.*
[7] *who suld haf.*
[8] *wex*
[9] *durst wele bide.*
[10] *for.*
[11] *þorgh* þer.
[12] *suerde les.*
[13] *wañ in att.*
[14] *was it com to.*
[15] *ageyn* þat *mot.*
[16] *noi*þer.
[17] *ouertok.*

. þey saye[1] his grete hardinesse,
& his strokes þat were ay fresche ;[2]
All flee before him. . Byfore hym, euerylkon þey fleyghe,[3]
. ffor drede of his hand to deye.[4] 1468
. Whan he sey þat þey turned[5] bak,
He folewed fast,[6] & to þem spak:
He taunts them ; " ffalse folk ! why fle ȝe ?
" ffle ȝe alle for drede of[7] me ? 1572
"False folk, flee ye for me alone ? " I am al one, Coryneus,
" & for me one ȝe fle[8] þus !
Turn again and fight ! " Turn a-geyn ! what haue ȝe þought ?[9]
" ffende ȝour lond, & fles[10] nought ! 1576
." Turn a-gayn, & comes blyue,
" By two, by þre, by foure or fyue,
." & fend ȝour land as men hardy ;
I am alone." ." þer folewes non bot onelyk y !"[11] 1580
Swerd and ſſ Swerd,[12] a knyght of þe kynges host,
Herde his pride & his bost ;
200 knights turn on Corineus, Wiþ two hundred knyghtes & swayn
On Coryneus[13] turned ageyn; 1584
On alle halue abouten[14] hym þey ȝede,
. Bot he ne fled hem[15] for no drede ;
who splits Swerd in two with his axe. Wyþ þat ax he hym bywent,
Sire Swerd[16] a strok he lent, 1588
Wiþ þat strok his body clef,
. In-to þe erthe his ax dref.
þe oþer alle had no foysoun[17]
þan had[18] þe lomb ageyn þe lyoun. 1592

---

[1] *saw.*
[2] *strokes were euer fresse.*
[3] *fleih.*
[4] *ageyn hym nouht non ne deih.*
[5] *sawe þat þei gaf.*
[6] þam.
[7] *att only for.*
[8] *on ȝe fle att.*
[9] *souht.*
[10] *fle;* and omits the next two lines.
[11] ȝow folowes non bot only I.
[12] *Suard.*
[13] *Corrine.*
[14] *half about.*
[15] *he fled* þam *nouht.* [lf. 10, bk.]
[16] *sir Suhard.*
[17] *foson.* (*desfension*, Wace, l. 913.)
[18] þañ.

Þenne cam Brutes y[1] þat stounde, [leaf 7, col. 2.] Brutus kills
Many on he slow & leide[2] to grounde; many,
. Wiþ þe Trogens was no feyntise,
Bot Sword[3] was slayn, & alle hyse; 1596 and all the
. Vneþes ascaped þe kyng wiþ[4] chaunce, Poitevins are slain.
He ȝed to seke[5] hym help in ffraunce;— Goffar seeks
. Hit highte nought Fraunce, þe name was Galle, help in France.
. Galle hit was cald þat tyme of alle;[6]— 1600
þe twelue dosze-peres of pris The Douze-
departed þe lond in twelf partys; pairs
Ilkon of þes, Goffare þey hight, promise to
[7]'Wyþ þe Troiens for hym to fight, 1604 fight for him,
& do þem alle to fle þe lond,
Or do þem deye wiþ dint of hond.'[7]
Goffar þanked þem alle twelue,
& ilkon gadered an ost[8] hym selue. 1608 and each collects his host.

Brutus & hys men of Troye, Brutus and his
ffor þeyr wynnynge þey mad[9] gret ioye, Trojans
& desconfyted[10] þeyr enemys;
A castel þey dide make[11] of pris 1612 build a castle
In þe contre als þey nam;
On a fair hil þey rested þam,[12] on a hill,
A castel þey maden to haue rescet,[13]
Byfor hand was þer non set,[14] 1616
Toun ne castel þat non may wyten;[15]
Bot als yn olde story ys wryten,
þorow þat makyng þat þey dide same,
Tours hadde þey gyuen hit þe[16] name; 1620 and call it Tours.

---

[1] *Brutus com in.*
[2] *slouh & leid.*
[3] *Suhard.*
[4] *scaped þe kynge o.*
[5] *ȝede & souht.*
[6] *was it called* þat *tyme alt.*
[7] *A vengier de ses anemis*, Wace, l. 928.
[8] *gedred oste.*
[9] *wynnyng made.*
[10] *discomfite had.*
[11] *did mak.*
[12] *& cam.*
[13] *mad to haf rescette.* (Fr. *recet*, lieu de defense et de retraite. Lat. *receptus.*)
[14] *ore was* þer *non sette.*
[15] *no man witten.*
[16] *had gynnyng* þerof *&.*

Tours was cald,[1] þat wyde ys kyd,
þorow a knyght a ded[2] bytyd.
When þe castel was mad & set,[3]
Two days after it is provisioned, & þer godes þerto yfet,[4]
Bot two dayes[5] sithen[6] hit was dight,
Com Goffar wiþ alle his myghte,
Goffar comes to assault it On þe Troiens to gyue bataille,
& þer castel þey gonne[7] assaille,
Bot whan þe kyng saw þat hil,
Tyl[8] his men he seide his skyl:
and appeals to his men " Lo! þey haue y-mad[9] a Tour
" ffor to abesen our[10] honour.
" Sorewe in herte wil me slo
" Bot y be venget or þey go!
and lords " þerfore, lordes, y preye[11] ȝow alle,
to attack it at once. " Helpes now þat hit may falle.
" Arme vs swyþe al redy,
" Assaille we þem doughtyly!"
þey armed þeym alle, baron & knyght,[12]
They form in twelve battalions. In twelue[13] batailles redy to fyght;
To gyue assaut, al wer þey bone.[14]
The Trojans sally from the castle, þey of þe castel com on ful[15] sone,
& smyten[16] to-gyder al so smert
Wyþ ful egre wyl of hert.
þat bataille was nought a lyte,[17]
So felonly þey gon[18] to smyte;
At þassemble, in[19] þe fi[r]ste tyde
þe Troiens had þe bettere side;

---

[1] *Toures called.*
[2] *þat dede.*
[3] *made & sette.*
[4] *fette.*
[5] *Douse jors.* Wace, l. 947.
[6] *sen.*
[7] *gan.*
[8] *To.* [leaf 10, back, col. 2.]
[9] *haf mad.*
[10] *abate myn.*
[11] *lordes pray.*
[12] P. transposes this line and the next.
[13] *deus*, MS. du Roi, 27; *douse*, MS. du Roi, 7515[3-3], Colb. Wace, p. 47.
[14] *þei were alle boune.*
[15] *com out.*
[16] *þei smyte.*
[17] *þer was bataile of no lite.*
[18] *þai gan.*
[19] *In þer strokes at.*

ffor vnto twey[1] þousand or mo
þe Troiiens slowen[2] sone of þo.
. þo twelue batailles þe Troiens brak,
& dide þe ffrensche arere hem[3] bak. 1652
þe ffrankysch þenne cast[4] a cry, [leaf 7, back.]
þerfore men drowe to þeym ney,[5]
& stode ageyn, & smyten[6] sore,
& þeir folk wax[7] ay more, 1656
þey come ay fresche, & stoden wel,
& drof[8] þe Troiens to þer castel.
þen had þe ffrankysche[9] þe fairer ende,
þat ded hem wyþ force a-geyn[10] to wende;[11]
Alle a[12] day þey held hem fight 1661
Tyl hem failled dayes[13] lyght;
. þey wyþ-drowen, to[14] logges þey ȝede,
. þe nyght was come, þey moste[15] nede. 1664
þe Troiens þat had ben yn turpel,[16]
At midnight tok þey[17] conseil,
þat Coryneus out scholde[18] go
Wiþ his owen ost, & no[19] mo, 1668
& busche hym in[20] a wode byside:
" þe frankisch ost ȝe schul[21] here bide,
" & whan þer ost ys al[22] comen,
. " & ȝe haue[23] a-geyn þem nomen, 1672
. " þan[24] schol[25] þey se þat ȝe ar fo,
. " þey schol[25] nought drede on ȝow to go.

and kill 2,000 of the French,

who then call up more men,

and drive the Trojans back to their castle;

but they fight on till night-fall.

The Trojans resolve to put Corineus and his host in ambush,

so that their fewness may tempt the French to attack them.

---

[1] *in two.* L. has an old *w* and a modern *el* (*wel*) after *ffor*.
[2] *slouh.*
[3] *did þe frankes go.*
[4] *frankes þan kest.*
[5] *foreyn men drouh þam nehi.*
[6] MS. *snyten.*
[7] *wex.*
[8] *drofe.*
[9] *frankes.*
[10] MS. *ageym.*
[11] *with force agayn did þam wend.*
[12] *þat.* [13] *day.*
[14] *withdrouh titt.*
[15] *com nere þei most.*
[16] *tirpett.* [*trépel*, (trepidatio,) Wace, l. 981, p. 48.]
[17] þer.
[18] *suld.*
[19] *oþer.*
[20] *busse in.*
[21] *frankes ost ȝe satt.*
[22] *be alle.* [leaf 11.]
[23] *be.*
[24] MS. *þ'an.* *þen*, P.
[25] *satt.*

." & take non auisement,
Brutus will then take them in rear, and conquer them. ." ffor ȝe ar fewe,[1] þey schol[2] nought tent,
." & ȝe schal[2] abate ȝow hardely,
" ffor atte here[3] bak y come redy;
" þe maistrie schal[2] oures be,
." ffor coward elles hald þou[4] me."
Accordingly, Corineus at daybreak goes into ambush, Coryneus he dighte hem ȝerne,
& went out at þe day[e] sterne,[5]
& busched þem on a rowe
þat þe Frensche moughte þem[6] nought knowe.
and attacks the Poitevins when they come out. þe Peyteuyns comen atte morwen[7] tyde,
þe Troiens a-geyn þem gon ride
Turynus a knyght, Brutus[8] cosyn,
Turnus rides right through the Poitevin host . He parted þe host of [þe] Peyteuyn,
.& rod þer host al þorow out,
. Might noman[9] bere his strokes stout;
. Merueyloslike[10] was he hardy,
foolhardily, . His hardinesse was foly;
In al þe host ne hadde he pere,
Of no strengthe þat men myght[11] here,
(Bot þe geaunt, sire Coryne,[12]
ȝit was he al so[13] strong as he:)
He triste to[14] mykel on his myght;
and too far, Ouer fer he ȝede on hem[15] to fight:
till he has slain 600 men. He had slayn, þe story seys,
. Six hundred Peyteuyns & Fraunceys;
Then he is surrounded Siþen com alle þe frankische route,
& closed hym yn al aboute.

---

[1] ȝe ere.
[2] satt.
[3] at þer.
[4] hold ȝe.
[5] al coc cantant. Wace, l. 995.
[6] frankisse kouth þam.
[7] com at þe morn.
[8] brutus is written above Coryneus dotted out. ("un niès Bruti," Wace, l. 1004.) brutus, P.
[9] mot non.
[10] Meruelly.
[11] mot.
[12] Corrine. (Fors Corinéus solement, Wace, l. 1010.)
[13] als.
[14] trost hym.
[15] þam.

De occisisione Turnij, & edificac*ione* castr*i* de Toures in Turon*ia*.

Er þan ouer cam[1] Coryneus,
Er[2] was he slayn, þis knyght Turn*us*. 1704 and slain.
. Right to ded[3] as he was kast,
Brut*us* hasted[4] hym ferly fast, Brutus carries
And tok þe body fro þeym alle [leaf 7, back, col. 2.] the corpse
. Er he of his hors gan falle, 1708
And bar hit vp vntil his to*ur*, to his tower,
þ*er* was he beryed wyþ[5] hon*ur*.
ffor loue of Turn*us*, þ*at* gode knyght,
Toures in Tureyne now hit hight;[6] 1712
& after Toures þ*at* ilke cite,
Tureyne hat[7] al þat contre.
Brut*us* retorned to þ*at*[8] fyght, and returns to
And Coryne*us* halp wiþ al[9] his myght; 1716 the fight.
þe ffran*k*ische host was al[10] by-twene, Corineus and
Bytwyxt þeym to[11] þey made al clene he make a
Of ffrankische & of Peyteuyns; clean sweep of the Franks and Poitevins,
. þey leye in dykes & in kynes, 1720
þey soughten how[12] þey mought hem hyde,
In batail*le* woltey[13] no lenger byde.

. Whan al was fled, & [þe][14] feld was playn,
Brut*us* t*ur*ned his folk[15] a-geyn; 1724 then return to
Ilkon to þ*er* castel went, the castle,
& þen þey helde[16] a p*ar*lement. hold a parliament there,

---

[1] *Or euer com.*
[2] *ore.*
[3] *dede.*
[4] *abatid.*
[5] *for.*
[6] *Tours hes now þe name right.*
[7] *Turoyne hate* [was called].
[8] *com ageyn to þe.*
[9] *halpe at.*
[10] þam.
[11] *tuo.*
[12] *To what stedes.*
[13] *to bataile wild þei.*
[14] *& þe.*
[15] *oste.*
[16] þer *þei held.*

þer parlement, þys was þe ende,
" Euerylkon to schip schold wende, 1728
" & drawe þer vitaille to þe se,
and resolve to leave the country. " & weyue al þat ilk[1] contre."
When þey had don as y ȝow seyè,
þey set vp seyl, & went[2] þer weye; 1732
They sail to þey seyled boþe day & nyght[3],
. þat neuere striken, bot ay vpright,
Til[4] þey aryved—as our book seys—
Dartmouth, In Dertemuithe at[5] Toteneys. 1736

¶ Hic primo Brutus intrauit Albion cum suo nauigio apud Toteneys.

Al holyke[6] com þer flote
in the isle that Diana promised Brutus, In Dertemuthe, at o[7] schote;
þat ys þe Ilde þat dame Dyane
Hyght[8] Brutus & his kynde alane. 1740
Out of þe schip þey com tyl land
Wiþ mykel ioye, y vnderstand,
When þey wyste þat þey were set
even Albion, To wone þer Diane had þem het, 1744
. In þat Ilde of Albyon,
& þenked þer godes euerilkon.
. þat ylke tyme was nought late,—
. fful longe hit ys,[9] as seyþ þe date,—
in 1200 B.C. . þat tyme þat[10] Brutes aryued her, 1748
. A þousand & two hunded ȝer,

---

[1] *att* þat.
[2] *furth.*
[3] *sailed day & oñ* þe.
[4] *to.*
[5] *Dertmuthe in.*
[6] *Att holy.*
[7] *a.*
[8] *hete.*
[9] *long tyme.*
[10] þe *tyme.*

.So mykel was hit byforn
.Er Iesu was of Marye born.
In þat tyme wer here non hauntes
Of no men bot of geauntes.
(Geaunt ys more þan man;
.So seys þe bok, for y ne can;
.Lyke men þey ar[1] in flesche & bon;
.In my tyme saw y neuere non.
.Of membres haue þey[2] liknes
.þe lymes alle þat in man ys.)
.Twenty geauntz were in þys lond;
Of on þe name wryten y fond,
Gogmagog, þus was told;
ffor he was strong, gret, & bold,
Gogmagog þus men hym calle;
þey seyden[3] he was most of alle.
þe Troiens, when þey þe geauntz sawe,
Wyþ þer bowes at þeym gon drawe,
& also wyþ dart & spere.
þe geauntz couþe hem nought[4] were;
Vp to þe hilles fro þem þey wend,
& left þe Troiens þe pleyn lond.

A day þe Troiens made þer feste
After þe manere of þer geste,
Wyþ caroles, trompes, & pypyng,[5]
ffor ioie of þer newe wonyng.[6]
.Whan þey[7] had karoled alder best,
.& ilkon schold han go[8] to rest,
So come þe geauntz[9] þat ylke nyght,
& on þe Troiens smyte doun ryght.

1752 1756 1760 1764 1768 1772 1776 1780

In Albion then were only giants (that is big men, as is said: I know nothing about 'em),

20 of them,

[leaf 8.]

of whom the biggest was Gomagog.

The Trojans shoot at the giants,

who retreat to the hills.

The Trojans hold a feast,

and at night the giants attack them,

---

[1] *ere.*
[2] *haf þe.*
[3] *It says.*
[4] *couth þam not.*
[5] *carols & with oþer glewe.*
[6] *wonyng newe.*
[7] *as þei.*
[8] *suld haf gon.*
[9] *vingt gaians,* Wace, p. 52, l. 1085. See the "*twenty,*" l. 1761 above.

that foul frog Gogmagog leading.

fformest was sire Gogmagog,
He was most, þat foule froge;

The giants fight with trees and stones.

þey faught wyþ trees þat þey vp drowe,—
Y can nought seye whilk þey slow,—
Oþer wepen had þey non,
Bot smyten wiþ tres or casten[1] ston.
When þey had fought, & went to fle,
In to þe hilles a-gayn to be,

The Trojans

þan[2] were þe Troiens þeym bifore,
& gaf þem woundes depe & sore,

kill most of them,

& slowe þem þe moste part
Wiþ spere & bowe, swerd &[3] dart.

and take Gogmagog,

Gogmagog, þe Troiens tok;[4]
þan saide Brutus 'þat þey schold lok[5]

to wrestle with Corineus.

'Whether he wer strenger, or Cornyus.'[6]
A place to pleye, ordeyned Brutus,—
Corineus was wel of þat graunt[7]—

The wrestling match is held close to the sea.

ffor to wrastle wyþ þat geaunt;
On a clyf faste[8] by þe se
þe wrastlyng was ordeyned[9] to be;
Alle þey ȝede, ȝonge & elde,
þat wrastlyng to byhelde.

∫ De ludo inter Coryneum & Gogmagogum.

Corineus comes first,

Coryneus first vp he stirt,[10]
& wyþ a cloþ his body gyrt;
Strait in þe flank dide hym lace,
& com & stod forth y[11] þe place.

---

[1] *kast with.*
[2] *are.*
[3] *with bowe with spere & with.*
[4] *toke.*
[5] *brutus sayd þat þei suld loke.*
[6] *Corineus.*
[7] *wele o grante.* [lf. 11, bk., col. 2.]
[8] *felde fast.*
[9] *set.*
[10] *first.*
[11] *He com & stode forth in.*

Þen[1] Gogmagog ros vp sone;		then Gogmagog.
He hadde hym dight, & was al bone.	1808	
Þe firste pul so harde[2] was set		They wrestle,
Þat þeyr brestes to-gyder met;		
Þeir handes ouer bakkes þey caste,[3]		
Syde to syde was set ful faste;	1812	
Þer was turn ageynes turn;[4]		try dodges,
Þat waykest was, byhoued spurn.[5]		
ffor-setten byfore, & eke byhynde,[6]		
Wyþ crokes ilkon oþer gan bynde;[7]	1816	and clutch limbs,
Oft aboute ilk oþer þrew,	[leaf 8, col. 2.]	
. Þe stem stod vp, so þey blew.[8]		till they steam.
. Þey handled boþe sore þer nekkes;		
. Chynnes, chekes, gef harde[9] chekkes;	1820	Chins, cheeks, and heads clash.
Þeyr teþ gnaisted wiþ nose[10] snore,		
Hurtlede hedes set ful sore;		
Ilk oþer pulled, ilk oþer schok,		They pull, shake,
Wiþ fet in fourche[11] ilk oþer tok.	1824	
Wyþ trip forsetten,[12] ilk oþer to gyle,		trip,
In lyft in wryþyng þey sayed vmwhile;[13]		writhe,
Ilkon fro erthe dide oþer ryse[14]		and lift.
Wyþ strengþe more þan wyþ queintise.	1828	
Gogmagog proued his strengþe,—		Gogmagog
. Twelue cubyte he was in lengþe,[15]—		
In armes Coryneus he laught,		crushes in
& on hym drow so strong a draught	1832	
þat þre rybbes[16] brosten[17] in his side,		three of Corineus's ribs.
& had ner cast him [at] þat tyde.		

[1] *&.*
[2] *pulle so hard.*
[3] ouer *bakkes handes þe cast.*
[4] *set to turne.*
[5] *scurn.*
[6] *Forset befor forset behynd.*
[7] oþer *bynd.*
[8] *stode whan þei blewe.*
[9] *chokes gaf harde.*
[10] *nese.*
[11] *fouche.*
[12] *forset.*
[13] MS. *vn while.* P. has *In liste & writhyng þei fraist vmwhile.*
[14] *Ilk oþer fro þe erthe did vp rise.*
[15] *Tuelf elbous he was o length.*
[16] *une coste,* MS. du Roi, 27, l. 1160; *trois des côtes,* MS. de Ste.-Genev. Y. fol. 10. Wace: *Le Roux de Lincy,* I. 56.
[17] *brak.*

Corineus

. Þen was Coryne*us* a-schamed[1]
Þat he was for þe geaunt[2] lamed;
He recoue*r*ed his strengþe for tene,
. Of skaþe wold he[3] hym no more mene;
Wyþ þ*at*[4] þe geaunt [anon] he hente,
& in his armes so hym wente
Þ*at* Gogmagog gan to swowene,
& bar hym[5] wyþ þe bank [a]doune;
Doun of þe roche he let hym falle—
þ*er*fore ffaleys men gon hit calle;[6]—
Er he cam[7] doun, was flesche & bon
Al to-ryuen fro ston to ston.
. A gret þrowe[8] þ*er* he lay ded,
Þe water of his blod was red.

squeezes Gogmagog till he swoons,

then drops him over the rock

still called Falaise, and his mangled body falls into the sea.

Brut*us* ordinauit & fecit manc*i*ones per loca.

Then the Trojans feel comfortable, build themselves houses, stake out land,

and till it.

When þe geauntz were o dawe,
Þe Troiens hadden na more[9] awe;
Tounes, houses, dide þey make,
& mesured lond, & dide hit stake
. Þ*at* ilkon dide his owen[10] knowe;
Þen tyled þey[11] lond, & dide hit sowe.
Þ*at* tyme þys lond hight Albyon;
When Brut*us* cam, þ*at* name was gon;
. ffor Albion was Brutes wayne,
þ*er*fore he dide hit calle Brutayne.
When he & hise fro[12] Troye nam,
Troiens were called til[13] þey þ*er* cam;

England was then called Albion;

but Brutus names it Britain,

---

[1] *oschamede.*
[2] *for geant lamede.*
[3] *he wild.*
[4] *All with Ire.* [leaf 12.]
[5] *& bare.*
[6] *Þe name ȝit faleise men calle.*
[7] *are he com.*
[8] *a grete* þer.
[9] *had more no.*
[10] *his owen ilk did.*
[11] Þei *tilled.*
[12] *his of.*
[13] *to.*

. After þe Troiens þys name was set,
. ffor name of Brutes first highte [1] Bret;
. Afterward hit *turned* eftsones,
ffor Brut*us* folk [2] was cald Brutones.
þat name held hit of Bretoun
. Long syþen [3] þe Incarnacion,
Til Gormound cam & he[re] [4] gan aryue,
þe Brutons awey he dide hem [5] dryue.
. Vneþe siþen any on [6] ros
. þat longe bar any los.
. þat of his [7] spoken mykel in dede;
. Ney atte [8] þe ende ȝe may hit rede.

and his folk, the Trojans,
1864 are called Britons.
The name Briton lasts till Gormund
1868 comes and drives the Britons away.
1872

Coryne*us* hadde [9] a god party [leaf 8, back.]
Of þe lond, for he was worþy.
. þer Corine*us* dide bataille,
. þat contre he tok þat highte Waille; [10]
. Of Corni & Waille, þat was [11] wynnyng,
Hadde Cornewaille þe name gynny[n]g;
. Cornewaille com of Coryne*us*,
. & Brutayne com of sire Brut*us*.
Ilkon to þeym [12] þer frendes drow,
. & bygged lond[e] for þeir prow:
ffro stede to stede gon [13] þey wende;
. þer best was, þer wolde [14] þey lende,
& [15] multeplyed, & wel þrof,[16]
. & woxen riche, kant & cof.[17]
In fewe ȝeres [18] al þe kynde
Of folk, þey woxen [19] mykel mynde.

Corineus
conquers Waille, and calls it Cornwaille after himself.
1876
1880
The Trojans, now Britons,
1884 settle on the best lands, breed, and wax rich.
1888

[1] *was.*
[2] *brutus his folk.*
[3] *sen.*
[4] *here.*
[5] *did he.*
[6] *neuer siþen vnneþis non.*
[7] *þeroſ is.*
[8] *nere at.*
[9] *sesed.*
[10] *toke to waile.*
[11] *corn & kataile þat is.*
[12] *Ilkon.* [leaf 12, col. 2.]
[13] *gañ.*
[14] *wild.*
[15] *þei.*
[16] *throfe.*
[17] *wex ryche cante & kofe.*
[18] *a fo ȝers.*
[19] *wex þei.*

¶ Constructio Noue Troie, qui iam dicitur Londonia.

Brutus byhel[d] þe mountaynes
& auised hym o[1] þe playnes,
biheld þe wodes, watres,[2] & ffen,
. Where esyest wony[n]g were[3] for men;
Als watres ronnen wel, he byheld,
& mede wiþ þe eryed feld,[4]
. What fruyt he hoped hit wolde bere.
His folk wax faste his[5] lond to were,
He þoughte in herte he wolde[6] do make
A newe biggyng for Troyes[7] sake;
A stede to seche[8] he ȝede to se,
Wher he best þoughte,[9] & most ayse.
A water he fond, & cald hit Tamyse,
. After his langage, þer on his wyse:
. " Y schal sette her,[10] oure kynde to ioye,
. " A cite for þe loue[11] of Troye;
" ffor Troye was so noble a cite,[12]
" Newe Troye þe name schal be."
. Newe Troye longe hit hight,
. Tyl som men come wiþ[13] langage lyght,—
. Schort speche hadde[14] þey in haunt,—
& cald Newe Troye, Trenouant.
Al ys on, ho[15] so hit knewe,
Trenouant & Troye newe;
Troye newe ys Trenouant,
Two wordes in on, & non ys[16] want.
þen cam[17] a kyng, Lud was his name,

Brutus examines all the country,

Where esyest wonyng were for men; 1892

What fruyt he hoped hit wolde bere.

His folk wax faste his lond to were, 1896

and resolves to build a new city for Troy's sake.

He þoughte in herte he wolde do make
A newe biggyng for Troyes sake;
A stede to seche he ȝede to se,
Wher he best þoughte, & most ayse. 1900

He finds a river, calls it Tamyse,

A water he fond, & cald hit Tamyse,
After his langage, þer on his wyse:

and declares that he will set there a new city for the love of Troy.

" Y schal sette her, oure kynde to ioye,
" A cite for þe loue of Troye; 1904

" New Troy" shall be its name.

" ffor Troye was so noble a cite,
" Newe Troye þe name schal be."

(And it kept this name long, till it was renamed Trenovant.

Newe Troye longe hit hight,
Tyl som men come wiþ langage lyght,— 1908
Schort speche hadde þey in haunt,—
& cald Newe Troye, Trenouant.
Al ys on, ho so hit knewe,
Trenouant & Troye newe; 1912
Troye newe ys Trenouant,
Two wordes in on, & non ys want.

Then king Lud called it

þen cam a kyng, Lud was his name,

---

[1] oñ.
[2] *water.*
[3] *was eyse wonnyng.*
[4] *& þe medew with ardawfelde.*
[5] *fast þe.*
[6] *þouht in his hert he wald.*
[7] *troie.*
[8] *he chese.*
[9] *him thouht best.*
[10] *.I. witt here.*
[11] *luf.*
[12] *noble cite.*
[13] *titt quant meñ com of.*
[14] *Schorte speche had.*
[15] *one who.*
[16] *one & nouht is.*
[17] *com.*

& made a gate in þat[1] same;
Kaer Lud þe name laught,[2] Kaer Lud;
. ffor loue of Lud þat hit aught;[3]
. ffor to haue of hym renoun,
. Kaer Lud þey calde[4] þe toun.
. When Saxons[5] com, þat name ne couthe,— and next the Saxons called it
. þer owen speche was best yn mouþe—
þey cald hit Ludden & London: Ludden and London.
þus þe name cam eft don,[6]
London, on Saxons[7] langage.
. Now Englysche holden þate[8] heritage, The English now hold the land.
Als men of oþer[9] nations
þat han be here syþ þe Bretons;
As þe[10] names of contres [leaf 8, back, col. 2.] For names of places change
Ben chaunged, & lawes & fees,[11]
ffro þe firste þat þey were named,
Als straunge folk han hider y-samed.[12] with the foreign folk that gather in them.)
¶ Whan Brutus had set his cite
& burgeys mad,[13] & gaf þeym fee,
In lawe wysly to welde,
& pes to haue in ȝonkþe[14] & elde,
He regned ffoure & twenty ȝer Brutus reigns 24 years over all Britain,
In al Bretaigne fer & ner.
. Al was Brutaigne, by elde tales,
. Engelond, Scotlond, & Walys,
. þyse þre were þenne[15] al on,
. þat erest was cald[16] Albyon; that was first called Albion.
. Albion highte þyse londes þre,
. ffor þey ar closed al wiþ þe se.

[1] þe.
[2] *lauht.*
[3] MS. *lauht.* þe toune auht.
[4] þei called.
[5] whan Sessons.
[6] son. [leaf 12, back.]
[7] Sesson.
[8] *Anglis hold* þat.
[9] *Als oþer of.*
[10] *Has ye.*
[11] *Bien changed lawes & fees.*
[12] *outen folk haf hidere samed.*
[13] *set.*
[14] ȝouth.
[15] þan.
[16] *are was called.*

¶ **Post decessum Bruty, regnauit Lokerynus filius eius.**

Brutus had wyþ Ignogyn
þre childre: þe eldest hight Lokeryn,
Brutus has three children,
1. Locrin,
2. Kamber,
3. Albanak,
þat oþer,[1] Kamber & Albanak;
þise lyuede byhynde Brutus bak, 1948
& buryed hym, his[2] sones þre.
who, after his death,
When he was ded in his cite,
þyse þre brethere in loue & pes
divide his lands.
Parted þe lond, & ilkon ches, 1952
. & held þem payed on[3] þer partys,
. Als þe þre royames lys.[4]
Locrin chooses Logres.
Lokeryn ches first, he was eldest;
þys lond of Logres hit fel hym best. 1956
Logeres hit ys after his name;[5]
ffor Lokeryn, Logers had hit þe name.[5]
Kamber chooses
Kamber til his part gan ȝerne
North west þe water of Seuerne, 1960
. In length, in brede, als hit [gan][6] lye,
Kambria
& for his name kald hit Kambrie:
Kambrie hit highte, by þo tales,
(now called Wales, either from queen Galeas
þat lond þat now ys cleped Wales[7]; 1964
& for þe quen dame Galaes,
ffor loue of hure, þat name þey ches.
or duke Galon).
Somme now seye[8] for oþer reson
Galeys was cald, for duk Galon: 1968
Whylom þys duk was of power,
& gret renoun hadde fer & ner.
Albanak chooses
Albanak was ȝongest of alle,
þe moste wodeland gan hym falle. 1972
Albanak kalde his partie
Albania
After his name, Albanie:

[1] *þe toþer.* [2] *þise.*
[3] *& were paied of.*
[4] *remes lis.*
[5] P. omits these two lines.
[6] *& brede as it gan.*
[7] *Att þe lond þat is now Wales.* Lamb. MS. has *Weles.*
[8] *Som say.*

Albanie highte þat now ys[1] Scotland, (now called
. As y schal ȝow telle how y[2] fand: 1976 Scotland,
. þe name of Scotlon,[3] þe firste rote nota.
. Hit was gyuen a mayden Scote;
. Scote was ffaraones[4] doughter þe kynge, from Scote, the daughter of king Pharoah).
. Tyl[5] Scotland was scho wedded ȝynge, 1980
. And was til[5] hire gyuen, & scheo hit aughte;
. Of hire þe name Scotland laughte.

ſ Numbert,[6] a kyng o Huneys, [leaf 9.] Humbert, a king of the Huns, and a robber,
A robbour he was al, hit[7] seys; 1984
He robbed þe ildes alle a-boute;
Of lyþer[8] men he hadde gret route.
. Of Albanye men til[5] hym spak, hears that Albanak is a child,
. þat was a childes[9] Albanak: 1988
Wiþ Albanak fayn wold he fyght, and attacks
& Albanak faste[10] ageyn hym dight;
Bot Albanak sone þer he slow; and slays him.
His folk fledde, & southeward drow, 1992 His folk tell
& pleyned þem to sire[11] Lokeryn Locrin, who
. How þey ascaped wiþ mykel pyn.
Lokeryn vntil Kamber sent; with Kamber,
þey gadered host, & þyder went. 1996 gathers a host,
A-gayn þeim com sire Numbert;[6]
. Of þeym boþe was he nought ferd.
. In an arme of þe se and in an arm of the sea attacks Humbert,
. Met þey to-gidere alle þre. 2000
. þe Bretons were wel mo þan he;
In-to þat water þey dide hem fle;[12] and drives him and his men into the water.
. þey ne ascaped[13] for no thyng
& so þer drenkled[14] Humbert þe kyng. 2004

---

[1] *þat is.*
[2] *As I salt telle ȝow who it.*
[3] *Scote.*
[4] *Pharaon.*
[5] *to.*
[6] *Humbert.*
[7] *was it.*
[8] *felon.*
[9] *bot a childe was.*
[10] *herd.*
[11] *plenyd vnto.*
[12] *þe breþer had more powere þen he!*
In þat water fast gan he fle.
[13] *He ascaped nouht.*
[14] *He dronkend* þer.

ffor Humbert gan þer mys-falle,
Locrin calls the water Humber. Sire Lokeryn dide þe water calle
Humber, after sire Humbert,
ffor he dreynte þerin in apert.[1] 2008
ffro Alemaigne sire Humbert cam,
þe ildes he robbed al so he nam.
Locrin takes out of Humbert's ship three maidens, of whom the daughter of the king of Germany, Sire Lokeryn tok þat he had reft,
þre faire maydenes in his schip[2] were left: 2012
þe kynges doughter of Germyne
Was þe fairest of alle[3] þre.
Sire Lokery[n] byheld faste[4] þat may,
. Scheo was þe fairest til[5] his pay; 2016
Tendrely he dide hure ȝeme,
Of alle scheo was most til his[6] queme;
Estrilde, is fairest in his sight. Estrilde þat maiden hight,
Was non so fair in Lokerynes[7] sight. 2020

Now Corineus had one daughter, Corineus, ȝit lyued he þo,
He hadde a doughter, &[8] no mo;
Gwendoline, He had spoken wiþ Lokeryn
To wedde his doughter Gwyndolyn;[9] 2024
and Locrin had agreed to marry her, Lokeryn & he were in couenaunt,[10]
. & þey boþe had mad þe graunt,
but for love for Estrilde, would have broken his troth. þat, for þe loue of fair Estrilde,
Lokeryn haf brokene hit, fayn he wylde.[11] 2028
So Corineus takes an axe, Corineus herde hit sone seye:
þer Lokeryn was, he tok þe weye;
An ax in his hand he tok,
looks sternly at Locrin, . On Lokeryn loþliche gan he lok, 2032
& angrily til[12] hym he spak,—
. Nought bot wrathe[13] his mouþ brak,—

---

[1] for *he dronkend* þer in *apert.*
[2] þe *maydens* in *his schyppe.*
[3] þase. [leaf 13.]
[4] ȝened *mykill.*
[5] *scho was fairest vnto.*
[6] *of alle women scho mot hym.*
[7] *non fairere in Lokerin.*
[8] *& childere.*
[9] *Guendoline.*
[10] *conaunt.*
[11] *broken it wilde.*
[12] *wrothfully to.*
[13] *ne bot wreth of.*

He seide, " Lokeryn, þou art a fol !
" þy selue dightest[1] þe to dol:
" þy ded of me þen schalt þou haue ;
" þer-fro noman schal þe saue.
" Why hast[2] þou my doughter forsaken
" þat in trouþe þow haddest[3] taken ?
" þat ys þe þank þat þou me cones !
" I hope[4] to wynne þat þou inne[5] wones.
" Y serued þy fader in many nede,
" & yuel ȝeldest[6] þou me my mede.
" I auntred me in many chaunce
" þy fader Brutus forto auaunce ;
" Many strok gaf in many stour
" To brynge þy fader til his honur ;
" & ȝit þy self auaunce y wylde.
" Bot for on þey calle Estrylde,
" fforsake[st][7] my doughter Gwyndolene,
." & dost[8] me despit & tene !
." Whil (þou wost)[9] y am on lyue,
." Schalt þou haue[10] non oþer wyue !
." þou bryngest[11] þe in foul fame,
." & dost[8] me gret onoy[12] & schame,
." & my doughter Gwendolyn ! "
& leyde hand on Lokeryn,
& wolde han venged þer[13] his tene,
Nadde lordes schoten hem[14] bytwene
& departed hem[15] o twynne,
And preied Cornyus forto blynne.

says
" Locrin,
you're a fool,
and I'll kill you
for forsaking
my girl,
Gwendoline.
This is your
thanks !
I helped to win
your land,
I risked my
life for your
father,
and was will-
ing to help
you too :
but for Estrilde
you forsake my
daughter,
and shame me !
You disgrace
her and me."
Corineus would
have killed
Locrin, had not
some lords
separated
them,

[1] *dightes.*
[2] *haf.*
[3] þou *had.*
[4] For *holpe ? halpe*, P.
[5] MS. *ime.*
[6] *ille ȝeldes.*
[7] *Forsakes.* [leaf 13, col. 2.]
[8] *dos.*
[9] *Tilt* þou *wote.*
[10] *Salt* þou *haf.*
[11] *bringe.*
[12] *me dispite.*
[13] *wild haf venged.*
[14] *& lordynges schet* þam.
[15] þam.

¶ Lokerin*us* desponsauit hic Gwendolenam.

and advised Locrin to give in.
So Locrin weds Gwendoline,
but he keeps Estrilde in a cellar in London for seven years,
and when he goes to her,
tells his wife that he's going
to sacrifice to his gods.

Locrin begets on Estrilde a fair girl, Sabren;
and on Gwendoline a son, Madan, whom Corineus brings up.

After Corineus's death, Locrin

Þey conseilled sire Lokeryn:
He ȝede & wedded Gwyndolyn.
Bot he forgat in none[1] manere
ffaire Estrilde þat was hym dere:
In Londone he dide hure kepe
Vnder erthe[2] in a seler depe;
Estrylde was longe þare,
Seuen ȝer & somwhat mare.
When Lokeryn schold til[3] hire go,
To dwelle wiþ hure a day or to,
Vntil his wyf þen tolde[4] he
" þat he schold[5] go in priuete,
" & stille make[6] his sacrifise
" Til his Godes þer[7] wyþ his seruise;
" ffor openly ne fel hit[8] nought
" To do þat seruise þat he had wrought."[9]
So longe he pleyed wiþ Estrilde
þat scheo hadde[10] a mayden childe:
Sabren hit highte, as whit as[11] glas,
& fairere þan þe moder was.
Gwyndolene a child[12] had þan,
A sone[13] þat highte Madan:
Coryneus hadde hit to loke;
When tyme was, set hit to boke.

Whan[14] þat Corineus was ded,
Dame Gwyndolene he misbed;[15]

---

[1] *on no.*
[2] *þe erth.*
[3] *suld vnto.*
[4] *tald.*
[5] *suld.*
[6] *stilly mak.*
[7] MS. þ^{t}. *vnto his godes*, P.
[8] *in.*
[9] *he wroht.*
[10] *scho had.*
[11] *white so.*
[12] *sone.*
[13] *childe.*
[14] MS. *What.* *Whan*, P.
[15] *misbede.*

. ffor hure fader dide him tene,
He drof awey dame Gwyndolene,
& tok Estrild[e] til his quene
. As dame Gwyndolene had bene.
Scheo sey no bettere myghte auaille,
Scho gadered an ost in Cornewaylle;
Tyl hure frendes scheo pleyned hyre; [leaf 9, back.]
Ageyn Lokeryn þey gon hem[1] atyre
Wyþ gret host out of mesure.
Vpon a water men calde Esture,
In Dorsete-schire, þey mette,
. & to bataille swyþe þey[2] sette.
þe kyng was slayn þer wiþ a schote,
þe host destruyed[3] ilk a crote;
þe quen had þer þe heyer hand,
Scheo dide seise al þe land,
Scheo did þen take faire Estrilde,
& Sabrin þat was hure child,
& dide þem yn a water cast;
ffor þeym þe name ys roted fast;[4]
Seuerne hit hight,[5] for þe child Sabren,
. ffor þat child þat name we ken:
. Þat tyme þat þis chaunce fel,
. Lyuede þe prophete SAMUEL.

drives away Gwendoline, and makes Estrilde queen.

Gwendoline gathers a host in Cornwall,

and gives Locrin battle in Dorsetshire.

He is shot.

Gwendoline wins,

and drowns Estrilde and Sabren

in the Severn.

Gwyndolene was þen stout,
Scheo dide þe folk vntil hire lout:
Ten ȝer wiþ Lokeryn had scheo ben,
& siþen fiftene wynter, quen.
When Madan couthe kepe his þyng,
In hure lyue was he mad kyng.
To Cornewaille sche turnede eft,
To kepe þat hure fader left.
Madan gat vpon his wyf

Gwendoline reigns 15 years, then gives up her realm to Madan, and retires to Cornwall.

Madan begets

[1] *gañ* þam. [leaf 13, back.]
[2] *batale smertly.*
[3] *discomfet.*
[4] *rotefast.*
[5] *hate.* Robert of Brunne leaves out the Fr. *à Cirecestre en mer descent*, Wace, I. 71, l. 1473, as it is wrong.

Two sones þat ay lyued[1] in strif;
Malyn and Malyn highte þe eldest broþer,
Membrice, Membrice men calde þat oþer.
reigns 40 years, Madan regned fourty ȝer,
and dies. & left his sones þat lond in wer.[2]
Þyse brethere were euere wrothe,
ffor þe lond þey striuen boþe.
Membrice Membrice for trewes to Malyn sent,
In pes to holde a Parlement;
kills his brother Bot Membrice to treson drow,
Malyn, and His broþer Malyn priuely he slow;
Þorow slaughter & þorow treson[3]
rules alone. Membrice hadde þe region.
Þys Membrice wax[4] vnkynde,
He destroys all his good men, ffordede god men þat he myght[5] fynde,
Reften oþer[6] land or lyf,
Or forsok[7] his wedded wyf,
turns Sodomite, & haunted synne[8] of Sodome:
. Vnkyndely to bestes he com.
and after 20 years' reign Twenty ȝer þen had[9] he space,
& als he went in[10] wode to chace,
is torn to pieces by wolves. Many[11] wolues alone he mette;
. Also þeues abouten hym þey set,[12]
Lym fro lym hym al to-rent;
& so Membrice to deþe[13] went.
Saul reigned then in Judea. Þen Saul regned in Iudea,
. And Eristeus in Lacudemonia.[14]
Ebrauk succeeds Membrice. Ebrauk his sone was of age, [leaf 9, back, col. 2.]
Had þis lond in heritage.

---

[1] þat *lyued.*
[2] *wehere.*
[3] *& treson.*
[4] *he wex.*
[5] *þe gude men, we.*
[6] *Reft* þam *ouþer.*
[7] *& forsoke.*
[8] *þe syn.*
[9] ȝere *had.*
[10] *to.*
[11] *With.*
[12] *As deueles* þai *about hym sette.*
[13] *dede.*
[14] *Dunc estoit Samüel prophètes,*
Et Homer ert prisez poëtes.
MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé. *Wace*, I. 73, note (*b*).

He was a ful noble knyght,
A gret nauye he dide hym[1] dight;
He was þe first man of þys lond
þat robbed by se oþer by sond.[2]
. Wiþ Cornewaleys he stod to chaunce,
þey & he robbed al ffraunce;
þey robbed tresor & vitaille;
Hom in to Bretaigne þen[3] gan þey saille.
When he hadde y-now tresour & fe,[4]
In þe North he made a cite;
Kaer Ebrak he calde þat toun;
Anoþer, Aclud, vpon Brutoun.
Kaer Ebrak first men spak,
Syþen men caldyt Eborak;
ffor frankysche speche ys nought so lyk,[5]
ffor Eborak þey caldit Euerwyk.
Aclud he calde Maidenes toun,
. Carlauerok es now þe renoun;
. Maydeneskastel by þat day,
. Wiþ maydenes had he þer his play.[6]
Sexti wynter he regned lyues,[7]
& twenty sones had by[8] twenti wyues,
& þrytty doughtres by þe same.
Of þyse children, lystneþ þer[9] name:

He is the first British sea-robber,

and he plunders France.

Then he builds Kaer Ebrac (York) and Aklud (Dumbarton)

now Caerlaverock.

Ebrauk reigns 60 years, and has 20 sons and 30 daughters.

---

[1] *he gert.*
[2] *bi see & sond.*
[3] *Home to Bretayn.*
[4] *had tresore & feez.*
[5] *not so like.*
[6] *Mais j'o n'en sai por quel raison*
Li castiax ot nom de Pucèles
Plus que de dames, ne d'ancèles
Ne me fu dit, ne jo nel di;
Ne jo n'ai mie tot oï,
Ne jo n'ai mie tot véu,
Ne demandé, ne retenu.
Mult estourait à home entendre
Qui de tot volroit raison rendre.
Wace, I. 75, 76, l. 1566–74.
[7] *in lyue.*
[8] *he had twenty soñs with.*
[9] *of* þe sons listeñ þe.

¶ Nomina filiorum & filiarum Regis Eboracy.

Here are the names of the 20 sons.

¶ Brutes Greneschеld, Margadu,
Cisillus, Regien, Bladu,
Moryod, Lagon, Ebolan,[1]
Kynbar,[2] Spadan, Gaul, Pardan,
Eldade, Chagus, Cherin,[3] Luwor,
Lud,[4] Assarak, Buwel, Ector.
Þise aren þe sones name ryght;

And here the names of the 30 daughters.

Now lystneþ[5] how þe maidones hight:
¶ þe firste highte Gloyglyn,
Otyda, Anrar, Nynogyn,[6]
Gardid, Rodan, Gwedian,
Angart, Gwenlode, Medlan,[7]
Mayleure, Echab,[8] Tangustel,
Stadirt, Lambrada,[9] Methael,[10]
Gaat, Etheyn, Neest, Egorgon,[11]
Gladus, Abren, Langon, Egron,[12]
Edra, Abalak, & Agnes,[13]
Anor, Stahad,[14] Angalaes.[15]

Galaes is the prettiest,

Galaes was þe gentilest[16] lady
þan any of al þe oþere[17] nyne & twenty;

Anor full of courtesy,

Anor, scheo was ful curteyse,
& well couþe demeyne richeyse;

---

[1] *Jagon et Bolloan*, Wace, I. 76, l. 1583.
[2] *Kinkar*, P. [leaf 14.] *Rinqar*, Wace, l. 1584.
[3] *Cangu, Revi*, ib. l. 1585.
[4] *Rut*, ib. l. 1586.
[5] *Listens.*
[6] P. transposes this line and the next.
[7] Leticlas, Orar, Vinogin,
Gaudis, Rodan, Guellian,
Angaint, Gelloe, Meldan.
Wace, I., 76, l. 1590–92.
[8] Ecub, *Wace*, l. 1593.
[9] *Kambreda*, P.
[10] Staclud, Rausbreda, Mécabel. *Wace*, l. 1594.
[11] et Gorgon, *Wace*, l. 1595.
[12] Blagon, Engron, *Wace*, l. 1596.
[13] Angues, *Wace*, l. 1597.
[14] Staliad, P.
[15] Stadial, Galves, *Wace*, l. 1598.
[16] *was jentilere.*
[17] *þan þe toþer.*

Gloyglyn, sche was eldest,
& scheo was of manerres best.[1]
Alle were þey dight, þyse madenes gent,
& in-to Lombardye war sent
To þe Kyng Syluy, Latynes[2] sone,
To brynge þem[3] to warisone.
Al were þey gyuen, als þey ȝode,
To þe Troiens men of gode.
þe twenty bretheren, als hit seys,
To purchasen hem þey[4] wente þer weys;
þey dide þem intil Alemaygne,
& alle þe lande was þer wayne.

and Gloglyn the best mannered.
All 30 are sent to Silvi, in Lombardy,
and married to rich Trojans.
[leaf 10.] Ebrauk's younger sons conquer Germany.

ſ Brutus Greneschеld Rex.

ſ Brutus Greneschеld, his[5] eldeste sone,
In þys lond he lefte to wone;
Twelue wynter he regnede here
Al in þes & gode manere.
ſ He hadde a sone þat hyghte Leyl,
He made a toun wiþ his conseil:
Caerlel hit hatte, as men hit seye.
Bot Leyl ageyn þat he schold deye,
Preyed faste in his elde,
ffor his lond he mought nought[6] welde.
Ilkon on oþer werre sought;
ffor doute of hym left þey ryght nought,
Ne he couþe be no[7] iustyser:
He regned fyue & twenty ȝer.

Brutus Greenshield rules Britain 12 years,
Rex leylus.
and is succeeded by his son Leyle, who builds Carlisle,
and who, in his old age,
fails to keep his people in order.
He reigns 25 years,

---

[1] *et plus sénée*, Wace, I. 77, l. 1608.
[2] *Latyn.*
[3] *at bring þam.*
[4] *purchace þam.*
[5] *þe.*
[6] *& his lond couth not.*
[7] *couth no bettir.* [leaf 14, col. 2.]

¶ Nomina prophetarum tempore isto.

in the days of Haggai, Amos,

and Zachariah.

. In his tyme was þe prophete Amos;
. And Hyen and Aggos,[1] 2224
. And þe prophete Sakarye,[2]
. In þat tyme preched prophecie.
. He lys[3] at Karlel, as þe stori spak,
. & Brutes[4] at ȝork biside Eborak 2228

¶ Rehudybras Rex fecit Wyntonium & Canterburium & Scheftoñ.[5]

Rehudibras reigns, sets all in order,

After Lleyl regned Rehudybras;[6]
To iustice þe folk, fol wys[7] he was;
He acorded al his barons
Pees to holde, &[8] made hem somons; 2232

builds Winchester, Canterbury and Chester castle,

He made Wyncestre & Canterbyre,
& þe castel of Chestebury;[9]
Awhileon[10] spak þanne, & prophesied,
Bot som men seide þat he lyed.[11] 2236
Rehudybras, in his power,
He regned nyne & fourty ȝer.[12]

¶ Aquila Septonie.

at which an eagle is said to have spoken.

¶ Bladutus Rex fecit Balneum.[13]

¶ After þe Kyng Rehudybras,
Bladut his sone corowned was. 2240

---

[1] *Hien & Aggeos.*

[2] From Geoff. Mon. Wace (I. 79, l. 1660–4) puts "Solemons, Amos, "Aggéus et Johel" in Rehudybras's reign, after l. 2238 here.

[3] *Leyl lygges.*

[4] *Brutus lygges.*

[5] *& Scheftoñ* in another hand.

[6] *Rudhudibras.*

[7] *folk noble.* [8] *he.*

[9] *Chestirschire.* (*Cestebire*, Wace.)

[10] *egle* inserted by a later hand.

[11] *One spak* þer & *prophecied Aquile: men sais he lied.* P. *Uns aigles*, MS. du Roi, 27. *un ange*, MS. de Ste.-Genev. Y. fol. 10. *Wace*, I. 79. note *a.*

[12] *Qarante ans, un mains, réna cil.* Wace, I. 79, l. 1657.

[13] In another hand.

Bladut dide many maystri,
He gaf hym al to nygromaunci;
Hote[1] bathe he dide make,
ffor mikel god to mannes sake;
. He dide leye þerin[2] springes,
. Tonnes of bras wiþ queynte[3] þynges
. þat make þe water euere hot;
. What ys þerynne, noman wel wot;
Bathe, for baþyng, þe name hight;
. Byside þe baþe a[4] temple he dight,—
þe temple name was Mynerue,—
þe folk to receyue & to serue;
A fire[5] he dide make þer-inne,
Euere to brenne & neuere to blynne.
Bladut wrought many meruaille,
. Many god þyng þat ȝit wyl vaylle;[6]
Atte laste he wolde fleye,
ffeþer-hames he made hym sleye;
At Londoñ he tok his flyght,
& fley as fer as he myght
Vpon a temple sire[7] Appolyn,
þeron he fel, & m[a]de his fyn;
. Sire Appolyn so doun hym cast,
. þat body & bon hit al to-barst:[8]
Twenty wynter was he kyng,
At Londoñ he mad his endyng.

2244 2248 2252 2256 2260 2264

Bladud takes to necromancy
makes hot baths
with springs of brass and quaint things,
at Bath;
then he builds a temple,
with ever-burning fire;
lastly he makes wings,
and flies from London,
to a temple of Apollo,
who casts him down, and breaks all his bones.

¶ Leyr Rex fecit Leycestre.

After hym þen regned Leyr,
þat was his sone & his eyr;
ffourty wynter þen regned he;

2268

Then Bladud's son, King Lear, reigns,

---

[1] þe *hate.*
[2] þer *it.*
[3] *bras quante.*
[4] MS. &. P. has *a.*
[5] ? MS. *After.* *A fire*, P.
[6] *many a gude* þat ȝit *auaile.*
[7] þe *temple of.* [leaf 14, back.]
[8] *to brast.*

and builds on the river Soar, Kaer Leyr, now Leicester.

Vpon Sore he made a cite,
Kaer Leyr he dide hit calle,
Leycestre þe name ys now wiþ alle.

He has three daughtres,

Þre doughtres hadde sire Leyr,
Mighte he haue non oþer eir,

Gonorille,

þe eldeste highte Gonorille,

Ragaw, and Gordille.

Þat oþer Ragaw,[1] þe þrydde Gordylle,[2]
Bot Gordille,[2] was ȝengest,
& hure louede þe fader best.

When Lear grows old, he

Leyr, when he was in elde,
His lond fol wel myght he nought welde;

resolves to divide his lands between his daughters,

He þoughte his doughtres gyue hosebandes,
& twyxten hem parten his landes;
Bot of hem first he þoughte[3] here
Which of hem had hym most dere;
He assaied[4] ilk by þeym self one,
þe eldest first of ylkone.

So he asks Gonorylle how much she'd love him if she were his ruler.

ſſ He com & spak to Gonorylle,
" Doughter, sey me new þy wylle,
" How mykel woldest þou me loue
" ȝyf þou were lady me aboue?"

Whan swylk a[5] word scheo herde neuene,
Scheo swor by þe Godhed of heuene,
Wheþer scheo were mayden or wyf,

" As my life!"

Scheo wolde loue[6] hym as hure lyf.
" Doughter," he seyde, " graunt mercy!
" Of me þou getes gret curtesy."

Then Lear asks Ragawe how much she loves him.

ſſ He com & spak vnto Ragawe:
" Doughter, sey me þe soþe sawe:
" How mykel louestou me wyþ wylle?"

"More than any thing else in this world!"

& Ragaw þoughte on[7] Gonorylle,
Scheo seide: " ffader, y loue þe more

---

[1] *Ragau* (but *Ragawe* l. 2297, &c. below.) Wace has *Ragau*.
[2] *Gordille.* (*Cordéille*, Wace.)
[3] *wald he.*
[4] *asked of.*
[5] *whan þat.*
[6] *scho wild luf.*
[7] *thouht of.*

" þan al þat in þys werld eu*er*e wore!"
" Doughte*r*, þat ys loue ynow;
" þat louyng schal be[1] for þy prow." 2304
ſ He com to Gordylle þat was ȝongest; Then Lear asks Gordylle, whom he loves best,
Of boþe þe oþ*er* he loued hure best.
Scheo wyste how þat hure systres seyde,
Of a gyle hit was a-breyde. 2308 how much she loves him,
" Doughter, how mikel louest[2] þou me?"
" ffader," scheo seyde, " y schal sey þe:
" Als my fader y haue þe loued, " As my father."
" And euere more schal to be p*r*oued."[3] 2312
" Ne louest þou[4] me namore, mi dere?" " No more?"
" ȝys, fader, þou lyst[5] & here: " Yes father,
" Ryght als þou has, so artow worþy, [leaf 10, back.] according to your worth."
" So mykel loue to þe owe y." 2316
þat word tok he yuel til[6] herte,
He vnderstod hit al ou*er*þwerte; Lear takes this on the cross,
Scheo seyd nought glosyng til[7] his wille,
Als Ragaw dide, & Gonorille; 2320
þ*er*fore he answerd þus a-geyn: says she
" Of me þe þynkes[8] gret desdeyn,
" & hast[9] myn elde in despit; scorns his age,
" Of myn for eu*er*e þou art quyt; 2324
" þou seist nought as þy sistren seis,
" þyn answere his nought[10] so c*ur*teys;
" þerfore y schal[11] myn heritage and that he'll divide his heritage
" Gyue þy sistres in mariage; 2328
" þey schol[11] depart hit þeym by-twene, between her sisters.
" & þou þer-fro [go] quit & clene:
" Of þem alle y loued þe mest,[12]
" & now y se þou loues me lest!" 2332

---

[1] *þi lufyng saꝫt falle.*
[2] *lufes.*
[3] *& euer saꝫt to be reproued.*
[4] *Loues þou.*
[5] *listen.*
[6] *itꝫ to.*
[7] *glosand to.*
[8] *þink.*
[9] *has.*
[10] *of þin ansuere.*
[11] *saꝫt.*
[12] *chirest þe maste.*

Gordylle leaves him,

Gordille wolde namore[1] seye,
Ne striue ageyn, bot ȝede hure weye;
Ne he ne saide namore til hire,
Bot wente fro hure al in[2] ire.

and he marries Gonorille to the Scotish King,

In þys tyme þat þey were wrothe,
He mariede þe oþere doughtres boþe;
þe kyng of Scotland þat on dide wedde;
Hennieis[3] of Cornewaille, Ragaw hom ledde;

and Regawe to the Duke of Cornwall.

þey acorded alle at her pay
To parte þe lond al by his day.

Gordylle has no provision made for her,

Dame Gordylle wiþ wraþthe sche went,
Of many men mikel was by-ment,[4]
þat sche hadde no warisoun
Neyþer of rente, lond,[5] ne toun;
& he forbed hire lord to take
In his lond, for warison sake;
þerfore he schamede hure[6] sore;

but sorrows for her father's wrath more than that.

& hure ouer-þoughte[7] mykel more
þe wraþthe of hure fader þe kyng
Wel more þan any oþer þyng.[8]

The French king, Aganyppus, hears of

ſ Aganyppus, þe kyng of ffraunce,
Herde speken of Gordylles[9] chaunce,—
Alle men leyde on hure[10] gret pris

Gordylle's beauty and wisdom,

þat sche was fair, curteys, & wys,—
. & þoughte ȝyf[11] he myght hure haue,
. Al his honur schold sche saue.[12]

and asks Lear for her.

He sente messegers to Leyr,
To wedde his doughter he was in speyr;
Bot Leyr had nought ȝit forgeten

---

[1] *no more wild.*
[2] *he went away full of.*
[3] *Hennis.*
[4] *was ment.*
[5] *rent of lond.* [leaf 15.]
[6] *þerfor aschamed hir so.*
[7] *hir forþouht.*
[8] *þañ þe tynsell* (loss) *of oþer thyng.*
[9] *Gordille.*
[10] *how men said of hir.*
[11] *he þouht if.*
[12] ? MS. *haue.* P. reads *suld scho saue.*

How lyghtly sche had of hym[1] leten:
Leyr sent hym ageyn to seye, — Lear says he can give no land with her,
" His land was gyuen to his[2] doughtres tweye;
" Hure body on hym he vouched saue; — but Aganyppus may have her body.
" Wiþ hure nought elles myghte he haue."
To Leyr he sente ȝut eft ageyn, — He accepts this,
& seyde Leyr[3] for certeyn
" þat he ne askede non oþer þyng,
" Bot onlike his doughter ȝyng."
Leyr þen graunted þem also sone;[4]
Wiþ hure to wende þey made hem bone; — and his men
To schip þey wente, & vp þe sayl, — sail off with
þey askede namore[5] apparayl.
Now ys hure falle þe fairest chaunce, [lf. 10, bk., col. 2.]
Gordylle ys mad her[6] quene of ffraunce. — Cordylle, who becomes Queen of France.

Þenne þe[7] men þat kyng Leyr — Lear is
Had ordeyned to ben his eyr,
þey nolde soffre hym nought to take, — dispossessed of his land,
Hys owen propre[8] for to make.
When[9] þe Duk of Cornewaille,
Al þe souþ tyl hym gan taylle;
Manglanus,[10] þe kyng of Scotlond,
þe north he tok hit til[11] his hond;
Leyr was al at þer baundoun,
& þey sette hym to lyuersoun;[12] — but allowed to have 40 knights.
þey sette hym honurable to be,
Wiþ fourty knyghtes[13] of meygne.
Leyr held hym payed of þat coueinaunt;[14]
To holde hym þat, þey swore þe graunt.
ſ Wyþ Menglanus was Leyr þe kyng — Lear is treated well at first,

[1] *of him had.*
[2] *he had gyfen his lond to.*
[3] *& teld hym.*
[4] *þam alsone.*
[5] *asked þei non.*
[6] *is mad.*
[7] *Lo þo.*
[8] *awen propir.*
[9] *Hewyn.*
[10] *Meglan.*
[11] *north toke to.*
[12] *liuerison.*
[13] *à cinquante chevaliers,* Wace.
[14] *was payed of þat conant.*

fful wel *ser*ued atte þe comyng;[1] 2392
but then his allowances — Sone afterward þey fillede of[2] Leyre,
& dide his liu*er*e for to apeire.
After þe peirement[3] of his liu*er*e,
and attendants are cut down. — Were abated of his meyne; 2396
Gonerille complains of — þe quene, his doughter Gonorill*e*,
Hur*e* þoughte most scorn & ille
Of þe meyne hur*e* fader held;
Gret outrage scheo hit held. 2400
Sche seyde vntil Manglan*us*,
" ffolyly[4] hold we þis meyne þus,
" þ*at* mykel þyng al day notes;
her father's dotage and his followers, — " & my fader in elde dotes 2404
" To halde[5] swylk a squierye,
" & gret costage in ryotrye.
" þ*er*fore y rede, doþ als y seye,
" Lat so*m*me of hem go[6] þ*er* weye." 2408
and sends away 10 of his knights. — þen was ordeyned to lesse þer men;
Of fourty knyghtes abated[7] ten.
þen was sire Leyres rente abated;
. He auaunsed first hur*e* þ*at* hym hated; 2412
. Scheo was first maried of all*e*,
. And first dide scheo his hon*ur* fall*e*.
. Alas! to fewe[8] childr*e* men fynde,
Nota. . þ*at* ben to fader & moder kynde! 2416

De ingratitudine filiar*um*, & planctu p*at*ris eor*um*, Leyr.

Lear dislikes this, — Now gynnes Leyr to myslyke;
" Sone," he seyde, " þey gynne me swyke
" ffro myn aboue[9] y am put lowe,
" & ȝit scha[l] more[10] wyþynne a þrowe. 2420

---

[1] *gynnyng.*
[2] *þei filled.*
[3] *After apeyrment.*
[4] *fouly* (? for *fonly*, foolishly).
[5] *hold.* [6] *som of þise go forth.*
[7] MS. *abyde* þe. *abatid*, P. (30 are left, see. l. 2428.)
[8] *Allas fo.*
[9] MS. *alone. aboue*, P.
[10] *ȝit more.*

" Myn oþer doughter wyl y proue, and resolves to try Regaw.
" Þey scheo be[1] wroþ to my byhoue;"
& dight hym wyþ his apparaille
To wende[2] in to Corne-waille. 2424 He goes to Cornwall,
He dwelt nought þer fullyk[3] a ȝer,
Þat þey ne made hym gret daunger,
& lessede his knyghtes &[4] oþer men: and there his knights are reduced to 20, and then to 15.
Of þritty þey abated ten, 2428
And ȝit of twenty abated fyue;
Þen wold Leyr han ben of lyue;[5]
" Alas!" he seyde, " y hider cam! [leaf 11.]
" ffro wycke vntil wors y nam." 2432
To Gonorille a-gayn he ȝede, So he goes back to Gonorille, thinking she'll give him 30 knights again,
He wend sche wold heue mended[6] his nede,
Haue gyuen hym als scheo hadde[7] byforn,
Sche swor by god þat hure leet[8] be born, 2436
Þat scheo ne wolde, day ne nyght, but she'll only allow him one.
Halde bot hym & a knyght.

∫ Lamentacio Regis Leyr.

Þenne bygan Leyr to sorewe, Lear laments his hard case,
& ment his mone euen & morwe; 2440
Þe grete richesse he hadde byforn,
Al was a-weye & y-lorn:
" To longe a lyue haue y be,[9]
" Þat euere scholdy þys day se! 2444
." Ensample of[10] me men may take,
." & warnyng of sibbe,[11] for my sake!

[1] *what scho is worth.*
[2] *& went him.*
[3] *had not bene* þer *fully.*
[4] *his.*
[5] De trente homes l'ont mis à dix,
Puis le misrent de dix à cinc.
Wace, p. 91, l. 1946-7.
[6] *wald amend.* [leaf 15, back.]
[7] *as he had.*
[8] *suore* þat *god lete hir.*
[9] *Now ouer long o lyue haf .I. bene.*
[10] *fforbisen bi.*
[11] *& warned be.*

" Y hadde richesse; now haue y non!
and reproaches Fortune for her changeableness, " My wyt & al myn help[1] ys gon! 2448
" Lady ffortune, þou art chaungable;
" O day art þou neuere stable;
" No man may of þe affye,
She turns down the high, turns up the low; " þou turnes hym doun þat er was heye; 2452
" þat now ys doun, vpward þou turnes;
" Wyþ þe, nys non þat he ne mournes;
and honour or dishonour follows her look. " Bot þere þou gyuest þy loue lokyng/,
" He ys worschiped als a kyng; 2456
" & whom þou turnest þy lokyng fro,
" Sone ys he doune yn sorewe & wo;
" þe vnkynde þou wilt vp reyse,
" þe kynde þou puttest to meseysey; 2460
" Wyþ kyng & erl, when þe myslikes,
" þer welþe a-wey to wo þou strykes.
" When y had god[2] & welþe ynow,
Lear's friends have gone with his riches; " þen fondy frende þat to me drow;[3] 2464
" Now pouerte ys put me byforn,
" þat al þer sight fro[4] me ys lorn;
" þer loue schold lange to me[5] þorow ryght,
" þat schewe me of loue[6] semblaunt ne syght.
his ill-fortune began when he blamed Gordylle for her truth, " Dame fortune, þy louely lok 2469
" & þy gode wille fro me þou tok,
" When y blamed my doughter ȝyng,
" & gaf no kepe til hure kennyng/, 2472
" þat seyde me soþ apertely:
" 'Als y had, so was y worthy,
" 'And also mykel scheo loued me:'
" Scheo seide bettere þan y couþ se; 2476
" Hure word noþyng y ne vndestod,
and was angry with her. " But mad me wroþ: y couþe no god,

---

[1] *& my happe.* P. omits the next fourteen lines, which are, however, in Wace (p. 92–3), and are taken more or less from Boethius, *de Consolatione.*

[2] *gold.*

[3] *my frendes vnto me fust drouh.*

[4] *of.*

[5] *suld longe to.*

[6] *þei mak of luf.*

" Y parceyued nought what was hure tent,
" Bot now fele y wel what scheo ment;
" Y fele hit we[l] þe soþe hit endes;
" Whyder may y now to seke my[1] frendes?
" ȝyf y seke hure for any frame,
" þey sche me weyue, scheo nys[2] to blame,
" ffor y defended hure my lond,
" Ne nought hure gaf, ne hure[3] ne fond:
" Naþeles, hure wol y seke, — Nevertheless he (Lear) will seek her,
. " Y fond hure euere god and meke; [leaf 11, col. 2.]
. " Wisdam sche has me ytaught,
. " Wysdam schal make hure wiþ me saught;
" ȝyf y may nought bryng hure þerto,
" Wors þan þe oþere may sche nought do;
" Scheo seyde[4] a þyng y scha[l] now proue,
- " 'Als hure ffader scheo wolde me loue;' — for she promised to love him as a father,
" & als scheo seyde, proue schal y
. " Hire kyndenesse & hure curtesy."

When Leyr had longe sore syked, — Lear
Hys mone ment, & myslyked;
He dighte hym, als of chaunce,
Right ouer þe se forþ into[5] ffraunce. — sails to France,
Vp at Calays[6] he hauene[7] hent, — lands at Calais,
To þe quene priuely he sent; — and sends to tell Gordylle
At a cite he abod,
Whyle a man his[8] message rod,
& telde þe quene al hys cas,
And how he vp aryued was;
How hys doughtres had wyþ hym wrought,
. Al his meschef, furgat [he][9] nought. — all his misfortunes.

[1] *may I to seke me.*
[2] *& scho me weyue scho nes.*
[3] *Ne nouht I gaf hir.* [lf.15,bk.,col.2.]
[4] *He said.*
[5] *& ouer þe se he ferde to.*
[6] *Chaus,* MS. du Roi, 27; *Kaleis,* MS. Cot. Vitel. A. x.; *Chain,* MS. de Ste. Gen. Y. fo. 10; Wace, p. 95.
[7] *At kaleis vp heuen he.*
[8] *tiłł a man þe.*
[9] *mischefe forgate he.*

∫ De gratitudine Gordylle.

Gordille — Gordille, when sche wyste þe pleynt,
. Hure faire colour gan wex al[1] feynt
sends all she has to her father, tells him to dress, come to her, — Al þat scheo had yn hure power,
Scheo bitaught hit þe messeger,
& bad hym go hym forte atyre
Wyþ honur, to come & speke wiþ hire;
and then warn the King of his coming. — " Bot byforn sendes[2] my lord þe kyng,
" & warne hym of his comyng."
þe messager spedde hym swyþe,
& broughte Leyr tydyng blyue;
Lear apparels himself fitly, — Vntyl anoþer cyte he ȝede,
& dight hym al þat hym was nede.
When he was dight at hys wylle,
and announces his arrival to the King of France, — To þe kyng he sent, & to Gordylle,
þat he was ryued y þat contre,
To speken þe kyng, & his doughter se.
who welcomes him, — . ∫ When he wyst þat Leyr schold come,
Agaynes hym ful faire þey nome,
& fair receyues hym aforn[3] þe quen
Als a man he hadde nought seen:
and orders honour to be paid to him. — He comaunded yn hys kynedam
To worschipe hym where þat he cam.
When he had dwelled longe space,
& telde how his doughtres dide him chace,
King Aganyppus also takes up Lear's cause, — Sire Aganyppus was curteys;
He samned an ost of his ffraunceys,
& comen wyþ Leyr ouer þe se
lands with an army in Britain, — To helpe to wynne a-gayn his fe.
Cordille wiþ hure fader went,
. Wyþ leue of hure lord his host had sent.
þe dukes sone byforn hem þey fond,
and makes Lear king again. — þey slowe þem boþe, & wonne þe lond.
þre ȝer after was he kyng,

[1] *gan att to.* [2] *biforhand send.* [3] *for.* [leaf 16.]

In ful seysyne made[1] hys endyng;
Dame Gordylle he made his heyr;
In Leycestre sche leyde hure fader Leyr,
In a temple solempnely;
Þe temple highte temple Iany.
Sone after fel þe chaunce[2] *þus*, [leaf 11, back.]
Deide hure lord Aganyppus.
In hure wydewehod sche had þe hon*ur*
. ffyue ȝer als conquerro*ur*.[3]
Hire two sistres had two sones;
. How þey dide, þe story mones:
. Gonorilles sone highte Mongan,[4]
. þat o*þer* Condage, a noble man.
When þys Morgan and þys Condage[5]
. Waxen were, & of age,
To Gordylle þey gaf bataille.
& scheo ageyn dyde hem tr*a*uaille.
ffirst were þey bo*þ*e ou*er*comen,
& at þe laste Gordille was[6] nomen,
And held hire longe in þer prison,
ffor hure[7] myght go no raunson.
When no raunson myght for hure[7] go,
Hure[7] self for sorewe dide sche slo.

In three years Lear dies, (making Gordylle his heir), and is buried in Leicester.

Then Aganyppus dies,

and Gordylle reigns 5 years,

till her two nephews,

Morgan and Condage,

take her, and keep her in prison

till she slays herself.

ſ Exe fr*at*res diuideru*n*t regnu*m*.

Wha[*n*] þat Condage & Morgan[8]
Of Gordylle þus þe land wan,
Condage tok (als hym þoughte best)
Ou*er* Humber þe Northwest.

Condage takes Northumbria;

[1] *plenere seisen.*
[2] þat *chance fett.*
[3] Not in MS. du Roi, 27; but four other French MSS. have "Puis a "cinq ans tenu l'onor." *Wace*, p. 98.
[4] *Gonorilł soñ hight Morgan.*
[5] Cinedagius, *Wace*, p. 98, l. 2108.
[6] þei.
[7] *hir.*
[8] *Margan* (like Wace and Geoffrey, and henceforth to line 2599.)

Morgan, the South.

Þenne Morgan þe South ches,
& [1] two ȝer þey helde þe lond yn pes;
Bot Couetyse *þat* neue*re* restes,
Venym amonges men hit kestes.

But soon Morgan is incited by evil fellows

Morgan hadde enuiouse felawes,
þat wyckedly seyde til hym sawes;
Þem were leue*re* werre þan pes.
He lystned hem, & *þat* he ches.
Þus þey seyde vntil Morgan,
" *þat* [2] þow art eldest, & baldest man,
" & hast [3] bot half, & ȝit þe leste;
" & he ys ȝongest, & haþ [4] þe meste,
" And *þat* ys al þyn owen gylt.
" Þou may haue hit al ȝyf *þat* þou wilt;

to seize his cousin's land.

" To ride, ȝyf *þat* þou wile bygynne,
" & al [5] þe lond[e] myght þou wynne;
" Þou getest [6] folk wyþoute noumbre
" To sese þe londe by-ȝonde Hu*m*bre.
" ȝyf þou bygynne forto ryde,
" Condage schal nought þe abyde."

Morgan dide atte her [7] conseille
& wroughte hym self to wro*þer* haylle;

He crosses the Humber, and burns and robs.

He passed Humber, destruyed þe lond,
Brente & robbed al *þat* he fond.

Condage calls out his host,

ſſ Condage herde hit sone seye;
He dighte his host to stoppe hys weye

and Morgan flees

Morgan herd telle *þat* Condage
Com wiþ gret host & outrage;
He *tur*ned bak, & gan to fle
South, fro contre to contre.

into Wales.

ffer yn to Walys fled Morgan;

Condage follows,

& Condage folewed, & hym ou*er*-ran.

[1] *bot.* [leaf 16, col. 2.]
[2] *þat* left out.
[3] *has.*
[4] *he ȝongere & has.*
[5] *att.*
[6] *getis.*
[7] *did after.*

¶ De morte Morgan *per* contumeliam.

And *þer* yn Walys Morgan slow. [leaf 11, back, col. 2.] slays Morgan,
Þorow hit haþ *þat* þe name now, **Nota.**
" Clow Morgan " [1] ys now þe name,
ffor Morgan deide in *þat* same. 2604

¶ Condageus Rex.

Þen had al, sire Condage, and rules
Þe lond holyk [2] in heritage ; Britain 30
Þrytty wynt*er* was he kyng, years,
In þes he made his endyng. 2608

¶ De p*roph*et*is* & Romulo.

Ysayas.

¶ In his tyme was Isaye, while Isaiah
& p*re*ched þe*n*ne þe p*ro*phecie ; and Hosea
. & þe p*ro*phete Osee, prophesy,
. Y *þat* tyme þan [3] lyuede he ; 2612
And þe Emp*erour* Romulus and Romulus
& his bro*þer* sire Remus, and Remus
Þyse two þrethere made Rome, build Rome.
. Þer holy chirche gyueþ þe [4] dome ; 2616
. Þre hundred ȝer & foure score So England had
. & seuentene, þus fer [5] byfore kings 397
. Regned kynges y þis landes years
. Ar Rome wer set *þer* hit now standes. 2620 before Rome
was built.

---

[1] Fr. *Marge ;* that is, Margate in Kent ! says de Lincy. *Wace.* i. 100.
[2] *holy.*
[3] *þat tyme.* [leaf 16, back.]
[4] *kirk gifes his.*
[5] *fett.* [Not in Geoffrey.]

∫ Ryual Rex.

Then Condage's son, Ryval, reigns;

After þe kynges tyme[1] Condage,
Ryual his sone tok[2] þe heritage.
þre dayes in his [tyme] reyned blod—

and in his time it rains blood,

Y ne wot why, ne vndestod,—
& wox so mykel mynde of flyes,

and there is a plague of flies.

Men deide by gates[3] & by styes:
Alle men hadde þerof gret drede
Tyl hit sesede & ouer ȝede.

∫ Gargustius Rex.

Then reign Gargustius.

After þe kynges tyme Ryual,
Gargustius[4] his sone had al;
After þis[5] Cargustius,

Cycyllius,

Regned his sone CYCYLLIUS; **Rex**
& after þe kyng Cycilly,
Was Lago kyng, his cosyn ney;[6] **Rex**
After Lago was Kynmar[7] kyng, **Rex**

Lago,

Cysillies sone, & had þe þynge.
After Kynmare regned þan

and Garbodian,

Hys sone, þat highte Garbodian.[8] **Rex**

whose two sons,

Garbodyan[8] had two sones,

Ferrex and Porrex,

fful enemys, þat ȝit men[9] mones;
þe eldest he hight sire fferreus,

are ever at strife

þat oþer men calde Porreus;
Might þer neuere pes be þeym bytwene
In non acord, bot euere tene.

---

[1] þis *kyng*.
[2] *held*.
[3] *bi strete*.
[4] *Gurgustius*, P. and Wace.
[5] þis, P. *his sone*, Lam.
[6] *kyng cosyn gurgusti*.
[7] *Rimar*, Wace, p. 102, l. 2184: *Kinmarcus*, Geoffrey.
[8] *Gorbodian* (*Gorbodiabo*, Wace.)
[9] *of*.

Þe while[1] *þer* fader was on lyue,
ffor þe royalme gon þey to stryue;
[2]Al *þus* þey ferde wiþ gret enuye,
Whilk scholde haue þe seignurie.[2] — for the mastery.
Porrex was ȝongest,[3] & most felon, — Porrex is treacherous;
His þought was ay vpon treson
Where-þorow he moughte[4] his bro*þer* slo.
Þat oþer herd *þat*, dide hym to go[5] [leaf 12.] — so Ferrex goes away to France,
fforþ in to ff*r*aunce, for doute of gyle.
Þe king Syward he serued a while,
& gadered þer god[6] party; — where he gets a party together,
Wiþ schipes com ou*er* baldely, — and invades
& til his bro*þer* gaf bataille,
And deyde sone, hit myght nought vaill*e*, — England,
Bot at þe firste was he slayn, — but he and all his are slain.
& al his folk, knyght & swayn.
Iudon, *þer*[7] moder, herde wel how — When Iudon, the mother of Ferrex, whom she loved, hears of his death,
þat þe ton *þat* oþe[r][8] slow;
Scheo louede mykel þe slayn bro*þer*,
& dedlyk[9] hated sche *þat* oþer;
. ffor als vnkyndely as þey wrought,
. þerfor*e* vnkyndenesse[10] sche þought.
A nyght hur*e* sone to bedde was gon, — she goes at night to her son Porrex's bed,
On hym com his moder Iudon;
Ilk of hur*e* maydones, a knyf she bar,
Porrex þrote a two sche schar, — and cuts his throat in two,
And on peces hym al to-hewe;[11] — and him all to pieces.
Swylk a vengaunce noman knewe:
Longe was spoken of þis[12] chaunce,

---

[1] *towhils.*

[2-2] not in P.

[3] *eldest* (wrongly; see line 2642.)

[4] þer *þorh he thouht.*

[5] En France oltre mer s'enfui. *Wace*, p. 103.

[6] *a.*

[7] *his.* (Luclon lor mere, *Wace*: Widen, *Geoffrey.*)

[8] *þe toþer.*

[9] *dedely.*

[10] *an vnkynes.*

[11] MS. *alto hewe.* P. better, *att to hewe.*

[12] *men spak of þat.*

Of Iudon[1] & of hure vengaunce.
No direct heir being left, ¶ When þyse breþer þus werre bygon,[2]
Eyr of blod was þer non
þat oughte haue[3] þe heritage,
Was þer non left of ryght lynage;
the land falls to five kings, who fight for forty years Bot to ffyue kynges þey lefte[4] þe lond,
. þat fourty wynter þe werre fond;
Ilk of þem þat most was of myght,[5]
Bynam þat oþer of his right;[6]
lawlessly. Mesure ne lawe, ne held no man,
Bot whoso myghte, of oþer wan;
þat rycchest were, most bar þem stout,
In loue ne in lawe[7] wold non of hem lout.

¶ Diuisio regni.

þat tyme in Scotlond regned Stater;
In Logers was þe kyng Pyncer;[8]
Rudak was kyng of Walsche men;
& Cornewaille had þe duk Cloten.
Cloten, duke of Cornwall, is the nearest in blood, Cloten of kynde was next of alle
To wham þe heritage sholde falle;
Bot for þe oþer were most of myght,
þey gaf nought of al his ryght.
and his son, þys duk Cloten hadde a child,
. A doughti bacheler & a wyld;
þat tyme was he man most worþy,
& ffayr waxen, & wel an hey;
Doughty Donwal, "Donwal doughti"[9] was his name,
Of curtesey had he þe fame,

[1] *Luclon*, Wace, p. 104.
[2] *were gon.*
[3] *myght haf.*
[4] *tiłł fyue kynges.*
[5] *mast myght.*
[6] *þe powere of his myght.*
[7] *In lawe ne luf.*
[8] *Piguer*, Wace, l. 2250, p. 105.
[9] *Donvalomolinus*, Wace; *Donewalmolus*, MS. du Roi, 7515[3-3], Colb. ib. *Dunwallo Molmutius*, Geoffrey.

Ouer þeym alle passed his power;
ffor first he slow þe kyng Pyncer, — slays the king of Logers,
& seysed þe lond til his byhoue.
Vpon Stater ȝit wolde he proue; — and then resolves to attack Stater, king of Scotland, and Rudak, king of Wales;
Wyþ force of armes he gan to ride,
Stater & Rudak he þought to byde.
Rudak & Stater herde so[1] seye,
þey swore to-gydere on hym to deye.

ſ Respice Donwalem Conquestorem. [leaf 12, col. 2.]

Ageyn Donwal þey broughte þer host, — but they, instead, invade him,
In to halues,[2] by diuerse cost;
Rudak of Walys had þat o[3] syde;
Toward þe northe Stater gan ride;
þey brente & slowe, nought wolde þey spare,
Of castel & toun þey made bare. — and ravage his land.
Donwal[4] herde his lond þey wasted,
He dighte his host, & to þem hasted; — Donwal marches to meet them,
He mette wiþ hem, and dide hem stande,—
þey were in feld þritty þousande;
Gret noise at her samny[n]g was,[5]
Wiþ trompe & taber, & horn of bras,[5]—
& grete strokes, & sore sette, — and a fierce fight follows,
Wer gyuen when þey to-gedere mette,
Helm þorow smyten, & many a scheld,[5]
Many a knyght was feld in feld,[5]
Of many hauberks was hewen þe maille.[5]
Longe þey stode, & gaf bataille;[5]
Non wyste ho scholde haue[6] þe maystri, — with doubtful result,
þe parties were boþe so doughti.
Donewal was werreour god, — til the artful Donwal
Hym ouerþoughte[7] þey so wel stod;

[1] *son.*
[2] *tuo parties.*
[3] *þe to.*
[4] Donvale, *Wace.*
[5] P. omits these lines.
[6] *wist who suld haf.*
[7] *forþouht.*

picks out 600 of his tried men,

Sex hundred of hyse he colede[1] out
Þat proued were, hardy & stout;
. He dide þer armes al doun leye
. Pryuely biside þe weye,

arms them like their enemies,

& armed þem on alle manere
Als here enemis armes were,
. þer scheldes toke, helm & gleyue,
. Þeyr enemyes forto deseyue.
. Þey diden alle at his auys,
. & toke þe armes of þere enemis[2]
. Þat leyen dede, wyþ here[3] queyntise,
. & dight hem on her enemys wyse.
Donewal saide, "comes alle wyþ me,
"& þider as y go, so schol[4] ȝe."

takes them into the enemies' lines,

Þey ȝede spiande her & þer
In what bataille þe kynges wer;
When þay wyste alle at ones,

as part of their host,

Trauersed þem for þe nones
Als þey had ben of[5] þeyr party,

gets close to the kings, and

& syde by side ryden hym by;[6]
. þe kynges to þem gaue no tent,
. Bot forþ in here bataille went.
"Haue at!" seyd Donwal, "now ys leyser!"[7]

suddenly slays both of them (Rudak and Stater).

& seysede Rudak & Stater,
& boþe at ones þeym lyghtly slow,
& of þat prés þem smartly drow,
& caste þer armes of, þe vnknowen,[8]

Then his men resume their own arms,

And armede hem eft wyþ here owen.
When þey hadde þer armes nomen,

join their own host,

And to þer host ageyn were comen,

---

[1] *weled he.* (*Cole,* cull, L. *colligere*; *wele,* Old Icel. *velga*; O. H. Germ. *wellen,* choose: Stratmann.)
[2] *of armes of his.*
[3] *& att* þer.
[4] *satt.*
[5] *oñ.* [leaf 17, col. 2.]
[6] þam *bie.*
[7] Puis s'escria: férés, férés [strike]. *Wace,* p. 107.
[8] *vnknawen . . . . awen.*

ffaste þey fullen opo þem[1] alle,
Þat sone *þer* force gan doun falle; and put the enemy to flight.
Þat o*þer* side stod nought[2] in stour,
ffor þey had lost[3] þer gou*ernour*; 2764
Þey fledde to wode & to mountaynes,
ffor slayn were þeyr cheuentaynes.
Whan Donewal hadde þe maist*rie*, [leaf 12, back.] Donwal then establishes a firm peace,
Hys pes he dide hit sette & crye, 2768
Þat so god pes was neue*re* or,
Ne *þer*after schal namor.[4]
A coroune of gold he dyde hym make, has a grand crown of gold made for him,
Swylk on neue*re* for kynges sake 2772
Was in Bretaigne wrought byforn,
Ne on kynges heued set ne born.
He stabled swylk pes & gryth, and ordains
& wyþ his sel co*n*fermed[5] wyþ, 2776
Þat ylka t*em*ple & ilk cite
Schold haue & holde[6] þys dignite,
Þat ȝif a man had don trespas, that if a culprit can escape to any temple or city
Robbed, or slayn, or o*þer* cas, 2780
ȝyf he tyl a t*em*ple cam
Er men hym wiþ handes nam,[7] before he is caught,
Or to a cite go þan his weye,
Non yuel scholde men til hym eft seye;[8] 2784 he shall go quit.
& also to hem þat[9] at plowes ȝede, Also, that any injury to an agriculturist
ȝyf any man dede hem yuel dede,[10]—
O*þer* til[11] market ȝyf on schold go,
ȝyf men dide hem any wo, 2788
Hit was teld[12] for felonye, shall be felony, and punished with death.
& worþy was[13] þer-fore to deye.

---

[1] *folowed oñ þam.*
[2] *stoute* (bad reading).
[3] *tynt.*
[4] *neuer more.*
[5] *confermed it.*
[6] *suld haf & hald.*
[7] MS. *nan.*
[8] *of itt suld no man to him say.*
[9] *to* þat (qui as carues, *Wace*).
[10] *did ille dede.*
[11] *or to.* [leaf 17, back.]
[12] *told.*
[13] *were.*

ffourty wynter was he kyng;
Donwal dies at London, after 40 years reign, At Londoñ he made his endyng; 2792
A temple *þer*e dide he make
ffor þe pes & concordes sake;
In *þat* temple mad for *þat* pes
Was he leyd, & þere he ches. 2796
Of hym were two noble sones,
. Als þe story of þem mones:
and his sons Belyn and Brenne succeed him. Belyn þe eldest, *þat* oþer Brenne;
. Donewal *þer* fader, God y bykenne. 2800

¶ Diuisio Regni int*er* Belyn*um* & Brenn*um*.

. Belyn and Brenne p*ar*ted þe lond
On þys man*er*e, als y hit fond:
Brenne holds all Northumbria, Brenne schold of Belyn holde
His lond, fro Humber northward he tolde; 2804
up to Caithness, of Belyn, Ilk del in-tyl Katenesse[1]
Held Bre*n*ne of Belyn, mor*e* ne lesse;
and is to do homage for it. Seruise schold he do þer fore,
He & hyse for eu*er*e more. 2808
Belyn has the rest of England, and Wales; Belyn held til his p*ar*tie,
Logers,[2] Wales, & Cornubye.
and for five years they live in peace. So þey helden hit[3] fyue ȝer
In pes & in faire maner; 2812
But strife and covetousness . Bot contek & couetyse
. Out of þe north wyl alwey[4] ryse,
Nota. . ffor þus men seide by elde[5] dawe,
rise alway in the North, . & ȝit hit ys a comun sawe: 2816
as the common saw is. . " Souþerne[6] der gos Northward,
. " & Norþ*er*ne[7] werre to þe south ys hard;

---

[1] *Belyn lete brenne of him holde*
fro humber north his lond he tolde
Ilk a dele vnto Cathenesse.
[2] Londres, *Wace.*
[3] *held it.*
[4] *with algate.*
[5] *be olde.*
[6] *sothron.*
[7] *northren.*

. " Bot norþern[1] der & souþern[2] werre,
. " Non dredeþ, oþer þey come nought nerre;
. " Bot norþerne [werre][3] þat ys þe doute,
. " & southern[4] der þe norþ dos loute."
In Brennes tyme, als ȝe may here, [leaf 12, bk., col. 2.] And in
Hit ferde in þys ilke manere; Brenne's time
Abouten Brenne were lozengeours, he has liars about him,
Bakbiteres & werreours:
On was þer þat ful euele spak one of whom tries to stir up
To whette Brenne to reyse contak;[5] strife,
þus he spak al wiþ tresoun:— and says,—
. Y gyue swyche[6] Crystes malisoun!— Christ curse him!—

ſ Respice verba detractorys.

" We haue merueille in oure þought— " We wonder
" Bot non to þe dar sey ryght nought—
" þat of so gret an heritage, that of so great a heritage as your father held, you have so little,
" þat long & brod ys in passage,
" þat þy fader hadde in his baillye,
" & hast þerof so litel partie!
" And ȝit, als litel as þow has,
" þou schalt[7] hym serue at alle cas! and have to serve your brother for it.
" Wiltow holde longe[8] þat wyse,
" To serue þy broþer in alle seruise?
" Artow þral or bastard, Are you a slave or a coward,
" Or more vyl or more coward,[9]
" þat þou schalt[7] do hym þer-fore homage, thus to do him homage?
" & art of þe same parage?
" þe ffader hym gat, he gat þe,
" & of o moder born ar[10] ȝe.

---

[1] *sothron.*
[2] *northren.*
[3] *northern were.*
[4] *souhren.*
[5] *One* þer *was* þat *wikly spake bituex* þe *breþer raised contake.*
[6] *gyf suylk.* [leaf 17, back, col. 2.]
[7] *salt.*
[8] *witt* þou *hald.*
[9] *cuhard.*
[10] *er.*

" Sythen ȝe boþe breþere are,
" & of o ffader & moder ware,
Why is Belyn to be your lord ?
" Wherfore has Belyn, & why,
" Of þe & þyne swych seygnury ?[1]
" Brest a two þat ilke[2] bond,
" Do hym no seruise for þy lond !
" ffor no lord holdeþ[3] þe, Belyn,
" Namore schaltow holde[4] hym for þyn.
" Trowe til vs & oure consayl !
" To þy worschipe hit wole auayl !
" To non of þy vasselage
" Ne seye we neuere do suche outrage !
Belyn once chose the best share : now, let the strongest win.
" þorow whas[5] queyntyse, & þorow whas[5] art,
" Ches Belyn hym þe beste part ?
" þer falles non oþer chesyng to ;
" Bot most schal haue, þat most[6] may do.
You are the braver, as we know, by your killing Duke Cenflo.
" More artow worth, & more hardy !
" þat haue we sen fol certeynly
" When þou slowe þe Duk Cenflo[7]
" þat al Morine langede[8] to,
" þat al Scotland wolde haue wasted ;
" þy doughtinesse to deþe hym hasted.
" I trowe of þys þou þoughte byforn,
" Bot priuely þou hast hit boren,
" þat we ne scholde mynge[9] for drede.
Seize all Belyn's lands.
" Now [we] rede, þow[10] do hit in dede,
" And forto[11] wynne hit ilkadel.
" Doute þe nought, þou may ful wel,
" ffor we ne schulle[12] þe neuere faille,
" þe while we lyue & mowe[13] trauaylle,

---

[1] *suylk sengnori.*
[2] *Brist it þat þou with þe.*
[3] *ffor lord ne holdes.*
[4] *no more satt þou hald.*
[5] *whos.*
[6] *Mast satt haf þat mast.*
[7] Césio . . . . Moriane, *Wace.*
[8] *longed.*
[9] *suld nempe it.* [leaf 19.]
[10] *we þe.*
[11] *fond to.*
[12] *satt.*
[13] *vntitt we lyf & may.*

" ȝyf þou ne trowest[1] þat we þe seye,
" Do þe ouer vntil Norweye, [leaf 13.]
" And þe kynges doughter þou take;
" Þy party may þou þe bettere make.
" Haue þou Norweye & Scotland,
" & vs alle vnto þyn hand;
" Agaynes no land schuldestow wende,[2]
" þat þou ne gete þe fairere ende;
" Ne Belyn durste þe nought[3] abide
" ȝyf þou ageyn hym woldest[4] ride.
" ȝyf þou haue y-þought[5] make þy bone,
" Go by tyme, & come right sone,
" Al by þe syde of Myrreyue,
" þat Belyn no þyng aparseyue.
" Perauenture he wolde hym greue
" ȝyf þou wyf toke wyþoute leue,
" Or oþer wyse men wold[6] hym seye
" þat þou haddest[7] of hym non eye."
On þis wyse conseilled þey hym so,
& Brenne tristed[8] þer conceille to:
He passed in Norweye, he gan aryue,[9]
& asked þe kynges doughter to wyue.
þe kynges name was Alfynges,
He graunted Brenne al his askynges,
Holyk[10] Bretaygne for to wynne,
When he wolde his werre bygynne.

If you think your army is not strong enough, marry the king of Norway's daughter, and he'll help you.

Belyn will never stand against you.

Go to Norway at once,

unknown to Belyn."

Brenne consents, goes to Norway,

and gets king Alfynges's daughter, and help.

Often tydyng to Belyn was brought,
Whider Brenne ȝede, & what he sought;
Belyn had þanne suspecion
þat for felonye was hit don,

Belyn is told of Brenne's doings,

---

[1] *trowe.*
[2] *suld þou wend.*
[3] *neuer.*
[4] *wille.*
[5] *þouht.*
[6] *wald.*
[7] *had.*
[8] *triste.*
[9] *passed ouer in Norway gan ryue.*
[10] *holy.*

resolves to be even with him,

& þoughte he scholde[1] wyþynne a whyle
His owen deseite hym self bygile:
. He seyde, "on stelþe he sekes hym pray;
. "Hit schal nought helpe, ȝyf þat y may;
. "Ne schal nought Brenne bede me trypet[2]
. "þat y ne schal turne hym wiþ a forset."

and meet trick by trick.

So he seizes Northumberland,

Belyn seysede Northhumberland,
Boþe castel & toun tok in-to his hand;
Alle þat were Brennes byforn,

stores the castles with corn and men,

ffor werre he storede[3] þem wyþ corn,
& folk ynow to þeym dide sende,[4]
Agaynes Brenne þem forto defende.

and himself occupies the seashore, to oppose Brenne's landing.

Hym seluen ȝede wiþ an ost,
& rengede by þe se[5] cost;
Hauen to aryue[6] þey hym wyþsette,
Bot þorow bataille oþer barette.

Brenne hears of this,

ſſ Tyl Brenne men broughte brod[7] tydyng
þat Belyn had sesed his þyng/.

and sets sail with his wife.

He hadde his wyf, & was al ȝare
Wyþ fair folk in flod to fare.
Lyþerly lyked þat lady gent;

But she has long loved

Sche wepede[8] weddyng, & mykel hit ment,
ffor scheo had loued longe byfore

the king of Denmark,

þe kyng of Denmark, er Bren com þore;[9]
& þe kyng had loued hyre,
Longe scheo was of his desire.

Goodlak, and writes to him,

þe kyng of Denmark highte Goodlak,[10]
Scheo sent hym a lettre þat þus spak/:

[leaf 13, col. 2.]

. "Longe haue y loued þe kyng of Denmark/;
. "þat loue is loken & leyd in ark;
"An vncouþ on of fer schal fonge[11]

praying him to rescue her.

"þy loue þat þou hast loued so longe;

---

[1] *suld.*
[2] *treget* (from *trans* and *jactare*).
[3] *stroyed.* [leaf 18, col. 2.]
[4] *to þam he send.*
[5] *seis.*
[6] *Hauen & lond.*
[7] *broth* (1. hasty, fierce; 2. direful).
[8] *scho wepe.*
[9] *or brenne com þore.*
[10] *Gutlake* (Gurlac, *Wace*).
[11] MS. *fonde.* P. has *satt fong.*

" & bot þou come, rescours to make,
" Neuere in armes schalt þou[1] me take."
Whan Goodlak wyste, his herte gan[2] drede
þat Brenne a-wey his lef schold[3] lede.
He dide samne al his flet,
& Brenne & he in se þey[4] met.
When boþe fflutes come at a frosche,[5]
þe fyrste hortlyng[6] gaf a gret crusche;
Ende til ende, syde by[7] side;
þe heyest of bord, best fel[8] his tyde.
ffaste þey foughte boþe fflutes,
. Persed schipes wiþ arblast schutes;
. Wyþ ax & swerd ilk oþer on hew,
In to þe water ouer bord þey þrew;
On boþe parties were þey goode,
Bote þe Daneys best þey stode,
. Speres & darts þykke þay schote,
& persed þorow-out Brennes fflote.
Brenne fledde, als[9] desconfit,
& Goodlak seysede a schip fol tyt.
As auenture fel, þat schip he wan
þat scheo was inne, Brennes lemman.
Whan he hadde wonnen[10] þat he sought,
Of al þat oþer gaf he nought;
& Brenne fledde wiþ sayl & ore;
His wyf he les, þat playned he sore.

Goodlak collects his fleet, attacks Brenne's, routs it; and Brenne flees. Goodlak carries off his love; and so Brenne loses his wife.

When Goodlak hadde þat may in hande,
He ȝerned faste to þe lande.
Als he seyled his lond toward,
List of a chaunce þat hym fel hard:

But as Goodlak is sailing home with Alfynges' daughter,

---

[1] *sall.*
[2] *was.*
[3] *wyf suld.*
[4] *see gan.*
[5] *at frusse.*
[6] *hurtyng.*
[7] *to.*
[8] *burde best fell.*
[9] *& was.* [leaf 18, back.]
[10] *won.*

a storm rises,

In þe se a storm hym[1] grew,
þe water rored, þe wynd vp blew,
. þundred, reyned, lemed[2] lyght,
þe sky wax blak as hit were nyght * ;
þe se gan fighte, þe wawes ros,
þe streme woxe, & þem agros ;[3]

[*MS. myght.]

the ships are in danger,

þeir schipes alle in peril were,
Ropes, borde, broste ay where ;
Mast & sayl, doun hit lusched,[4]
Cordes, kables, casteles, tofrusched :[5]—
. To knowe þer names y am al wyl,
. Al þat þer was was in peryl.—

and get dispersed.

þer fflute sone was al to-spred,
& into diuerse londes fled ;

The tempest lasts five days,

ffyue daye atte þe leste
Lasted thenne þat[6] tempeste.

and after it Goodlak lands

Gutlak had þre schipes, &[7] mo,
. Wiþ hem he skaped in peyne & wo,

in England.

& aryued vp in þys londe,
& fayn he was þat hap he fonde,
Bot for þe loue of his lemman
. þat in þe tempest wax al wan ;
He ne wyste what lond ne port
He was aryued, for mys-confort ;
Bot þo þat kepte þe se side, [leaf 13, back.]
. & seye þe schipes til haue[n] glyde,[8]

He and his love are taken, and given to Belyn,

Godlak þey toke, wyþ þat may[9] gent ;
Tyl Belyn of hem þey made present ;
& alle hyse men wyþ hym þey tok,

who prisons them till he

& Belyn dede þem alle to lok,
ȝyf he wayted,[10] what tyme or whenne,

hears tidings of Brenne.

þat he myght here tydyng of Brenne.

---

[1] *it.*
[2] *leuende.*
[3] *stremes wex & þam at gros.*
[4] *lussed.*
[5] *kastels frussed.*
[6] *þan þat grete.*
[7] *& no* (cinq nes, *Wace*, p. 120).
[8] *to hauen ride.*
[9] *þei toke Gutlak þat may so.*
[10] *For waited.*

þo þat were take wyþ þe mayden,
Vnto Belyn þe soþe sayden,
Ilka del how Brenne had wrought,
& þe kyng of Norwey sought,
& how þat Godlak had hym met
Vpon þe se wyþ strong baret.

These, their companions tell Belyn.

¶ De applicacione Brenne, & de bello inter fratres.

Brenne wolde nought longe abide,
His fflute he gadered on ilka side,
Aryued vp in Albanye
Wyþ gret force of god[1] nauye;
He sente to Belyn messegers,
Of worthy[2] knyghtes & squiers,
Preynge[3] forto deliuere his wyf
& his casteles, & bate alle st[r]yf;
And bot he wolde ȝelde þeym on haste,
More of his he wolde waste.
Belyn gaf nought of his manace,
Bot þoughte he scholde ȝit don[4] him chace,
& sent hym bode by his men bolde,
" þat he had taken, þat wolde he holde;
" ffor his praieres[5] noþyng wolde do,
" Ne for his loue namore þan so."
Hys folk were al redy &[6] dight
Agaynes Brenne for to fyght:
Bysyde a wode at[7] Kalenters
Mette þe breþere wyþ here baners;
Eyþer oþer mykel þey[8] hated,
þe felonloker[9] þey hem abated;

Brenne gathers his fleet, lands in Scotland, and demands his wife and castles from Belyn. Belyn refuses them, and marches against Brenne. They meet near the forest of Galtres (in the North Riding of Yorkshire).

---

[1] *& gode.*
[2] *Meñ of gode.*
[3] *Praied him.*
[4] *suld ȝit.*
[5] *prayng.*
[6] *folk redied & att.*
[7] *hate.*
[8] *þe tone þe toþer myketh.*
[9] *Fersliere.*

A fierce battle follows;

Dartes til oþer þey schotte ful faste,
. Grete stones wyþ slynges caste,
Scharpe launces þorow scheldes smot,
& brighte swerdes þorow helmes bot;
. Sone[1] by nekkes þey sesede sore
. Wyþ knyues smyten to deþ[2] ay-whore,
. þorow heued & þrote, breste & bak,
. ffruschte to-gidere, þat nekkes brak/.
þe Bretons bolded styfly to stande,
& nought þe norþerne, bot were fleande;[3]
the Norsemen are put to flight,
To flyght[4] þey fledde, ilk bataille seer,
& Belyn folewede, & neyghed hem ner;
and 2,000 slain in the pursuit.
Two þousand fleyng he þer slow,[5]
Als þey vntil þer schipes drow.
Brenne, with
Brenne, þat made most þat wo,
Wyþ peyne he skaped þe slaughtre fro;
Vneþes he skaped, þe[6] hauene he hent;
twelve comrades only surviving,
His twelfte[7] & he, to se þey went;
Alle he les bote þo twelue,
escapes to France.
To ffraunce he wente wyþ hem hym selue.
ffyftene þousand slayn were told,[8] [leaf 13, back, col. 2.]
Wyþoute prisoners þat were in hold.[9]

Brenne takes refuge in France.

Whan al þis wo was brought til ende,
& Brenne in-til ffraunce gan wende,[10]
Belyn asks his Parliament
Belyn vntil ȝork he went,
& þere he held his parlement.
He askede his barons, and spak,
what is to be done with Goodlak?
" What scholde be don of sire Guthlak?"
Gutlak byforn sent to Belyn,[11]
Out of prison þer he lay[12] yn,

---

[1] *Som.*
[2] *smyte togidere.*
[3] *þe norþeren nouhted ay fleand.*
[4] *flote.* [leaf 19.]
[5] *Thousandz hundrethes fleand he slough.*
[6] *vneþis a schip in hauen.*
[7] *tuelf.*
[8] MS. *cold.* P. *were þor told.*
[9] *of men slayn without in hold.*
[10] *lende.*
[11] *sent Belyn.*
[12] *was.*

" þat of Belyn he wolde[1] holde
" Al his hon*ur*, ȝif þat he wolde,
" Denmark his lond, quyt & cler,
" And gyuen[2] hym truwage ilka ȝer;
" Syker þer*e*of he wolde hym make,
" Wyþ bond,[3] & god ostage to take;
" Wyþy[4] he myghte lede safly
" His le*m*man, wyþouten vyleny."
Belyn had fol gret desyr
To haue truwage of his enpir.
þorough leue of þe p*ar*lement,
Gutlak & his le*m*man went,
When he had sworn & don omage,
& bondes mad,[5] & gyuen hostage,
To Belyn to halde þer couenaunt,[6]
fforto wende he hadde þe gr*a*unt.
Gutlak, to go, sone he was ȝare,
Wyþ schip vntil his lond to fare.[7]

Goodlak offers to hold Denmark of Belyn,

and pay tribute for it,

if Belyn will give him up his wife.

Goodlak's offer is accepted,

and he sails to Denmark.

Belyn held wel þe*n*ne his honour,
& wysly was god governo*ur*;
He louede pes wyþ al[8] hys myght,
& pesyble men held he to ryght.
Hys lond Bretayne he went[9] þorow-out,
& ilka countr*e* biheld about;
Byheld þe wodes, watres, & fen,
& no passage fond he mad[10] for men,
Ne heye strete þorow no contre,
Neyþer to burgh ne to cyte.

Belyn rules Britain well;

finds out the wants of each county, and

---

[1] *wild he.*
[2] *gyf.*
[3] *treuh.*
[4] *with þi* (with that, so that).
[5] *Whan had don his homage othe suorn.*
[6] *conant.*
[7] Manning should have translated Wace's

Sa mie en a à soi menée,
Que par sa paine acatée.
i. 125, l. 2643-4.

[8] *pes at.*
[9] ȝ*ode.* [leaf 19, col. 2.]
[10] *no passage was maked.*

builds bridges, and causeways or high roads;

þorow myres, hylles, & vales,
He made brugges & causes,[1] 3088
Heye stretes for comun passage,
Brugges ouer watres dide he stage:

1. The Fosse,

þe firste he made, he cald hyt "ffosse;"
þorow-out þys londe hit goþ til Scosse; 3092

from Totness to Caithness;

Hit bygynnes atte Toteneys,
& endeþ þenne at Cateneys.[2]

2. Ikenild street, from Southampton to Menia, now St. David's;

An oþer strete þan ordeyned he:
ffro Souþ-haumptoñ opon[3] þe se, 3096
To Mene yn Walys, (Seint Dauies now hight,)
. Ikenyldestrete reches ful ryght:[4]
Two causes ouer þe lond in lengþe & brede,[5]
þat men ouerthwert in passage ȝede. 3100
When þey were maked als he ches,

and proclaims safety for all travellers.

He comaunded till alle haue pees;
Alle schold haue[6] pees & fredam
þat in his stretes ȝede or cam; 3104
& ȝyf hit were any of hyse
þat for-dyde his ffraunchise,
fforfeted schold ben al his þyng,
. & hym self[7] taken til þe kyng. 3108

Brenne, meantime,

Brenne þat was gon in to ffraunce, [leaf 14.]
Hym schamed sore of his chaunce
. þat hit[8] was so wyde yspred
þat his lemman was a-wey led. 3112

serves the king of France,

Hym self & his twelf felawes
Serued þe kyng ȝeres & dawes;
Knyght he was, curteys & wys,

and is greatly liked,

Oueral he hadde los & pris; 3116

---

[1] *cauceiz.*
[2] *endes vnto catheneis.*
[3] *at Southampton vpon.*
[4] *& gos to Weles to seynt dauy þe toun hight Menne þat tyme redy.*
[5] *tuo haucez ouer þe lond o brede.*
[6] *suld haf.*
[7] *His body.*
[8] MS. *his.* P. has *it.*

What ony knyght hadde to þer[1] lyuere,
His was largest, for he was fre;
Mykel was he preysed of prowesse, and praised.
& ful wel loued for his largesse;
. He couþe mykel[2] of curtesy,
. & faire hym bar, as man worþy.
When his los was þorow ronnen,
& in þe lond his pris hadde wonnen,
Wiþ wham he made any soiour,
He preyed for help & for socour he begs for help to conquer Britain.
ffor to conquere his heritage,
þat Belyn reftym[3] wiþ outrage;
& [4] ȝede to Burgoyne, to Duk Segwyn, Duke Segwyn of Burgoyne
. Bysought hym of help ageyns Belyn.
þe Duk louede his compaignie,
& gaf hym of his tresorie. gives him treasure,
Brenne was yn speche curteys,
& konnynge[5] knyght by many weys;
He couþe of chas[6] & of ryuere,
Inow of game of here[7] manere;
Gentil of body, wyþ fair visage,
. He semed a man of hey parage,
. & was plesaunt & seruisable.
þe Duk was riche wyþoute fable,[8]
& of his body had non heyr and further, as he has no heir,
Bot a mayde ferly feyr.
Inough sche hadde þat tyme of elde,
þat scheo myght take a lord to welde;
He spak louely, wysly, & stille.
& serued þe Duk at al his wylle,

[1] *Whan any knyght toke his.*
[2] *couth Inouh.*
[3] *held.* [leaf 19, back.]
[4] *he.*
[5] *a konand knyght on.*
[6] *wod.*
[7] *gamen on oþer.*
[8] *he was meke to serve and briche & þe duke was noble riche.*

& wel hym payed alle his dedes,
& oueral wel he spedde his nedes.

his daughter, and the heirship of his duchy.

Þe Duk his doughter gaf hym to wyue,
To haue Þe Duche after his lyue.
Þen Þoughte Þe Duk, Þat hym fel feir
Þat God had sent hym suche on til heyr.[1]
. Brenne obeysed hym curteysly,
. & seide "Sire Duk, graunt mercy!"
Al men[2] hym louede, & held hym dere,
Ech man hym payed wel his[3] manere.

Soon duke Segwyn dies,

ffel Þanne wyÞynne Þe twelf-monÞ[4] ende,
Swyche a grace God gan hym sende,
Þat he deyde, Þe Duk Segwyn.

Brenne succeeds to the duchy of Burgoyne,

Of al Þe Duche, Brenne tok seysyn;
Hys barons Þat louede hym wel byfore,
After louede hym mykel more;
Wel louede hym ilka Burgyloun,
& knyghtes of Þeyr[5] nacioun;
He hadde Þe lond wyÞ al Þe[6] rente,
And a ȝong lady[7] fair & gente.
In al his welÞe[8] forgat he nought [leaf 14, col. 2.]
How Belyn hadde wyÞ hym wrought,
& held Þe londes Þat his schold be;
Bot whan he sey his tyme eyse,

collects a great host,

He sent for knyghtes & squiers,
ffrendes he soughte, & waged[9] souders;

raises a navy in Normandy,

WyÞ gret ost cam til Normandie,
& purueyde Þer a gret nauye.
Whan hit was[10] tyme, had wynd at wille

and invades England.

He passed Þe se wyÞouten ylle.

---

[1] *saue Þis he had Þe speire Þat god gaf him a son tiłł heire.*
[2] *Þei.*
[3] *& he Þam paied on ałł.*
[4] *not was it siÞen a tuelmoth.*
[5] *oÞer.* [leaf 19, back, col. 2.]
[6] *lond Inouh &.*
[7] *& ȝeng lemman.*
[8] *Þis weth.*
[9] *hired.*
[10] *he sawe.*

Belyn herde wel þat he cam ;
Wyþ folk ynogh ageyns hym nam ;
þer bataylles assembled wyþynne a lite, Belyn is ready
& redy were almost to fyghte. 3180 to fight Brenne,

¶ De Humilitate Tonewenne, matris Belyni & Brenni.

So com þeyr moder, dame Tonewenne, but their old
þat bar boþe Belyn & Brenne, mother, Tone-
Bytwyxt þer hostes, tremblyng[1] for drede ; wenne, totters
ffol old scheo was, haltyng scheo ȝede ; up between the
Ouer al scheo asked where was Brenne. 3184 hosts,
Atte þe laste, men gan hure kenne ;
. & Brenne herd seye þat hit was sche ;
. He saide "Moder, welcome be ȝe!" 3188
Hure armes aboute his nekke sche[2] cast,— casts her arms
. Boþe ostes wondred þer-ate[3] fast,— round Brenne's
neck,
Vntil hure girdel hure cloþes sche rent ; rends her
Naked byfore þe host sche went ;[4] 3192 clothes,
Vntil Brenne gretynge[5] sche spak,
. Hur fyngres sche wrast, þe blod out brak, wrings her
Sche tremblede & sykede inderly,[6] fingers till they
bleed,
. Handes & face brest[7] al blody :[8] 3196
. "Dere child!" scheo seid,[9] "wher hastow ben? and appeals to
. "Now þanky God y haue þe sen! Brenne to stay
the strife :
"Sone," sche seide, "list now to me, "Son,
. "& do als ich schal conceille þe. 3200
"Lo, here þe pappes þat þou on sok! here are the
paps that you
. "þyse armes hit arn[10] þat þe bylok! sucked,

[1] *trembland . . . . haltand.*
[2] *hals* [neck] *scho.*
[3] *þe ostes biheld* þam.
[4] Ses mamèles li mostra nues,
Flestres, et vielles, et pelues.
Wace, i. 132, l. 2769–70.
[5] *gretand.*
[6] *sighed inerly.*
[7] *handes face breste.*
[8] Mistaken translation of Wace's "*Car ele soglotoit* [sobbed] *forment*," i. 132. l. 2773.
[9] *Dere son.*
[10] *armes ere.*

here is the womb that bore you and your brother.
" Here ys þe wombe ȝe boþe ynne ware!
" þys body ȝow bar wiþ wo & kare!
" Y am sche þat for ȝow kneled!

Think on my pain in giving you birth: add not to it.
" Now þenk o þat sorwe þat y þenne feled!
" Ley now[1] no sorewe me more byforn,
" ffor hym þat let ȝow of me be born!

Lay down your arms!
" Ley doun þyn armes, me forto saue!
" Wylle nought þat y for þe deþ[2] haue!
" þou mysdost, þat þou now fandes[3]

Bring not strangers to slay us!
" To brynge straungers of outlandes[4]
" Vs forto robben & to[5] slo!

" Rest þe! let þy mod ouer go![6]
" þou hast namo breþere in wold;
" þy fader ys ded,[7] þy moder ys old;

Let us live in peace!
" Suffre, for no þyng in lyue,
" þy pore frendes a-way to dryue!
" þou scholdest vs presente & gyue,
" & helpe vs alle in pes to lyue;
" Bot now þou comest to reue vs our [socour],[8]
" þat scholdest ben oure mayntenour.
" Lef folye! & y vndertake,[9]
" ȝyf þou on hym wilt pleynte make,
" And y fynde he haue þe gylt, [leaf 14, back.]

You began the wrong,
" He schal amenden right als þou wilt;
" Bot ȝyf þou seist he dide þe fle,
" I seye nay; witnesse on þe![10]
" ffyrst þou bygonne al yn wrong;
" So al þe folye ys on þe longe,
" þe firste folye & yuele[11] dedes.
" When þou intil Norwey ȝedes,

---

[1] *Schew.* [leaf 20.]
[2] *dede.*
[3] *fondes.*
[4] *aliens of vnkouth londes.*
[5] *vs forto.*
[6] *þin owen demeyns to wirke wo.*
[7] *dede is þi fadere.*
[8] *socoure.*
[9] *do þis foly now to slake.*
[10] *þe wrong is in þe.*
[11] *in alle.*

" Wyf to take, wyþouten leue,[1]
" Þat schewede þou mentest hym to[2] greue,
" & broughtest Norn men hym tasaille:[3] you brought Northmen to attack Belyn!
" Þerfore þou lostest þy[4] bataille; 3236
" Þy blame ys now ȝyt fol grym, And now you
" Þat swiche[5] an host bryngest on hym
" & schapest[6] oure desherytysoun, plot our destruction!
" & þys londes[7] destruccioun! 3240
" So mykel yuel wold he nought þe,[8]
" Al-þey his power so mykel[9] myght be.
" Brenne, sone! what þenkest þou? Son!
" Com til acord now for þy prow! 3244 Be at one with thy brother;
" Ley doun þy swerd, do wey þy scheld,
" Wyþdraw þy folk out of þe feld;
" & sek þe pes, for[10] charite! seek peace!"
" Þe same schal he do to þe." 3248

Brenne hure preyere vnderstod; Brenne consents, for love of his mother,
ffor loue of hure changed his mod;
His helm, his hauberk, he dide vnlace; unarms,
Al bar-heued, wyþ open face, 3252
Cam he wiþ his moder Tonewenne,
& also dide[11] Belyn to Brenne:
Þeyr moder dide hem to-gedere kysse. and kisses his brother Belyn.
ffor þat saughtlyng was mykel blisse; 3256
More of wrath was þer nought spoken;
ffor[12] loue in armes ilk oþer þey loken. They embrace,
Al þus þeir ended[13] þe breþere wrathe,
Þer tene turned to game & glathe. 3260
ffro þeþen[14] to Londone þey went, go to London,

[1] *his leue.*
[2] *þou wild him.*
[3] *brouht þe north him to assaile.*
[4] *þou sped nouht at þat.*
[5] *suylk . . . . bringes.*
[6] *þat is tiłł.*
[7] *& to þi lond.*
[8] *iłł wild he not þe.*
[9] *if his powere so wele.*
[10] *& seke pe pour.*
[11] *þe same did.* [leaf 20, col. 2.]
[12] *with.*
[13] *þusgate endid.*
[14] *þien.*

and agree to invade France.

& þer þey helde a parlement;
Of þeyr parlement was þe ende,
To wynne ffraunce wolde þey wende. 3264

They gather their hosts,

Belyn dide somone his Bretons,
& Brenne haþ[1] alle his Burgylons.
By tyme & terme þat þey had set,
Boþe ostes atte hauene met, 3268

sail to France,

& schiped ouer into ffraunce;
To wynne hit, þey hoped was her chaunce.[2]

win the first battle,

By-twyxt hem was þen a batille don:
þe force of ffraunce fel ful son, 3272
þey durede nought to fighte in feld;
þe brepere dide hem to þeym ȝeld;

seize castles,

Casteles þey sesede fer & ner,

and gain all France.

& wonne alle ffraunce[3] wyþynne a ȝer. 3276

Then they resolve to conquer Rome.

When al þe folk were atter[4] dome,
þey seide þey wolde wende to Rome,
And leue non þat þey fond,
Bot ȝyf þey helde of þeym þer lond. 3280

They collect men,

þey sente aboute to diuerse costes,
Of doughti folk þey gadered hostes
ffor to wynne pris & prow; [leaf 14, back, col. 2.]

cross the Alps,

þey passed þe Mountaynes of Moungow;[5] 3284

take Turin, Leghorn, and all Lombardy,

Taurynus þey toke, & Iuerye,
& alle þe Cytes of Lombardye,
Vrceles, Pauye, & Tremoygne,[6]
Melan, Plesence, & grete Boloyne; 3288
þey passed þe water of Tauron,
& þe hul of Mount Bardon;

---

[1] P. omits *haþ*.

[2] þe *lond to wyn awnterd* þer *chance*.

[3] *wan* þam *att*.

[4] *was at* þer.

[5] Mon Giu, *Wace*. "Mons Jovis, "montagne qui separe la Savoie de "l'Italie: *le grand Saint-Bernard*." De Lincy's *Wace*, i. 138.

[6] Vécialz . . Crémone. *Wace*, i. 188.

Þey robbed þorow al Tuskane,
. & al ouer rod, & þorow ran.
Als þey ryfled[1] landes ay whore,
Rome þey neighed ay þe more.
Romayns dredden hem for to deye,
ffor þo tydynges þat þey herd seye;
. Al day of passande men þey herd,
. Þe two brepere wonnen al þe werd.
Þey of Rome had chosen þat ȝer
Two noble men of gret power,
Þat þey scholde, when þey had nede,
Þer folk vntil bataille lede,
& saue þer landes, holde þem to ryght,
. ffor doughtiest þey were in fyght:
Sire Procenna, þat on hight so,
Þat oþer men calde sire Galbao;[2]
Þyse to[3] were þeyr conseillours,
& speke vnto þe senatours
" What þey wolde, how hadde þey tight,
" Þeyr cite ȝelde, or stande to fyght."
Þe Sene seide þey were affrayed,
. Non hem wyþstod, bot þorow alle strayed:
" Wiþ swilk to fighte, we haue non host,
. " ffor þey han folk wyþ þe most;
" & ȝyf we myghte oure pes haue,
" þorough mekenesse oure gode[4] saue,
. " & oure seluen at here pes lyue,
" Gold & seluer we wolde þem gyue.
" Ouer þat, þey schul haue truage,
" To passe & do vs non vtrage;
. " ffor strong hit were for oure cite
. " To be destruyed, & al þe contre."
. In al þer drede, & al þer dome,

3292 ravage Tuscany,

and draw near Rome.

The Romans

3296 dread the Britons.

3300 The two Roman chiefs,

3304

Procenna and Galbao,

3308 ask the Senate whether they'll yield or fight.

The Senate say they can't with-

3312 stand the Britons,

3316

but will pay them ransom

3320 and tribute.

[1] *robbed.* [leaf 20, back.]
[2] *Gabao.* Gabius, *Wace*, l. 2930.
[3] *tuo.*
[4] *godes.*

. þe brepere come & byseget[1] Rome.
This is done; þorow comun assent of þe senatours,
þey presented[2] þe brepere gret tresours;
& to be in here auowery,[3]
Truage þey graunted hem for þy.
and Belyn and Brenne take hostage of the Romans,— þe brepere tok of þem hostage;
Twenty childre of þe beste lynage
& of þe richest of al þe toun,
20 children of high birth,— þey presented[2] hem as for raunson:
þus was þe pes bytwixt hem graunted,
Bot lytel þrowe[4] þey hit haunted.

and then draw off to fight the Alemans. Belyn & Brenne remued[5] þer host,
By Lombardye þey wente þe cost,
To werren opon þe Alemauntz,[6]
& take truage of þe remenauntz.[7]
But the Romans rise against them, þey were letted by þe[8] Romayns,
þat couenaunt breke; rise þeym a-geyns;
& proue þey wolde þeir hardinesse,
And seide þey wolde do more pruesse.
þey send for knyghtes oueral aboute, [leaf 15.]
& gaderet[9] ost gret & stoute,
Wel armed in ilke a conreye;[10]
After þe brepere þey tok þeir weye;
think to catch them in the mountains, On þem þey þowte to smyte al fresse,
Ithe Mountaingnes to holdem at destresse,[11]
þat non of hem scholde namore come
Of þo brepere eft[12] to Rome.
and call on the Alemans þey sente messages on þer partye,
In to Alemayne,[13] þe brepere to spie,

---

[1] *seged.*
[2] *present.*
[3] þer *auowri.*
[4] *while.* [leaf 20, back, col. 2.]
[5] *remoued.*
[6] The *m* has 4 strokes in the MS.
[7] *heue trewage at Remanans.*
[8] *destorbled þorgh.*
[9] MS. *gaderest.* P. reads *gadred.*
[10] *armed were in att conrey.*
[11] *hald þam at stresse.*
[12] ? MS. *est. oste*, P.
[13] *vnto þe almayns.*

þat ilka pas þey scholde[1] so wayte,
Ithe Mountz holden hem so straite,
ȝyf þey schold[1] passe on eyþer syde, to help in
Wyþ force þey schold[1] hem ouer ryde.
Al þus on ilk a side þey ros,
To haue þe breþere host in clos;
& atter passyng in to þe mount, stopping the
þe Alemauntz schold[1] ben in þer frount; the Britons' passage.
þorow force of þer god ordynaunce,
þey schold[1] nought passe þorow[2] no chaunce.

When Belyn perseyued þe ffelonye, But Belyn and
þey conseilled on þer partie Brenne agree to divide;
þat Brenne scholde[1] turne a-gayn, Brenne going against the Romans,
To wyþstande þe host Romayn, and Belyn
And Belyn scholde[1] on his side against the Germans.
Agayns þe host of Alemauntz ryde;
& whilk of þem best myghte spede,
Schold[1] turne & helpe þe toþer at nede.
When Romayns wyste Bren schold[1] come, The Romans
þey toke þe wey[3] agayn to Rome, retreat, to separate Brenne from Belyn.
þat Brenne schold[1] neighe Rome no ner,
& þe breþere a sondre fer.
þorow a spye Belyn herde seye,
& taughte Brenne a geyner weye;
To trauersen hem al ouer þere score,
& passe þe Romayns wel byfore. But Brenne marches round the Romans' flank,
þey chosé ġyours þe contre knew,
To lede þem wye trist & trew,
& brynge þem wel to þat strete
þer þeym byhoued Romayns mete.
þey iourneyed[4] boþe dayes & nyght
Al so stille as þey myght,

[1] *suld.*
[2] *be.*
[3] *gate.*
[4] *Ioneyd.* [leaf 21.]

Wyþoute noise, cry, or how,[1]
Vntil þe entre of Moungow.
reaches the pass of Moungow, [the St. Bernard, p. 116] before them, . & when þey were in þe valeye,
. þer ledere seide, "þys ys þeir weye!
. " By þys þey come, hit is certeyn;
. " Oþer wey haue þey non ageyn." [2]

and in full moonlight To þat passage þey come at nyght;
þe mone schon ful [3] faire & bright;
Brenne bad þem ber ham [al] pryue,
Wiþ-oute noyse, til tyme schold [4] be.
meets them, who suspected no foe. Sone after cam þe Romaynes route;
Of non þey hadde drede ne doute.
. By þe mone þat so lyght schon,[5]
. þey spedde hem faste swythe to gon.
Atte passage glyfte þey þer eyene; [6]
Agayns þe mone sawe þey schyne
Helmes, hauberkes, scheldes vp-lyfte. [leaf 15, col. 2.]
. þenne were þe Romayns al a-glyfte: [7]
The Britons dash on the Romans, þe Bretons hadde þe Romay[n]s byden;
Al so swyþe þey to þem ryden;
Brenne þem boldede, bad þem wel smyte, [8]
. " ffelleþ ȝour fos þat wolde ȝou byte!"
Oueral þe Bretons þeym [9] assailled;
who give way, þe Romayns route fel & failled;
þey nadde no tome for to fle,
Ne place to huyden hem [10] priue.
and are slaughtered þe Bretons bowaylled þeym, [11] & hew;
. In buskes, bankes, doun þeym þrew;
all that night þe slaughtre lasted al þat nyght,
Til hit sprang þe dayes lyght;

---

[1] *noyse or any crie.*
[2] *non oþer may þei gayne.*
[3] *schane.*
[4] *to tyme.*
[5] *þat bright schone.*
[6] *þei glift Ine.*
[7] *oglift.*
[8] MS. *snyte.*
[9] *þe bretons ouer att halfe þam.*
[10] *ne to tapise in stede.*
[11] *bouweld þam.*

& al þat day afterward,
Vntil þe nyght, was bataille hard.
þe nyght departed þem o sunder:
. þat any askaped, hit was a wonder.
þat oþer day in þe morwen tyde,
Toward Brenne, Belyn gan ryde;—
. ffer from his broþer wold he nought[1] go,
. What chaunce so bytidde of mo;—
& Brenne þat byfore nam,
Abod [þer] vntil Belyn cam.
When þey were to-gyder comen,
Boþe vntil Rome nomen,
& byseged[2] hit aboute,—
& þey of Rome were ful stoute,—
On alle sides þey sette engyns,
. Als Brenne ordeyned,[3] & belyns.
Mynours þey hadde ynowe, & sleye,
þe wal to perce[4] & vndermye.
þo wyþynne deffended hem wel,
. At þat tyme lostey nought[5] a del;
Wyþ arblastes schoten quarels vnryde,
Inow men broughte, & leide by syde;
Wyþ grete stones þey hem affrayed.
þe Romayns were nought desmayed,
þey launced darte, bowes drowe,
ffele þey felde, & manye slowe.
þe breþere leften þer assaut al,
& persed no þyng of þe wal.
Longe lastede þat ilk distaunce,
To þe breþere gret noyaunce;
Galewes dide þe breþere renge;
Of þer blod þey wol þeym venge;
þe galewes þey reysed vp ful heye,—

and all next day.

Then Belyn joins Brenne,

and they march to Rome, and besiege it.

They set miners to work,

but the Romans fight well,

and prevent their walls being pierced.

Then Belyn and Brenne hang all the Roman host-

---

[1] *ne wild he.* [leaf 21, col. 2.]
[2] MS. *byseded.* P. *biseged.*
[3] *at brenne ordenance.*
[4] *hole.*
[5] *les not.*

ages in sight of their parents.

Þe Romayns wel myght hem se wyþ eye,—
& hongeden alle[1] *þer* hostagers,
Burgeyses sones, lordes peres.
Þat kynde, y trowe, had sorewe & wo,
To schames deþ *þat* saw hem go.

¶ De Subu*er*sione fratru*m*.

The Romans swear revenge,

Alle olyke[2] þer fore were wroþ,
& alle seide, & swore *þer* oþ,
In pes ne schold þey passe quyt,
Bot þey wer wroken[3] on *þat* despit.

and on the day that Prosenna and Gabao

On þyse men tristed þe Romayns þo,
On Prosenna & on sire Gabao,
ffor þyse wer gon to Lumbardye [leaf 15, back, col. 1.]
To procure Rome more partye.

have promised to return with help,

After þeyn[4] abyden þe Romayns;
A day to come þey sette certayns;
Þat day was ner of *þer* comyng,

the Romans

Þe Romayns *þat* day mad þer samnyng,[5]
& ber hem ful egrely[6] & stout;

sally out, and fall on Belyn and Brenne,

þey armede hem, & isseden[7] out,
& oþe breþere faste þey sought,
& þey ageyn ne spared hem nought.
Als þey foughten best in stour,

who are also attacked by

Com her chefteyns wyþ more[8] socour;
Oþe breþere þey fullen alle on a res:[9]
Þan were þey boþe in hard destres;[10]
Þe Romayns vpon þe oþer partz,

Prosenna's and Gabao's men.

Þat oþer side, Poyles & Lombartz,
& felde[11] fele of þe Burgoylons,

---

[1] *hanged ilkon.*
[2] *only.*
[3] *venged.*
[4] þam. [leaf 21, back.]
[5] *samenyng.*
[6] *& were right fułł egre.*
[7] *issued.*
[8] *com þe tuo men with att* þer.
[9] *Vpon þe breþer & ilkon fresse.*
[10] *þe breþer in hard stresse.*
[11] *fellid.*

& calde þem "cowardz! hore sons! 3476 The Romans upbraid the Britons
" We schol[1] ȝow do drynke ȝour owen blod,
" & spare oure water of Tyber[2] flod!
" On þys half Moungow, what do ȝe,
" Vs to chalange of vur fe? 3480
" & þat ȝe henge our children heye, for hanging their children,
" þat vilenye ȝe schulle[1] abye!
." To ȝow was hit an yuel[3] conseil;
." þat schul ȝe fele to[4] wroþer hayl." 3484
Wiþ suche vmbreides þey hem[5] missayde,
& grete strokes vpon þeym leyde; and attack them fiercely.
Obak[6] a-geyn [þey] dide þem go,
& dide þem braye & crye for wo. 3488

Belyn & Brenne were al dysmayed
þat þe Romayns so þem affrayed;
þe Bretons sawe þer syde ȝede lowe, The Britons
þey rempede[7] þem to reste a þrowe; 3492 suffer, and retreat,
In þer restyng þey gan hem mene,
A parlement made þem bitwene, They re-arrange their men,
& gadered þer folk a-geyn to fyght,
Armed hem newe, & renged hem right, 3496
In sere batailles set þeym a sondres, in batallions,
Boþe by þousands & by hundreds.
Of þe hardiest & defensables, under the bravest of their leaders,
Made þey Mayster[8] Conestables, 3500
& bad hem in þer bataille holde,
þat non fro oþer schold flitte ne folde. with orders to keep their formation,
[9]beside were set to þer socoure,
archers to maynten þam in stoure; 3504
þe alblasters on þe toþer side,

---

[1] *salt.* [2] *in þe.*
[3] *it was a wikke.*
[4] *ȝe salt se fult.*
[5] *suylk vpbraid þei þam.*
[6] MS. *Olak.* P. *obak.*
[7] *runethed* or *rimethed.*
[8] *& þer maistres &.* [lf. 21, bk., col. 2.] ont fait maistres et. *Wace*, i.150, l. 3168.
[9–1] Lines 3503–8 are from the Petyt MS., translating Wace, lines 3174–8, vol. i., p. 150–1 of De Lincy's ed. P. has not lines, 3509–10.

ilkon for oþer better to bide.
doun on fote þe moste gan light
oñ fote þei renged þam to fight.][1] 3508

to put the strongest in front,

Þo þat were strong, hardy, & wyght,
fformest þey were set to fyght;
Þey bere þe launces vp and doun,

and let none press before the others,

On þe manere of a scheltroun;[2] 3512
& non for wele ne for wo
Ne scholde byforen[3] oþer go,
Ne go swyþer þan softe[4] paas,

but all hold and move together.

At ones to smyte, as comeþ þe cas;[5] 3516
& non schold baldere þan oþer be,

Then the

Ne noman [schold] fro oþer fle.
When þey had set ilk a bataille,

trumpets ring out, and the fight begins.

On what manere þey schold assaille, 3520
Trompe blewe, & greyles[6] ronge,
On boþe parties þer batailles[7] sprong.
On ilka side were strokes ynowe, [leaf 15, back, col. 2.]
Speres dide þem[8] breste & bowe; 3524
. After þe speres þat þey[9] set,[10]
. Syþen wiþ swerd & knyf þey met;

Many are slain.

Ilk oþer on ran ilk oþer to styke;
. Vpon þe dede ȝede þe quyke. 3528
Al to telle hit, nought y ne can,

The Britons must either fight well or die.

Bot loren was þer many a man;
. Þe Bretons seye non oþer weye,
. Þey most wel fyghte, oþer elles deye;[11] 3532
. Oþer al to wynne, or al to lese,
. þat on of þo byhoued hem chese.
. Þe best fyghters ber[12] forth þe brest,

---

[2] *cheltroun.*
[3] *suld for*þer *þan.*
[4] *a.*
[5] *whan com a has.* en la grant presse, el tas [heap, mass]: *Wace*, i. 151, l. 3184.
[6] *greilles.*
[7] *to batale.*
[8] *lances did þei.*
[9] MS. *sey.*
[10] *after lances* þat *þei sette.*
[11] þer *behoued* þam *lyue or deie.*
[12] *bare.*

. Archers & arblasters þem next;[1]
. þe Myle[ne]rs & þe Centaynes[2]
. ffolewed faste on þo Romaynes;
. Sire Galbao,[3] þer gouernour,
. He bated hym o þe Bretons stour;
Bot slayn was sire Galbao,[3]
. þat al þer trist was vnto;
& [4] Prosenna was brought right[5] doun,
On hem þe Bretons wonne þe toun;
Prosenna þey tok a[l] quyk;[6]
. þey persed þe Romayns bataille þyk,
. & al þer force doun þey slow,
. & to þe cite faste þey drow.
. þe toun might þey defende namore,
. þe cheftayns were slayn þat þer wore;
þe brebere come vntil þe cite,
& founde þer-inne richesse plente.
. Belyn gaf Brenne al þe empyre,
. And he was Enperour & sire;
. þe folk of hym þey had gret doute,
. His fomen þorow force dide þem aloute,[7]
. [Long he regned Emperoure[8]]
. þat neuere dirst Romayn stire in his stour.[9]

. Belyn to Bretayne þen gan turne,
He wold no lengere þer soiourne;
& when he com vntil þis lond,
þe olde cites þat he fond,
He closed þem, & mad hem newe,
þe walles he reisede trist & trewe.
In Walys he dide make a toun;
Kaerusik[10] he caldit on bretoun,

They press on the Romans,

kill Galbao,

take Prosenna,

break the Roman line,

kill their men,

and seize the city.

Belyn makes Brenne emperor,

comes back to Britain,

rebuilds the old cities;

and in Wales builds Kaerusk,

[1] *neste.*
[2] *Milleners & centeners.*
[3] *Gabao.*
[4] þat. [leaf 22.]
[5] *was born.*
[6] *att quike.*
[7] *did he loute.*
[8] From the Petyt MS.
[9] *romeyn durst stir him stoure.*
[10] *kaerusk.*

ffor hit stande[1] vpon Vsk,
A wat*er* þ*at* r*en*nes by bank & busk;
Siþen men caldit Kaer-legion:
List now what was þe enchesoun.[2]
Whylon[3] Romayns had þis lond
In þer demeynes, in þ*er* hond;
Whan Romayns com for þ*er* truage,
At Kaerusyk[4] þey helde hostage,
& þ*er*e þey made most dwellyng*e*,
ffor þ*er* was gret ese of mikel þyng;
At Kaerusyk[4] in Clamorkan,[5]
In wynt*er* þey dwelt þ*er*, ilkaman;
& for þey had so longe þ*er* hold,
Kaer-legion þe name was told.
Com after, m*en* of diu*er*se[6] language,
þ*at* schortly to speken haue in[7] vsage,
And schorted hit wyþ name & soun,
And afterward kaldyt Carlyon;[8]
Bot legion ys nou*m*bre of folk þ*at* wex,
Sex þousand, sex hundred, sexti & sex;
Þus many alwey fro Rome com,[9]
þ*at* ay for truwage to Carlyon nom.[10]

afterwards called Kaer-legion,

because the Romans wintered there when they came to collect their tribute.

Then came folk who liked short words,

and they cut Kaerlegion down to Carlyon;

but Legion means the 6660, Romans who came there to collect tribute.

[leaf 16.]

Whan Belyn Carlion had set,
þe walles he reysed, & folk to fet;
To Londone þ*en*ne tok he þe way,
And þ*er* he dwelled many a day.
þ*er* dide he a[11] gate by-gynne,
Ou*er* þe wat*er*, þ*er* schipes come ynne;
& ou*er* þ*at* gate he made a to*ur*,
þ*er*-inne he held [ful] long soiour.

Then Belyn returns to London,

builds a gate

with a tower over it,

---

[1] *it standes.*
[2] *why* þe *encheson.*
[3] *whilom.*
[4] *kaerusk.*
[5] *clamorgan.*
[6] *Com diuers men of* þer.
[7] *schorte to speke haf.*
[8] *brak* þe *word to kaerlioun.* [leaf 22, col. 2.]
[9] *euer fro Rome cam.*
[10] *ay vnto kaerlion nam.*
[11] MS. *&*. P. *a.*

He reysed[1] alle his fader lawes,
& dide þem holde by his dawes;
Dom he gaf wysly & right, — rules wisely,
Trowþ held he wel wiþ[2] al his myght.
Mykel pleynte was in his tyme,
On no mannes more may men[3] ryme;
Longe he lyuede, longe[4] to welde, — and dies at a
& faire he ended in his elde; — good old age.
ffor of þat gate þat Belyn aught, — His gate is
Of Belyn [þen] þe name hit laught;
Longe men caldit[5] til now late, — called Belyn's
After Belyn, Belynes gate; — Gate,
. þorow schort langage, y tolde er how
Byllyngesgate men calle hit now. — or Billingsgate.

ſ Hic moriebatur nobilus Belynus.

ſ Whan he was ded, sire Belyn,
þe people for hym hadde sorwe & pyn; — His people lament him,
ffor manye a man fol sore gret
þat day þat he ys lyf for-let.
þey dide make for his honur
A barel of gold of his tresour,
& brente his body, flesche & bon, — burn his body,
Iþe barel of gold þey leid ilkon; — and put the ashes in a gold
. More worschip þem þought hit so, — barrel,
. þan his body in erthe to do.
When þe barel was al dight,
. & wel y-burnuscht fair &[6] bryght,
Vp yþe Tour þey made a stage,
& heye it henge bifore[7] þe passage, — which they hang up in the Tower
þat alle þat passed, more & lasse, — for honour to
Schold preyse[8] Belyn for his prowesse. — Belyn.

---

[1] *raised.*
[2] *at.*
[3] *of no man more may we.*
[4] *þe lond.*
[5] *called.*
[6] *barred all & burnessid.*
[7] *& hang it befor.*
[8] *Praised.* [leaf 22, back.]

¶ Gurgoynt Rex.

Gurgoint succeeds Belyn,

After Belyn, Gurgoint his sone
Hadde þe heritage þorow[1] resone.
Gurgoynt Beretruk, þus was his name;
Of gret godnesse he bar þe[2] fame;

and rules well.

Pes to loke, & ryght to holde,
He lyknede his ffader, Belyn þe bolde.
þat Belyn left, he heldit wel;
Noiaunce had he neuere a del,

The Danes stop paying their tribute,

Bot þe Daneys,[3] þey forsok
To gyue truage þat Belyn tok.

[leaf 16, col. 2.]

Gurgoynt þoughte he hadde ryght þer-ynne,
His truwage he wolde al gate wynne;
His host he gadered, & schipes[4] did come;

so he invades and beats them,

þey set vp sail, & forþ þey nome.
To bataille þey samnde, boþe partys,
Bot Gurgoynt wan þer sone þe pris;[5]

kills their king,

Hym self yn bataille slow þe kynge,
& tok homage of ilka lordynge;
& his truwage dide restore,
Als his fader had hit byfore.

takes hostages from them, and sails homeward.

When he had take of hem ostage,
Gurgoynt forþ went on his viage:

Near the Orkneys he meets 30 ships

He passed forþ by Orkeneye;
þritty schipes he mette in weye,
Charged wyþ folk[6] & wyþ vitaille,
Bot þey ne wyste whider to saille;

under Pantalius,

Pantalius, þer maister hight,
þat mayntende hem, & held to ryght.
Gurgoynt asked what men þey were,
& what þey soughte, & why come þere.

---

[1] *be.*
[2] *a man of gode* þerof *had.* MS. *Dameys.* P. has *danes.*
[3] *he gadred schippes.*
[4] P. wrongly transposes this line and the one above it.
[5] *Charged futt.*

Pantalius spak ful curteysly.
" We ar men of pes, sekyng auowery,
" Wey-farende men þat wolde haue gryþ;
" We aske þe leue to speke þe wyþ."
þe kyng ne wolde no pes[1] breke,
Wyþ loue he gaf hem leue to speke.
He saide, " We ar men of diuerse lynage,
" Exiled of Spayne, comen by þys ryuage,
" ȝyf þat we any stede fond,
" On to reste, a certeyn lond.
" ffor oþer half ȝer[2] þus haue we went;
" Hunger, þurst, cold, haþ vs schent;
" Many a cost haue we þorow sought;
" Lond on to lende, ne fond we nought;
" & we ar alle onoyed þer fore,
" ffor oure trauaille & grete lore.
" Bot, lord, ȝyf hit were ȝour wylle,
" Suffre vs to reste on þy londe stille!
" Seruise þer fore we wole þe do;
" þy men bycome, ȝyf þou wilt so."
Bot Gorgoynt wolde þem nought graunt
Of his to haue a remenaunt;
Nought for þy he gaf hem conseil
Toward Irlond to sette þer sayl;
& of his schipes he lente þem tweye,
To techen hem þe ryghte weye.—
ſſ Irlond þat tyme was bygged no þynge
Wyþ hous[3] ne toun, ne man wonynge.—
So longe þey sailled, þe se þorow ronne,
þat algate to Irlond þey wonne;
þey stryken sayl, & anker cast,
Vp to lande þey ȝede ryght fast;
Al þey founde wast[4] & wylde.

who says that they are wanderers

banished from Spain, and seeking land to settle in;

but none have they found:

will Gurgoynt let them settle in his land?

Gurgoynt refuses,

and tells them to go to Ireland,

which was then uninhabited.

The Spaniards sail there,

land,

[1] *Pes wild nouht þe kyng.*
[2] *a ȝere & half.* An et demie, *Wace* i. 159, l. 3337.
[3] *londes.* [leaf 22, back, col. 2.]
[4] *att fond þei wildernes.*

. þey spredde hem aboute in ilkan ylde;
plough, build, Sone þey maden eryed[1] feld,
þey logged hem, & tymber[2] teld; 3692
and multiply, þer folk wax faste, & fostred more,
& tyled þe lond aboute ay whore.

∫ Pantalyus *primus* Rex Hib*ernie*. [lf. 16, bk., col. 1.]

and make Pantalius the first king of Ireland. Pantalius, þey maden hym kyng;
. In Irlond þen made he[3] first wonyng. 3696
When Gurgoynt had þem þider ysent,
Gurgoynt comes back to Britain, Hom vntil his lond he went;
. þritty ȝer in þys lyf gan le*n*de;
and dies in 30 years. At Kerlyoun he made hys ende. 3700

∫ Gwyntelyn Rex, cui*us* vxor Marcien*a* Sapien*s* fuit.

Gwyntelyn succeeds; Whan Gurgoynt hadde don his fyn,
Regned[4] his sone Gwyntelyn;
A god man was for þe maystrie,
and his wife Marcye & his wyf highte dame Marcye. 3704
Dame Marcye was mikel of[5] pris;
is wise, and Of landes lawe scheo was ful wys;
makes the Scheo studyed faste to make þe lawe.
. ffor hure þey caldyt by þat dawe, 3708
In Bretons tyme, als y wene,
law Marcyene, þey calde þat lawe Marcyene.
ffro kyng to kyng þat lawe men wrot,
. & Englysche kynges ȝit hit wot; 3712
or Marchenlage, which still pre- Marchenlage, þe Englisch hit calde;
. In eyghte[6] schires þat lawe ȝit men halde,

---

[1] *mad ardawe.*
[2] *timbred.*
[3] *ireland mad he.*
[4] *after him com.*
[5] *in.*
[6] *auht.* [leaf 23.]

. Gloucestre, Chestre, Warewyk, Oxenford, vails in eight
. Hereforde, Wynchestre,[1] Schropschire, Stafford. English shires.
And Gwyntelyn & Marcyen, 3717
A knaue child hadden þem bytwen.

ſ Syluyus Rex.

ſ Syluius his name þey told,
& er he were seuen ȝer old, 3720
Deyde his fader: þat tyme here Gwyntelyn dies.
He regned namore bot ten ȝere.
After Gwyntelyns deces,
Kepte Marcyen þe lond yn pes; 3724 His widow reigns till her boy
& when þat he was wel of elde,
þat he couþe þe londes welde,
Scheo hym dide coroune kynge;— Sylvius is
. Y telde ȝow his regne in alle[2] þynge;— 3728 crowned;
Stalworth he was, yn armes[3] bone;
Bot after his fader he deyde[4] sone. but he dies soon,

ſ Kynmar Rex.

þenne com his heir, Kynmar, her,[5]
. & regned[6] on & twenty ȝer. 3732 and is succeeded by Kynmar, and he by Daneus,
Daneus his broþer þen hadde[7] þe lond; Rex.
. Ten ȝer hē regned, wyþ werre he fond.

---

[1] The Petyt MS. rightly substitutes *Wircester* for this:— *Gloucester. Wircester. Herford. Werwik. Oxenford. Schropschire. Chester. staford.*

[2] *& he regned in att þe.*

[3] *was titt.*

[4] *die.*

[5] *Kymare his sonne his heire was here.*

[6] *he lyued.*

[7] *siþen had.*

¶ De Morpydeo Rege Bastardo.

whose bastard son, Morpydus,

Þys Daneus hadde on bastardie[1]
A sone þat wan hit wyþ maistrie;
Morpydus,[2] hit seys he hight;

a wrathful man,

He was a *mer*ueillous[3] mody knyght.

conquers the land.

Þorow hardynesse wan hit of chaunce;
Egreliche[4] he tok vengeaunce,

When angered, he will kill any man;

Hys ire, when hit on hym ran,
ffor nought wold[5] he slo no man[6];
ffor loue wold[5] he noman spare,
Þe[7] whyles þat his wrathe ware.

but when not angry, he is very good,

In al þe regne ne was *þer* non
So fair of vertues als he on.
Hys body was gent, & fair of vis;

liberal,

Til alle he gaf gyftes of pris;
Out of mesure þen was he large, [leaf 16, back, col. 2.]
Tresour to holde ne made he charge.
Þe[7] while his ire was a-weye,

gracious,

Al wold[5] he do þat men wold[5] seye,

and meek.

& also meke was as a child,
Tyl þat his wraþ wax[8] on hym wyld.

The duke of Morreve invades Northumberland.

In Morpidus tyme þat was so stout,
Þe duk of Morreue robbed a-bout;
Northumberland gan he waste;

Morpidus attacks and kills him,

& Morpydus til hym gan haste,
And angerly[9] gan hym assaille,
& þer hym slow in pleyn bataille.
Þus seide men, & ȝit mes seys,[10]
þat hit was proued (y not what weys)

---

[1] *bascardie.* The second scribe of P. writes from here to l. 3965. See *qwen*, l. 3881, note.
[2] *Morwidus. Morbidus* in l. 3755; *Morpidus* in l. 3758, 3763, &c.
[3] *Ouer mesure was he.*
[4] *Irouslik.*
[5] *wild.*
[6] *a man.*
[7] *To.*
[8] *Bot whan his wrathe was.*
[9] *egrelike.* [leaf 23, col. 2.]
[10] *& ȝit sais.*

Þat Morpidus slow mo men,[1] alone,
Þan alle his host[e] dide ilkone.
When he had slayn al þat he myght,
& was al wery more to fyght,
Þe bodies[2] he dide brenne of þo,
Er his grete ire myght ouer go.
Þe[3] tyme þat he was best in elde,
& stalwordest hym self to welde,
A best com out of þe Irysche se
& destruyed al þe contre;
An hydous best was hit by sight,
'Monstre Maryne' men seide hit hight;
& som men caldit 'Marebellew,'[4]
So wonderful best no man þer knew.
.(Swylk calle men 'Monstre,' als y fynde,
.þat lymes hauen[5] out of kynde;
.þat hauen[5] lymes more or lesse,
.'Monstre' men seis þat swilkon ysse.)[6]
.'Marebellow'[7] ys þe se hound:
.I not whether hit suiymmes[8] or is atte ground.
Was non þat wonede by þe se syde,
þat durste for þat best abyde;
Man & best he swelwed & et[9];
þat he ouertok, on[10] lyue ne let.
¶ Morpidus herde þerof gret cry;
Hys herte was bold & euere[11] hardy,
On himself he affyed so,
Allone, þe best he ȝede hym to,
& faught wyþ hym,—hit was folye
On hym self so mykel forto affie;[12]—

and slays more men than all his host does.

He burns the bodies of his foes.

In his time

comes out of the Irish sea

a hideous marine monster,

or Marebellew,

Morpidus

boldly goes against the monster,

---

[1] *sleu me.*
[2] "All alive," says Wace, l. 3463.
[3] *Be.*
[4] marine bélue, *Wace*, i. 166. Lat. belua maritima, *De Lincy*, ib.
[5] *has.*
[6] *es.*
[7] *Mare Bellu.*
[8] ? MS. *smymmes.* *suimmes*, P.
[9] *ete . . leet.*
[10] *of.*
[11] ouer.
[12] *mikil affie.*

Hym self alone[1] þe best assailled,
Gret hardynesse hym non[2] ne failled;
attacks it with a spear, Wyþ spere first he til hym schet;[3]
& wounded hym þat was so gret. 3796
Whan he had schoten, & til hym cast,
and then a sword. þenne wyþ swerd hew on hym fast.
Ouer neygh he cam in þat fyghtyng:
The monster swallows Morpidus, He gaped wyde, & swelwed[4] þe kyng. 3800
[5] [Þus gate deid sir Morpidus;
So did þe best þat swalud him thus.][5]
ffor þe kyng men made gret mone,
but is killed itself. þe bestes deþ conforted ilkone. 3804

ſ Gorbodyan rex.

Of Morpidus's five sons, Morpydus hadde sones fyue,
& alle þey leftym byhinde alyue.[6]
Gorbodyan, fairest of flour,
& Argayl, & sire Elydour, 3808
Iugenes,[7] & sire Perodour,
. Alle fyue were kynges of honur.
Gorbodian succeeds him, a true, wise, man, Gorbodian was flour & pris, [leaf 17.]
He was trewe, feyghtful,[8] & wys; 3812
Neuere kyng wyþ so mykel loue
Ouer no lond regned[9] aboue,
loving truth, Neuere louede he no lye,[10]
No dide men wrong, lowe ne heye.[11] 3816
He was kyng ful mesurable,
and doing right. To don alle right he was ful stable;[12]
Loue & pes his tyme was ryf;

---

[1] *Al on him self.*
[2] *Hardines of hert.*
[3] *launce first he to him scet.* [leaf 23, back.]
[4] *opind his mouth & sualhid.*
[5–5] From the Petyt MS.
[6] *all left be-hind him on liue.*
[7] Vigenius, *Galf. Mon.* i. 18.
[8] *rihtfull.*
[9] *Ouer lond ne folk ne was.*
[10] *witand he ne leih.*
[11] *dide wronge to man þat deith.*
[12] P. wrongly omits this line.

Ten ȝer he lyuede þer inne his lyf. — He reigns 10 years,
In Trenouante þer he lys,
His broþer hym leyde at his deuis.

ſ Argayl Rex.

Argayl, þat next hym was born, — and is succeeded by his bad brother Argayl,
Was kyng as he had be byforn.
Wykkedly þen gan hym falle,
ffor he discorded wyþ hem alle;
þe godmen he abesed[1] mykel, — who puts down the good, lifts up the deceitful,
& auaunsed þo þat were swykel;
þe tresor þey hadden, he it hem reft;
He loued wel lyes;[2] þe soþes he left; — and loves lies.
Trowe men ne louede he nought;
Glad was he whan wo was wrought.
þe barons conseilled þeym bytwene; — His barons turn him out,
þe lond þey refte hym quyt & clene.

ſ Elydourus Rex.

þenne corouned þey sire Elydour, — and make his brother Elidour king.
Man of pite & of socour.
Argail, þat was dryuen out, — Argail in vain seeks help to recover his land,
He ȝede to prynces ouer al about
ffor help to haue his regne ageyn;
Bot his trauaille was al in veyn,
Non wolde helpe restore his perd;
þen lyued he ffyue ȝer in pouert. — and lives five years in poverty.
Sone afte[r] þe ffyue ȝeres ende,
Elydour þorow a wode schold wende, — Then he meets Elidour,
ffor to pleye by o ryuer;
þat wode, men caldit Calduter.[3]

---

[1] *abeissed . . aueanced.*
[2] *Blepely wild lie.*
[3] *kalamiter.* [leaf 23, back, col. 2.] Galatère, *Wace*, l. 3570, where Brenne fought Belin, p. 107, l. 3025 above.

Argail *þer* sire Elydour mette;
. On knes sire Elydo*ur* he grette,
prays for mercy, & asked hym g*r*a*c*e & mercy;
which Elidour grants, and then & he hym g*r*a*u*nted al redy;
On hym he hadde gret pyte,
*þa*t in pou*er*te schold hym se.
His armes abute his nekke he kast,
. His grete pou*er*te he pleyned fast;
. Whan he had longe ment his mone,
takes Argail to Aclud, and keeps him in his own room. Tyl Aclud þey wente ilkone;
In his chaumbre he dide hym be,
*þa*t non hym wiste bot in pryuete.
. Here*þ* now of sire Elydour,
. How he dide his bro*þer* gret hon*ur*.

ſſ De pietate Elydory.

Then Elidour shams illness, ſſ Elydour feyned hym sik to lye,
& seide he hopede[1] forto deye.
sends for his barons After his barons þe*n*ne he sent,
And þey alle til hym went;
A day was ordeyned for to be, [leaf 17, col. 2.]
to come and see him, *þa*t þey schold visiten[2] hym, & se;
Wyþoute noyse til hym schold[3] go,
On alone, wyþouten mo,
& speke softe & p*r*iuely,
ffor he ne moughte suffre no *cri*.
Ilkon dide þe kynges wille,
As þey come yn, þey held hem stille;
and swears them separately & als þey comen, þe kyng hem tok,
& dide þem sweren on þe bok
to do homage to Argail. ffor to don Argail homage;
Were he neue*r*e of so hey parage,
Wold he, ne wolde,[4] *þa*t scholde[3] he do,

[1] *hopid*, expected.
[2] *suld visct.*
[3] *suld.*
[4] *wild he ne wild.*

Oþer þe deþ schold he[1] go to.
Þus sonderlypes[2] he dide þem swere,
. Tyl Argayl schulde þey faiþ[3] bere.

¶ Deposito Elidoro, Argayl iterum factus est Rex.

When[4] þey had alle sworen an oþ — They all hold a Parliament at York.
Tyl Argail, wer hem lef or loþ,
Elydour & þey alle went
To ȝork, & helde a Parlement.
Elydour þer þe coroune leued, — Elidour sets his crown on Argail's head,
And set hit vpon Argailes heued,
& seide, "here gyue y þe Argayl
"Þe coroune of Bretayne holyke al." — and gives up to him the rule of Britain.
Þan seide men of sire Elydour,
Þat he of pite was fruyt & flour,
Þat forsok þe regalte,[5]
& gaf hit his broþer for pite;
. þerfore in ilka lordes[6] hous
Was he cald Elydour Pytous.
¶ Argail amended his maners, — Argail mends his manners,
. & louede his barons, & m[a]de þem pers;[7]
Was non of hem so mesurable,
Ne of his word so wys & stable;
Alle his wykked tecches he left[8] — gives up his wicked tricks,
. When [he] had take þe corown[9] eft;
. Alle hym lóuede þat hym er hated, — and all men love him.
. ffor alle his vices were abated.
Ten ȝer he regned in honour, — He reigns 10 years,
& syþen[10] fel in a langour,
& ended his lif fair & wel: — dies, and is buried at Karlel.
. Þey byried hym at Karlel.

---

[1] *Or ye dede be suld.*
[2] *sunder leps* (separately).
[3] *To Argaill suld þei feche þe bere.*
[4] *Qwen.*
[5] *regaunte.*
[6] *lordyng.*
[7] *his pes.*
[8] *tecchis left.*
[9] *whan ke tohe ye croune.*
[10] *syn.*

¶ Iterum elegerunt Elyodorum.

Elidour is chosen king,

Sire Eliadour eft þey ches,
þat loued so mikel pite & pes.
Bot Iugens & Perodours
Agayn hym gonne be[1] werreours;
Pryuely gadered þey partye,
& tok hym al wyþ tricherie;
At Londone þey dide hym in hold,
In a prison hard & cold.

but his brothers Jugens and Peredur rebel against him,

take him, prison him in London,

¶ De falsitate fratrum.

and divide his land,

Perodour & Iugenes,
þey parted al þis lond, & ches:
Iugenes tok, as hym þought best,
By northen Humber, Est & West.
Perodour hadde þat oþer partie, [leaf 17, back.]
& in a þrowe al þe seignurye;
ffor Iugenes lyued bot seuen ȝer,
Wythouten heyr, quyt & cler.
¶ Perodour gan hit þenne vnderfonge; **Rex.**
Bot he reioysed hit nought[2] longe,
ffor þe ffeuerynges[3] deþ hym tok;
. Wyþ synne hit wan, wiþ sorewe hit fursok.[4]
¶ Þen brought þey forthe sire Elydour, **Rex.**
& corouned hym wyþ honur.
When he had take[5] þe coroun,
. He dide þat tyme þe folk somoun
To se þe skaþes his breþere had don,
& amended hem al so son.
Of folyes was he god iustice,
. He refte nere man his fraunchise;

Jugens taking Northumbria,

and Peredur the rest.

In seven years Jugens dies heirless,

and Peredur has all Britain

till he dies of fever.

Then Elidour is crowned again.

He sets right the wrongs done by his brothers,

[1] *him were.*
[2] *ne ioyed it neuer.* [leaf 24, col. 2.]
[3] *ferynges.*
[4] *schame for soke.*
[5] *þris had he takyn.*

He gaf ensample of alle wysdam,
þat helden þe lond, or after hym cam;
Large of herte, of wylle fre,
He hight Elydour of pyte;
In al his tyme hit was hende,[1]
In alle godnesse his lyf gan ende;
In Aldeburghe castel was he leyd,
'Klud'[2] þat tyme þe name was seyd.

is generous and good,
dies,
and is buried in Aldborough castle.

After Elydour of pite,
His cosyn hadde þe regalte,
þe eldest sone of Gorbodian, **Rex.**
Syþen Argailes sone,[3] þat hight Morgan. **Rex.**
Þys Morgan was god & meke,
His gode wyl was nought to seke;
He was god lord[4] wyþouten ylle,
And alle hym louede wyþ gode wylle.
After Morgan, Argailles sone,[3]
ſſ Ermaneus[5] hadde þe regyone. **Rex.**
Eumaneus[5] was Morganes broþer,
Bot his maners were alle oþer,
He couþe hym neuere ffrendes gete;
Tyl al he hadde ire & hate,[6]
& alle hated hym right sore,
ffor he dide ylle to alle þat wore;
Ilkon þey found hym vengaunce ful,
Wyþ schrewes he dide hem many yl pul.[7]
Six wynter he regned in his lyf,
In felonye & in stryf:
Alle þe comune seide right þus,
"We haten hym, so doþ he vs."

Elidur is succeeded by Argail's son, Morgan,
Him, his bad brother Ermaneus succeeds,
and all the people hate him so for his evil doings

[1] *att ende*, and leaves out the next line.
[2] *Glud.*
[3] MS. *Argailessone.*
[4] *Lord titt att.*
[5] *Emmanius*, or *Ennuanius*. Enniaunus, *Geoff. Mon.*
[6] *niht and hete.*
[7] with *yuel men did him manie a putt.*

that they drive him out of the land,

. þer-opon conseillede þey,
& dryue hym out of þe lond awey ;
. þus þey reftym[1] þe kynedam,
. & noman wyste whe[re][2] he bycam. 3968

and chose Jugeneus's son, Yvalon, king.

Þenne made þey a parlement,
& chosen a kyng þorow alle assent,
[þe comon of þe region][3]
Iugeneus sone, sire Yualon.[4] Rex. 3972

He rules well,

Yualon gaf hym to trauaille,
. Al to gode þat myghte auaille ;
He dide make many estres,
And lykned muche his gode auncestres ; 3976

but soon dies,

Bot his lyf lasted[5] no stounde, [leaf 17, back, col. 2.]
Ouer sone had deþ cast hym to grounde.

and Peredur's son is made king.

When Yualo had mad his endyng,
Perodours his sone þey chose kyng. Rex.

Then come in succession,

After Perodours sone deces, 3981

Gerunces,

Was Elydours sone Gerunces ; Rex.

Catillus,

After Gerunces was Catillus ; Rex.

After Catillus was Coyllus ; Rex.

Porrex, Cheryn,

þenne was Porrex ; & þenne Cheryn, Reges.
He þat was a drynkere of wyn ; 3986
Ouer mykel drynke he ches ;

(a terrible drunkard,

Hys ȝougthe al þer-inne he les, 3988
In drynke & in dronkenesse,
Dide he neuere oþer prowesse.

but his three sons were all kings successively :)

By his wyf had he þre sones,
& alle were kynges (þe story mones) 3992
Ilkon were after oþer :

Fulgenius, Eldadus, Androcheus.

ffulgenius was þe eldest broþer ; Rex.
Eldadus, & Androcheus, Reges.
þis oþer breþere men caldem[6] þus ; 3996

---

[1] *reft him.* [leaf 24, back.]
[2] *where.*
[3] From P.
[4] Vigenius . . Idrovallo, *Geoff. M.*
[5] *bot lif was.*
[6] *þe toþer breþer called men.*

Lytel while was ilkon kyng,
Alle made þey sone þer endyng.
Androcheus sone highte Vryan, Rex. Then Uryan,
He regned a ȝer, & deide þan. 4000
After Vrian, Elyud men ches; Rex. Elyud,
He hadde his tyme þe lond yn pes.
After Elyud, Endacius;[1] Rex. Endacius,
After þan, Doten[2]; syþen Gurguttus; Reges. Doten, Gurguttus,
Syþen was Merian, fayr in chere, Rex. and Merian,
He couþe of wode & of ryuere; 4006 skilful in hunting,
In alle manere venurye,
Hym lyked best swylke maystrie. 4008
Ladies bed hym of loue ynow, and loved by ladies.
Bot to non of hem wolde his loue bow,
Bot onlyke til his owen wyf;
So ended Merian his lyf. 4012
After Meryan was Bleludo Rex. Then his son Bleludo reigns,
His sone, & couthe of wode also;
Large he was, & gaf bleþely, a free giver,
He spared to[3] non þat was worþy; 4016
Alle men hym loued, for he was fre, and loved by all.
Erl, baron, & knyght, & oþer meyne.

After þys noble Bleludo Then reign
Cam Capes,—hys name was so;— Rex. 4020 Capes,
After Capes, Oeneus; Rex. Oeneus,
After Oeneus cam Sysillius; Rex. Sysillius,
After Sysilly com Glegabret,[4] Rex. and Glegabret,
A syngere of þe beste get;[5] 4024
Of song & of mynstrecye
Alle men gaf hym þe maystrie; the best singer
Þe note he couþe of alle layes,
Of mynstrecye al þer assayes;[6] 4028

[1] Cledamus, *Geoff. M.* Clédantius, *Wace*, l. 3737.
[2] Cletonus, *Geoff. M.* Cloten, *Wace*, l. 3738.
[3] *of.*
[4] *Blegabret.*
[5] *þat was a syngere of þe get.*
[6] *& mynstralcie all þe saies.*

He coupe so mykel musyk & thume
þat þe people [saide[1]] in his tyme
and fiddler of his time; He was þe best[2] of ffythelers,
Of iogelours & of sangesters, 4032
ffor he was euere glad &[3] gamen,
ffele in seruise held he samen.
Of ioye & song was his spel;
a gentle man, who lives in melody till he dies. Was he neyþer irous ne[4] fel, 4036
. Bot led his lyf in melodye [leaf 18.]
. Ynto þe tyme þat he schold deye.
Next, Archyval is king; After hym was Archyuaul,[5] Rex.
Pesable he was,—God haue ys saul!— 4040
then Eldol, with a fool's poll, a lecherous beast, After hym was his sone Eldol; Rex.
Hit seys he hadde a folted pol,
ffor he was euere lecherous,
Of women ouer coueytous. 4044
A gentil womman, where he myght[6] fynde,
Were scheo neuere so noble of kynde,
who spares no woman, wedded or single; for Wheþer scheo were wedded or nought,
His lecherie he wolde haue y-wrought; 4048
& for þencheson of his folye,
which, men hate him. Men hated hym, as was worthie.
Then reign Redyon, After Eldolf, þys folted fon,
Cam his sone hight Redyon. Rex.
. Redyon hadde þe kynedam, 4053
Redrik, & after Redyon, Redryk cam; Rex.
Famour, Myssel, Pyrchel (who has wonderfully fair hair). Syþen was ffamour, & kyng Myssel;[7] Reges.
And after hym com kyng Pyrchel: Rex.
Pyrchel had fair heued wiþ her, 4057
Þorow gift of kynde þat was er;[8]
Som what was hit fair out of kynde,
. þat ȝut of his her[8] write men fynde. 4060

---

[1] *said.* [2] *was god.*
[3] ? for *in* or *to.*
[4] *not irous no.*
[5] *Archmaul,* or *Archiuaul.*
[6] *if he mot.* [leaf 25.]
[7] *& Famur & Missel,* for which *Geoff. Mon.* has "Samuelpenissel," and *Wace* "rois Phanupenisel," l. 3799.
[8] *heire.*

After hym cam Caporus ; Rex. Caporus,
Syþen, his sone Elignellus.[1] Rex. Elignellus (a wise man),
þys Elygnellus, fol wys was he,
Man of mesure wel auyse ;
After hym regned his sone Ely Rex. and Ely,
ffully to-gidere ȝeres fourty ;
. A noble man was he, & a wys ; a noble man,
. ffaire he deyd, & at Castre lys.

¶ Lud Rex.

Helye had þre sones wyghte : who has three sons,
þe eldest sone, Lud he highte ; Lud,
þat oþer was Cassibalan ; Cassibalan,
þe þrydde, Nemny,[2] a doughti man. and Nemny.
Lud was eldest, most of age, Lud is first king,
Hym fel to haue þe heritage ;
Knyght was he fol god in stour,
& lyberal man, & vyaundour ;[3] makes feasts,
Cites & casteles newe dide set ; builds cities,
Of þe olde mad he god recet ;[4]
He louede Londoñ best of alle, puts a wall
þerfore vmb-closedit wyþ a[5] walle ; round London,
Manye ar þe clos me[6] se ȝit stande,
þat Lud dude make, hym[7] lyuande.
ffor barons & for burgeys sake,
Grete stedes til hem dide he make ;
þerfore men seye, & ȝit men may,
þat neuere bifore vnto þat day
Made kyng byforn so fele cites,
Ne castels, ne clos, þat ȝut men ses.

[1] Cligueillus, *Geoff.* ; Elignellius, *Wace.* MS. du Roi, 7515[3·3] Colb. De Lincy, i. 181, note [a].

[2] *Nenny* (Nennius, *Geoff.* and *Wace*, l. 3812).

[3] *& metegift man viandoure.* [lf. 25.]

[4] *gude rescette.*

[5] *he closed it about with.*

[6] *meñ.*

[7] *whils he was.*

ſſ Tyl Luddes tyme men held þat haunt,
which was first called Trenovant, To calle London Trenouant;
ffor þe loue of Lud ylk del,
þat woned *per* longe, & closed hit wel,
then (after Lud) Kaer Lud, . & was of hym so gret renoun;
Kaer Lud þer fore men calde þe toun.
þenne come o*þer*e men were st*ra*unge; [lf. 18, col. 2.]
then London, then (by the Saxons) ffor þe Lud, London dide hit chaunge,
þenne come Saxoyns, men of Angle,
. Als þey couþe on þer speche iangle,
Ludden, ffor Kaer-lud caldyt Ludden,
þat couþe þey best com on & ken;
and (by the Normans) þenne come þe Norm*a*unz & þe Frankisch,
Couþe nought com on to calle hit þis;
Londres. ffor London, Londres þey hit calde;
ȝit Frensche men þat name[1] halde.
ffor regnynge[2] of kynges st*ra*unge,
(Through foreign kings who've conquered this land, ffor diu*er*se speche, langage men chaunge,
þat han þis lond often ywo*n*nen,
. & þorow riden & þorow ro*n*nen,
names have got changed.) & [3] þe names chaunget *þer* fore;
. Som names ar lasse, & som ar more;
I hope fo[4] tounes þat now are
Hold *þer* names þat first ware.

When Lud dies, When sire Lud, þe gode kyng,
Was ded, & don was[5] his endynge,
he is buried by Ludgate. Byside his gate þey hym leyd,
þat, for his name, Ludgate ys seyd:
. He yt made, & he yt aughte,
. Lodgate for hym þe name laughte.
He leaves two infant children, Of Lud were left two childre ȝyng;
Lond to kepe couþe þey no þyng:

---

[1] *oñ frankis ȝit* þat *name men.* [leaf 25, col. 2.]
[2] *be remouyng.*
[3] *Ere.*
[4] MS. þe. P. reads *fo.*
[5] *& mad.*

Þe eldest hight Androcheus,
Þat oþer men calde Tenuacius.[1]
Cassibolon was þer em, — and their uncle,
. Þe nexte sibbe of *þat* tem, — Cassibolan,
He kepte þe childre & *þat* lond;
Men held hym kyng, faire he *þem* fond; — is made king.
He mayntende þe lond to ryght,
He was curteys & doughty knyght;
Þe folke he couþe wel iustise,
Of hem he hadde fair *ser*uise.

When þe childre were of elde — When the children come of age,
Þat þey couþe lordschip welde,
In to[2] erldomes he dide *þem* seyse,
. Worschipfoly, al atter ayse.
Androcheus hadde, þorow assent, — he gives Androcheus London and Kent,
Londoñ, & þe erldom[3] of Kent; — and Tenvacius Cornwall.
Þat oþer broþer had þe baylle
Of þe erldom of Cornewaille.
When ilk was sesed in his erldam,
þey were cald Erles, whare þey cam.
To whyle þe kyng & his cosyns — All is happy while they agree;
In loue loken ar þer lynes,
Richesse þey hadde ynow to wylle,
& of no lond dredde þey non ylle,
Ne neuere þurt hem haue[4] drad no tyde.
. Bot ouerwenyng of herte pride
Ros a discord hem bytwene, — but pride raises strife between them, which lasts 400 years,
Þat longe in þys londe was sene;
. ffour hundred ȝer hit lasted, & nyne,
. In þis lond *þat* firste pyne;
. Hit bigan, as ȝe may se,
. Of Cassibolon & Androche,
þorow whilk sorewe þe Romayns wan — and makes Cassibolan pay

[1] Tenuantius, *Geoff.* Tenuencius, *Wace.*
[2] *tuo.*
[3] MS. *Erldon.*
[4] *thorte haf.* [leaf 25, back.]

tribute to the Romans,

Truage of Cassibolan,
þat myghte nere be wonne[1] byforn, [leaf 18, back.]
. Tyl þer loue þorow pride was lorn;[2] 4156
. Whyle *þer* loue to-gedere held,
whom they always beat before. . Might neuere no Romayn bide þem in feld,
. þat þey ne chased, þorow force of fight,
. Cesar of Rome, & al his myght. 4160
This is how it comes about. . How hit bygan bytwyxt þem bale,
. Listeþ, & y schal rede þe tale.

¶ Exe de Iulio Cesare, Romanor*um* Inp*er*atore.

In Cassibolan's time is Julius Cæsar emperor of Rome,

In þe tyme of Gassybolan,
Iulius Cesar, a myghty man, 4164
þat tyme was Emperour of Rome.
Of alle knyghtes[3] he bar þe blome,
Of alle þo þat men of[4] herd,
ffor he conquered al þe werd; 4168
and a doughty, learned, Als he was doughti knygt, & god,
In clergie wel he hym vnderstod,
wise, Of conseil he was man ful wys,
& of manhod he bar þe pris; 4172
and liberal man. Hys gyftes he gaf largely,
. He wyste to wham hit[5] was worthi;
. ffals & felon he couþe wel knowe;
. þe ouer proude, he held þem lowe. 4176
The Romans are masters of all lands around them, þe Romayns were þan of pride,
ffor þey hadde wonne on ilka side;
þe londes oueral þem aboute,
. & gauen þeym truage for doute. 4180
but Cæsar wants to conquer farther-off lands. When Iulyus had wonne þus þere,
ffurþer he þoughte to conquere;
. Long nold he soiourne[6] ne rest,

---

[1] *mot neuer wyn it.*
[2] P. omits the next four lines.
[3] *of knyghthede.*
[4] *tyme were.*
[5] *whom &.*
[6] *ne wald he soioure.* [1f.25, bk. cl. 2.]

. Tyl he had wonnen toward þe west.
Hardy Iulius, knyght war & wys,
. Preysed of prowesse, of poer had[1] *pris*;
He gadered hym of knyghte ȝonge,
. Of alle nacions þat speke wyþ tonge,
& tok his leue at [þe] Romayns,
. To wende fro *þem* for longe teymes;[2]
. West, he seide he wolde wende,
To wynnen to þe wordles ende.[3]

He gathers a host,

and leaves Rome,

to conquer to the world's end.

Whan Iulyus was wel dight ynow,
He passed Burgoyne & Moungow.[4]
ffyrst he wan al Burgoyne,
ffraunce, Nawuarre, & Gascoigne,
Peytowe, Normandye, þe lesse Bretayne;
Syþen went agayn til Alemayne;
Alle he wan hit ar he þeþen[5] nam,
Siþen to Boloyne & to fflaundres he cam,
& al conquered vnto þe se,
Al gaf truage to Rome in fe.
. Whan al was wonne, wel heldyn[6] payd,
. By þe se a day he ȝede & playd;
Toward þe se his eye[7] gan kest,
& faste byheld toward þe west:
" What ys ȝone lond y ȝonder se,
" & what [folk][8] euere *þer* may be?"
Men hym tolde hit was a lond
þat folk of Troye first[e] fond;
Brutus highte *þer* firste cheftayn,
& after hym hit hatte Bretayn;
þe heires þat of hym ar comen,
In heritage þey haue hit nomen.

Cæsar wins

all France,

Germany,

and Flanders,

and then from the seashore, sees

a land in the west.

He is told

[leaf 18, back, col. 2.]

it is Britain, held by Brutus's descendants.

---

[1] *pruesse powere &.*
[2] *to wyne londes lungeteyns* (les lontains, *Wace*, i. 186, l. 3922).
[3] *werldis end.*
[4] *Fr.* Mon Gius. *Lat.* Mons Jovis.
[5] *þien.*
[6] *held him.*
[7] *egh.*
[8] *folk/.*

¶ Dicta Iulii Inperatoris.

Cæsar says that, as Brutus came from Æneas,

Julyus answered & seide right þus:
" Wel han y herd of sire Brutus;
." He saide he com of Eneas kynde,
." Bot ryghtly born nought we fynde;
" He com of Eneas, þat held þo landes

who held the Roman land,

" þer Rome our cite now yn standes;
" ȝyf he were born of Eneas kyn,

he can of course claim Britain.

" þorow kynde y sette chalange þer-yn;
." Chalange y wole þat lond þorow ryght,
." þat Eneas kynde gete þorow[1] myght.
" Ys þat lond — loke[2] ȝe me kenne —
" þat bolde Belym was of, & Brenne,
" þat oure cite of Rome wan,
" Oure se[n]e, &[3] destruyed ilkaman?
" Wel schal þey wite, whyle[4] y am her,
" þat Rome ys now of more power!

Besides, as

" & right hit were, & reson hit welde,
" þat þey til vs truage schold ȝelde:

Britain and Rome were both Belin's,

." ȝone ilde was Belynes, & Rome was his;

he Cæsar, who has Rome now, can claim Britain too.

." Gret skil haue y þenne þorow þys,
." ffor to sette chalange þer-inne,
." þat his lond was, þorow right to wynne.

He'll summon the Britons to yield;

" By letteres woly hem first somoune,
" To here þer wyl, what þey respoune;
" Nought ne woly passe þe se
." Til y wyte how þey answere me.
" ȝyf þey to my pes wille hem chese,
" & ȝeld hit me, þey schol nought lese;

and if they won't, will claim their land.

." ȝyf þey ne wol nought bot wyþ stour,
." y dereyne þe lond for our."

So Cæsar writes a letter

þay dide Iulyus write a bref,
& schewed hem how he was chef,

---

[1] *had of.* [leaf 26.]
[2] *Es* ȝon þat *Ilde* þat.
[3] our *seene* (senate).
[4] *witte tilt.*

. & how his kynde fyrst hit wan:
. Of Eneas com Brut*us*, þ*at* man,
. & syþen was Belynes heritage;
He wold hit wynn*en*, or take t*ru*age.
Þe l*ett*ere com to Cassibolan,
. þ*at* he schold bycome sire Iuly*us*[1] man.
. Cassibolan brak þe seal o sunder;
Of t*ru*age askyng he had wonder;
Anoþ*er* l*ett*ere dede he wryte þare,
& sent hit ageyn vntil Cesar
Al in ire & in tene,
& þe l*ett*ere[2] þus mykel wol mene:

asking for Britain or tribute for it.

Cassibolan answers it in wrath,

∫ Rescripc*io* Cassibolany ad Inp*er*atore*m*.

∫ " Cesar," he saide, " we haue m*er*uaill*e* and says,
" & gret desdeyn, wyþouten faill*e*, " We wonder at
" þ*at* of ȝow Romayns r*e*nnes silk los,—
" & to longe hit lastes after hit[3] gos,—
" þ*at* ar of so gret couetyse the covetousness of you Romans, who have endless treasure,
" þ*at* non bot ȝe may haue fr*a*unchise;
" And al þe syluer & al þe gold,
" & all*e* lynage þ*at* lyuen on mold,
" Til ȝour*e* dom wil ȝe þ*em* drawe; [leaf 19.]
" Wy[þ]oute reson, wyþoute lawe,
" Al þe tresor ȝe drawe ȝow to:
" What wil ȝe þ*er*-wyþ al do? (What can you do with it all?)
" & we þ*at* ar*e* atte wor[l]des ende,
" & in an ylde lyue[4] & lende, and yet want tribute from us at the world's end,
" ȝyt ȝe ne wil[5] passe vs forby
" Wyþoute truage askyng[6] greuously!
" & we[7] þ*at* schal & ben[8] ȝour peres, from us who are your equals!
" ȝit wolde ȝe make vs truagers!

[1] *suld com Iulius þat man.*
[2] *writte.*
[3] *& fer it.*
[4] *lif.* [leaf 26, col. 2.]
[5] *witt ȝe nouht.*
[6] *bot ȝorgh treuage.*
[7] MS. *were.*
[8] *we þat suld be.*

If you want tribute,

come and fight for it.

We have been,

we will be, free!

Like you, we are sprung

from Æneas.

You should not want to enslave us.

We wonder at a noble man conceiving such villainy!

Our kin have never known servage;

neither do we know it.

God helping, we'll keep free

" *perfore*, Iuli*us*, ȝyf þou wilt assay,
" & of þy comynge[1] sette vs a day,
" Y trowe þou schalt fol euele[2] spede.
" Com on, & proue hit in[3] dede!
" ffor eue*re* ȝit haue we lyued fre
" Y þis lond, bot now for þe,
" & schul we lyue als[4] frely
" As ȝe Romayns; & reson whi:
" Syn we ar comen alle of o[5] kynde,
" & of o rote & of o rynde,[6]
" þat ys to seyn,[7] of Eneas,
" As frely born as eue*re* þou was.
" *perfore*, ȝyf þou þe byþoughtest
" In skil & reson as þou oughtest,[8]
" þou scholde nought put vs to[9] ser*u*age,
" Syn we ben of þyn owen[10] lynage;
" We schul be pe*re*s to ȝow of Rome,
" In alle fredam haue euenly dome.
" Vs wondreþ at ȝowre nurt*ure* of[11] pris,
" þat swylke vilenie in þe now lys,
" In ser*u*age to put vs to!
" & we wot nought how we scholde do,
" We neue*re* lered, ne nought wil lere,
" ȝyf þat we may, in none mane*re*.
" Of alle oure kynde, y ne wyste no man
" þat couþe of ser*u*age,[12] ne ȝut ne can;
" Ne we knowe nought on what wyse
" We scholde ser*u*e ser*u*age ser*u*ise.
" ffre we ar, so schol we be;
" & ȝyf God wyl, we schul[13] for þe!

---

[1] *to com titt vs &.*
[2] *suld litett.*
[3] *If þou wild proue it* with.
[4] *we suld life also.*
[5] *for ȝe & we ere att a.*
[6] *comen of a rute & a rynde. Fr.* orine (origin), *Wace*, i. 190, l. 4010.
[7] *for we ere comen.*
[8] *& after skill & reson wrouhtis.*
[9] *þou suld not sette vs in.*
[10] *þat ere of þin awen.*
[11] *Als þou ert Ientitt & of grete.*
[12] *seruise.*
[13] *Cesar.*

" Wite þou wel by oure answe[re],
" While[1] we may oure seluen were,
" & fende oure lond & oure fraunchise,
" Of vs getestow neuere seruise!
" Ne neuere truage schol we þe gyue;[2]
" þat ys to seye, whiles þat we lyue, while we live."
" We wol be fre, & holde honurs,
" As dide byforn our auncessours."
To Iulius swylk a lettere þey sent; Cæsar then
& when Iulius wiste þat entent,
þat ȝif he wold haue any truage,
Nede byhoued[3] hym make passage,
þenne dide he make schipes & barges, prepares a fleet;
ffoure score wyþ grete charges,—
So grete byfore were neuere for were, [leaf 19, col. 2.]
Ne non þat so gret[4] charge myght bere,—
Wyþouten oþer schipes smale,
þat we nought telde byforn in[5] tale.

¶ De nauigio Cesaris.

¶ When Iulius Cesar was al redy,
To go to schipe þey made a cry; his men go on board,
His folk com in-to schipe right fast,
& drowe þer saylles vp heye on[6] mast;
þen blew þe wynd, and gan hem dryue, sail off,
At an heuen þey gon vp aryue,[7] and land at
þer Temese & þe se to-gydere comen. Thames haven.
Bot er Cesar hadde vp lond ynomen,[8]
þer was sprad by þe se side
ffair folk to fighte, Cesar tabyde:[9]

---

[1] *tiłł.* [leaf 26, back.]
[2] *ne treuage I gyf þe a gyue.*
[3] *nedeli borde.*
[4] *heuy.*
[5] *were not telde of in þat.*
[6] *did drawe þe saile on þe.*
[7] *ryue.*
[8] *þe land had nomen.*
[9] *to bide.*

Cassibolan opposes Cæsar at Dover.

Cassibola[n] [1] was redy at Douere,
. & renged his men by þe ouere ; [2]

His steward, Sir Belin, has summoned the British host:

Hys styward highte sire Belyn,
Of conseil was he god & fyn ;
He hadde do comen þorow [3] somons
On alle [4] half, erles & barons.
þe kynges neuews com wyþ gret [5] partie,—
To hem he myghte hym well [6] affye,—

Androcheus with his Londoners,

[7] þe eldest highte Androcheus,
þat oþer broþer Temuacius ;
Androcheus & his Loundreneys,[7]

Tenvacius with his Cornishmen,

Tenuacius wiþ his Cornwaleys,

Nemnius, with his Kentish,

Sire Nemnius, sire of Kanterbire,
þe noblest of al þe empire :
þe kynges broþer was Sire Nemny,
Androcheus was in his compaigny,
. & oþer folk [ful] gret plente.

and the kings of Scotland, North Wales, and South Wales.

Wyþ ostes were þer kynges þre :
Erudyonus, þere [8] Scottes kynge,
Britalles wyþ al þe Walsche garderynge;
Of South Walys com kyng Ignarcet ;
þyse þre were in [o] [9] bataille set,
Wyþ here frewille þyse þre cam
ffor to defende þe[r] [10] fredam.

All advise an attack on the Romans,

Ilkon gaf conseil to go
Er þe Romayns were logged mo ;

---

[1] *Cassibelan.*

[2] *him bi þe ses ouere.* (A.-Sax. *ofer* shore).

[3] *don com þorgh.*

[4] *ilk.*

[5] *neuoz þe to.*

[6] *on þo tuo he myght.*

[7-7] *Androcheus & his lordynges, londreis.*

[8] þe. [leaf 26, back, col. 2.]

[9] *a.*

[10] *þar.*

ſ Bellum inter Romanos & Cassibolanum.

ſ Er þey hadde ony recet taken, — before they are in fortifications.
. þey þoughte þey wolde hem a-wake[n].[1]
When alle were set in ylka bataille,
& schept ho scholde formest assaille,[2] 4364
Toward þe Romayns faste þey nomen. — The Britons advance.
Whan Cesar sey þat þey scholde comen,
He cried to hys men "armes ȝow! — Cæsar calls his
" þe Bretons ar redy, & come right now." 4368 host to arms,
Sone were þer bataille[3] to-gedere met,
& to bataille renget & set: — and a fierce battle follows.
[4][þe parties smert smyten togidre,
With scharp suerdes oñ helmes gan glidre. 4372
þer schaftes þorgh schoten body & schelde;
Many on fell, & many vphelde;
Many tome sadill & hors ostray,
Many douhti knyght doun þer lay;] 4376
Many on wounded lay þer to blede,
& manyon stode, som fledde for drede;
Knyghte[5] iustede, archers drowe, — The archers kill
On boþe parties fol manie þey slowe, 4380 many.
þei come so þikke & so smert, [leaf 19, back.]
& perced brunyes,[6] brest & hert;
Wyþ wyfles[7] strike, wyþ axes hewe, — Axes hew off
Schuldres, schankes, & hedes, doun hewe;[8] 4384 limbs and heads.
Alle was strewed þe grene gras — The grass is
Wyþ blod & bowaille[9] & heuedes fresch. — strewed with bowels and
fful hard was þer, & moste[10] nede; — heads.
þe quiyke vpon þe dede ȝede; 4388

[1] *or* þei *wild hald* þam *waken.*
[2] *whilk of* þam *suld formast saile.*
[3] *ostes.*
[4] The next six lines are from P.
[5] *knyghtes.*
[6] *hauberk.*
[7] (A.-S. *wifel*, arrow, dart, javelin.) *stanes*, P.
[8] *þe schuldres þe schankes doun threwe.*
[9] *bowes.*
[10] *no ferly was it behoued.*

Vpon þe dede þey stode to fight,
& eue*r*yche[1] slow þ*a*t he slo myght.
Cæsar fights bravely against his foes; — Cesar hadde in his bataill*e*
Knyghte þ*a*t couþe boþe fende & saill*e*; 4392
He peyned hym to do þeym wo,
& faste he folewede hem for to slo;
Was þ*er* no m*a*n[2] þ*a*t he smot,
þ*a*t ful sor*e* on hym ne[3] bot; 4396
none can stand against him. — Mighte þ*er* noman lyue no stounde,
þ*a*t of his swerd[e] laughte[4] wounde.
Nemnius works with Androcheus, — Androcheus com wyþ þo of Kent,
& Nemny*us*, to-gedere þey went, 4400
þey set o þe Romayns a gret[5] p*a*rtie,
& beot hem doun[6] as men hardie,
& seide "Turne we vpon Sezar!"
& als þey rod, þey were hym[7] war. 4404
Nemmy*us* fyrst ferde in þe stour,
and attacks Cæsar. — & bated hym opon[8] þe emper*o*ur,
And ful glad was þ*a*t he myght
Wiþ so noble[9] a lordyng fyght. 4408
Cæsar — Cesar p*er*seyued þ*a*t he cam,
A-geyn his scheld a strok[10] vp nam;
Cesars swerd[11] was out ful sone;
hits Nemnius on the head, — Nemny to smyte he was al bone, 4412
& Nemny on þe heued he smot;
Hit was trenchaunt, ou*er* fer hit bot,
Bot Nemny bar vp his scheld,
His heued a party lowe hit held;[12] 4416
ȝit þe strok sank so doun,
and breaks his crown, — þorow þe helm he[13] brak his croun;

---

[1] *alle.*
[2] *was it non.* [leaf 27.]
[3] *þat ne þe dede sone him bote.*
[4] *toke any.*
[5] *þei gadred þam a gode.*
[6] *batailed þam.*
[7] *of him.*
[8] *abatid him on.*
[9] *grete.*
[10] *his stroke his scheld.*
[11] *Cesar suerde.*
[12] *lowe a parti helde.*
[13] *schelde &.*

Lite failled þat he ne had
Clouen þe hed, þe[1] dynt was sad;
Bot Nemny bar þe scheld o sker,
& Iulius smot his swerd ouer fer,
þat he ne myghte drawe hyt ageyn;
Naþeles he dide þerto his peyn,
He drow þe swerd, Nempny þe scheld,
Ilkon wel his owen held;
Nemny wilde haue turnd & went,
Bot Iulius wiþ þe draught hym hent;
I hope Iulyus had drawen hit out,
Bot Nemnyus fol[k][2] were egre & stout.
Androcheus, Nemnyus neuew,[3]
Wyþ hem of Kent dide gret prow;
On ilka side þey slowe aboute,
& Cesar saw hym self in doute,
& fro þem fledde in to þe feld,
& lefte his swerd in Nemnyus scheld.
Nemny saw of help ynow,
He turned þe scheld, þe swerd out drow,
& wiþ þat swerd forþ he faught;
Bot þo þat þer-wyþ woundes laught,
Myghte þey neuere haue medecyne, [lf. 19, bk., col. 2.]
Bot to þe deþ by-houed hem[4] pyne.
Als he þus faught, þys Nemmyus,
He ouer-tok sire Labemnius,[5]—
A lord he was of gret baillye,
In Rome he hadde a constablerye,[6]—
Nemnius swilk a strok hym lent,
þat by þe schuldres þe hed of went.
How manye þer deide, y may nought ame;
Of alle þe fighters y knowe no name;

but catches his sword in Nemnius's shield,

and, for fear of Androcheus, is

obliged to flee and leave it there.

Nemnius pulls out Cæsar's sword,

and kills whomsoever he hits with it,

including Labemnius, a great lord of Rome.

Many are killed.

[1] *Clouen* þe *borde.*
[2] *folk.*
[3] *neuow.*
[4] þe *dede bod* þam. [leaf. 27, col. 2.]
[4] *labennius.* (Labienus, *Geoff.* and *Wace.*)
[5] *constablie.* (conestablie, *Wace*, i. 198, l. 4177.)

Bot *þer* was manyon doun leyd,
. Wel mo þan any man wrot or seyd,
Night sunders the hosts. & wel mo scholde ȝit *þat* nyght,
Had þey nought sondred for faute of lyght.[1]

¶ De fuga Romanor*um*.

Þen com þe nyght, gon was þe day,
& ilka p*ar*ty ȝede *þer* way.
The Romans in dismay draw off, Þe Romayns syde was nought payd,
Logges non hadde, þey were dismayed;
Wery þey were, & yuel lykande,[2]
. ffor wiþ þe Brutons þey myght[3] nout st*an*de.
þey toke conseil a-wey to wende,
. No lenger in þys lond to lende;
ffor þe contre knew þey nought,
Logge ne recet had þey non wrought;
and sail that night to Flanders, To schipe þey wente *þat* ilke nyght,
Vntil fflaundres þey fley *þer* flyght.
to the Britons' joy. Þe Bretons made blisse, ilkon,
Þat þe Romayns were so gon;
Bot þe kyng made sorewe ynow
But Nemnius ffor Nemny*us*, *þat* to deþe drow;[4]
Medicyne myghte non be founde
Þat myghte hele Nemny*us* wounde.
. Of sire Nemny nought elles to seye,
dies 15 days after, and is buried near Northgate in London, Bot þe fiftenþe day Nemny gan deye.[5]
þey buryed hym in a temple gate,
In Londoñ, atte Northe gate,
Hon*ur*abloker[6] þan an oþer,
ffor he was þe kynges broþer.

---

[1] *had ne sondred* þam & *left* þer *fight.*
[2] *itt likand.*
[3] One stroke too many in the *m.*
[4] *Nennius to dede drouh.*
[5] *he died oñ* þe *fiftend day.*
[6] *Honorable more.*

De gladio Cesaris.

þat swerd he wan of sire Cesar, — with Cæsar's sword by his side.
By hym in græue þey leide hit þar,
ffor he was of gret honur,
. & he haddyt wonnen y þat stour.
þe swerd was of swylk metal,
þat who þat wounded were wyþ-al,
He ne scholde nought longe lyue
ffor medicine men myghte hym gyue.
. Why of deþ hit hadde þe gylt,
Hit was writen on þe hilt
Wyþ lettres of gold, burnusched bryght,
þat "Crucia mors" þat swerd hight:
[1] Hit myghte wel hote "Crucia mors;"
Wham hit wounded, hit was ded cors;
. & ȝit hit ys seyd y þe Romaunce,
. þe enperours swerd was al vengaunce.
Til þeym of ffraunce cam tidyng tyt,
How þe Romayns were desconfit
. þorow þe Bretons in pleyn bataille.
þanne mysliked þeym saunz faille,
And for cowardes þem selue ches,
ffor þey were at [þe][2] Romayns pes.
þey conseilled þem a day certeyn,
Vpon Cesar to turne a-geyn;
In þer conseil þei seide þus:
"Als þe Bretons chased Iulyus,
"ȝut schul[3] we fonde so to spede,
"To do sire Iulius fle for drede.
"þe Bretons be nought ȝit so bolde
"As we haue ben, [ne] men of tolde,[4]
"& so lyghtly dide þem lout!
"ȝit schul[3] we fonde to chace hem out.
"Hit are ynowe þat first han grace

4481 4484 4488 4492 4496 [leaf 20.] 4500 4504 4508

The sword is the death of whomsoever it wounds,

and is called "*Crocea Mors.*"

When the Gauls hear that the Romans have been defeated,

they resolve to rebel against them.

The Gauls say, that as the Britons

are not very bold,

and yet can beat Cæsar, so will they,

---

[1] P. has, for the next three lines, on leaf 27, back, *& ȝit men say as sais þe romance.*

[2] *þe.*

[3] *ȝit sall.*

[4] *als we ere ne men of tolde.*

" ffor to wynne, & robbe, & chace,
" & siþen turnes *þer* praye til pyne;
" Lyghtli þey wynne, lightly þey tyne:
and put down the Roman rule. " *þer* lordschip ȝit schul we abate,
" ffor alle þe world þey wynne wyþ hate."
þus þey seyde *þat* þey wold do;
& ȝit alday men telle *þem* so,[1]
þat þe Bretons[2] wolde fonde a flyght
ffor to felle þe Romayns myght.[3]
þat sawe made[4] þeym wylde & wod,
& reysed *þem* more vp in þer mod:
But Cæsar soon quiets them. Bot sone þer bost was al in griþ,
Whan sire Iuli*us* had spoken hem wyþ.
Sire Iuli*us* Cesar was ful queynte,
He is cunning, Wisdam he couþe, & wordes feynte;
can bully A folet couþe he wel adaunte,[5]
or crouch, To proude men *þer* wylle graunte.

ſ De blandisc*ione* Cesarys.

bribe, Wel couþe he paye þe couetous,
& wynne[6] þe wille of þe enuyous;
& ful wel couþe bere hym meke
or be meek. When his strengtħ[7] was for to seke.
He wiste *þat* þe frenche men[8] were fykel,
& how þey forcedem[9] agayn hym mykel;
His men are badly off, and wounded. & his men were yuel[10] dight,
Wery & wounded al[11] in fight;

[1] *teld* þam *to.*

[2] MS. *frensche. bretons,* P. Que li Breton mer passeroient, *Wace,* l. 4249 (after *Geoffrey*).

[3] *france to help* þe *romeyns to fight.*

[4] *mad.*

[5] *a felon* [*Wace,* félon] *couþ he fuƚƚ wele daunte.* [lf. 27, bk., col. 2.]

[6] *He wan.*

[7] *force.*

[8] *wist* þe *frankis men.*

[9] *forced* þem.

[10] *ille.*

[11] *& weri for-fouhten.*

Leuer hym were in loue þem loute,[1]
þan in bataille to ben[2] in doute;
. þe Bretons hadden hasted hem[3] so,
. þat tyme in dede myghte þey nought do.
. Wyþ faire wordes hem to hym drow; — So he speaks the Gauls fair,
& gaf hem giftes & richesse[4] ynow,—
ffor of his giftes he was ful large, — and gives them great gifts.
. ffor schame þey moughte hym namore charge;—
& more he byhet, þan gyue[5] he myght,
þe Bretons to wynne wiþ force & fight.
To pore men he gaf fraunchise, — He sets free the poor,
& cleymed þeym quit[6] of þer seruise;
þo men he hadde flemed[7] þe contre, — recalls the exiles
. To comen ageyn he gaf hem fre,
& to haue þer heritage, — to their inheritance;
& restored þeym of here[8] damage.
þerfore when þis grete lordynges — and thus quiets the Gauls.
Seyen Cesar ofre[9] þem swylke þynges—
. Gold & syluer atter[10] wille— [leaf 20, col. 2.]
In pes þey held hem alle stille.
Mikel ys richesse of power! — Great is the power of money!
ffor sone had he bated wo & wer,[11]
. Sone had he turned wrong to right,
. Sone had he blent þe coueytous sight,
. Sone made he frend þat er were wroþe, — It turns Cæsar's foes to friends,
. Of Cesar & þe ffrankysche boþe;
ffor þo þat hym byforen hated,
Wiþ[12] hys gyftes were alle abated;

[1] *luf to loute.*

[2] *com to bataile & be.*

[3] *had þam hasted.*

[4] *giftes riche;* and leaves out the next two lines.

[5] *hette þam if þat.*

[6] clamé quite, *Wace.* Eng. "quit-claim."

[7] *þat he had fled.* [*Wace*, escillié].

[8] *þam þer.*

[9] *sawe Cesar offer.*

[10] *at þer.*

[11] *wheere* ; and leaves out the next two lines, and transposes the two next to them.

[12] *for.*

and makes his rebels loyal.

Þat schopen hym yuel[1] & outrage,
Þey diden[2] hym fewte & homage,
At his conseil for to lende,
Ageyn þe Bretons ȝyf he wold wende.
Whan sire Cesar,[3] lord & sire,
Had pesed & swaged al þer ire,

Cæsar then gets built at Boulogne a wonderful tower, "Ordre;"

He conseilled hym wyþ an engynour,
& dide hym make a merueyllous tour
In Boloygne: "Ordre" ys þe name.
So wrought ys non bot þat same;
By-neþen hit is in strange compas;
Brod & þykke þe gynnynge was,
& euere hit nareweþ[4] rysande on heyght,
& semeþ griller[5] & more streight.
Selcouþe stages ar þer-ynne,
Wyndowes cast, coruen wiþ gynne.

puts his treasure in it, and stays there two years

His tresor he leyde þer inne to lok,
Onlyke þer al þat he toke;
& hym self lay in þe tour,
When he dred hym of[6] his tresour.
Two ȝer he dwelled þer in ffraunce,
& dight hit for werre in alle[7] chaunce;

collecting money.

He sente to baillifs to gadere hym[8] fees,
& reisede his truwage of his citees.
Whan al was gadered on ylk party,
In Ordre þey leide hit in tresory.

Then he makes ready

In two ȝer he dide hym dight,
& made hym to Brutayne right,[9]

a fleet of 600 ships,

& dide hym dighte a fflute on flode,
Sex hundred gret schipes & gode,[10]

and resolves to invade Britain.

& seide, "ȝit wyly make[11] assay

---

[1] *compassid foly.*
[2] *mad.*
[3] *Iulius.* [leaf 28.]
[4] *nerewes.*
[5] *grelere* (rougher, sharper).
[6] *for* [de traïson, *Wace*].
[7] *dighted it for were o.*
[8] *his.*
[9] *vppon þe bretons eftsons to fight.*
[10] *schipes grete & gode.*
[11] *witt mak.*

" Vpon þe Bretons, spede how[1] y may;
" Bot ȝif y may conquere Cassibolan,
" Y preise nought elles al þat y er wan;
" Al my conqueste preise y nought,
" Bot þe Bretons to trewe be brought."

¶ De subuersione nauigii Cesaris in Tamysia.

Whan hit was dight, al his flet,
Wyþ god folk & vitailles set,
þe schipes seyled day & nyght
Til þey come in to Temese right.[2]
þus þey wend, þat atte firste tyde
þer nauye to Londone holy schold[3] ryde;
Alle at ones þe scholde[3] vp saille,
& to þe Bretons gyue bataille.
þe Bretons wist hit wel ynow,
Bot of þer sleigþe lystneþ now;[4]
Longe pyles[5] & grete dide þey make;
ffaste yn Temese dide þey hem stake,
Euerylkon wyþ iren schod; [leaf 20, back.]
Ageyn þe schipes stod ilkon[6] od,
fful wel set, & sykerly;
þer myght non wel ascape[7] forby.

Cæsar's fleet, well equipt, sails for the Thames,

to attack London.

But the artful Britons stake their river with piles shod with iron, set singly.

¶ De bello inter Cesarem & Brutones in Tamysia.

¶ Right atte fulle se[8] of flod
Com alle six hundred schipes god;
Sykerly þey wend haue nomen,
& into Londone at ones comen.

Cæsar's ships come at full tide, and make sure of reaching London;

[1] *if.*
[2] *þei sette vp saile þe schippes kemse*
þe wynde þam drofe in to temse.
[3] *suld.*
[4] *bot what þei did listen how.*
[5] *peeles.* [peus ferrés, *Wace*, 4437.]
[6] *ilk an.* [leaf 28.]
[7] *scape.*
[8] *at a folle flowe.*

þey ne were wyþynne bot a lite,
but they strike on the piles, Or on þe pyles gon þey[1] smyte.
þer myght men se þat stod on brynke,
and sink, Schipes in-to þe water synke; 4624
þat on vn-to þe toþer hurte,[2]
. þe mastes faste[3] to-gidere burte,
& somme ouer-terned, & lay on syde;
great holes being driven in them. Bordes ryuen out holes wyde, 4628
. Ropes ryuereled, & swerued[4] in lyne,
. Ilkon dered oþer, & dide pyne;
Lond ne hauene myght þey non taken,
. So faste on pyles gan þey staken:[5] 4632
A bad time for them! . In yuel[6] tyme out þey nomen,
. Yuel þey ryued þat þider comen![7]
Cæsar Cesar saw þat grete vnhap,
þat in þe water was swylk a trap; 4636
. Iren-schod was ilka peel,
& [8] þoughte þat so was ilka del;
Many of þem turned a-geyn,
. & seyde þat wendyng was in veyn. 4640
orders them to land where and how they can. He dide þem alle gon vp to londe,
. Man & hors, þer þey best fonde;
They do; and as they are pitching their tents, By bankes vp aboute þey wente,
& pyght[9] þeym pauylons & tente. 4644
Right als þey picched[9] þer pauylons,
the Britons attack them Cam Cassibolan wyþ þe Bretons,
. Erles, barons, knyghte, squiers,[10]
fiercely. Asperly folle on þe Romayners:[11]— 4648
His neuew & oþere of his[12] kynde,
Wyþ alle þe oþere þat he myghte[13] fynde,

---

[1] *are oñ þe peles þai gan.*
[2] hurtle. (hurter, *Wace*, l. 4347.)
[3] *falle.*
[4] *reueld suarled.*
[5] *pelis gon þei stake.*
[6] *ille . . nome.*
[7] *Ille þei sailed & þidire come.*
[8] *he.*
[9] *piked.*
[10] *suaynes.*
[11] *fellid on þe romayns.*
[12] *neuoz & his oþer.*
[13] *help þat he mot.*

Þe kynge asemblede in noble[1] wyse,
ffor wiþ þe Bretons was no feyntise:—
& at *þer* logges *þer*[2] þey hem set,
. Þe Bretons wyþ hem *þer* þey met.[3]
Þeyr egre comyng þe Romayns a-boden,
A-geyn þe Brutons stifly þey stoden;
Als a wal þe scheltrom held,[4]
& ruysed þe Brutons abak[5] in feld.
ffirst þe Romayns ful wel stoden,
Agayn þe Bretons in bataille ȝoden,[6]
& fer bakward dide hem go,
& manyon slowe, & wroughte wo.
. Þenne was wroþ Cassibolan;
. ffor tene byfore þem alle he nam,[7]
. & bar þe breste on þem by-fore,
& after hym þe Bretons gaf[8] bore,
& euere was fresche folk comande,
. And dide þe Romayns ageyn stande.
So wyþynne a litel þrowe [leaf 20, back, col. 2.]
Men amed þem, & wel hit sowe,
Two so many Bretons þare
As hadde *þer* Iulius Cesare,[9]
& dide þe Romayns a-geyn to fle,
& slowe þem, schame was hit to se!

The Romans stand stiffly,

and at first drive back the Britons.

This angers Cassibolan;

he leads his men on,

brings up fresh ones,

and puts the Romans to flight.

---

[1] *ascried* þam oñ his.

[2] *as.* [leaf 28, back.]

[3] For the next two lines the Petyt MS. has, on leaf 28, back,—

ferweis at þer *first comyng.*
þer *armour herd ye crusse & ryng.*
At þer *loges þe romeyns biden.*
agayn þe bretons stifly riden.

of which the first two represent the "Dont véissiés armes croissir" of *Wace*, l. 4366, vol. i. p. 206.

[4] þer *hardynes helde.* (Lor hardiment orent por mur, *Wace*, l. 4369.)

[5] *did þe bretons go bak.*

[6] *felde ȝod.*

[7] *wan.*

[8] *gan.*

[9] Bien se sunt esmé as trois rans
De chevalier, tos combatans,
Que César n'i ot amené.
Wace, i. 206, l. 4377–9.

Britones vero, omni hora affluentia suorum augmentati, triplo majorem numerum habebant. *Galf. Mon.* iv. 7 (p. 62, ed. Giles).

¶ De *pro*bitate Brutonu*m*.

Cæsar was never so cast down.

¶ Hardy Cesar, noble kyng,
Þat neu*e*re so bayscht was[1] for no þyng,
He sey þe force of þe Brutons,
& hyse to þem hadde no fuysons.[2]

The Britons fight like mad.

Þe Bretons, as wode, rengede route;
Of dynt ne deþ[3] had þey no doute;
. Þey slowe, & felde, & made þem weye;
. Þey made no force to lyue ne deye.[4]

Cæsar withdraws his men to their ships,

. Cesar p*er*ceyued þat ful wel,
He dide t*ur*ne hys folk ylk del
A-geyn, & to þer schipes wende;
Bot hym self lefte til[5] þe last ende,
A-gayn þe Bretons for[6] to fyght,
Þe whyles[7] his folk to schipe þem dight.
By þe lond þe schypes did ryde,
. To kepe his folk at ilka tyde;

and is himself the last to leave the land.

When alle were ynne, & sayl on mast,
Cesar com yn alder last;
. & alle þat were of his conrey,
. Hyed þem faste, & wente[8] þ*er* wey.

The Romans land at Boulogne,

Euene as ly*ne*[9] þe wynd gan dryue;
At Ordre, his tour, gon þey aryue.[10]

and stay there to recover.

Cesar soio*ur*ned þ*er* ful longe,
To hele þem þat[11] were wounded stronge,
& man & hors for to rest,
And ordeyned for hym what was best.

---

[1] *neuer abaist.*
[2] *fosons* (defence, p. 56, l. 1591, note [17], above.
[3] *dede ne dynt.*
[4] *or deie.*
[5] *was in.*
[6] *to þe bretons.*
[7] *to whils.*
[8] *vp with saile & forth.* [lf.28,bk.,cl.2.]
[9] *als lyn.*
[10] *did vp ryue.* The three lines following are in the MS. du Roi 73, and the Arsenal 71 (*Wace*, i. 207), though not in the MS. du Roi 27 that De Lincy printed.
[11] *hele þat.*

Þe kyng of þys lond,[1] Cassibalan,
. & þe Bretons ilka man,
Made ioye for þe mykel pris
Þat þey had wonnen[2] of Cesar twys.
. Þe Romayns, mykel sorewe þey made
. Þat þe Bretons were so[3] glade;
. Cesar & hyse were dismayed,
. Bot þe Bretons were wol payed.

The Britons rejoice at beating Cæsar twice,

∫ *Pro* Victoria eor*um* optulerunt solempnem sac*ri*fici*um* Diane diis suis.

ffor ioie þey hadden þo batalle wonnen,
& Cesar twyes had ouer-ronnen,
To God þey highte to make a feste
Wyþ alle þe comme[n]s lest & meste.[4]
Þe day he set of þe sac*ri*fise,
Hys vow to holde wyþ fair seruise.
Cassibalon sende his messegers
ffor þe barons,[5] knyghtes, & squiers,
Of his demeynes alle þe pytaille[6]
. Þat hadde hym serued in bataille,
Þat þey scholde[7] alle to London come,
. Vp peyne of forfeture of[8] dome,
. Wyf & child wiþ hem schold[7] lede,
Þo þat halp hym in his nede,
& alle[9] come wiþ herte glad,
In riche atyr, ryght as he bad.
Man & wyf, & children ȝonge
. Þat couþe go, & speke wyþ tonge,

and resolve to hold a great feast to God.

Cassibolon summons

to London all who helped in the war,

as well as their wives and children.

[leaf 21.] All come,

[1] *kyng douhti kyng.*
[2] *won.*
[3] *att*: and leaves out the next four lines of verse.
[4] *comune of* þer *geste.*
[5] *for barons.*
[6] *pedaile* (foot-soldiers).
[7] *suld.*
[8] *&.*
[9] *att* þei.

Alle þey comen to þe cyte:
and fair folk they are. ffairer folk myght no man se; 4728
& ilkaman after his auenaunt
Made offrynge, as was his[1] haunt.

∫ Exe Sacrificium.

The Britons offer up 50,000 cows, ∫ þys feste day þat was so hey,
Were offred ffifty[2] þousand ky, 4732
3,000 hinds, &, þer-to, þre[3] þousand hyndes,
. Wylde walkande by wode lyndes;
100,000 sheep, and birds no end. & an hundred þousand schep;
þe noumbre of[4] foules gaf noman kep, 4736
. So fele þer were, myght non þem[5] ame,
. What of wilde, what of tame.
When don was þat sacrefyse,
& feste holde in þer beste wyse,[6] 4740
Then minstrels play and rhyme; . Mynstrals bygon to blowe[7] & ryme,
. Als þer custume was þat tyme;
knights Knyghtes, squiers, made bourdys,
. & hem desgysede in pourpre[8] & bys; 4744
and others fence, wrestle, and leap; & oþer bachelers skirmede faste,
Wrastlede, lepen,[9] stones caste;
. In feld, in toun, in[10] ilka weye,
everyone plays; . Ilkon pleide þat he couþe pleye. 4748
When þey hadde alle pleyd at wille,
& schold haue ended, &[11] ben al stille,
Huwelyn and Irelgas fence. Two wolde skyrmen, as fel þe[12] cas,
Sire Huwelyn & Irelgas.[13] 4752

---

[1] þer.
[2] *was of fourti.* (quarante mil, *Wace*, i. 209, l. 4431.)
[3] þer *þritti* (trente-millers, *Wace.*)
[4] *tale af.*
[5] *no man.*
[6] P. leaves out this line.
[7] *glewe.* [leaf 29.]
[8] *in* þer *quantise of purpure.*
[9] *wristled skipped.*
[10] *at.*
[11] *& suld haf.*
[12] *skirme* þat *com of.*
[13] *hereglas* (*Ireglas* in rubric and next line).

ſ De Infortunio inter Huwelynum & Irelgas.

Irelgas was þe kynges cosyn;
Androcheus neuew was Huwelyn.[1]
. Þyse to-gedere wolde skyrme al gate;
Þorow pride of herte son com þer hate, 4756 They get angry,
Þorow hate þen gan þer[2] wordes ryse bad words are spoken;
Of boþe parties of yuel[3] assise.
When ilk had seyd til oþer wough,
Wyþ wraþe to smyte, þe egge[4] drough: 4760
Þorow a meschaunce, y wot hit was, and by ill hap
Huwelyn slow þer Irelgas. Huwelyn kills Irelgas.
When þe kyng þys chaunce herd seye, Cassibolan
þe feste was sturbled &[5] aweye. 4764
ffor þe kyng was ful feloun,
& hastyf, vntil vengaunce boun,
þe kyng seid vntil Androche, demands Irel-
& bad hym vp peyne of alle his fe, 4768 gas of his uncle Androcheus,
Huwelyn, his cosyn, hym[6] for to sende,
þat felonie for to amende,
& in his court haue iugement that he may be
. Þorow þe comunes, er þat þey[7] went. 4772 tried.
Androcheus þoughte[8] wyþ herte ful wo:
" ȝif y hym sende, he schal hym slo." But Andro-
Androcheus sende ageyn ful tyt, cheus refuses to
& of his court asked respit: 4776 give up Irelgas,
" A lord y am, &[9] court y haue;
. " Þorow þat wyl y[10] hym dampne or saue.
" ȝyf þer be eyþer[11] baron or knyght, [leaf 21, col. 2.] and says he'll
" Pleyneþ hym þer, he schal haue right; 4780 try him in his own court.

---

[1] *nouowe was Heulyn.*
[2] *þorgh þan gan.*
[3] *itt.*
[4] *edge.*
[5] *turbled & mirth.*
[6] *heulyn him.*
[7] *þorgh comon or þei.*
[8] *þouh.*
[9] *a.*
[10] *whilk .I. may.*
[11] *it be ouþer.*

." & þe souereynte þou takest þe[1] to,
." Hit schold be myn, & schal[2] be so;
." þou wost hit[3] ys myn heritage;
." þou bedes me mys & outrage!"

¶ Rex irascatur versus Androcheum nepotem suum.

Cassibolan waxes wrath, and swears he'll pillage Androcheus

When þe kyng herde his answere,
He swor he scholde[4] on hym were;
& þat he had, he scholde[4] hym reue,
Heritage ne nought, hym byleue;

and slay Huweyln.

& Huwelyn schold[4] he slo,
ffor þat outrage þat [he] had do.[5]

So the feast ends in strife.

On þis manere parted[6] þer feste;
Wiþ loue bygan, endede wiþ cheste.

Cassibolan is Androcheus's uncle,

. Cassibolan was Androcheus eem,
. Luddes broþer of þat teem.
.[7] Androcheus was Luddesone, & Temnace,
. As y forn telde in oþer place.[7]
. Whan Lud deyde, þey ne couþe
. Kepe þe lond for þer[8] ȝouþe;
. Cassibolan þerfore vndertok
. þe lond, & hem to kepe & lok;
. & þorow þe wroþe of þis þynge
. Made[9] Androche a chalangyng.

and yet strives daily to ravage his land.

Now ilka day Cassibolan fandes[10]
To brenne & struye[11] Androcheus landes.

---

[1] *þe courte þat þou bides me.*
[2] *suld . . & satt.*
[3] *wote it.* [leaf 29, col. 2.]
[4] *suld.*
[5] *for Ireglas suld he go.*
[6] *departed.*
[7–7] *Androche & Tenuace lud sons boþe .I. told or space.*
[8] *for ouer.*
[9] *Makis.*
[10] *fondes . . . londes.*
[11] *brenne.*

∫ Hic peciit concordiam.

∫ Androcheus saw his felon wille, — Androcheus
Þat þe kyng þoughte hym to[1] spille;
He sente til hym his messeger, — sends and asks
& preyed þe kyng in fair maner, — Cassibolan
Namore destruye his landes so,
Bot make acord bytwyxt hem to; — to be at one with him;
. & preied hym "þat he wolde[2] mone
. " þat he[3] was his broþer sone,
. " & heir of al þat heritage
. " þat þou me reuest wyþ outrage."[4]
þe kyng was of so felon rees, — but Cassibolan
He ne wolde here of preyere ne[5] pes, — will not.
. Bot vengaunce take for any þyng;
. þat falles ful yuel[6] for a kyng.
Androcheus saw no bettere bot: — Androcheus
"Suffren," he saide, "nede y mot."
Hys pleyn londes he let hym haue,
Bot his forteletes he dide[7] saue: — retires to his fortresses,
Wiþ hym to holde he fond noman, — but can get no
So cruel was Cassybalan. — allies.
ffle ne wold he neuer a del,
Ne lese þat he myghte holde wel.
Androcheus asked: "What ys to rede?[8] — So he argues,
. " Syn no man dar me helpe for drede, — "What can I do?
. " & help me byhoues haue algate,[9] — I must have help,
. " Nede me dryueþ vntil[10] þe ȝate;
. " ffor þe kyng assent wil nought — as Cassibolan
. " þat y haue þes, als y haue sought. — won't make peace.

---

[1] *wild him.*
[2] *if he wild it.*
[3] *ha.*
[4] *reues als outerage.*
[5] *he not here his praiere no.*
[6] *vmwhile itt.*
[7] *& his forceletes did.*
[8] *said what is to spede.* [lf. 29, bk.]
[9] *bos haf alle gate.*
[10] *chaces vnto:* and then leaves out the next four lines.

. " Siþen y ne may haue no rest,
. " On oþer halue y schal do my best;
" fful mykel anguisse woldy byde, [leaf 21, back, col. 2.]
Fell his pride, I will, " ffor to felle þe kynges pryde. 4836
" A folye to do, & fle a wel[1] more,
. " Men haldes þat wysdam[2] & lore;
" To do a folye, ȝut were hit skyl,
" ffort[o] lyuere[3] a man fro more peryl; 4840
" & god hit[4] were to suffre a wo,
" ffor to venge hym of hys fo.
though I suffer for it as well as he." " Wel y wot, & haue in hert,
" þat hit schal vs boþe smert; 4844
" Bot ȝit me lykes þat greuaunce,
" ȝif y may take on hym vengaunce.
" What so schal me bytide algate,
" þe kynges pride y wyl abate; 4848
. " Y may nought elles wyþ hym dele."
So Androcheus writes to Cæsar, A *lettere* he wrot, & dide hit sele,
& sent hit *priuely* to Cesar,
. Tyl Ordre his tour, for he was þar. 4852
What he wrot, & þyder sent,
and says: Y vnderstonde *þus* þentent:

ſ Epistola Androchii ad Cesarem.

" O wise Cæsar, ſ " To Cesar, hardy, war, & wys,
. " Whas pruwesse men *preise*[5] in *pris*! 4856
I Androcheus, lord of Kent and London, greet you. " Of Bretaigne, Androche þe Bretoun,
" Sire of Kent, lord of London,
" Sendeþ þe gretynge, wyþ his god red,
. " þat whilom wylned to þe ded.[6] 4860
" Cesar! often haue men seen,

[1] *& slek a.*
[2] *hold it wisdom.*
[3] *to delyuer.*
[4] *wele it.*
[5] *whos pruesse men praises.*
[6] *to send þe gretyng is my rede, whilom to whom .I. desired dede.*

" þer to han[1] hated, & fomen ben, — Foes often turn fast friends.
" þat syþen han loued to-gedre wel,
." Tristiloker þan ony stel;[2] 4864
" After hate, loue wyl be,
" & after schame, worschip[3] men se:
" þus hit bytides many gate,
" Of somme þer longe has ben[4] hate. 4868
" Ilk soughte oþer deþ,[5] al þat we myght, — You and I have sought each other's death;
" When we met vs[6] in feld to fight;
" Bot so hit fel, to boþe oure prow,
" þat neyþer am y slayn, ne þow. 4872 but you're still alive,
" [7] A-geynes vs bataille hastow nomen,
" & twyes we haue þe ouercomen; — though we've beaten you twice.
" Bot lef þou wel þis[8] for certeyn,
." þat ȝif þou wilt come[9] eft ageyn, 4876 Now, however,
." Of Kent ne þertestow[10] fle þat cost, — if you'll invade England again,
." þaw[11] y were þere wyþ al myn host; — I'll help you.
." & þey[11] þe kyng þat tyme com þare,
." Ne þart þe[10] fle for al his fare;[12] 4880
" ffor þorow myn help, & þorow me, — Through me the king beat you before,
" Has þe kyng do þe twyes fle;[13]
" ffor by me þe land þou lees,
" & for me fledde þy mykel pres. 4884
" þerof now y repente me sore, — and now I'm sorry for it,
" þat y so dide ageyn þe þore;
." þerfore by me þou schalt be brought — and I'll make you win the land.
." To wynne þe lond, als þou had þought; 4888
" Now me forþynkes þat y þe noyed,

---

[1] *tuo haf.*
[2] *tristeliere þen any.*
[3] *& after wirschip.*
[4] þat *long haf bene in.*
[5] *we souht our dede.*
[6] *we fondid.*
[7] The lines following, down to l. 4915, are not in De Lincy's MS. du Roi 27, but are in MS. 73, Cangé. *Wace*, i. 214–15.
[8] *bot witte þou now.*
[9] *If þou witt com.*
[10] *thurte þe.*
[11] þof. [12] *here.*
[13] The Petyt MS. adds,—
& þorgh þe dyntes of my honde,
defended þe kyng his londe.

" & þat þe kyng þe so destruyed ;[1]
For lately Cassibolan has got proud,
" ffor syn he haþ boren hym in to proud wyse[2]
" Til his barons, & to alle hyse,[3] 4892
and will never let me be quiet for a day.
" And syþen hadde he neuere[4] wille [lf. 21, bk., col. 2.]
" In pes me suffre a day be stille ;
He kills my friends,
" My lond to waste he goþ[5] aboute,
" My frendes to slo, & dryue þem oute ; 4896
and wants to banish and kill me
" My self he wolde[6] exile & chace,
" & slo, als hit ys his manace ;
" My God y take witnesse vnto,
" Y serued neuere he scholde so do ! 4900
because I won't let him kill my nephew.
" My neuew to deþ he wolde haue[7] demed ;
" ffor y wyþstodit, he haþ[8] me flemed,
" & for y wolde[6] nought do his wylle,
" To suffre hym myn neuew spille. 4904
I'll tell you how the strife arose :
" Y schal þe telle how hit bygan
" Bytwixt me & Cassibolan :
" ffor [þe][9] honur & for þe pris
'At our feast in honour of beating you,
" þat we hadde ouer-come þe twys, 4908
" þe kyng dide þe folk somoun
" þorow-out þe lond of ilka toun.
[10][" þat alle of valow, moste & leste,
" Suld com to London to his feste, 4912
" Grace till our God [to] ȝelde
" With sacrifise, as lawe wilde.
" Graces ȝolden with sacrifise,
" Whan we had don our seruise, 4916

---

[1] *of þe destroied.*
[2] *for he has born proude þerfore.*
[3] *to his barons out of score.*
[4] *siþen with me ne had he.*
[5] *wendes.*
[6] *wald.*
[7] *wild haf.*
[8] *for þat encheson am I now.*
[9] *þe.*
[10] From the Petyt MS., lf. 30, which gives a different version of the first part of Androcheus's letter, up to line 4942 here. It follows the Wace MS. du Roi 73, Cangé, to l. 4915, and then the MS. du Roi 27, that De Lincy printed; while Robert of Brunne repeats the account given on page 167, from l. 4753 to l. 4776 above.

" Diuerse folk in stedes did samen,
" & diuersly plaied þei gamen.][1]

¶ De infortunio inter Huwelinum & Irelgas.

" Irelgas was þe kynges cosyn ;
" Huwelyn, he was neuew myn :
" þyse to-gydere wolde skirme algate ;
." þorow proude hertes þer wax hate ;
." þorow hate þer gon wordes ryse
." On boþe partys, on yuel assise.
." Whan ilk had seid oþer wow,
" Wiþ wraþe to smyte, þe egge drow ;
." þorow a meschaunce, y wot hit was,
" Huwelyn slow þer Irelgas.
" When þe kyng herde þys seye,
." þe feste was trobled, & myrþe a-weye.
." ffor þe kyng was ful felon,
." & hastif, vntil vengaunce boun,
" þen seid þe kyng vntil me,
" Comaundynge, vp peyne of al my fe,
" Huwelyn hym for to sende,
." þat ffelonye for to amende,

my nephew fenced with Cassibolan's cousin,

and by ill luck killed him.

Cassibolan vowed vengeance,

and ordered me to give up my nephew to be tried in his court.

[1] The Petyt MS. continues,—

My neuow was þer *Heulyn,*
& þe kyng had þer *a cosyn :*
with skirmyng þei bigan to play,
. & ilk oþer with word missay.
þe kynges cosyn manaced fast,
& drouh his suerde at him in hast.
My neuow saw þat, *& on him stirte,*
held his suerde for doute of hirte :
. of trewe men þus *.I. it herd,*
. bituex þam *tuo* þus *it misferd,*
. þat þorgh a wond þat he lauht þore,
vp ne ras he neuer more ;
. oþer wais no man ne wote
. whedire he felle, or he him smote.
þe kyng of þis *apechid me,*
& comandid oñ att my fe,
' þat .I. his body to him sent,
' & at his courte take Iugement.'
I. hoped wele he wild him slo ;
þe ton suld for þat oþer go ;
. þerfore .I. douted him to sende,
I. said .I. had a courte, .I. wende,
. & lordeschip, as a man of myght ;
com pleyne him þer, *& tak his right.*

" And in his court have iugement
." þorow þe comunes, ar *þat* þey went.
I knew he'd be killed if I did, " þan þought y wyþ *her*te ful wo,
" ȝif y hym sende, he scholde hym slo. 4940
" y sende hym ageyn ful tyt,
." & of his court asked respit:
and therefore said that my nephew should be tried in my own court, " 'A lord y am, a court y haue,
." 'þorow *þat* wold y hym da*m*pne or saue;
." 'ȝif hit be ey*þer* baron or knyght 4945
" 'þat pleyneþ hym þere, he shal haue right.
." 'þe court þat þou bedes me to,
which was only my right. ." 'Hit schold be myn, & schal be so; 4948
." 'þou wost hit is myn he*r*itage;
." 'þou beodes me mys & outrage.'
For this, " & for y þus agayn-seide hym,
Cassibolan ." He ys to me þus wroþ[1] & brym, 4952
threatens " & me manaceþ day by day
to slay me.' " To bre*n*ne & slo, ȝyf *þat* he may.
Wherefore, do you, Cæsar, come and help me, " Wher-fore, Cesar, y schewe hit þe,
." þat þou my socour ageyn hym be, 4956
." & help me in my wo so harde,
" And com hyder in god forewarde,
and I'll guarantee you Britain. " And þorow me schaltow haue[2] Brutayne, [leaf 22.]
" & y þorow þe brought out of[3] payne. 4960
Don't mistrust me, " Ne haue þou non suspecioun
" þat y hit seye for any tresoun:
" Y wolde nought swylk a þyng bygynne,
." Al[4] þys reame for to wynne; 4964
but come at once. " Bot com, & make no dwellynge,
" & rescowe me a-geyn þe kynge.
" ffor þou myshappedest y[5] þe first ende,
You shall succeed." " Now schaltow spede er *þat* þou wende." 4968

---

[1] *broþe.*
[2] *þorh me sa*ll *þou haf.*
[3] *& .I. for þe be brouht of.*
[4] *for.* [leaf 30, col. 2.]
[5] *If* þou *spede not in.*

ſſ Cesar herde what he bysought,
& streitly *tur*nde hit in his þought,
& schewed hit his barons aboute,
Whe*þer* þey heldit certeyn or doute.
Þer-on þey conseild, *þat þer* war,
þat atte laste seyde Cesar,
" *þat* he ne wolde, for sonde ne sawe,
" Put hym in p*er*il ne in awe;
." Ne for no[1] byheste of bost
." Wold he so sone sa*m*pne[2] his host;
." ffor y haue herd seye fele sy*þ*e,
." *þat* faire byhestes make*þ*[3] foles blithe."
. Cesar sent hym bode ageyn,
ȝyf he wold hald[4] his word certayn,
Sende he scholde hym hostagers,
. Men of gode, barons, pers,
O*þer* elles wolde he nought com *þere*
. Vntil his tyme bett*er*e were.
ſſ Androcheus dred hym of treson,
þat þe kyng[5] wolde bysege þe toun.
His sone Senna til Cesar sent,
& þritty o*þer* wy*þ* hym þey went,
Of þe beste *þat* he might fynde,
Next born of his owen kynde.
Cesar receiued þem wy*þ* hon*ur*,
& dide þem alle in Ordre,[6] his tour.
Syn, als sone as he myghte hye,
He dighte his host, & god nauye,
& p*ri*uely aryued vp at Douer,
& logged hem by þe cost al ouer.[7]
Androcheus com til Cesar þyder,
& conseiled þem bo*þ*e to-gyder,

Cæsar turns the matter over in his mind,

and resolves not to chance it:

"Fair words make fools fain."

So he asks Androcheus for hostages.

Androcheus sends his own son, and 30 other relations.

Cæsar thereupon sails with his army, and lands at Dover.

There Androcheus meets him.

[1] *a.*
[2] *sone eft samen.*
[3] *hotes makes.*
[4] *wild holde.*
[5] Cassibolan.
[6] *did* þam *Odre.*
[7] *bi banke & ouere* (shore).

How þey schuld wyrke, & on what wyse,
Ageyn þe kyng in bataille to rise.
Tydynges ronne, þat ouer al[1] reches;
Ilk man til oþer made þer[2] speches,
Cassibolan hears of Cæsar's landing,
Til[3] men tolde þe kyng tydant,
þat Romayns were aryue on land.
þe kyng þeron conseilled sone;
On hem to renne, mad hym bone;
& in herte had gret meruaille
þat þey so so sone broughte hym[4] bataille.—
. He wende of þeym haue hed no warde,
. Bot hym fel þer a chek ful harde;[5]—
and marches towards Dover.
& al so sone as he myght,
Toward Douere his host he dight.
To Cesar was hit told in hast
þat þe kyng was comande fast:
Cæsar puts Androcheus and his men in a side valley,
Cesar conseilled[6] wiþ Androche,
þat he wolde come out[7] of þe cite,
And turne a sidenhand o[8] valeye, [leaf 22, col. 2.]
&,[9] armed, biden hem in þe weye;
& arraied þem in renges[10] ryght,
& assigned whiche bataille first schold[11] fight.
and gives his host special orders that none shall break the ranks,
Whan Cesar had arrayed al[12] his host,
O[13] þyng he comaunded most:
" þat non scholde, for wele ne wo,
" On fro oþer, of renge go;
" Ne non prese to styrte[14] byfore,
" Ne holde byhynde in coward score;
but all shall advance steadily side by side
" Bot passe forþ sadlyk,[15] syde by syde,

---

[1] *Renoun ran þat ouer.* [lf. 30, bk.]
[2] *to ilk a man mad þei.*
[3] *speche.*
[4] *þei rose so sone eft in.*
[5] *chek hasarde* (far better).
[6] *conseild.*
[7] *he wald out.*
[8] *turne sidenen in a.*
[9] *att.*
[10] *& renge þam redy in ordire.*
[11] *whilk aschelle suld formast.*
[12] *set att.*
[13] *A.*
[14] *ne stirte.*
[15] *renge þam sadly*

'Til þey com *þer* þey schold[1] abide,
'& stoutly he*m* *þanne* o þe bretons auaunce,[2] to the attack.
'& felle þem doun[3] wiþ swerd & launce.' 5032
Androcheus enbusched[4] hym pryuely
Wyþ fif hundred[5] men armed, redy
On þe kyng assaut to make, Cassibolan's
By-twyxt hem ȝyf he myghte[6] hym take. 5036 army comes on,
Cassibolan on his wey gan spede;
. Of non enbuschement[7] tok he hede;
. þeyr hostes boþe neighed[8] ȝerne;
. & whan þey were[9] nought fro þem ferne, 5040 and as it enters
Ou*er* an hil þen lay his weye; the valley, sees
& als he com in to þe valeye, the Romans,
He saw þe Romayns fresche y[10] þe feld,
Redy enbatailled wiþ spere[11] & scheld. 5044
Als sone mad he hym redy, and the battle
& loude ascried þem on har[12] cry, begins.
& sone þey schoten[13] arewes & dartz Androcheus
fful felonlyk on boþe partz. 5048 springs from his ambush,
Androcheus, atte firste comynge,
Of his enbuschement gan he sp*r*inge;
. Al fr*e*schely he com on hem[14] ful hot,
. & bacward vpon þe Bretons smot: 5052
. "Ey!" seid þe kyng, "here ys deseit!
. "Bytwixt þem to þey holde vs streit!"[15]
He ne myghte nought perce þe host Romeyn,
Ne he ne myghte t*ur*ne ageyn; 5056
. Byhynde, biforn, he saw peryl.

---

[1] *vntiłł þei com þei suld.*
[2] *& þan baldely auentour his chance.*
[3] *resceyue him.*
[4] *bussed.*
[5] cinq mil, *Wace*, i. 220, l. 4699.
[6] *bituex þam if þei mot.*
[7] *bussement.*
[8] *boþe he neihed.*
[9] *he was.*
[10] *spred in.*
[11] *renged with helme.*
[12] *& discried þam with a.* [lf.30,bk., col. 2.]
[13] *& to schot.*
[14] *fresly on him he com.*
[15] *.I. am holden streite.*

and forces Cassibolan to draw off to a hill on his flank.

O side he *trau*ersed vnto a hil,
So nede hym byhoued, or be in clos.
On boþe sides he saw his foos,
He seide hym self þo, he was bitraischt;[1]
þen were þe Bretons alle abaischt.

ſ Hic Cassibolan*us* se retraxit.

The Britons fly in disorder

Ilk *þat* þer myght[2] fle, þey fledde;
þat best myght re*n*ne, best he[3] spedde;
Bette*re* was fle, þan worse abide,[4]
ffor soco*ur* þer cam on no*n*e[5] syde.
Vntil a hey hil þey drowe hem to,[6]
Bette*re* wistey nought what for to do;[7]
& er þey myghte *þat* heye hil take,
Many a croune men myght se crake.

till they reach the hill. Once there, they feel safe,

Whan þey hadde þe hil al nomen,
þeym þoughte þey were til castel comen;
Non of þe[8] Romayns durst com hem ney,
Bot held þem fro þe hil a drey.[9]
þe hil was strong[10] busked aboute, [leaf 22, bk., col. 1.]
þat þe Bretons of Cesar hadde no[11] doute;

as each man makes a tree his castle.

ffor eche man tok a tre to stal,
As t*ri*sti as[12] a castel wal.

Cæsar sees that he can't carry the hill by assault,

Cesa[r] byheld to þe hilles[13] heyght,
þat wyþ non assaut ne wyþ no sleight
Mighte he wynne *þat* forcelet;

and therefore besieges it closely.

*þer*fore a sege abute hit set,

---

[1] *betraist . . . obaist.*
[2] *Ilkon* þer *mot.* (The next line, after l. 4723, is left out in De Lincy's *Wace*, i. 224, without notice by the editor.)
[3] þam.
[4] *es fle* þan *foly bide.*
[5] *whan socour comes on no.*
[6] þei *fleih.*
[7] *he wist no bettere* þat þan *deih.*
[8] *nomore.*
[9] *nehi . . . drehi.*
[10] *round.*
[11] *had of no man.*
[12] *trostere* þan.
[13] *of* þe *hill* þe.

Þat þey ne myghte no-wer[1] aboute,
Bot þorow hym, haue issue[2] oute.
He dide sette in wardes[3] seers,
Knyghte to wacħem,[4] & squiers;
& also he dide hewe trees,
Þe styes to stoppe, & þe entres,
& furgat nought ful lyghtly
How þey had chased hym wyþ maistri;
& ofte þey telde in þer auys[5]
How þey bifore had chased hem twys:
. " Now schal y ȝelde hit, ȝif þat y may,
. " Er ȝe departe fro me away!"
. Alas, hit schold euer so[6] bytyde,
So bolde Bretons myght non abide!
ffor þey had chased twyes þat man
Þat al þe werld þorow bataille wan;
& ȝit þey stode stifly, ilkon,
Whan þey wiste socur of[7] non,
ȝit suffrede þei nought for to be nome
Of hym þat þey had er ouercome;
But Dame ffortune had turned her whel
Donward til wo, þat er was wel;
ffor þo þat abouen were wond[8] to be,
Donward þeym now turneþ sche.

Cæsar doesn't forget his double beating, and resolves to pay it back.

Sad that the bold Britons must be defeated!

But Fortune had turned her wheel.

ſ Qualiter Brutones iam deuicti sunt per famem.

Þyse Bretons þat were in-clos
& byseged wiþ her fos,
Had þey neyþer drynke ne mete,
Ne non myght hem purchace ne gete.
Þey dredde no saut[9] of bataille;

The besieged Britons have neither meat nor drink.

They fear no fight. But

[1] *noure.*
[2] *þorh þam att passe.*
[3] *stedes.*
[4] *waite.*
[5] *vys.* [leaf 31.]
[6] *suld so gate.*
[7] *of socour.*
[8] *vp were wont.*
[9] *sauht.*

what can stand against Hunger ?

Bot what may þat help or a-vaille,
When of mete ys defaut ?
Honger wynnes hit atte firste saut.
Þer ys no castel so strong idight,[1]
Þat honger ne wynneþ wyþouten fight;

Hunger wins castles, weaponless.

Wyþouten wepen or armour,
Honger ȝeldeþ castel & tour.
. God castel dredes no power,
. Emperour, kyng, ne kayser,
. Ne oþer help me haue[2] at nede;
. Bot of honger ys al þe drede.

better than any assault.

Þer force haþ mad manye assayes,[3]
Honger hit wynnes byn fewe[4] dayes.
. Þre dayes þey were in þat turment,
. Þat honger had þeym ner al schent.

¶ Rex misit Androchio *pro* Misericordia & Auxilio.

Cassibolan

Cassibolan had sorewe in wold,
How he mighte ascape þat hold:

sees that he

On alle halue he saw Romayns
Redy for to do þeym payns;
He hadde no force wyþ hem to fyght,
& honger hadde ouer[5] reft þer myght;
Mykel he dredde Iulius Cesar, [leaf 22, bk., col. 2.]
& more þe honger þat þey had þar.

must either yield or die.

He moste chese on of tweye:[6]
ȝelde hym to Cesar, or for honger deye.

He waits two days,

Two dayes & two nyghtes til ende
Wold he noman biseke ne sende;

and on the third sends to Androcheus,

¶ Þe þrydde, he þoughte how best myght be,
& sende his sonde til Androche:—

---

[1] *It is . . . stalworth dight.*
[2] *men haf.*
[3] *has mad of assais.*
[4] *in fo.*
[5] *nere* [leaf 31, col. 2.] (ses homes mate, *Wace*, i. 224, l. 4789).
[6] *of þe tuo þan had he weie.*

I ne wot ho dide þe message,
Whe*þer* knyght, squier, or page:—
" Androcheus, y sende þe[1] to seye,
" Suffre me nought[2] schamely to deye.
. " þaw y mystok me[3] greuously,
. " I prey þe of me haue þou[4] mercy.
" þaw i dide an hastynesse,[5]
. " Y schal hit amende, as[6] his wylle esse.
" A man schold nought his owen kynde
" Dampne for o defaute, we fynde;
" ffor hit haþ ofte be wyst & sen,
" þat wraþe bytwyxte kynde haþ ben;
. " Bot whan þer [wraþe][7] was brought til ende,
. " Syn han þey ben ful feyþful frende.[8]
" I preie þe now, ȝif þy[9] wille be,
" þat þou[10] be now curteys to me;
. " Y biseke þe,[11] þenk on no mysdede,
. " Bot schew me þy[12] kyndenesse in þys nede,
" & saue me now byfore Cesar,
. " & euere more eft wol y be war.
" To þe may neuere falle honur
" ȝyf me bytide a misauentur."

says he is sorry for his hastiness, prays forgiveness.

asks Androcheus to shew him kindness, and save him from Cæsar.

ſ Responcio e contrario.

Androcheus herde þe kynges pleint,
. þat ner was recreaunt & teynt;
& answered hym al at reburs:[13]
. " Haþ now þe kyng nede of my socurs?
" What, haþ my lord herd ought or seen?

Androcheus at first rebuffs Cassibolan; says,

" What has he seen to change his mood?

[1] *him.*
[2] *he suffire me not.*
[3] *.I. haf not serued it.*
[4] *bot .I. pray him of.*
[5] *þof .I. did him a hastifesse.*
[6] *if.* [7] *wraþ.*
[8] *has bene futt hende.*
[9] *say him if his.*
[10] *he.*
[11] *bid him.*
[12] *schew now.*
[13] *robours.*

" Seue nyght ȝit ne haþ hit ben,
Only 7 days ago he was going to plunder and kill me ! " þat he wolde me exile, & reue
" Al my lond, & no þyng leue,
" & þerto þrette me to slo,
" Whare he haue now laten þat mod ouer go.
" My lord þat bar hym so ouer[1] stout,
. " ffor no preiere to loue wolde lout,
" I wiste hit wolde nought[2] falle hym wel,
" þat was so fers, &[3] ouer cruel.
. " Wyþouten skil were we wroþe,
We shall both repent it, but he'll get the worst of it. . " & þat schal now repente vs boþe ;
. " Bot alder meste skaþe wil falle
. " On hym seluen[4] for vs alle ;
No king should sham lion in peace, " Hit falleþ no kyng to[5] felon res,
" As lyon in þe tyme of pees,
" Ne in tyme of werre for to dare,
and prove hare in war. " Ne[6] to fle for drede, as doþ þe hare.
. " þat he fled, sire, nought so,[7]
. " Bot his cruelte wil hym fordo ;
Cassibolan bragged that he beat Cæsar alone ! " He auaunted hym til vs[8] ilkone,
" He venquised þe enperour alone ;
" Bot he alone neuere hym ne wan,
No such thing ! " Namore þan dide an oþer man ;
I and my knights, " Bot þorow me & þorow my knyghtes
" þat wounded were in many fightes,
and others better than he or I, " And oþer þat were al so doughty, [leaf 23.]
. " & wel bettere þan he oþer y,
" þorow þeir dede & oure trauaille
won the battles for him ; " Wan Cassibolan þe bataille.
. " ffor swylk he made his noble fest,
and yet he said it was his own conquest ! . " & seid hit was his owen conquest.
" His barons þat were his peres,
" Of his conqueste were parceners ;

[1] *are so.* [leaf 31, back.]
[2] *it suld not.*
[3] þat *he bare him.*
[4] *self.*
[5] *it fals no kyng do.*
[6] *ne* omitted.
[7] *fled .I. say not so.*
[8] *auanced him titt his.*

" ffor he þat stande wel in stour,
" He aughte haue part[1] of þe hon*ur*.
" þe kyng may wel hym seluen wyte, — Let him blame
" By hym alone schal hit nought byte;[2] — himself for what has happened.
. " þo þat halpe hym hit for to wynne,
. " Wel oughte þey be parcen*ers*[3] þer-ynne.

¶ De gratitudine Androchii.

" Bot wel am y now venged on hym; — Still, now I'm revenged on him.
" þat now ys meke, þat er was grym.
" Now, siþen þat he bisekeþ[4] me — The grim man is meek, prays me to have pity on him.
" On hym to haue m*er*cy & pite;
" & y schal certes, ȝif y may spede,
" Help hym now in his gret nede. — And I will.
. " I may nought elles for no þyng;
" He ys myn eem, my lord, my kyng/; — He's my uncle and king.
" I ne may nought faill*e* hym, ne y ne wil!
. " Syn he hym mekeþ, y wol[5] do skil: — Now he's meek,
. " I am venged on hym y-now;
" Now wol y fonde to don his prow." — I'll help him."

¶ Dixit Androche*us* Cesary p*ro* pace Cassibolani.

Androcheus, wys knyght & war, — So Androcheus goes to Cæsar,
Anon[6] he ȝede vntil Cesar,
And on kn*e*s byfor*e* hym[7] sette.
Iulyus Cesar ful fair*e* he grette:
" Sir*e* Iuli*us*, þou art a myghti man, — tells him that Cassibolan
" Conquered þou hast Cassibolan!
" Vnto þy m*er*cy wol he now come, — offers to pay tribute to Rome;
" & ȝelde his truage vntil Rome;

[1] *awe haf partie.*
[2] *wite.*
[3] *partin ere.*
[4] *sekes.*
[5] *He mekes him .I. witt.* [lf. 31,bk., col. 2.]
[6] *on one.*
[7] MS. injured. P., *him sette:*

" Tak of hym now þat truage,
" Of þe to holde his heritage;
" Wiþ loue let hym now come to þe.
" þou askes nought elles of al his fe,
" Bot onlike of þe to holde;
" He hit graunteþ, & y hit wolde.
" Iulius, haue of hym mercy!
" þy wille to do we ar redy."
Bot Iulius Cesar wold hym nought here;
fful deflike herde he[1] his preyere,
& passed forþ as he nought herde;
Til Androche nought he answerde.
Androcheus had þer-of disdeyn,
þat Cesar tok his preyer in veyn;
He stirt vp wiþ yuel wylle,
& bad Cesar stonde a whyle[2] stille:
" þis londe ys ȝolden to þy baillye;
" þorow me hastow þe seignurie;
" þat y þe hight, y holde couenaunt,
" & more getes þou nought of graunt.
" þe seignurye of al þenpyre,
" þat may þou haue, as lorde & sire;
" þat þow hast; what wiltow more?
" Nolde God[3] þat oþer weys wore,
" þat þou myn eem schost prisone or slo!
" Nay, Cesar, so schal hit nought go,
" þat he schol[4] be so lyghtly slayn,
" While þat y haue[5] þat myght & mayn
" þat hym for deþ[6] y may rescuwe!
" He is myn eem, & y his neuewe;
" He noriced me, he ys me dere!
" ȝif þou ne wilt my biddyng[7] here,
" Y parte fro þe, & haue god day:

and as that was all Cæsar asked,

he should have mercy, and accept it.

Cæsar won't hear Androcheus,

or answer him.

But Androcheus makes him; says "I only promised you the seignory of this land.

That you have; but more you sha'n't have.

God forbid that you should [leaf 23, col. 2.] prison or slay my Uncle,

while I have strength to fight for him!

If you won't hear me, good bye!"

[1] *defiy he herde.*
[2] *abide Cesar & stand right.*
[3] *god witt not.*
[4] *He satt not.*
[5] *titt .I. haf.* [leaf 32.]
[6] *fro dede.*
[7] *If þou ne witt my praiere.*

" Do now til[1] hym al þat þou may!"
Þen cam Cesar forþ, & stod,
. Þoughte he was of kynde blod,
& þat he seide, hit was skyl,
. & he dide his wit þer-til.
. Whan he hadde al cast & þought,
He graunted al þat he had sought;[2]
Hostages asked þe partys,
& þey wer graunted at here auis,
And truage þey graunted so,
As þe lond was taxed to:
Þre þousand pound ylka ȝer,
. At termes so[3] to paye plener;
. Of alle þe lond gadered & tan.
Þen brought þey forþ Cassibolan,
& diden Cesar & hym kysse:
. ffor þat acord was mykel blisse.
Byfore þis tyme, neuere y ne fond
Þat any man conquered þis lond.
ſ Þenne returned Cesar wiþ hye
To Romeward after his victorie.
. Bot ȝe schul here a wonder þyng[4]

Cæsar considers

that this is but reason,

and he agrees to it.

Hostages are given,

the tribute fixed at £3,000 a year,

and Cassibolan and Cæsar kiss one another.

But never before was Britain conquered.

Cæsar returns to Rome, and

---

[1] *do þan to.*

[2] *bisouht.*

[3] *sette.*

[4] This '*wonder þyng*' in Roman history—an expansion at will of two lines in Geoffrey of Monmouth, lib. iv. § 10, p. 67, ed. Giles—is neither in Wace (i. 230, ed. De Lincy) nor our Petyt MS., though this last (almost like Wace) substitutes for it and lines 5279–80 above, the following lines,—

tiłł Cesar com & mad conqueste
. as ȝe haf herd in þis geste.
. euen sexty ȝere þis was beforn
. þat Ihesu Criste was born:
. here with all acordes saynt bede;
. þe gestes of Ingland first ȝe rede.
Whan all þis was brouht tiłł ende,
& fele went to se þer frende,
[1] þus *say þei þat know þe estre,*
þat Iulius funded first Excestre.
Excestre it hate, þis skiłł is whi,
þe water hate ex þat rennes þerbi.
tiłł wynter were gon, Cesar gan bide,
& went home in þe somers tide.
for grete luf & specialte
he toke with him sir Androche,

[1] The next four lines are not in De Lincy's MS. du Roi 27, but are in the Arsenal MS. 171, B.-L.; and the Ste. Geney. MS. Y., leaf 10. *Wace*, i. 230.

. þat fel in Rome after his wendynge:
finds that his officers Crassus and Pompey have raised the people against him.
. He had þer mad chef of þe cite
· Sire Crassus & sire Pompee;
. When þey had so al þe maistry þer,
. & he nought returned þe fyfte ȝer,
. þey racoillede þe Romayns til her wylle,
. Ageyn Cesar. þat fel hem ylle;
He destroys Rome,
. ffor Iulius destruyde Rome þan,
. & slow þer lord & gentilman;
slays Crassus,
. & Crassus he slow in a tour hey,
. Bot Pompeus skaped, & faste fley.
. fforþ in to Poylle he chased hym wel;
besieges Pompey in castle Braundys,
. þer he byseged hym in a castel,—
. Braundys hit highte, as men tolde;—
. Bot þat myghte he nought longe holde,
. Bot in-to Egipte þen schiped he,
. ffor wel wend he þer siker haue be.
and then pursues him to Egypt,
. Bot Cesar hym suwed yn-to þat contre,
. & spak to þe kyng, sire Tholome.
. Wiþ him was sire Pompe y-take;
where king Tholome
. Bot for drede of Iulius sake
. He nolde meyntene hym namore,
cuts off his head, and sends it to Cæsar.
. Bot his hed dide smyte of þore,
. & sentyt Iulius til present;
Cæsar returns to Rome,
. & þer-wyþ he to Romward went
. In al his moste nobleye. in Rome
. Right yuele þey schope for hym ful sone:
but is soon killed by Greffes.
. His barons wiþ treson dide hym deye,
. Bot Greffes hym mordred for enuye.
Of Cæsar's 2 nephews, Octovian is crowned,
. Twey neuews he hadde, bot sone non, [lf. 23 bk., cl. 1.]
. þe eldest was cald Octouyon;
. þe Romayns corouned hym saunz faille;
and takes the West,
. þen sesed he Braundys & Itaill,
. Of Poylle & Grece he tok þauow,

& led with þam *men of ostages,*
. *of* þis *lond* þe *best lynages.* [leaf 32]

[for the continuation, see note [1], to line 5334, on the next page].

. & of alle þe reomes by-ȝonde Moungow. 5316
. And al þe Oryent, þat oþer sesed,
. & tok tys part þat þe oþer leued ;
. Of þritty reomes euery kynge-
. Were enclinaunt til his coronyng. 5320
. Such wraþe bytwixte þe neuews ros sone,
. þat wiþ batailles to feld þey come.
. Octouion þat oþer slow anon,
. & his men desconfyted echon. 5324
. Þen hadde Rome suche renoun
. þat al þyng was in here baundon ;
. Þen gaf þey til þe enperrour
. A newe name for gret honour, 5328
. 'Augustus Cesar' þe calde hym þere,
. ffor þei ouer alle oþere were ;
. & after þat he þat name had,
. Þe Romayns were þe more y-drad, 5332
. ffor þemperour had þen vnder hand
. Al þe werld, boþe se & land.[1]

while the younger nephew takes the East,

but Octovian soon kills him.

Then has Rome such renown

that they call their Emperor 'Augustus Cæsar,'

because,

he rules the whole world.

[1] For the next 20 lines (5335–5354) the Petyt MS. [leaf 32, col. 2.] follows Wace, and has this passage :

[*Seuen ȝere lyued Cassibalan*
siþen Cesar þis lond wan.
to ȝelde þe treuage he was full mylde,
ne he had noþer wife no childe.
In ȝorke, far soth, he did his endyng,
& biried [*was*] þer *as a kyng.*

Comes Cornubie *factus* *est* rex.

Tenuacius was erle of Cornwaile,
had þe regne all in his waile :
he was Androcheus broþer ;
. Androche was went, þer *was non oþer ;*
. bot he regned full litell space ;
he died sone, king Tenuace.

Kimbelin*us* cepit regnare.

After sir Tenuace fyne,
þei crouned his sone Kymbelyn.
. he was norissed at þe courte of Rome,
he was gode knyght, wiseman in dome.
At Rome, tell Kymbelyn was þare,
he mad him knygh[*t*]*, Augustus Cesar.*
ten ȝere he reyned kyng,
& in þat ȝere he mad endyng.]

Ihesus *Christus* natus est.

Ihesus Criste þat ȝere was born,
. so had a prophete tald beforn.

Cassibolan

Bot Cassibolan was ful ioyous
. Þat Þis werre was ended Þus.

reigns 15 years, and dies childless.

. ffyftene [ȝer] after he regned in pes,
. Bot no child ne lefte at his deses;

Tenmace is made king;

Þerfore Þe corounede sire Tenmace;
. To gouerne Þe reome he hadde grace.
Cassibolan was ded, as was pite,
& buryed at ȝork, Þe gode cite.
. Wiþ Iulyus went forþ sire Androche,
. & his broþer reioisede Þe regalte.

and after him, his son Kymbely,

After cam Kymbely, Tenmace sone,
. Þat had ful gret grace of Rome;

whom the Romans release from paying tribute.

. Of alle his truage Þey relesed hym Þer,
. While he scholde regne & lyuen her,
. So Þat he neuere ne payed non[1]
. To Rome ne to Octouyon.
. He meyntend euere his lond in pes,
. & leftyt his sones after his deces.

De natiuitate *Christi*.

In his time lives Taliessin,

In his tyme was here[2] a deuin,
His name was called Telesyn;

who tells the Britons

. He telde Þe Bretons many selcouþ,
. (Al fond Þey trewe he seide wyþ mouþ;)
. He bad Þem "lyue[3] wyþouten errour,

of the birth of Christ

" ffor now ys born our saueour!
" Now ys vs toward ioye & blys,

from a maid.

. " Þat of a mayde Þis[4] child born ys!

[1] Wace and Geoffrey say that Kimbalius did pay it.

[2] Þis *lond Þan was.* (This Taliessin invention is not Geoffrey of Monmouth's. It is not in De Lincy's MS. du Roi 27, but is in the ' MSS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; de l'Ars. ' 171, B.-L.; de Ste. Genev. Y., fol. ' 10.' *Wace*, i. 232).

[3] *leue.*

[4] *Of a maiden a.*

" Al mankynde schal he saue!
" Ihesus, þat name schal he haue."
Þis word þat þilk prophete seyde,
Þe Bretons in herte ful wel hit leyde;
Many a day þat word þey held;
Þey fondyt soþ al þat he teld.
Þer was no folk in al þe werd
Þat trowed so sone, when þey ought herd
Prechen ought of Iesu lawe,
. Ne to þe feyþ so sone gon[1] drawe.
. Þen was þer a þowsand ȝer gon [leaf 23, back, col. 2.]
. Þat Brutes aryued in Albyon,
. & þerto two hundred ȝer[2] mo
. Er Kymbelyn to deþ gan go.
As longe as he regned her,
Wyþ þe Romayns was he dere;
Þey asked hym neuere no[3] truage,
. Neyþer in his ȝougþe ne in age.[4]

The Britons recollect their prophet's words,

and turn better to Jesus's law than any other folk.

This is 1200 years after Brutus landed in Albion.

¶ *Christus* **natus est in tempore Kymbelyny.**

Of Kymbelyn to[5] childre left,
Þat þe Romayns þer truage reft.
Wyder, hight þe eldeste broþer;
Arwygar, men calde þat oþer.
Sire Wyder hadde þe heritage.
A man he was of gret corage,[6]
Proud he was, & ouer stout;
Þe Romayns nolde he loue[7] ne lout,
. Bot whare so euere he hem fond,

Kymbelyn leaves 2 sons.

The eldest, Wyder,

rules Britain.

A bold man he is,

and turns out the Romans.

---

[1] *wild.*

[2] *& tuo hundreth sais it.* [lf. 32, bk.]

[3] þer.

[4] *neuerþeles at terme & stage.*
He ȝalde it curtasly & hende.
in pes tiȝt his lyues ende.

[5] *tuo.*

[6] *a douhty knyght in vassalage.*

[7] *romeyns ne wild he luf.*

. He dide hem sone[1] voyde þe lond.
The Emperor Claudius — Claudeus was þan emperour,
. Of Rome maister gouernour:
swears by his head that he'll have his tribute. — Scorn hym þought, & swor his heued[2]
þer truage schold[3] nought so be leued;
He scholde[3] haue hit a-geyn ful wel,
Deserite Wyder of ylka del.
Of Romayns he gadered an host,
He invades Britain, and lands at Porchester, — & hyed fast til Bretaigne[4] cost.
Hauene he tok at Porcestre—
'Kaer Perys'[5] hight þan þat estre,—
which he tries to take, — He wende haue taken þe toun in hast,
. Bot he failled of his [t]ast.[6]
. þan tened Claudius [w]iþal,[7]
and builds a wall to — Byfore þe ȝate dide make a wal,
. þat no vitaille schuld come til toun:
starve them out: — To enfamyn hem[8] was þencheson.
But the Britons — Bot Wyder & Arwygarus
Wyþ twenty[9] þousand mad hem rescus.
drive the Romans back to their ships. — Sire Claudius & his partie
ffledde faste to þer nauye;
þe beste Romayns in batailles seer
Many battles take place. — Stoden somme ageyn Wyder,
& foughte wyþ hym longe stounde;
. Of boþe side ley ded on grounde.
A noble Roman, Hamon, — ¶ A Romayn þer was, a noble baroun,
His name þey calde sire Hamoun,
He was þemperores conseillour,
A noble knyght he was in stour;
halts, and sees Wyder's valour, — He houed, & byheld sire Wyders,
. How he bar hym stout & fers,

---

[1] *alle*.
[2] son cief jura, *Wace*, l. 5013.
[3] *suld*.
[4] *suyth vnto þis*.
[5] *karepers*.
[6] *tast* (attempt).
[7] Lamb. MS. perished. P. has *with att*.
[8] *famen þam*.
[9] *ten*.

Romayns to felle, Romayns to slo,—
. Vnneþe ascaped hym any[1] fro, —
How wysly his folk he ledde, and skill.
& how in batailles[2] he þem spredde,
. Wyþouten los slow þe[3] Romayns,
. & syn relied his men[4] agayns.
He saw wel—weel he mought[5] hit leue,— Hamon sees that
. þat oþer truage wold he no geue,
[6]Ne þe Romayns schuldit neuere wynne the Romans cannot win
Whyle Wyder rengned kyng þer-ynne ;[6] while Wyder lives.
He þoughte þorow[7] what manere þyng [leaf 24.]
He myght best slo Wyder þe kyng. He schemes to kill him ;
þat ylke noble Hamon Romayn,
Dispoilled a Breton þat he fond[8] slayn ; puts on a dead Briton's armour,
Wyþ þe armes of þat Brutoun
He armed hym seluen Hamoun,
& went þen o þe Bretons syde: rides with the Britons,
Als þey rod, so gan he ryde.[9]
[þe][10] armes deseyued hem ylkadel,
& of þer langage he spak ful wel,— talks to them in their own tongue,
He had lered at our[11] hostagers
þat were at Rome truagers.—
He calde þe Breton by þer name,
. & þey answered agayn þe same,[12]
Til he cam to þe kyng Wyder,[12] works himself close to king Wyder,
Alwey he neyghed hym ner & ner ;
þys Hamon rod ay side by side,[13]
. To sle þe kyng his tyme tabide.
. þe kyng til hym gaf no tent ;

[1] *mot any ascape him.* [leaf 32, back, col. 2.]
[2] *to bataile.*
[3] *tinsett* [loss] *slouh.*
[4] *eft alied þam wele.*
[5] *titt he mot lyue.*
[6–6] Lines 5449–50 omitted in P.
[7] *He þouh.*
[8] *spoiled a Breton þat was.*
[9] P. adds here,—
& þer langage to þam he spak.
toward þe kyng þe bataile brak.
[10] MS. perished. P., þe.
[11] *He lerid it at þer.*
[12] P. transposes these lines.
[13] *& þidere he sawe þe kyng ride.*
þus Hamon rode ay side bi side.

þat saw Hamoun, a knyf out hent,
stabs him, and then steals away. Vnder þarmure þe kyng he styked,
Priuely fro þem alle he pryked.

∫ De sapiencia & prudencia Arwygary.

Arviragus ∫ Arwygarus, his owen broþer,
Parseyued þat er any oþer,
& þoughte hit were gret folye
þere to grede or for to crie.
puts on his dead brother's cognizance, He tok þe kynges conisaunce,
. ffor non scholde perseyue[1] þat chaunce,
and bids his friends take no notice of Wider's death, . An bad his priues[2] euer-ylkon,
. " Nought so hardy make no mon ;[3]
. " ffor wyst our folk we were þus trayscht,
. " Hit scholde make þem alle abayscht ;[4]
. " Wyste þe Romayns þys chaunce wore,
. " Hit scholde enforce hem wel þe[5] more.
but fight harder than ever. . " ȝyf we were bold, now be we baldere,[6]
. " & y schal vndertake[7] þys were."
Arviragus joins in the battle, He was wel armed, & on his stede
. Toward þe[8] bataille he gan hym spede.
Waster[9] non þat wolde hym feyne
Whan þey sey þe kynges seigne.[10]
. So wel he bar hym, & so auster,
þey wende hit were kyng Wyder.
his knights break the Roman line, . þan myghte men se knyghtes stoute,
þat perced þorow þe Romayns Route ;
þe Romayns ne moughte to-gedere holde,
So were þe bretons egre & bolde ;
and put their host to flight. Syre Claudius wyþ his partie

---

[1] MS. *perseyme.*
[2] *primes.* [leaf 33.]
[3] *to mak mone.*
[4] *traist . . . obaist.*
[5] *suld aforce þam wele.*
[6] *ȝe were bolde bes now boldere.*
[7] *salt maynten forþe.*
[8] *to gyf.*
[9] *was* þer.
[10] *sawe þe kynge seyne.*

To þe wat*er* fledde wyþ his meynye;[1]
þ*at* myghte nought to þe wat*er* fle,
Vntil a wode þen fledde he.[2]
Hamoun, þ*at* þe host al ledde,
To þ*er* schypes faste he fledde;
He spirde after þ*er* enper*our*,
. Whider-ward he made his retour;
Men ynowe til hym gon seye,
þ*at* to þe wat*er* he tok hys weye.
þe kynges broþ*er* Arwygare,
. Whider[3] Hamon fledde, he was wel war.
Atte water Hamon doun lyght, [leaf 24, col. 2.]
Intil a bot Hamon had[4] tyght;
Byforn cam Arwygar atte bot;
Sire Hamones hed þer of he smot.
ffor Hamon lefte þere his heued,
þe name of hym þ*er* ys bileued;[5]
& for þencheson of þulke[6] Hamoun,
ffor hym þe calde þe toun HAMPTOUN:
ffor swylke chaunces þ*at* han bytid,[7]
Ar names of tounes cald & kyd.

Whan he was fled, þenper*our*,
& Hamon slayn atte retour,
. & alle wer dryuen to þ*at* cost,
. þe kyng to Wynchestre lad his host.
. When Arwygar[8] þiderward nam,
Claudius ef[t][9] to londe cam,
& com a-geyn to Porchestre,
& brak þe walles, & brente þe estre:
Al he brente, vp & doun,
& chaced men[10] out of þe toun.

5476 5480 Hamon flees to the ships, 5484 5488 but Arviragus catches him at his boat, and cuts his head 5492 off. From this the town is called Hampton. 5496 5500 Arviragus leads his men to Winchester, 5504 where Claudius, after landing again, and burning Porchester,

[1] *to* þer *nauie.*
[2] *wod fledden he.*
[3] *how.*
[4] *him.*
[5] *is leued.*
[6] þ*at.*
[7] *for chances* þ*at haf ben tid.*
[8] *tiłł Arwigarus.* [leaf 33, col. 2.]
[9] *eft.*
[10] *exilde* þ*e men.*

Byforen hit was a god[1] cite;
Syn cam hit neuere to þat bounte.
When he had destruyed þus Porchestre,
Syþen[2] he wente to Wynchestre;
besieges him. Þer-inne he seged Arwygare,
& alle þat euere wyþ hym ware.
Gode engyns dide he make,
Þe walles to breke, houses to schake.
Arviragus Arwygar heldyt a vylte,
So seged in a toun to be,
. & seide 'he wolde nought þrynne lye,
. 'To wham-euere happede[3] þe maistrie;
. 'Eyþer wold[4] he wynne or lese los,
. 'Er he scholde more be halde inclos.'[5]
comes out into the open, He went out in-to þe feld,
& alle his knyghtes wyþ spere[6] & scheld;
and puts his men in battle-array. He batailled hem vnto þe fight,
Wyþ archers gode, wel adight;
Þe mene folk alle y fere
Were wysly set in god[7] manere.
Bytwyxte þe partys was þer bot lyte
Þat þey ne scholde to-gedere smyte.

¶ De consilio Sapientum Ciuitatis.

The men of Winchester Þe wyseste men of þat cite
Conseilled hem how best[8] myght be.
fear losing their goods and men. Mykel þey dredde þer god to tyne,
& slaughtre of þe folk, þe[9] pyne;
. Þey saide, "Þe pes were better to haue,
. "Our toun & oure godes to saue,

[1] *noble.*
[2] *þan.*
[3] *who so fett to wyn.*
[4] *ouþer wild.*
[5] *suld more be holden clos.*
[6] *helm.*
[7] *wele sette on gode.*
[8] *if better.*
[9] *&.*

" þen for to lyue in werre & stryf,
. " & lese oure godes, & tyne our lyf." 5536
þey toke a man of honour, They ask Claudius
& sent hym to þe Emperour,
To wite at hym wheþer þat he ches whether he
To haue þe werre oþer þe pees. 5540 wants peace or war.
þenperour seide, als he þought,
" Werre to haue wylny[1] nought, He answers
" Ne y ne ȝerne nought of ȝoure, " Not war,
" Bot þat Rome haue his honoure; 5544 but my tribute."
" [2]Ne y ne wilne wyþ no man fight,
" So þat Rome mot haue his right."[2]
. þey graunted alle at his auis, [leaf 24, back, col. 1.] The Britons
. And sworen þe pees in boþe partys. 5548 agree to pay this,

ſ Concordati sunt Inperator & Rex.

þe Emperour honured mykel þe kyng,
. & profred hym a ful fair þynge: and Claudius
" Sire kyng," he seide, "a doughter y haue, offers his daughter to
" & on þe y vouche hure saue 5552 Arviragus.
" ȝyf þou wilt myn owen[3] bycome,
" & ȝeld þy[4] truage vntil Rome."
Arwygar graunted þer-to,
& to þe true[5] ȝeldyng al-so. 5556
In Wynchestre were þey hosteld[6] boþe, Both are
& frendes, þat er weren wroþe. hosteld in Winchester,
þemperour to Rome sent and while Clau-
ffor Genwys, þat maiden gent. 5560 dius's daughter,
In dwellyng of þis messagers, Genwys, is coming,
. þey sampned knygtes & squyers;
Wyþ gret host þey wente þer weye, he and Arviragus conquer

---

[1] *wild .I.* [leaf 33, back.]
[2-2] P. omits these lines.
[3] *wiłł myn ow.*
[4] *& ȝelde.*
[5] *to treuage.*
[6] *were ostiled.*

the Orkneys, &c.

& wonne þe ilde of[1] Orkeneye,
& oþer ildes þat þer ware,
. Wyþ help of[2] sire Arwygare.

Bede says Claudius reigned A.D. 64.

. þis Claudyus regned y þat tyme—
. As seint Bede seys in his ryme—
. Syn Ihesu was born of oure leuedy,
. þer fel ȝeres[3] sixe & fourty.

Þis messegers þat went to Rome,
Y þe somer a-geyn[4] þey come,
& broughte þat maiden Genwys,

Genwys arrives.

Gentyl of body & fair of vis.
. þen cam hom þemperour;[5]
. þan mad þey myrthe in halle & bour.[6]

Arviragus weds her

To wedde þat may in place auenaunt,
þe couenaunt to holde, siker þey[7] graunt,

in a vale on the Severn,

Vpon Seuerne, in o vale
þat riche was & ful ese,[8]
Bytwyxten Ingelond & Wales,—
. To telle ȝow þe soþe[9] tales—

where a town is built in honour of her.

þat for þe worschip of þat may,
A toun þey sette þer þat day.

And as Claudius begets there a son called Gloy,

[10] þys Emperour gat þer a sone;
Of þat child þe name we mone;
Gloy he hight y[11] þat estre;

the town is called Gloucester.

§ And for þat Gloy, hat hit GLOUCESTRE.
Arwygar wedded þer Genwys,
In Gloucestre, wyþ mykel pris;
þer was he corouned, & sche,

---

[1] *wan to Rome att.*
[2] *him was.*
[3] þer *fele* ȝers.
[4] *in þe somores tide.*
[5] þat *tyme com þe emperour home.*
[6] *mirth þei mad at þer tocome.*
[7] *& sikere.*
[8] asasée (ensemencé, fertilisé), *Wace*, l. 5191.
[9] *for to mene of þo.*
[10] P. inserts here [leaf 33, back, col. 2],—
Gloucestre first hight it þus.
for þe emperour sir Claudius.
[11] *hight born in.* (Wace gives a prior alternative: because Claudius built Gloucester.)

. Noblely wiþ solempnete;
& when þe feste was brought til ende,
Claudius to Rome ageyn gan wende.

Claudius goes back to Rome.

¶ De aduentu Sancti Petry Apostoly.

I fynde writen, ȝow to teche,
þat in Nero tyme seint Peter gan[1] preche.
ffro Antyoche þat tyme he cam,
þorow prechyng brought hit to Cristendam,
And was comen right in to[2] Rome,
And preched þere of Cristes dome.

(In Nero's time St. Peter, after converting Antioch, preaches in Rome.)

¶ Whan gon was sire Claudyus, [leaf 24, back, col. 2.]
In Bretayne regned Arwygarus;
Of hym self he let right mykel,
Bot proud he was, & a party[3] fykel;
þe true[4] to Rome gyue he nolde,
ffor he dedeyned[5] of hem to holde;
þe Romayns þoughte an outrage
So for to lese þer truage;

Arviragus reigns in Britain, and refuses to pay tribute to Rome.

¶ þey senten hyder[6] VASPASYAN,
. Maister of Rome was he þan.
At Douere wolde he vp a-ryue;
þe kyng hit herde, & þyder gan dryue,—
. As hit ys founden in[7] Ebru,
. Douere þen highte Reptupu,[8]—
þer fended he[9] Vaspasian þe lond.
þer sailles ageyn on mast þey wond,
& seyled by þe landes syde
Tyl Toteneys, þer gon þey ride.

Vespasian is sent to subdue Arviragus, who opposes his landing at Dover; and so he sails to Totness,

---

[1] þat *tyme ȝede saynt Petir to.* (A cel terme, *Wace*, l. 5214.)
[2] *late to.*
[3] *a partie.*
[4] *treuage.*
[5] *he deyned not.*
[6] *after.*
[7] þe *Latyn sais .I. wene.*
[8] *Ritipu.*
[9] *defended.*

. ffor þy now hit dide hem[1] qued
. þat þey hem so þat[2] lond furbed.
goes to Oxford, Til Oxenford[3] þey gon alle ride,
To take þe toun y þe euentyde:
. 'Karphuelgoit' vpon[4] Bretoun,
. On Englische, 'Oxenford' þe toun.
. þe toun of þeym hadde no doute,
and besieges it for a week, Seuenyght þe seged hit wyþoute.
þe kyng, als sone as he myght,
Oste gadred, & þider hym dight;
Raþer ne myghte[5] þider wende;
Arviragus then comes, . Bote atte seue nyghtes[6] ende,
He com in a morwe tyde.
Sone þey assembled on boþe[7] syde,
and a battle follows for the whole day. ffro morn til euen bataille þey nomen,
þat neyþer side was ouercomen;
At euen þey ȝeden alle asonder;
Al were þey wery, hit was no wonder.
Next day On þe morn, þo þat were lefte,
þey armed hem to bataille efte.

∫ Concordati sunt per Reginam.

Queen Genwys reconciles the Romans and Britons; Bot þe quene, dame Genwys,
Sche[8] acorded boþe partys;
Scheo[8] peyned hure acord to make,
ffor loue of þe Romayns sake;
Algate scheo peyned hure so,
Til[9] acord sche[8] brought þem to.
Al þe wynter scheo[8] dide þem byde,

---

[1] *fond þei non* þat *did* þam. (Ne trova qui li desfandist, *Wace*, i. 243, l. 5239.

[2] þam þe.

[3] Essecestre, *Wace*, l. 5240; Exeter, *Geoffrey*, iv. 16.

[4] *Karpenhuelgoit opon.* [leaf 34.] (In Geoffrey, not Wace).

[5] *sonere ne mot he.*

[6] *at þe seuen daies.*

[7] *& smyte togidere oñ ilk.*

[8] *scho.*

[9] þat.

Til hit was toward[1] somertyde;
. Þe pes was take,[2] Þe partys swore,
. Bot Vaspasian swor first byfore.[3] 5648
Þe kyng, fro Þat ylke day, and Arviragus pays his tribute regularly,
Al his lyue ȝald Rome Þer pay;[4]
Hys oþ ne let he neuere falle,
Bot ay worschiped Romayns alle, 5652
. And wyþ help of Vaspasian
. Al Irlonde he wan;[5] and conquers Ireland.
. Þe folk, Þe lond, he couþe wel loke;
. At Colchestre he lis,[6] we fynde in boke. 5656
. A bok, men calleþ hit Iuuenal,[7] A book, Juvenal, lies
. Of stories hit spekeþ al,
. At Gloucestre, Þer hit lys,[8] at Gloucester,
. And Þe quene, dam Genwys. 5660 and so does Queen Genwys.

Marius his sone, of Genewys born, [leaf 25.] Her son Marius reigns over Britain,
Was kyng as his fader byforn.
. A myghtful[9] man was Maryus,
Of fair speche merueillous; **Marius Rex.**
His ffader tyme he was atte Rome 5665
Wiþ Þe kynde his moder of come.
Wel he contened hym in his londe,
. Þer blessed hym boþ fre & bonde.[10] 5668 and is blest by bond and free.
In Maryus tyme fel Þis ferlyk:
In Scotlond aryued[11] a Peyt, Rodryk. The Pict Rodryk
King Peyt-cam out of Þe se,[12]
Þat neuere had mercy ne pite;[13] 5672

---

[1] Þe.

[2] Þe *pes* Þe *granted.*

[3] & *Vespasian to Rome fore.* (Puis est à Rome repairiés, *Wace*, l. 5266.)

[4] P. leaves out the next four lines. Their subject is in Wace and Geoffrey.

[5] Geoffrey implies this: iv. 16.

[6] *gode kyng he was.*

[7] Geoffrey of Monmouth (iv. xvi.) notices Juvenal's mention of the famed Arviragus, *Sat.* iv. 26.

[8] *it sais he lies.*

[9] *wilfull.*

[10] Þe *folk serued him at hand.*

[11] *vpryued.* [leaf 34, col. 2.]

[12] *fre Cice.* (Sice, *Wace*, l. 5286; Scythia, *Geoffrey.*)

[13] *a man he was full of malice.*

Mykel he loued to robbe & reue,
invades and ravages Scotland. Scotland to waste wold he nought leue.
Als he wente[1] & robbede faste,
Marius fights Maryus mette hym atte laste;
Marius had god folk ynow,
and kills him, & Peyt Rodryk smertly he slow.
ffor þat Maryus slow þe Peyht,
and in honour of it sets up a stone He dide *þer* set a ston þorow sleight,
ffor to schewe his prowesse,
& forto make þe menyng fresse;
ffor in þe ston he dide be wryte,
Whar-þorow euery[2] man may wyte;
Hit wytnesseþ þe[3] auenture,
& telles þe disconfiture,
How Marius slow þe Peyt Rodrik;
þe ston was set for þat ferlyk:
þo men þat weren, & ȝit[4] are,
which is called Westmare, þey calle þat ston ȝit 'Westmare;'
. þat contre folk seyen[5] ilkon
and gives its name to Westmoreland. . þat te countre[6] is cald after þe ston;
. ∫ ffor þe ston Westmare, WESTMORLAND;
. þus in þe Latyn[7] writen y fand.
. When þat Rodrik þe Peiht was ded,
Marius is advised to settle the Picts in Caithness, . Men gaf þe kyng Marius to red,
'To take þe Peihtes more & lesse,
'Deliuere hem a party of Catenesse
'To tyle & haue in heritage,
which is waste, 'ffor hit was bot wast & sauage.'
and he does so. þey herborwed[8] þem *þer* euery where,
In stedes ese, þat best were.
But as they want British wives, and are Wymen of Bretayne wolde þey haue,
Bot þe Bretons vouched nought[9] saue;

---

[1] ȝed.
[2] & *for* þat *writyng*.
[3] & *testemons* þat.
[4] þat þer *woned* &.
[5] þe *men of* þat *cuntre say*.
[6] þat *it*.
[7] Geoffrey of Monmouth, book iv. chap. xvii.
[8] þe *herberd*.
[9] *non*.

Þey dide hem in til Irland,
& tok *þer* wyues at her[1] hand;
. Of two[2] kyndes, Iris & Peiht,
. Sorewe & tene hit broughte[3] on height.
Mari*us* þe kyng, in his lyf her,
Lyuede nyne & fourty ȝer;[4]
. Buried he was in Salesbury,
. *þat* standes on a playne ful mury.

refused, they go to Ireland, and take Irish wives.

Marius is buried at Salisbury, which stands on a merry plain.

Coyl Rex.

After Marius þan lyuede longe,
Coyl his sone *þat* land gan fonge;
He was norysed y þe toun[5] of Rome;
In[6] alle lawes he gaf right dome;
Þey of Rome louede hym wel,
ffor þey hym founde as trewe as stel.
Coyl couþe of many queintise,
And manie artes of seer[7] wyse;
. He was neue*r*e nygon ne nyce,
Ne neue*r*e vsed yuel vice;[8]
. Ten ȝer he regned her al fully;[9]
. At Norwiche byried ful worþyly.[10]

His son Coyl then reigns, who was brought up in Rome;

he is as true as steel, knows many arts,

[leaf 25, col. 2.] and is not a fool, or vicious.

Lucius *prim*us Rex *Christian*us.

After þis gode kyng Coylus,
Regned his sone sire Lucius;
He was large & curteys,
. And firste Cristen kynge, men seis.
Al þis land so fair and fre,[11]
Þorow hym was brought to Cristiente.

Lucius succeeds him:

and is the first Christian king.

---

[1] *at* þer.
[2] *of* þo *tu*.
[3] *ire & tene es wele*.
[4] régna longement, *Wace*, i. 247, l. 5322.
[5] *courte*. [leaf 34, back.]
[6] *of*.
[7] *on sere*.
[8] *non itt vyce*.
[9] *wele & riche*.
[10] *he ligges biried at Norwiche*.
[11] *re Lucius Bretannie*,

When Lucius hears

Whan he herde þe lawe of Crist,
. How in his name [men][1] were baptist,
Of his miracles men spake ryf,
. & of þapostles holy lyf,
& als how God for þeym wrought
þat to Cristendam wer brought,
He sent þe Pope Eluthere, **Papa Euleutherius.**
Bysoughte hym as his fader dere *(In a later hand.)*
To sende hym a man myght hym baptyze,
Of Cristes lawe lere hym þe wyse.
When þe Pope herde þat tydynge,
He þanked Iesu, heuene kynge,
. þat in his tyme he wolde so wyrche,
. Brytaigne to brynge to holy chirche.
Two clerkes he sente hider to preche—
Bisschopes þe were, þe lawe to teche,—
þat o[2] clerk highte sire Duman,
þat oþer men calde Bisschop ffagan,[3]
þyse to bisschopes baptized þe kynge
& alle his men[4] at her comynge.
þorow þe kyng & his[5] grauntise
þey ordeyned þe lawe in[6] right assise;
þei ordeigned ilka[7] bischop þer se,[8]
& Erchebischopes abouen hem to be.[9]
In hys tyme[10] were temples olde,
.[11] Eyght & twenty flamins[12] men tolde,—
. þe Latyn calleþ[13] temple 'flamins,'—
. Somme of Mahoun, & somme of Appoll[i]ns,

of Christ's miracles,

and how God works for Christians, he sends to pope Eleutherius for a man to baptize and teach him.

The pope thanks God,

and sends two bishops,

Duman and Fagan,

who baptize Lucius and all the Britons,

and ordain bishops and archbishops.

They find 28 old temples, or flamens,

---

[1] *in his men.*
[2] *þe to.*
[3] Matan, MS. du Roi 27; Fagan, MS. du Roi 7515[3.3.] Colb.; *Wace*, i. 248. l. 5349. Faganus, *Geoffrey.*
[4] *meigne.*
[5] *kyng had.*
[6] *as þe lawe is &.*
[7] MS. *illa.*
[8] *Ordeyned þei Archbisshop see.* [leaf 34, back, col. 2.] (Lamb. MS. follows Wace.)
[9] *& bisshopes vndere þam to be.*
[10] *þis lond.*
[11] The eight and twenty flamens are in *Geoffrey* (chap. xix.) but not the next line.
[12] *grete.*
[13] *sais þe.*

. Somme of Dyane, somme & of Berit.— devoted to Mahoun, Berit, &c.,
. Two[1] arche flaminus were þey[2] ȝit ; 5760
. At Londone was *þer* chef flamee,[3] and two archflamens at London and York.
. & at ȝork *þat* oþer se ;
. Þe oþere flamins in londe ware
. Als þe bischopes sees now are. 5764
Þyse temples of Maumetries All these temples the Pope's bishops hallow to Christ's work, ordain priests for them, endow them,
Þey turned alle fro *þer* eresyes,
& halewode *þem*[4] to Cristes werk,
. & ordeyned kirkes, prest,[5] & clerk, 5768
Landes, rentes, lyght & catel,
Þat to þo temples langed or[6] fel,
& al oþer aportynaunce,
He gaf hit to *þer* sustenaunce : 5772
. To a dyocise langed a cite, and set parishes to them.
& ordened paroschens[7] for to be.
. To parsones & to vicaries
. Was graunted grete seignuryes. 5776
When Bretayne was Cristen al, [leaf 25, back, col. 1.]
& þe newe lawe was brought to stal,
Ioyful was sire Lucyus, Lucius rejoices at the conversion of his land,
Þat sey þe folk al turne[8] *þus*. 5780
In Cristene lawe, als he hym ches,
Þer-inne he ended in god[9] pes ;
At Gloucestre he deide, & *þer* [he] lys,[10] dies at Gloucester, and goes to Paradise,
. & his soule wente to Paradis. 5784
. Þe date of Crist, men seid þo[11] her,
. Was an hundred & fyue[12] & fifty ȝer. A.D. 155.
Wyþouten heyr Lucyus ys ded.
. Þen couþe þe Bretons *þer*-of no red : 5788

---

[1] Geoffrey makes three : the third at the City of Legions, chap. xix.
[2] þer.
[3] *þe archeflame.*
[4] *halowed* þam.
[5] *with preste.*
[6] *longed &.*
[7] *parisches.* (parosces, *Wace*, l. 5365.)
[8] *sawe* þe *folk turned.*
[9] *godes.*
[10] *London he died &* þer *he lies.*
[11] *told so.*
[12] *sex.* (sis, *Wace*, l. 5387.)

Lucius dies heirless; and the Britons fight as to who shall be king.

. Wo was hem he hadde non heyr!
. To haue a lord þey were in speyr;[1]
. [þe were bigan omang þam alle,
. to whom þe seignorie suld falle.][2]

. ffro lond to la[n]d, fro man to man,
ſ Of þat to Rome tydynge ran,
þat ded was sire Lucyus,

The Romans hear of this, and send Severus, with two legions,

. & þat we werreyed amonge vs.[3]
þey chose Sauer, a senatour, : emperour :
& made hym maister & gouernour;
He broughte hider two Legions.
þe Bretons to þeym were felons;

Sauerus Inperator.

who conquers many Britons;

Sauer werreyed on þem faste,
Manye he conquered & caste,

but others resist him,

& ffele oþere hadde disdeyn
ffor to halde of any Romayn;
Vmwhile þey faught, vmwhile fleand;

and he drives them to Scotland.

Sauer þey[m][4] chaced to Scotland.

They choose Fulgence king.

þen chose þe Bretons þeym a kynge:
ſ ffulgence he highte, a gret lordyng;
He felawed hym[5] wyþ þe Peytes,[6]

ffulgencius Rex.

He fellows himself with the Picts and outlaws,

. þat euere were ful of deseites;[7]
. Outlandeis þat were ffledde,
. Alle swilk wyþ þeym þey ledde;
In a conrtre þey dide[8] gret schame;
Dene[9] was þenne þer-of þe name.

and marches south,

. ffro Scotland in to þurlewal,[10]
. Peytes landes þey telde hit al.[11]
. ffulgence southewarde hym hasted,
. þe lond al aboute was wasted;

---

[1] *to be* þer *lord had* þei *no speire.*
[2] From the Petyt MS.
[3] MS. *he werreyed ageyns.* P. reads, *we wered amang.* [leaf 35.]
[4] *Seuere* þam.
[5] *& folowed* þam.
[6] As Pis se sont acompagnié,
Si se sunt ensamble aloié.
Wace, i. 251, l. 5412–13.
[7] *lefe to fehtes.*
[8] *cuntre men did.*
[9] *Deire.* [10] *vnt Thrilwatt.*
[11] *Peihtlond* þei *told it att.*

Sauer fledde southeward ageyn; — pursuing Severus,
Þe Peites robbed & made al pleyn.
ffulgence wyþ Peytes on hem þey[1] ran, — whom he attacks; but the Picts flee,
Bot þe Peyte fledde ilk a man;—
Som tyme wolde þey bataille abide,
& som tyme fledde on ilka syde;
Bot ofte dide þey Sauer tene, — though they afterwards harass Severus.
ffulgence wiþ þe Peytes kene.
Longe dured þat reuery,[2]
Þat Sauer mought neuere come þem by,
Til he dide make an ouerthwert dik, — At last Severus has a dyke dug between the two seas, with a well-made paling on the top,
Bitwyxte to sees a ful gret strik;
& þer-on a pale wel y-poynt,[3]
Þykke & hey, ful wel y-ioynt,
& closed þat side of þe lond;
Ouerthwert, Est & West hit bond.
Syn þat tyme hit was in-clos,
Neuere non of alle his foos — and that keeps out all his foes.
Durste non of þeym ferþer fele, [leaf 25, back, col. 2.]
Ne by þat side robbe ne stele.
ffulgence tok conseil at wyse, — But Fulgence
& of Peytes[4] & oþere of hyse,
. To werre ȝit more vpon Sauer,
. & hym to chace fer & ner.[5]
Til Peytes he gaf gyftes grete, — bribes the Picts
& preied hem þey scholde nought[6] lete
To gadere[7] a god compaygnie
Toward[8] þe se in his nauie. — to ship in his fleet,
. When þey hadde gadered þer host,
. & schipes by þe se[9] cost,
. Þe host was schiped, & went to se,[10] — sails,
& aryued vp y þe beste contre, — lands,

[1] *whan Seuere had folk on þam eft.*
[2] *robberie.*
[3] *palis with poynt* (palis, *Wace*).
[4] *at þe Peihtes.* [leaf 35, col. 2.]
[5] *& robbe & reue hym futt nere.*
[6] *þam þei wild not.*
[7] *bot gadred.*
[8] *oñ.*
[9] *in his schippes bi þe sees*
[10] *in stedes þer þei sawe ese.*

besieges York,

& byseged ȝork al aboute.
Al þe contre til hym gan loute;
He sente to grete lordynges,

and by gifts induces many British lords to forsake Severus.

& het & gaf hem riche þynges.
ffor fair hot, & giftes þat þey tok,
þemperour Sauer þey forsok.

Severus advances

Sauer tok hise oþer Bretons,
& asembled[1] his legions;

to York;

Toward ȝork faste þem dight,
To remue[2] hem he hadde tyght.
. When þey were comen wyþynne a lyte,

the armies meet;

þe batailles gonne to-gedere smyte;
ffellyk þey foughte, for þer was slayn
. On eyþer syde þeir cheftayn;

both Fulgence and Severus are slain.

ffulgence was first feld to grounde,
& Sauer was slayn on a stounde.
þe Romayns for Sauer bysought,

Severus is buried at York,

So þat his body to ȝork was brought,
& biried þer solempnely,
& his oþer frendes hym by.

(having reigned here 17 years,)

. [3] þis ilke enperour Sauer
. Regned her seuentene ȝer:
. Syn Crist cam[4] of þe vyrgyne,

A.D. 189.

. Nyne score ȝer euene, & nyne,

He leaves two sons, 1. Bassian, by a British wife,

Of þys Sauer þat deide þere,
Tweye knaue childre were;
þat on men calde Bassian,

and 2. Cetan (Getan,) by a Roman wife.

þat oþer had to name Cetan.[5]
Cetan[5] moder was a Romayn,
Comen[6] of gode knyght & swayn.
Bassan was born of a Brette;
þe Bretons of hym þe bettere lette.

---

[1] *gadred togidere.*
[2] *remoue;* and omits the next two lines.
[3] Not in Geoffrey either.
[4] *was born.*
[5] *Gelan.*
[6] *of men;* and after l. 5881 repeats lines 5878–9 on leaf 35, back

Þe Romayns toke þis ilke Cetan,[1] — The Romans crown Cetan;
& corouned hym, & bycome[2] hys man.
Þe Bretons wiþ Bassan helde, — the Britons adopt Bassian.
& of þe roeme highte hym þe schelde.
Þen ilkon in *þer* party
Held wyþ his kynde doughtyly:
Al þus wyþ megge[3] & wiþ monge — Fights between each party take place,
Bytwixt hem wax *þer* werre stronge;
Ilkon ouer oþer so lange þey[4] ran,
þat atte laste slayn was Cetan.[5] — till Cetan is slain,
ſ Þe Bretons, eft sones þey ches
Bassan kyng, & hadde þer pes. **Bassan Rex.** — and Bassian is made king of
ſ A ladde was y þys londe, of fame, [leaf 26.] Britain.
Karaucyus[6] þen was his name; **Karaucius** — A noted lad,
Hardy he was, & ful connynge,[7] **Maledictus.** — Karausius, is then in Britain;
Stalworthe of body, & wel fightynge;[8] — bold and clever,
In many nedes assayed he was;
Of prowesse men preised þys Karas; — though low-born and poor;
Born he was of pouere[9] lynage,
& litel he hadde of heritage.
Gretter & fairer[10] stat he held,
þan wolde his rentes,[11] or land in feld; — willing to undertake great enterprises.
Grete emprises he durst vndertake;
More louede he þe werre þan þes to make.
I þe se to wende, þenne was doute, — At this time, pirates plunder on sea and land.
Maryners robbed þe ildes aboute;
Mighte atte hauenes reste ne[12] be,
ffor outlandesmen *þat* come by se.
Karaucius þenne hym by-þought, — Karausius proposes to the Romans

---

[1] *Gettan.*
[2] *com.*
[3] þus *gate with mengyng.* (ensi ot por l'eslection, *Wace*, i. 255, l. 5486.)
[4] *algate ilk* oþer *so long* ouer.
[5] *Getan.*
[6] Charais, *Wace.* Cp. 'Karas,' below.
[7] *& conand.*
[8] *fightand.*
[9] *pure.*
[10] *fairer & better.*
[11] *þan he rent had.*
[12] *duelle no.*

þe senat*urs* of Rome he[1] sought,
. & tolde hem *þat* outlandes flet
. Bretaygne all*e* aboute biset,
to clear the sea of these pirates if they'll give him a commission to do it.
& seide "ȝif ȝe wil gyue me leue
" þe robbo*urs* o þe se to greue,
" & gyue chartre of a-vowerye,[2]
" þe se to loke wyþ myn nauie,
" I scholde ȝow warante ȝoure[3] *tru*age,
" *þat* non outlandeys scholde make passage."
This the Romans give him, under their seal.
þey gr*a*unted hym *þen* leue to haue,
So *þat* he schulde *þer tru*age saue;
Chartre þey gaf hym wiþ her sel,
. So *þat* he scholde to þeym beo leel.[4]
and he departs,
Karres his leue atte Romayns[5] nam,
& schewed [þe][6] chart*re þer* he cam;
but raises a fleet,
Sone[7] gat he hym mariners,
Wiþ schipes, barges, & balyngers.[8]
which he mans with thieves and other evil-deedy men
He desired[9] men *þat* were fledde,
þeues & robbo*urs*, swylk he ledde,
. Yuel dedy[10] men *þat* were wight,
Of Outlandes al[11] *þat* he myght;
Of swylk he gadered co*m*paignies,
born and nourished in felonies,
Born & norysched in felonyes.
Whan þis Karraus had gadered him[12] ost,
and then invades islands,
Of manye a land he serched þe cost;
ffro on ilde til o*þer* he ȝede,
. Of no þynge ne hadde þey[13] drede;
robs men, wastes lands,
Men he robbed, & landes wasted,
ffrom o stede til o*þer*[14] he hasted;
To ney neygheburs, & fer*þer*[15] fro,
. Til all*e* he dide skaþe & w[o];

---

[1] MS. *þey*, but *þ* altered to *h*. *he*, P.
[2] *chartire & auourie.*
[3] *I sall þam warant þorgh.*
[4] *þat he suld to þam be leale.* [leaf 35, back, col. 2.]
[5] MS. *Romayms.*
[6] *þe.*
[7] *quicly.*
[8] *schippes gode busses coggers.*
[9] *disherited.*
[10] *itt dedy.*
[11] *þo.*
[12] *geteñ him.*
[13] *was it non þat þei ne had.*
[14] *fro a stede till anoþer.*
[15] *neihburs nere & fer.*

Al he tok þat he myght take, — plundering all he can.
He nolde mesure to[1] no man make;
þat Outlandeys byforn had left, — **De fide**
He spared non, bot alle he reft. — **ffracta.**
To saue þe folk, Carrays was sworn, — Sworn to protect folk, he robs them more than any one.
Bot he was worse þan oþer byforn;
fful mykel he wan, ȝit ȝernde he more,
ffor his folk woxe & spredde ay whore;
Casteles & tounes doun he þrew;
ffor lord, he wolde þat alle hym knew.
. So fer he sayled[2] to wynne hym wayne, [leaf 26, col. 2.] — At last he reaches Britain,
Atte laste he aryued in[3] Bretaigne;
Pryuely wiþ þe Bretons he spak,
& seide, "ȝe se nought ȝoure lak! — asks the Britons to change Bassian for him;
. " ȝour kyng can nought hym seluen were!
" Bot ȝyf ȝe wyl me god feiþ bere,
" Y scholde deliuere ȝow out of peynes,[4]
" And al ȝour land of ȝour Romaynes.[5]" — and the Picts
He ȝede to þe Peytes, & seide hem þe same;
. ȝif þey wolde alle wyþ o name
. Make hym kynge of þempyres, — to make him king.
. He wolde þem make lordes & syres.
þo were þe Peytes wyþ þe kyng pryue,
& in þys lond gret plente;
. And Karays wyste þat þey were fykel,
. þerfore he glosed hem, & gaf hem mykel,
& þey hight[6] hym wyþouten faille, — The Picts agree to betray Bassian when Karausius fights him.
ȝyf he wyþ þe kynge tok bataille,
Tyl Kareys party schold þey go,
And þe kyng desconfite & slo.

---

[1] *mesure wild he.*

[2] *farde.*

[3] *in* þis.

[4] *I. suld delyuere ȝow of* þe *Romeyns.*

[5] *att* þis *lond of* þar *dimeyns.*

[6] *hette.* [leaf 36.]

ſ Decepcio Pyctor*um*.

Karausius
. Whan þey had alle Karays y-hight*e*,
. Bretons & Peytes help at her myght*e*.
defies Bassian,
Bassian he gan defye,
& wiþ foule wordes hym desc*r*ie.[1]
So longe lasted *þer* manace,
and the armies meet.
To bataille þey comen in to[2] place:
Bassian trusts
[3] Bassan affied hym o þe Peytes,
. In bataille þey knewe many[4] sleightes,
the Picts more than all his men;
þer-fore his trist was on þeym more
þan on alle þo *þat* þer wor*e*.
ffor he god trist to þem hadde,
Richely often þeym he cladde;
& als þe p*ar*tys gaf bataille,
Iusted & chased, & gon assaille,
but they prove traitors, turn against him;
þys ilke Peytes were traytou*rs*,
Ageyn þe kynge turned y þe stou*rs*,
. & wyþ Karays partye held,
& traysched þe kyng right in þe feld,
and kill him.
And slowe þe kyng, sire Bassian,
. & alle his folk, ylk a man.
. *þus* þey traisched hym in nede,
. Sire Bassian *þat* dide þem fede;
Karausius wins Britain,
& Karays lyghtli wan þe lond;
. Agayns hym no p*ar*ty he ne fond.
and gives the Picts land in Scotland.
Karays gaf hem, for *þer* seruise,
Among þe Scottes gret ff*r*aunchise;
So *þat* Pictes & þe Scottes kynde
Ar now al on, as men fynde.

---

[1] *wordes ascrie.*
[2] *were þei brouht in.*
[3] The Petyt MS. inserts—
Karais partie dred not þe kyng.
ne Bassian Karais no þing.
[4] *Inouh of bataile þei couth.*

Allectus & Walwus, Romany, venerunt.

Whan þey of Rome tydyng herde
þat Karays wiþ Bretaygne þus ferde,[1]
þey sente hider þre[2] legions,
Wyþ to of þer bolde barons;
Allectus & Walwes þer name[3] hyght,
Wysemen of werre, & hardy in fight.[4]
. þey come pryuely[5] out of þe se,
. Bot Karays wolde haue reft hem þeir entre;
Bot maugre Karreys, on hym þey wan, [lf. 26, bk., col. 1.]
And slowe Karreys þe false man,[6]
& alle þat weren of his kynde,
Destruyed hem[7] by rote & rynde,
& alle þo þat þe Romayns forsok,
And til Kareys party tok.

The Romans send three legions against Karausius,

led by Allectus and Walwes.

They slay Karausius, all his kin,

and all his party.

¶ De electione Regis Asclypidot in parliamento.

. Þe Bretons seye þe Romayns aboue,
. And Romayns myghte þey neuere loue;
ffayn wold þey þer fredam fende,[8]
Truage to Rome wold þey non sende;
After þe barons þo þey sent,
To chesen at þat Parlement
A kyng þat myghte ageyn þeym vaille,
Asclipedot, Erl of Cornewaille.
Whan he was chosen, he dide somoune
Alle þe Bretons fro toune to toune,

The Britons still desire freedom from the Roman yoke,

and call a Parliament to choose Asclypidot king.

He summons them all to

---

[1] *with* þis *lond misferd.*
[2] *tuo.* [leaf 36, col. 2.] trois, *Wace*, i. 260.
[3] *Allet & Gallus* þer *names.*
[4] *hardy & wight.*
[5] *com vp ryuand.*
[6] þat *falsnes gan.*
[7] *stroyed* þam.
[8] P. transposes this line and the next.

[1] þat alle þat myghte wepene welde,
To bataille schold come, þat were of elde,[1]
fight the Romans at London. To Londone ageyn Allectus,
. & his felawe sire Walwus.[2] 6028

¶ De Bello inter Romanos & Regem apud Londonium.

While the Romans are sacrificing, A day þe Romayns made sacrifise
I þe temple, as was [þer] gyse.[3]
Right in þeire solempnete,
the Britons besiege them. Byseged þe Bretons þeir cite; 6032
They rush to arms, þe Romayns herde noise & cry,
& cried "as armes!" on hy, on hy,[4]
And dide þem out in to þe felde,
. & baldely on þem self gon belde, 6036
and fight the Britons, & foughten wyþ þe Bretons faste.
but are destroyed, and Alectus is slain. Bot þe Romayns route to-braste;
ffor Alectus dide[5]; & his mene
3ede al doun, & moughte nought fle; 6040
Alle þat were on þat party,
Ascaped þer non by stret ne sty.
Walwes (Gallus) flees into London, Sire Walwes sey[6] þeir side 3ed doun;
By tyme he fledde in to þe toun, 6044
. & þe gates after þem sperde.
mans the battlements, To karnels & to þe walle [t]hey ferde,
& to þe toures cop[7] on hey,
and keeps the Britons off. & dide þe Brutons holde þem a dreigh.[8] 6048
Asclipedot Asclipedot þat was wyþoute,
. Saw þe Romayns hadde no doute;
sends for more Britons. His lettres[9] he dide write & sende
After mo bretons fer & hende, 6052

1-1 *att suld com* þat *were of elde. to bataile go or wapen welde.*
2 *Gallus.*
3 þer *wise.*
4 *has armes att on hy.*
5 *side.*
6 *Gallus sawe.*
7 *toure vp.* [leaf 36, back.]
8 *o drie.*
9 *brefis.*

Þat þey scholde come & sege make
Aboute Londone, Romayns to take.
ffor þe sonde of sire Asclipidot,
Come Walschemen & many a Scot;
On ilka syde alle þey cam,
Þat langed vnto þe kynedam.
Engyns dide[1] þe Bretons reyse,
& mangenels ful gode to preyse,
& ffruscht þe wal of þe cite;
Wyþ strengþe on þeym þey had entre.
Þen myghte men se þe Romayns deye,
& on hepes leye by[2] ilka weye;
Neuere byfore swylk slaughter was
Of [þe][3] Romayns at no pas.
Þe Romayns þat were so schent/, [leaf 26, back, col. 2.]
To priue fortelets[4] þey went,
. ffro þe Bretons for to hyde,
. þer lif to lengþe ay byside;[5]
Bot þe Bretons helden hem[6] streyt,
Þey ascaped nought for no deseyt.
Sory was Walwes, &[7] made his mone,
& preyed vn-to[8] þe Bretons ilkone,
" Lordynges, wol ȝe let me go
" Vnto Rome þer y cam fro,
" & my men for to saue?
" O legion, & namo, wold y craue.[9]
. " þo þat mystaken haue, more or lesse,[10]
. " ffor þeym ask y forgyuenesse,
" & let vs senglely a-wey[11] fare
" Out of þys lond for euere mare."

.6056 Both Welsh and Scotch come,

make great engines,

6060 break down the wall,

and slaughter

6064 the Romans by heaps.

A few retreat

6068 to hidden forts,

but the Britons

6072 pursue them,

and Walwes is obliged to ask leave

to go back to

6076 Rome

with his one legion left.

6080

---

[1] *barfreis did.*
[2] *ligge in.*
[3] *þe.*
[4] *forceletes.*
[5] *be tide.*
[6] *þam so.*
[7] *vnglad was Gallus he.*
[8] *said vnto.*
[9] *a legion no mo we haue.*
[10] *a legion mo ne ȝesse.*
[11] *with lyfe & lymme away to.*

The Britons agree to this:

þe Bretons *gra*unted þem *þer* bone,
& þe Romayns ȝolde þem sone.

Out of þe tours þey come al doun,
. To þe pes in-to þe toun;
& als þe Romayns ȝolden were,
þe Wa[l]ssche & Scottes[1] wyþ al *þer* here
Comen wyþ gret noise & hew;[2]
. Tok þey no tent to pes ne trew;[3]
Of the Romayns þey smyten ilkan heued,
. Lord ne ladde was *þer* non leued.[4]

but when the Romans have marched out, the Welsh and Scotch

fall on them, and slay them all.

Walwes is taken, and beheaded at the brook

Walwes[5] þey tok, al his vnthank,
& leddym to Atyngal, a[6] brokes bank;
þer left he his heued,[7] he was þe last;
His body in to Atyngal cast.[8]
& for he in *þat* wat*er* lay,
þe riu*eres* name was *turn*d *þat*[9] day;
On Englisch*e* tonge hit hat Walbrok,[10]
ffor *þat* Walwes his deþ þer tok.

Atyngal,

whose name is then changed to Walbrook.

Asclypidot reigns 10 years, and is not a shrew or a fool.

ſ þ*enne* regned Asclipedot;
Ney*þer* was he[11] schrewe ne sot.
Gret feste he held at hys coronyng*e*,
& ten ȝer he regned kyng*e*.

ſ De Dioclisiano Inp*er*atore. maxi*m*o p*er*secutore *Christ*ianor*um*.

(*In a later hand.*)

Diocletian sends Maximianus to Britain,

In his tyme was an Emp*er*our Dioclisian, a werreour,
He sente hider Maximian;
& struyde & slow ilk Cristenman.

---

[1] *þe scote þe walsh.* [lf. 36, bk., col. 2.]
[2] *hu.*
[3] *toke þe no tent of pes ne tru.*
[4] *bileued.*
[5] *Gallus.*
[6] *him titt a.*
[7] *his hede gird of.*
[8] *in to þe broke kast.*
[9] *þe broke men call to þis.*
[10] *on Inglis Gualebroke.*
[11] *nouþer he lufed.*

þat he on þys half Moungow[1] fond,
Til he come vntil þys lond,
Al he destruyed, & broughte to schame,
þat cristned were in Iesu name.
Dioclisien, on his partie,
To Cristenmen dyde felonye;
Vnder hym & Maxymian
þey slowe at Verolame[2] seint[3] Alban,
& seint Iue & seint Aroon.
þo were in ware at[4] Kerlyon,
þe byschop wyþ alle þe clergie
. þat leued in Iesu or[5] Marie,
Alle þey slowe þat þey fond,
fful fewe ascaped fro þer hond;[6]
. So fele were neuere slayn in stour
. Of corseyntz[7] vnder emperour.
. þat ȝer þe date of Iesu wex,
ſ . **Two hundred ȝer, four score & sex.**

and he destroys all the Christians on his road;

among others, Sts. Alban, Julius, and Aaron.

This was A.D. 286.

ſ De Rege Coele, Patre Sancte Elene. [leaf 27.]

In Colchestre[8] waster[9] a lordyng,
Of wham þe toun hadde gynnynge;
S[i]re Coel his name hight,
Of noble lynage, a man of myght;
He werreyed[10] on Asclipedot,
. ffor he had born hym as a sot,
. & suffred to mykel[11] Maximian,
. þat he þorow þe lond so ran,

Coel of Colchester

rebels against Asclypedot, because he's behaved like a sot, and let Maximinianus

[1] mon Giu, *Wace;* Mons Jovis. See p. 116, note [5].
[2] Written over an erasure.
[3] *her was slayn sayn.*
[4] *in Wales in Kaerlion.*
[5] *or in.*
[6] *bot if any ascapid þe lond.*
[7] *corsayntes.*
[8] Wace says 'Hoël . . . de Gloecestre;' but R. Brunne is right by Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[9] *was.*
[10] *wered.* [leaf 37.]
[11] *suffred myketť.*

slay the Christians.

. þe Cristene blod for to slo;
. þer-fore were þe Bretons[1] wo.
ffor Asclipedot bar hym nought wel,[2]
þer-fore corouned þei sire Coel.[2]
. When Maximien was gon to Rome,
Coel kills Asclypedot.
. On Asclipedot toke þey dome;
Sire Coel hym in bataille slow,
. ffor he fro Maximien hym yuel wyþdrow.[3]

Coel has a fair daughter,

þis Coel hadde a doughter fair,
Of clergie [sc]he couþe,[4] & was his ayr;

an only child.

Sone ne doughter had he namo
þat þe heritage myghte to go,
Scheo was to hure fader ferly dere;

and has her taught well.

He dide maistres hure for to lere,
þat scheo moughte bettere[5] þe lond ȝeme,
. & lord to take, as hure wolde byseme;[6]

Her name is Eleyne.

þys ilke mayden highte ELEYNE,
. A ful god woman, & a certeyne.

The Romans

þe Romayns herde, & were fayn,
þat Asclipedot was so slayn;

send a choice man here,

þey sente hider a man of pris,

Constantius,

Constancius, þat was noble[7] & wys;

who conquered Spain.

Al Spayne he had wonnen to Rome,
þorow truage al at her dome;
Was noman þanne of his bounte,
þat men wiste, so mikel as he.
þys Constant þat þus wan Spayne,
He aryued her in Brutaigne.

Coel fears him,

Choel, þat wiste his comyng,
He dredde Costant[8] ouer alle þyng;

and offers to

Coel sent til hym messegers,
& seide 'he wolde on faire maners

---

[1] þe *Bretons were wroþe.*
[2] P. transposes these lines.
[3] *him drouh.*
[4] *of clergie couth.* (A.-Sax. *heo*, she.)
[5] *scho couth.*
[6] þat *hir wild queme.*
[7] *Constancius both ware.* (Costans, *Wace*, i. 266.)
[8] *Constant.*

‘ Holde of hym, ȝif þat he wylde, — pay tribute to Rome,
‘ & redyly his truage ȝelde.’
Costant[1] seide he wolde skyl, — Constantius agrees to this.
& consented til[2] his wyl;
Þe Romayns seyde[3] þey were aboue,
& fayn þey were of pees & loue.
Was hit nought a monþe long, — Coel dies in a few weeks,
Sire Coel tok an yuel strong;
Eyghte[4] dayes lay he, & namo,
& deide, & wente þer we schal go.[5] — and goes where we shall too.
Constant saw þys ilke Eleyne,— — Constantius
Þis lond was al of hure demayne,—
Saw þat scheo was ferly wys,
And of beute bar þe prys;
Hym þoughte he myghte wel be[6] byset
To wedde þat mayde, & bate baret. — marries Coel's daughter Eleyne,
Þen was he kyng, & scheo quene. [leaf 27, col. 2.]
A knaue child com þer hem[7] bytwene; — gets on her a boy,
Constantyn was his name ytold; — Constantine,
& when he was enleuen ȝer old, — dies when his boy is eleven,
His fader fel in a seknesse,
þat to þe deþ[8] hit made hym stresse.
. When Constant[9] had y-mad[10] his fyn,
. In Euerwyk toun þey byried hym — and is buried at York.
. fful ryaliche wiþ gret honur,
. ffor he was a worþy emperour.
. When þenterement was done,
Constantyn his sone þey coronede sone;[11] — Constantine is crowned king,
& þe more he wax in[12] age,
Þe betere loued hym ys[13] baronage; — is much loved,

[1] *Constant.*
[2] *consentid to.*
[3] *sawe.* [leaf 37, col. 2.]
[4] *aght.*
[5] *siþen died. as we satt do* (not in Wace or Geoffrey).
[6] *he þouht him self wele.*
[7] *was þam.*
[8] *ded.*
[9] MS. *Constantyn.*
[10] *Constant had don:* and leaves out the next four lines.
[11] *þei crouned his sone Constantyn.*
[12] *whan he was wele of.*
[13] *wele lufed him his.*

God chiualrie til hym he[1] drow,
ffor he was large, & gaf ynow;
is liberal, ȝif his fader were of bounte,
ȝit was þe sone wel more þan he.
knowing, þis Constantyn was man of queyntise,
þer-wyþ he was a noble iustise;[2]
and wise. In his ȝouthe he was als wys
As elder were y þer moste pris.
ffor his moder, he loued Bretons;
ffor his ffader, of Rome al þe barons;
Of þyse two kyndes he was born,
And of þe noblest men byforn.

∫ De Constantino, filio Constantȳ & sancte Elene.

The Roman emperor At Rome was þenne an Emperour
þat dide þe Romayns gret desonour;
Maxentius is a fierce bad man, His name was Maxencius,
Proud, & fers,[3] & malicious;
He wasted þe honur of þe toun,
þe noble men he brought þem doun,
who abases the Senators. þe ordre of þer sene abated he,
& reft hem þeir dignite.
Some of them Somme þat hated hym of þo,
Left þer fes,[4] dide hem to go
come to Constantine, Hider to Bretaygne, til Constantyn.
ffor he was born of þeyr lyn,
and pray him to put down Maxentius. þey preied hym he wolde make defens,
& abate þe pruyde of Maxens,
. Bysoughte as he was, worþy knyght,
. Of þer sene to holde vp þe ryght.
The Britons also pray him to do it. þe Bretons alle preied hym so,
Wyþ hym þey wolde concente þer to.

---

[1] *Gode knyghtes to him.*
[2] P. puts this line two lower.
[3] *proude. stoute.*
[4] *feez.* [leaf 37, back.]

Longe þey preied, bot at þe[1] ende
He graunted þeym þider to wende;
He tok wyþ hym[2] knyghtes & squiers,
Men wiþ bowes & arblasters,[3]
& his moder ful wys[4] of dome;
Wyþ hym wente þey alle vntil Rome.
ffor þey were men of honurs,
He dide hem y þe ordre of senaturs;
þat on highte sire Huwelyn,[5]
þat oþer Iohern,[6] Eroert, &[7] Maryn;
. Wardeyns he ordeined gode &[8] certeyn,
. þis lond to kepe til he com ageyn,

Constantine agrees,

and takes his host and his mother to Rome,

leaving behind guardians of Britain.

When Constantyn to Rome cam, [leaf 27, back, col. 1.]
þe maistrie fro Maxcence he nam,
And was hym selue emperour,
. & Maxcence doun wiþ deshonur.[9]
Til sire Huelyn[10] he gaf a wyf,
Of noble kynde was sche ryf:
Of þat wyf, sire Huelyn[10] wan
A child men calde Ma[x]imian.[11]

He dethrones Maxentius,

and becomes Emperor.

Huelyn begets a son Maximian.

¶ De Rege Octauo.[12]

I þe wardeyns tyme[13] þat Constantyn tok
þe Bretons for to lok,

While Constantine is away,

---

[1] *bisouht & he at.*

[2] *he dight his folk.*

[3] *with alblastes & oþer archers.*

[4] *his moder eames wys men.*

[5] *Leonyn.* (Lohélius, *Wace.*)

[6] 'þat oþer' is dotted under, as if for omission, in the Lambeth MS. The Petyt reads þe toþer *Trahern* (L'altre Trahens, *Wace*). (See *Traherne* here, lines 6259–64, &c., below.) Geoffrey (v. 8) gives only Leolin, Trahern, and Marius, three uncles of Helena.

[7] þe *brid.*

[8] *left gode.*

[9] R. Brunne leaves out Wace's seven lines (i. 270) on the finding of the Cross by Helena.

[10] *Leonyn.*

[11] *Maximian.*

[12] This heading is two lines lower in the MS.

[13] *this wardeyns.*

Octavus, an earl of Wales, seizes Britain,

Com Octau*us*, an erl of Walys,
& sesed þys lond, boþe dounes & dales.
þy[s] erl of Walys[1] was man of myght,
In Bretayne he cleymed ryght;

and kills the wardens and sheriffs.

Wardeyns & schirreues he slow,
Baillifs, bedeles, dide schame ynow.
Bot Constan*t*yn to Rome was went,
Til gretter nedes he gaf his tent;
. He ne myghte þe*n*ne on none wyse
Constantine sends Trahern . Hyder come to make iustise;
He sende[2] hider sir*e* Traherne,
to subdue Octavus. þe lond to kepe & to gouerne.
Two legions wiþ hym he ladde,[3]
Toward Bretayne þey hem spedde;[3]
. At an hauen þ*a*t þey fond,
Traherne forces . Sire Traherne tok þys[4] lond.
Winchester to yield. To Wynchestre[5] wente þis[6] Trahere,
Two dayes he soio*ur*ned þere,
& to hym he dide hem[7] ȝelde;
. By þ*er* willes þey ne wolde;
Maugre þeires, þey ȝolde þe[8] estre.
Syþen he ȝede[9] to Wynchestre;
Octavus Sire Octau*us* wiþ many a scheld
Was byforn hym in þe feld,
gives him battle, & gaf til hym bataille stout.
þe Romayns ofte p*er*ced þe rout;[10]
Octau*us* gretter*e* force hadde,
and drives the Romans to their ships. So þ*a*t þe Romayns route to-schadde,[11]
& dide hem to þe hauene fle,
Vntil þer schipes on þe se.

[1] þis *Octau*us.
[2] *sent.* [leaf 37, back, col. 2.]
[3] P. omits these lines.
[4] þe.
[5] Porcestre, *Wace*, l. 5866, who makes another march on Winchester, l. 5870. R. Brunne follows Geoffrey.
[6] sir.
[7] *to him* þe *toun he did.*
[8] ȝ*ald* þ*at.*
[9] ȝ*ode.*
[10] *Romeyns perced* þ*orghoute.*
[11] *alto schad.*

Þey sette vp sail heye on mast,
Toward þe northe þey seyled fast;
In Scotlond aryued,[1] & logged his ost,
& pylede & robbed[2] at ilka cost.
Til Octau*us* sone com tydand
þat Trahern robbed in Scotland.
Octau*us* gadered host ay whare,
& hyed hym faste *þat* he were þare;
Oft he seyde wyþ grete pryde
þat Trahern schold nought dur abide;
. Bot his ou*er*wenyng[3] gan faille;
Trahern stod, & bod[4] bataille,
& dide Octau*us* for to fle;
In to Norweye ou*er* þe se.
Octau*us* þe*n*ne fledde for ferd;
He spak vntil þe [kinge] Comperd,[5]
ffor help & soco*ur* he preyde[6] ȝerne,
To wynne þe lond of sire Traherne.
Pryuely he sent to þis lond ageyn, [leaf 37, back, col. 2.]
To þo *þat* were til hym certeyn,
þat þey scholde fonde on alle wyse
To sle Traherne wiþ so*m* queyntise.
þat tyme spedde Traherne wel ynow; **Rex Traherne*us*.**
ſſ Ageyn to þe southe Traherne drow,
& dide hym coroune kyng to be,
. & regned wiþ solempnete.
A day to[7] Londone he scholde out ryde;
His ffomen a-spied wel what tyde;
. Enbusched þeym by *þat* strete
. þer þey hoped þe kyng to mete.
Sire Traherne of non hym dredde,
. þer-fore no folk wyþ hym ne ledde;

They sail to the north,

and pillage Scotland.

Octavus follows them,

but they put him to flight.

He goes to Norway,

and asks king Comperd(Gombert) for help.

Octavus also tells his friends

to try and kill Traherne by some snare.

Trahern is crowned king,

but one day his foes lie in wait for him,

when he is out alone,

---

[1] *he ryued in Scotland.*
[2] *robbed & reft.*
[3] *ouerhope.*
[4] *stode vnto.*
[5] *vnto kyng Comperde.*
[6] *socour for.*
[7] *of.* [leaf 38.]

At a passage as he went,
Þey breken of Þeyr enbuschement ;[1]
Þo Þat hym hated for Octau*us*
and kill him. Slowen[2] *Þer* sire Traherne*us*.
They send for Octavus, ffor Octau*us* Þey sende[3] *Þer* sonde,
& sesed hym eft in to Þe londe,
crown him, & corouned hym als he was er ;
& alle *Þat* comen wyÞ Traher,
Eue*r*ilkon he[4] dide Þem slo ;
Ascaped non bot wyÞ wo ;
and he reigns long in peace. SyÞen in pes Þe lond gan welde,
& longe lyuede til gret[5] elde.

∫ De consilio Octaui p*er* Karaduk*um*.

When Octavus gets old, Whan he had regned[6] Þis lond her,
Þe tyme of to & Þritty[7] ȝer,
He sey Þat of hym cam[8] non eyr
and has no heir but a girl, Bot a maiden child right feir ;
he asks who had better marry her, and have the land. He asked who moughte his doughter haue,
Þis lond for to loke & saue.
ffele of his frendes seid his[9] reson,
Some propose a Roman ; To sende to Rome for a baron,
His doughter for to gyue to wyue ;
So myghte Þey pes haue in *Þer* lyue.
others, Conan, the king's relation. O*Þer* Þer were Þat loued Conan,
Þe kynges cosyn, a noble man ;
Þey conseilled to make hym ys eyr,
He myghte best, in Þeir espeir.[10]
Karaduk, the earl of Corn- Þen spak Þe Erl of Cornewaille,

---

[1] *put* Þam *of* Þer *bussement.*
[2] *slouh.*
[3] *sent.*
[4] Þei.
[5] *to right gode.*
[6] *regned in.*
[7] MS. ȝritty. P. Þritty.
[8] *sawe of him was.*
[9] *gaf.*
[10] Þis *was* Þer *speire.*

Sire Karaduk: he seide, 'saunz faille — wall, is against Conan,
' He ne wolde nought conseille þer-to,
' ffor[1] hit were nought wel to do,
' To make his eir sire[2] Conan;
" Bot sende after Maxymian, — and recommends Maximian,
" þe eldest sone of Huelyn,[3]
" Eleynes[4] cosyn, & Constantyn:
" His fader ys Breton, þat[5] is certayn, — who is in blood both Briton and Roman,
" & on his moder side Romayn;
" Gif hym þy doughter in mariage;
" Wys man he is, & wel of age. — and a wise man,
" ȝif þou gaf hit vntil Conan,
" & maried þy doughter to anoþer man,
" He scholde fonde, when he myght[6] wel,
" þe lond of hym to wynne ilk del;
" He scholde þenke, & ful wel myght,
" þat hit scholde[7] be his þorow ryght;
" Bot ȝyf ȝe do as y ȝow seye, [leaf 28.] — which will also secure peace.
" Of pes ys þer non oþer weye."
þe kyng held hym to þat conseil; — Octavus agrees to this.
þer-fore bygan þer a tyrpeyl[8]
Bytwyxt Conan & Karaduk;
ffor Conan gan þat oþer[9] rebuk, — Conan reviles Karaduk,
& reuiled[10] hym wyþ wordes þore;
& ȝif he had durst, he wolde more.
Sire Karaduk held ful litel[11] awe — but he cares very little for it.
Of his manace or of his sawe.
þe kyng bisoughte sire Karaduk — Octavus asks Karaduk to send his son Maurice to Rome, and fetch Maximian.
To sende to Rome his sone Maurik,
& preye hym vpon alle þynge
Maxymian to Bretaigne brynge.

[1] *ne.*
[2] *heir to mak his cosyn.*
[3] *leonyn.*
[4] *Heleyn.* [leaf 38, col. 2.]
[5] *þis.*
[6] *suld fond whan he mot.*
[7] *þe lond suld.*
[8] *tirpeile.* (Fr. trepel, *Wace*, l. 5967.)
[9] *þe* [*on*] *to þe toþer.*
[10] *Conan stouted.*
[11] *had litelt.*

Whan Mauryk was to Rome y-comen,
Maurice He saw þat gret party was nomen
finds Maximian disputing with Bytwixten þis Maximian
Valentine and Gratian for the & Valentyn & Gracian: 6372
Roman empire, Þey stryue to haue þe empire;
Þe breþere hadde þer partie most seure.[1]
Sire Maurik þer Maximian fond,
and advises him & teldym[2] he was of þys lond; 6376
Anon he bad him, "take leue[3] of Rome,
to marry Octavus's daughter, " & vntil Bretaygne smertly come,
" Þe kynges doughter for to take;
and so strengthen his party. " Þou may þy party þe better make." 6380

ſ De Maximiano Rege.

Maximian agrees, When Maximian þis tydynges herde,
Wiþ ioye to Bretayne wyþ Maurik [he][4] ferde:
Was non abyd ne no dwellynge
Til Maximian com to þe kynge. 6384
comes to Southampton, Maximian at Southaumptoun gan ryue,
& asked þe kynges doughter to wyue.
Þan was Octauus al at ese;
and gets Octavus's daughter and Britain. Of his doughter he dide hym sese, 6388
Wiþ al þe reome[5] ilkadel,
& bad hym richely regne, & wel.
Conan makes war on ſ Conan was wroþ, & made gret bost,
He alyed hym to þe Scottes cost; 6392
Octavus and Maximian. Octauus, his em, he gan manace,
& Maximien wiþ[6] werre dide chace; [leaf 38, back.]
Bot Maximian gaf nought of hym;
He stod ageyn Conan ful grym. 6396

---

[1] *þe breþer þe better partie.*
[2] *told him.*
[3] *bad him leue alt þat.*
[4] *he.*
[5] *& alle rengne.* [leaf 38, back.]
[6] *to.*

ffful often Conan of hym wan,
So dide of hym Maximian:—
Hit ys þer chaunce þat werre bygynne,
Vmwhile to lese, vmwhile[1] to wynne.—
Whan þei to-gedere had werreyed longe,
Men of gode ȝede þeym amonge,
Dide þem acorde in loue & pes,
So þat Maximian nought ne les;
He highte hym, for his emes[2] sake,
A riche man he scholde hym make.
Þre[3] ȝer in pes, wyþouten fight,
He drow to tresour þat he myght;
He seide he wolde assaye þe[4] chaunce,
Ouer se to wende, & wynne ffraunce,
& fro þenne wende to[5] Rome,
Of his enemys to make dome,
And of alle þat wyþ hem helde,
Ageins hym fyghtynge in [þe][6] felde.

Some times one side wins, sometimes the other,

till at last they make peace.

After three years Maximian resolves to

conquer France and Rome.

[leaf 28, col. 2.]

¶ De nauigacione Maximiani versus Armorichām.

When he had folk, & was redy,
To schipe þey wente hastily.
Toward south-west þey passed þe se,
Aryued vp in a contre;
Armoriche was þenne þe name,
Bot now hit haþ an oþer fame.
Humbald was þer-in lord & sire,
Of Armoriche he held þenpire;
He dide somoune alle his barons,
A-wey to chace, & felle[7] þe Bretons.
Þe Bretons were of wel more myght;

He sails, with his host,

to Armorica,

is opposed by king Humbald,

[1] *som tyme to lose som tyme.*
[2] *he het him þan for his eam.*
[3] 'five' says Geoffrey.
[4] *wild stande to.*
[5] *fro þien vnto.*
[6] *agayn him fightand in þe.*
[7] *to chace away.*

but puts the Armoricans to flight,

Humbaldes men þey slowe doun right,
þey nadde[1] no force to turne agein;
Alle þey fledde, knyght & swayn;
and kills 15,000 of them.
Bot fiftene þousand wer þer slayn.
Maximian rejoices,
& Maximien gan turne[2] ageyn,
. & ioyful was þat he so spedde:—
. þat lond held women, þe men were fledde:—[3]
and says to Conan,
He tok sire Conan by þe hond,[4]
& on hym low wyþ god semblaunt/;[5]
" Conan," he seide, " þou art doughti;
" To manne Armoriche[6] þou were worthi.
" You see this fair country,
" Sestow now þis faire contre,
" fful plentyuous & ful ayse;[7]
" þe lond to tyle, god ys to wynne;
well wooded,
" Wodes, watres, ynowe þer-ynne,
" fforestes fulle of ful fayr dere,
and watered.
" ffresche ryuers ese & ner;
" Y ne sey nere in al[8] my lyue
" A fairer lond, ne more[9] plentyue.
I give it you,
" On þe, Conan, y vouche hit saue,
. " þat þou hit welde wyþ ioye, & haue.
You were promised Great Britain, and lost it for me.
" Bretaygne þe grete was þe het,
" & on þe hit were ful wel byset;
" Bot for me þou hast hit lorn,
" þer-fore to me yuel hastow[10] born;
" ffor-gyue me now ilk a del,
" & haue þis lond, & brouk hit wel.
I give you this land instead."
. " þis ys þe heste[11] þat y þe hight;
. " & bettere y wolde, ȝyf þat y[12] [13] myght;
" þys lond we scholle[14] clense of þyse,

---

[1] *had.*
[2] MS. *turned.*
[3] *had wonnen þe folk was fled.*
[4] *hande.*
[5] *louh with faire semblande.*
[6] *to haf a reume.*
[7] *wele ese.*
[8] *I. sawe neuer in.*
[9] *so faire a lond ne so.*
[10] *itt witt to me þerfor has.*
[11] *hete.* (see l.6405–6.)
[12] *& better satt whan .I. haf.*
[13] One stroke too many in the MS. *m.*
[14] *satt.*

" þen schulle[1] þe Bretons þe lond iustise;
" Non oþer folk schulle[1] dwelle þer-ynne;
." þen may þou weldit al[2] wyþ wynne."
Conan of hym receyued þe gyfte,
. & Maximian to kyng hym lyfte;
And Conan made hym þer fewte,
Of hym to holde hit euere yn fe.[3]

Conan accepts the gift, and does fealty to Maximian for it.

ſ Brytannia Mynor conquesta est per Maximianum.

ſ Maximian spak to þe kyng:
" þis lond is Bretones wynnyng,
" & for þat ilke encheson
" þat hit is conquered þorow[4] Bretoun,
" Hit schal hote þe Lesse[5] Bretayne,
." And we Bretons to be cheuentayne;[6]
." And y comaunde ȝow alle oliche,[7] [lf. 28, bk., col. 1.]
." þat noman calle hit Armoriche."
ffro þat day vntil þis same,
Of Armoriche hit loste þe name;
& now ys hit cald Bretaigne wyþ alle;
I trowe þat name schal neuere falle.
Maximien, til his demeynes
He sesed þe faire cite of Reynes.
þat were þer-ynne, þe toun þenne left,
Durste neuere non of þeym ryse efte.
Maximian þe[8] lond tok,
Tounes & ċasteles dide he lok;[9]
ffaire countres ouer al he fond,
Bot þer were none myghte tyle þe lond;
He þoughte he wolde to Bretaigne sende
. After men, boþe sibbe & fremde,

As Britons have conquered Armorica, Maximian changes its name to the Less Britain;

and it is now called Britany.

Maximian seizes Reynes.

But as he finds few people in Little Britain, he imports from Great Britain

[1] *satt.*
[2] *weld þe lond.*
[3] *hold att his fe.*
[4] *conquest þorgh.*
[5] *it satt hate lesse.*
[6] *cheiftayn.*
[7] *onlyche.*
[8] þat þe. [leaf 39.]
[9] *constables castels did loke.*

. þe lond to multeplie & to tyle,[1]
. þat oþer þer-to ne scholde haue skyle.
He dide come of pore pedaille
100,000 labourers, An hundred þousand þat myghte trauaille, 6488
[2]To laboure & to tyle þer fode;
and 30,000 men of arms. Wyþ þritty þousand men of armes gode,
þe londe fro enemis to fende & were,
. þat Vtlandeys scholde þem nought dere.[2] 6492
Then Conan is crowned king, þenne was Conan corouned kyng,
& hadde þe regne al in kepynge,
. þer-ynne[3] to lyue & to deye,
and Maximian goes his way, And Maximian wente forþ his weye. 6496

conquers France and Lorraine, Als he wente, Maximian,
ffraunce & al Lorreyne[4] he wan.
Hym þoughte hit was nought ȝit ynow;
To Rome he þoughte, & þider he drow; 6500
. He þoughte to venge hym þenne of þo
. þat greued hym at Rome, when he scholde go;[5]
& þo breþere to brynge to yuel[6] fyn,
Boþe Gracien & sire Valentyn. 6504
takes Rome, He com to Rome ful hastely;[7]
þat o broþer tok he par[8] maystry;
þat oþer he dide wyþ force fle,
and becomes the 14th Emperor after Augustus, & held þempire in dignite. 6508
. þen was he þe fourtenþe[9] Emperour
. Syþen Augustus, þat bar þe flour:
. þe date of Crist þen was þus euene,
A.D. 377. . þre hundred ȝer, seuenty & seuene. 6512

---

[1] & *forto puplise þe lond & tile.*
[2–2] & *þritty þousand of knyghted gode.*
to fende þam to tile þer fode.
[3] þer *for.*
[4] *lorenge.*
[5] *whan he Rome first ȝede fro.*
[6] *ille.*
[7] *austerly.*
[8] *þe two breþer toke par.*
[9] *fourtend.*

¶ **De Dynoto, Custode siue Rege, & de Vrsula, filia eiusdem, & .xj. Mł virginum, tam per tempestatem quam apud Coloniam, occisis per Sarasenos.**

When Maximian ferde fro Bretaigne,
Of Dynotis mad he cheftayne,[1]
To kepe[2] þe lond til his bihoue;
ffor trewe & feyþful he dide[3] hym proue.
Sire Karaduk, þat y spak of[4] byforn,
Was Dynotis broþer, & ȝonge[5] born;
Bot ded þat tyme was Karaduk;
& his sone, þat highte sire Mauryk,—
þat ȝede to Rome in Octauus message—
Wyþ Dyanot he kepte[6] his heritage.
A doughter had Dianot, & no ma; [lf. 28, bk., col. 2.]
Hure name was cald dame[7] Vrsula.
. þo þat were dryuen fro Armoriche,
þe Frensche & þey felawed o-liche,[8]
& rysen[9] ageyn Conan to fight;
Bot Conan meyntende wel his right;
ffor þeym ne loste he[10] neuere nought
. Whan þey on hym bataille sought.
þen was Conan meued of skyle[11]
Hys lond to edefie & to tyle;[12]
& þat þey moughte þe sikerere lyue,
Wyues he þoughte hem for to gyue.
ffrensche wymen wolde[13] þey non take,
þat þer blod no monge scholde[14] make,

Maximian has left Dianot in charge of Great Britain.

Dianot has one daughter, Ursula.

Conan puts down a rebellion in Britany.

Conan wants wives for his men;

and, as they won't take French women,

---

[1] *ceiftayn.*
[2] *& kept.* [leaf 39, col. 2.]
[3] *for a lele man did.*
[4] *Karaduk broþer .I. spak.*
[5] *was Dinotus & ȝongere.*
[6] *with Dianoth had.*
[7] *þat maiden hight.*
[8] *frankis & þei fleand olike.*
[9] *ros.*
[10] *þem he les.*
[11] *to do his folk be more þorgh skiłł.*
[12] *& þe lond herberw & tiłł.*
[13] *frankis women wild.*
[14] *monge suld.*

To haue cleym þorow heritage,
Ne dowarye þorow mariage.
. Vntil no blod wolde þey hem bynde,
. Bot only to *þer* owene kynde;

Conan sends to Dianot

*Þer*fore Conan sente his sonde
To Dianot, *þat* kepte þis londe,

for his daughter Ursula for himself,

" To sende hym his dought*er* Vrsele—
. " Wiþ non *oþer* wolde he dele,—

and plenty of marriageable girls of different ranks for his men.

" And gentil damysels vngyuen,[1]
. " *þat* able to men*n*es com*p*anye were[2] þryuen,—
" Squyers[3] doughtres, & frankelayns,
. " To gyue hem to knyghtes & to swayns,
" *Oþer* maidens comen of þralles,
" To be maried as þem falles;
" Alle *þat* he myghte, he schold[4] hym sende,
" Wiþ waryson he schold[4] þem mende."

Dianot agrees to send Ursula to Conan,

Dynot *gra*unted to sende hym hyre,
& richely *þen* dide hur*e* atyre;
Alle þo *þat* he gete myght,
Lordynges[5] doughtres wel adight:

with 11,000 virgins of gentle blood,

ſ Enleuen þousand[6] þey were by tale,
Of gentil blod,[7] grete & smale;
Oþer *þat* were of lower kynde,

and 60,000 of the prettiest girls of lower rank.

. þe auenauntest þey myghte[8] fynde,
Sexty þousand,[9] so many *þer* ware,
Redy to schipen ouer[10] to fare,
Wel dight ilkon for þe nones.

They take ship at London, and sail off.

At Londone þey schiped at ones,[11]
& drowe *þer* sail heye vpon mast;
Bytaughte þem God, & seyled fast.

---

[1] *Ientiłł douhtres vngyuen.*
[2] *þat were of waxdam & wele.*
[3] *sergeanz.*
[4] *suld.*
[5] *lordes.*
[6] *elleuen.* [leaf 39, back.]
[7] *women.*
[8] *auenant þat þei mot.*
[9] quarante mil, *Wace*, i. 285, l. 6169.
[10] *schip ouer se.*
[11] P. inserts,—
whan þei had alł þat þam fełł nede.
& were bitaght þo þam suld lede.

ſſ When þey were[1] in deppest flod,
& wenden han had passage[2] god,
Ros a tempest, rorande loude,[3]
& reyned al doun wyþ a blak[4] cloude.
Derk was þe skye, gret was þe reyn,
þe wynd was wod [&] þem[5] ageyn;
þe sky ferd as hit scholde doun falle;
Wonder wawes agaste þem alle,
So þey arysen on[6] ouer anoþer,
þat þeym nauaillede[7] mast ne roþer;
þe wynd, þe water, so faste þey faught,
þem to saue was non þat þought.[8]
þrytty schipes[9] þer were nomo,
þo sexti þousand to deþe ȝede þo,
þe oþere enleuene ful[10] fer were dryuen,
In Barbarie þey vp aryuen:
Two Sarasyns were kynges of pris,
þat on highte Melga, þat oþer Gwanis.
Gwanis[11] was kyng of Huneys;
Melga, of Peyghtes was kynge, hit seis.
þyse Sarasynes wolde han leyn hem by,
Bot þey nolde of no vileny,
Leuere þem were deye wyþ drede,
þan to lecherye þer bodies bede.
Wiþ martirdom þey dide hem deye;
At Coloyne now, men sais, þei lye.

6568 A terrific tempest rises,

6572

6576

6580 sinks 30 ships, and drowns the 60,000 low-born virgins. The other 11,000 are

[leaf 29.] carried to

6584 Barbary, the land of kings Melga and Gwanis.

6588 Rather than do lechery, the 11,000 virgins suffer martyrdom,

6592 and now lie at Cologne, men say.

Þenne herde þise to Sarsyns seye
þat þe force of Bretaigne was aweye,
How gret host wyþ Maximian went,
& to Conan þritty þousand sent;

6596 Two Saracen kings hear how Britain is left undefended.

[1] *com.*
[2] *wende haf sauf passage &.*
[3] One stroke too many for the *u* in the MS.
[4] *myrk was þe skie grete was þe.*
[5] *& þam.*
[6] *so grete risand one.*
[7] *auailed nouht.*
[8] *nouht to saue nouht ne douht.*
[9] *scippes.*
[10] *þe elleuen fer.*
[11] Ivains, *Wace*, i. 287, l. 6218.

. What wyþ þat on, what wyþ þat oþer,
þer lefte no force agayns non oþer.
What dide Melga & Guaneis,
They gather a host, sail to . Bot gadred ost of Outlandeys.
. Wiþ gret nauye o þe se þey[1] ryde,
Scotland, & comen in alle by Scotlande syde;
pour into the Wyþ werre & wo þey dide gret noye,
. ffor Westmorland al gon þey struye;
North country, Al þe northe contre þey wasted.
and waste it; þey passed Humber, & southe hem hasted;
pass to the South, and Non encountre[2] þey ne fond,
meet no foes Bot husbonde-men þat tyled lond,
but husband- & werkmen, & oþer pedaille
men, þat couþe nought werre ne of bataille;
. ȝif any swyche stod ought[3] agayn,
Wyþ armed men sone were þey slayn.
who flee or are . Ilk man fro his owen gan fle,
killed. & þo þat ne myghte, slayn was he:
How can a land How scholde þat londe kepe hym fro harmes,[4]
defend itself þat naked ys of men of armes?[5]
without men of . A lond hedles[6] in tyme of nede,
arms? . Ouer al þanne ys sorewe & drede;
& so was þenne bot cry & kare,
. Of socour & help þey were al bare;
Bot[7] while þey hadde þer bolde barons,
Sauelike[8] held þey þer castels & touns;
. Ouer alle landes þey schewed þer[9] myghtes,
. þe whyles[10] þey hadde þer noble knyghtes.
The Britons . þen chose þey of most bolde[11] & fers,
send messengers & sent hem to Rome as messegers
to Maximian at Rome, ffor help vnto Maximian;

---

[1] *with a grete flete on flode to.* [leaf 39, back, col. 2.]
[2] *in no countre.*
[3] *ony of swik stode.*
[4] *How suld a lond be dredede.*
[5] *þat of knigthes es al nakyd.*
[6] *heuedles.*
[7] *to.*
[8] *Sauely.*
[9] *þei mustird.*
[10] *to whyle.*
[11] *þei ches þat were baldest.*

And he þem sende sire Gracian;
Wyþ hym come two legyons
þat wel socoured þe Bretouns;
þise Sarsynes[1] þeues þey drof awey,
In til Irland ilkon fled þey.
¶ In þys tyme at Rome ros Valentyn
Wyþ al hys kynde, em & cosyn;
Wyþ hym com kynges[2] of þe Est,
Mo þan twenty, as seyþ[3] þe Gest;
Bot þorow treson, y ne wot how,
Algate Maximian þey slow.
þe Bretons þat Maximian ledde,
Summe þey slowe, somme were fledde;
þan sesed Valentyn Rome[4] al efte,
Al þat Maximian hym refte.

6628 and he sends back Gratian with two legions,

who drive the Saracen thieves away to Ireland.

6632

But in Rome, Valentine rebels against Maximian,

6636

kills him,

6640

and seizes Rome.

¶ De Rege Graciano Romano.

þys tydyng com to Gracian, [leaf 29, col. 2.]
How Valentyn slow[5] Maxymian;
& saw he was here cheuentayne,[6]
& dide hym coroune kyng of Bretayne,
And bar hym heye as a Tyraunt,
ffor þis was his custume & his haunt,
Pouere men to do þem wo;
Out of þer right he put þem fro,
& ful manye of þeym he slow;
þe riche he louede wel ynow.
What dide þe mene folk & þe pedaille?[7]
Samned þem a gret bataille;
To pryue conseille þey gon þem renge,

6644

Gratian gets crowned king of Britain,

turns tyrant,

6648

and does poor men woe.

6652

For which the mean folk

---

[1] *þis Saxins.* (les hulagues, *Wace*, i. 289, l. 6253.)
[2] *a kyng.*
[3] *Theodosius, so sais.* (O Théosien d'Orient, *Wace*, i. 289, l. 6258.)
[4] *Valentyn seised all eft.* [leaf 40.]
[5] *þat he was dede.*
[6] *he saw him self cheftan.* P. transposes this line and l. 6666.
[7] *poueraile.*

On[1] Gracian þey wolde hem venge.
. þey byseded hym sodeynly,[2]
take him prisoner, and cut him in pieces. . & token hym syþen *par* maistri,
& his body al to-hewe,
þe peces vntil houndes þrewe.
þe Romayns *þat* were wyþ him comen,
Sm*er*tly a-geyn to Rome þey nomen.

∫ De captiuitate Brytan*n*ie.

Melga and Guaneys Melga Guaneys[3] herde wel how
þat þe poraille[4] Gracian slow;
come from Ireland . ffro Irlond þey come, ful[5] fayn
. *þat* sire Gracian was so slayn;
þey gadered alle þe outlandeys
with Norsemen, Danes, Scots, &c., Of Norwey men, wyþ þe Daneys,
& [6] þe Scottes wyþ men of Irland,
and pillage and burn the country. & ou*er*-sette alle North*h*umb*er*lande;
þey passed Humber, pylede[7] & brent.
þen sawe þe Bretons *þer* lond al schent,
The Britons cannot stop them, [8]. & þey hadde no myght to stoppe *þer* weye,[9]
. ffor nought *þat* þey couþe don or seye;
. No þrowe in pes ne myghte þey reste;
. *þer*-opon þey conseilled what was þe beste.

∫ Hic miser*un*t Briton*es* ad Romanos p*ro* defenc*ione* eor*um*.

and send to the senators at Rome ∫ þey sente vnto þe senato*urs*
Of Rome for help & soco*urs*,
As men *þat* þey most on affied,

---

[1] *of.*
[2] *þe bisceged him priuely.*
[3] *Melga Guanis.* (Ganis et Magan, *Wace.*)
[4] *poueraile.* (vilain, *Wace*, l. 6281.)
[5] *& were.*
[6] *of.*
[7] *robbed.*
[8] P. puts here, for the next line, *& þer folk so schamly deie.*
[9] *myght stop weie.*

. & in seruage to þem alyed,
To helpe hem on haste now in þer nede,
. ffor ay þey lyue wyþ pylours[1] in drede;
& þey ne scholde neuere, for wele ne wo,
More out of þer conseil do,[2]
Bot ȝelde hem þat þeym oughte to haue,
ȝyf þey[3] wolde helpe now þeym to saue.
Bot þe Romayns forgete nought
What schame byforn[4] þey had hem[5] wrought
So often & so fele syþe
Whan þey moughte þer felonye kyþe;
Natheles, twoo legions[6] þey sent,
þat sone come, as hap þem lent,
& deliuered þem of þer enemys:
To Scotland fledden Melga Gwanis.

for help,
promising
to pay them tribute.
The Romans remember the Britons' former rebelliousness,
but they send two legions, who put Melga to flight,

∫ Iam Romany venerunt, & fiery fecerunt Murum de Thurlwal.

. þys Romayns dide þem conseyl take,
. A wal vpon a dik to[7] make
. ffro þe est se vnto[8] þe west,
. Agayns þer foos to saue þem best.
Ston þey dide gadere & graue,
. & masons alle þat þey myghte haue;
. Ouer-þwert þe lond, þat ys, þe brede,
þey made þe wal ar þat þey ȝede,
∫ ffor by þe northe ende come alle þo
þat to þe lond broughte werre or wo.
þat contre hight þat tyme Deyre,
. Of þis half þe wal in ȝork-schire;

and then resolve to build a wall across the land.
They get stones; and masons build the wall
to keep out foes from the North,

[1] *with robbours lyued att day.* [leaf 40, col. 2.]
[2] *go.* (n'istront, *Wace*, l. 6294.)
[3] *if ȝei.*
[4] MS. *byform.*
[5] *what to þam befor þei.*
[6] *neuerþeles agayn.* (Une légion solement, *Wace*, i. 291, l. 6299.)
[7] *did.*
[8] *est vnto.*

. On þat oþer half, y vnderstande,
the Picts' land. . Men caldit þenne þe Peytes lande.[1] 6708
When þys land[2] was al dight,
Men are set to watch the wall. & wardeyns set boþe[3] day & nyght
þat wal for to defende & lok,
. þat þey namore scaþe ne tok, 6712
. Toward þe southe gan þey wende
The Romans go south, . Whan þe wal was brought to þe ende.
At Londone þey sette a Parlement;
call the British lords together in London, þe heye folk of alle, þyder þey went, 6716
Þorwout þe lond ilka lordynge;
and warn them that no Romans will come there again; And þus þey seyde at þer sampninge:
" We wole wende fro ȝow to Rome,
. " & neuere hider sende ne come. 6720
the Britons must learn arms, and defend themselves. " Be ȝe doughty, & lereþ[4] of armes,
" & quykly defende ȝow fro[5] harmes,
" ffor we ne mowe come so fer viage,
" Ne endure þe grete costage."[6] 6724
The Britons protest. . þe Bretons seyde alle þer geynes.
. þenne stirte vp on of þe Romayns,
Then a wise Roman A wys man & a wel spekande,
. & seyde, " Lordynges of þys land, 6728
. " Lystneþ[7] now til y haue seyd;
puts the Roman view of the case: . " þe Romayns reson on me ys leyd.

¶ Hic Romany trugam renuerunt pro toto tempore, sic dixerunt.

Nota.

" Many a loss have we and our ancestors suffered for you Britons,

" Lordes," he seide, " mani a[8] lore
" Haue we suffred þis lond fore; 6732
" & byfore [vs],[9] oure auncessours
" ffor ȝow han had ful harde stours.

---

[1] *cald it þan Peihtlond.*
[2] *watt.* (tot, *Wace*, l. 6314.)
[3] *bi.*
[4] *lere.*
[5] *defend* ȝour.
[6] *ffor we ne may suffre þe costage, so often com so fer viage.* [leaf 40, back.]
[7] *listens.*
[8] *many tyme.*
[9] *befor vs.*

" Truage ȝe gaf, & vmwhile[1] nought;
" When we hit hadde, dere was[2] hit bought;
" Litel þerof were we amended, 6737 and little have we got for it.
" ffor ay for ȝow wel more we spended.[3]
" ȝyf o ȝer til vs we ȝe hit ȝolde, If you paid your tribute one year, you stopt it the next.
" Two ȝer after ȝe ne wolde; 6740
. " ȝyf o kynges tyme ȝe were vs trwe,
. " To so mykel after[4] ȝour wrong was newe,—
" Til whan ȝe mighte onst stonde[5] ageyn—
" Ne louede ȝe neuere man Romayn; 6744 You never liked us Romans.
" Ay when we come to þys lond, You were always rebelling
" To lese oure right som cheson ȝe fond,
" And oþer wronges til vs y-nowe;
" An[d] alderworst,[6] oure men ȝe slowe. 6748 and killing our men.
" Now ȝe haue nede, ȝe vs byseke, [lf. 29, bk., col. 2.] Now you're in need, you promise to be meek; but when we've helpt you before, you've always been worse to us afterwards.
" And het vs þanne to ben vs meke.
" Whan we han holpen ȝow in cas,
" Þen do ȝe wors, & more trespas; 6752
. " Til vs ȝe bere ȝow as lyouns,
" & waytes[7] vs wyþ sum tresons
" ffor to wyþ-halden vs oure right,
" Oþer yuel hit gyuen,[8] & þat wiþ fyght. 6756
" Wel bettere were hit al for-sake, We mean to give you up.
" Þan suffre þe wo we þer-fore take;
" Our costes ar grete, & [we] wone[9] fer heþen,
" & ȝe haue ay nede, & ar byneþen; 6760
" & we ne mowe nought[10] come al day. We can't come to you every day.
" Doþ now ȝour self as ȝe best may! Get on as you best can.
" May we ones take til Rome,
" ffor no man eft schol we here come. 6764 We shall never come from Rome again
" To saue ȝour self, bygynneþ[11] now,

[1] *som tyme.*
[2] *we.*
[3] *more for ȝow we haf dispendid.*
[4] *tuys als myket.*
[5] *to while ȝe myght ouht stand.*
[6] *aldermast.*
[7] *waite.*
[8] *ouer wikly gif.*
[9] *It is grete coste we.*
[10] *we may not att way.*
[11] *bigynnes.* [leaf 40, back, col. 2.]

to protect you.
" ffor we namore wil mayntene ȝow.
Your ancestors were bold conquerors.
" Wyteþ wel,[1] ȝour auncessours:
" Were bolde & hardy conquerrours, 6768
Nota.
." ſ Belyn/ Constantyn/ & Maxymian/, **Brytonum**
" Alle londes to Rome þey wan; **Inperatores.**
They took care of themselves; but you can't.
" þey mayntend hem self, & dide prowesse.
" Bot now of ȝow, oþer weis hit esse![2] 6772
What it's along of, I don't know,
" Y ne wot wher-on hit ys long,[3]
" On ȝow þer ne comeþ non oft[4] so strong
that you can't defend yourselves.
" þat ȝe ne myghte ȝow self defende,
" ȝyf any grace on ȝow myghte desende.[5] 6776
" Bot ȝe [are][6] al gon out of kynde;
" ȝour wikkednesse now ȝe fynde!
Change, and grow bold!
" Turneþ ageyn, & wexeþ[7] bolde,
" & þenkes[8] on ȝour auncestres olde, 6780
" þat riche regions conquered!
." ffor fyght ne fondyng were þey ferd.
" fful late schul ȝe now conquere,
For now a rout of barbarians frightens you.
" Syn[9] route of rascaille may ȝow ay fere. 6784
." Now schal bi sene what hit schal[10] vaille
." When Outlandeys comen ȝow to[11] assaille?
We've put a wall across the worst place, for you.
" We haue ȝow closed þer most nede was;
" & ȝyf ȝe defende wel þat pas 6788
." Wyþ archers & wyþ mangeneles,
." & wel kepe þe carneles,[12]
." þer-on ȝe may boþe scheote & kaste.
Mind you guard it well.
." Wexeþ bolde, & fendeþ[13] ȝow faste! 6792
" þer Outlandeys aryues & rydes,[14]
Stop invaders landing, too.
" Makeþ þer hauenes to kepe þo sydes,

---

[1] *wittes wele.*
[2] *ways is.*
[3] *where it is long.*
[4] *comes non ofte.*
[5] *of ȝow descend.*
[6] *ere.*
[7] *Turnes agayn & waxes.*
[8] *thynk.*
[9] þat.
[10] *be sene what it may.*
[11] *witt ȝow.*
[12] *kirnels.*
[13] *waxes bold & fende.*
[14] P. omits the next four lines.

" & at oþer recettes fele,
. " þat non alien on ȝow stele. 6796
. " Þenk, ȝour fadres wonne fraunchise![1] Be no more tributaries, but free men!
" Be ȝe namore in oþeres seruise,
" Bot frely lyues[2] ȝour lyues ende!
. " We taken now leue, fro ȝow to[3] wende." Good bye!"
At þat word was mikel cry, 6801
ffor manion wep ful delfully.[4] The Britons weep,
. Was þer nought elles for to seye;
Þe Romayns þem keste,[5] & wente þer weye, but the Romans go, and say again that they'll never come back.
And seyden hem þere for certeyn 6805
Þey ne wolde her neuere come eft ageyn.

Gwanyus Melga[6] hadde þer spyes, [leaf 30.] Gwanis and Melga,
. Waytyng ay[7] by stretes & styes 6808
. How longe þe Romayns scholde[8] soiourne,
& whan þey scholde[8] to Rome-ward tourne;
& al so sone as þey forþ nam, as soon as the Romans go,
Melga Gwaneys[9] to þys lond cam, 6812
Robbed & brente Northumberland; plunder Northumberland
. Ageyns hem non encountre þei[10] ne fand;
Made þey neuere stynt ne stal
Tyl þey come to þe Romayns wal. 6816 up to the Roman wall.
Þe Bretons were redy þeron aboute, This the Britons defend, and
To gyue bataille to þeym wyþoute:
þer myghte men se on boþe partys
. A scharp schour by-twyxten enemys;[11] 6820 a sharp fight takes place,
Arewes, quareles, þykkely fleye,[12]
Wiþ slynges casten stones heye.

---

[1] *þinkes ȝour fadres wan franchise.*
[2] *lyf to.*
[3] *we wiłł fro ȝow for euer.*
[4] *doelfulli.*
[5] *kissed & went away.*
[6] *Guanius Melga.* (Ganis et Magan, *Wace*, i. 296, l. 6399.)
[7] *waitand.*
[8] *suld.*
[9] *Melga Guanis.* [leaf 41.]
[10] *no cuntre ne.*
[11] *schaftes schoten bituex enmyes.*
[12] *þikli flie.*

Þo þat on þe wal faught,
fful mykel scaþe sone þey[1] laught;
but the Britons know little of war,
Þo þat were newe dobbed knyghtes,
Þey couþe bot litel þo[2] of fightes;[3]
Þe arewes come so þykke so[4] reyn,
Þey couþe nought coeuere *þer* eye[5] *þer* ageyn;
and cannot stand against the shower of arrows and stones.
& also þykkely come þe stones,
Wiþ schot of dartes,[6] al at ones;
. Vneþes myghte non kepe his eye,
þat he nas y poynt bakward to flye;
Was *þer* non so hardy Bretoun,
þat hym ne þought long til he were doun.
The Picts undermine the wall, and fill up parts of the ditch,
Þey wyþoute were mynynge[7] alle;
Þe wal þey holede, & dide hit falle,
& fulde[8] in fele stedes þe dyke,
þat wal & wey was euene y-like,
so that they can drive carts into the city.
. & made *þer*-þorow pleyn passage
. Wyþ cart & wayn, wiþ[9] hors & page.
Þey robbed & slowen[10] al aboute,
. ffor þey fond non þey hadde of doute;
A terrible slaughter of the Britons follows.
Byforn þat tyme[11] no man fonde
So manye at ones slayn in þys lond
. Wiþ so delful deþ & vyl,
Of ȝonge knyghte, & so gentil.
All their prowess is gone.
Whylom Bretons bere[12] þe pris,
Now al *þer* prowesse doun hit lys,
& þorow hem schal hit neuere a-ryse,
Bot þorow *grace* of oþer[13] queyntyse.
The Britons send to Rome again, and ask help,
Þen sent þey to Rome, to þe senatours,
& preyed hem ȝut of more socours.

[1] *so myketȶ skaþe non.*
[2] *þei ne couth not ȝit.*
[3] The Petyt MS. adds,
þei couth not þe querels scurne
ne no quantise in bataile turne.
[4] *als þik as.*
[5] *not couer þam.*
[6] *with þe dartes &c.*
[7] *myand.*
[8] *filled.*
[9] *to.*
[10] *slouh.*
[11] *befor or þat.*
[12] *som tyme bretons bare,*
[13] þer.

Þe Romayns saiden, 'Þey ne wolde; but the Romans refuse it.
' To Bretayne Þey neuere come ne scholde;
' On oþer halue Þey hadde to do;
' Þey wolde namore be trauailled so,
' Bot gete Þem help where Þey myghte haue,
' Þey wolde Þem neyþer slo ne saue.'
. Whan Þe Romayns Þus vs forsok,
. Þe date[1] of Cryst was wryten in bok,
. ſ ffour hundred ȝer, & nyne, were gon A.D. 409.
. Syn Iesu of Marye tok flesche & bon.

ſ Hic miserunt Guncelinum Archiepiscopum ad Regem Minoris Brytannie.

ſ Al Þe clergie of Þe contrees, [leaf 30, col 2.] The British clergy and lords
. & lordynges of londes & fees,
At Londone Þey toke Þer conseil,[2] consult as to what is to be done.
. What myght hem helpe in Þer turpeyl:[3]
" Þys[4] aliens al day vs noyes,
" & Þe Cristen blod destruyes.
" Bot Iesu Crist visite vs sone,
" We Cristen men schul be fordone."
Þen was at Londone Þe bischopes se,
When Cristendam com[5] first to be.
Þe Erchebischop highte Guncelyns, Archbishop Guncelyn
A ful holy clerk was[6] in deuynes;
Þys Erchebischop his conseil tok
At Þo Þat Þis lond schulden lok,
Þat he wolde wende to Þe Lasse Bretayne, resolves to go to Little Britain,
Þer Conan vmwhile[7] was cheftayne.
Aldroan highte[8] Þe kyng was Þan, and ask help of king Aldroan.
Þe ferÞe kyng after Conan.

[1] *birth.* [leaf 41, col. 2.]
[2] *com att to a comon conseile.*
[3] *how Þei mot turne Þat tirpeile.*
[4] *Þei said.*
[5] *gan.*
[6] *a holy man clerk.*
[7] *som tyme.*
[8] *Adroel hight.*

Aldroan receives him well

Þe bischop wente in to þe lond,
Sire Aldroel *þer* kyng he fond;
Þe kyng receyued hym *cur*teysly—
His fame was god, his stat was hey,—
He asked what he so fer had sought,
& what tydynge he hadde brought.

and Guncelyn tells him why he has come.

"Lord," he seyde, "ȝow þar nought wene,
"Why y am comen ȝe may wel mene,
"& what encheson me hider led,
"þat y to ȝow so hastely[1] sped;
"ffor ȝe nar nought[2] born so late,
"Ne bytwyxt vs so fer gate,
"þat ȝe naue[3] herd tydynge seye,

"Aliens destroy us.

"How alyens don vs schamely deye.

Since Maximian

"Syþen Maximien went vs fro,
"We han y-lyued in sorewe & wo.
"þat þys lond þorow conqueste wan,
"& gaf hit þyn auncestre, sire Conan,

took away all our doughty folk,

"Oure doughti folk al wyþ hym went,
"& siþen were we neuere bot schent.

we have always gone down.

"Donward syþen haue we gon;

No friends have we found, but plenty of foes.

"ffrendes fond we fewe or non
"þat euere vs wolde socoure or were;
"Bot to fele we fynde þat wolde[4] vs dere.
"Whylom,[5] Bretons landes wonnen,
"Þe renoun of þeym þorow lande ronne;[6]

We cannot protect our own land.

"Now ar þey nought so mykel of myght
"þat *þer* lond may halde[7] to ryght.

Our old helpers, the Romans, have forsaken us,

"Þey of Rome halp vs whylom;
"Now haue þey for-sake vs alle & sum,
"ffor fer[8] wonyng & gret costage,

---

[1] *hasty.*
[2] *ȝe ne ere not.*
[3] *haf.* [leaf 41, back.]
[4] *Inouh we fynd þat wilt.*
[5] *som tyme.*
[6] *remes ronen.*
[7] *londes may hold.*
[8] þer.

" þat often mys-spedde[1] in þer passage.
" Of folk we are ynowe ȝyt leued,
" Bot kepere non, ne kyng, to heued,
." þat can oure folk to bataille lede,
." Ne oure enemis to haue of no drede.
" Bot we haue help by tyme[2] now
" Of oþer landes, oþer of ȝow,
" We kenne neuere[3] oure cursed kare,
." So fer doun byneþe we are.
" I ne may nought telle, for sor of[4] herte,
" Al oure sorewe þat ys so[5] smerte,
" þat we han had, & ȝit haue;
." Bot God wyle, nought may vs saue.
" Here-fore am y to ȝow comen, [leaf 30, back, col. 1.]
" As to kyþ of oure kynde[6] nomen,
" ffor ȝe ar Brutes,[7] & we Breton;
" & for þat skyle & þat reson,
" Help vs now to venge our foo,
" As we wolde ȝow &[8] ȝe were wo.
" þorow right lawe write men fynde,[9]
" þat men oughte to helpen[10] þer kynde;
." & hit ys also worldes honur,
." At nede þer frendes for to socour.
." þey no sybrede of kynde cam,
." Helpe ȝe scholde Crystendam."

and we have no king to lead us to battle.

If you wo'n't help us,

we don't know what we may suffer.

For this I am come to you, our kinsman.

Help us to avenge us on our foes!

You ought to help your kin.

You ought to help your fellow Christians."

Whan Aldroel herde so Gwyncelyn speke,
ffor sórewe hym þoughte his herte wolde breke;
þe teres ronnen out of his eyne,
ffor þat þey weré in so gret pyne,

Aldroan weeps for pity,

---

[1] *misferd.*
[2] One stroke too many in the MS.
m. P. *at þis tyme.*
[3] *cone not.*
[4] *for sore.*
[5] *how it is.*
[6] *& our kyn.*
[7] *ere brettis.*
[8] for *an*, if. P. *if.*
[9] *writen we fynd.*
[10] *auh to help*; and leaves out the next two lines.

and says,
"I will do all I can to help you.

Gretand ageyn he hym answered,
" ffor þe doel þat y haue herd,
" Y schal do al my trauaille
" þat y to ȝow may helpe or vaille.

I can't go myself, as the Frenchmen are always warring on me,

[1] " ȝyf y myghte my self, y wolde [2] fayn,
" Bot Frensche men [3] me chace ageyn ; [1]
" þey werre on me al þat þey may,
" My self am þer a[t] ylka fray ; [4]

but I'll send my valiant brother Constantine, with 2,000 knights,

" I wol nought leue my litel þynge,
" Myn heritage, for more wynnynge ; [5]
" I haue a broþer, sire Constaunt, [6]
" God werrour, & man valliaunt ;
" Wyþ two þousand [7] y schal hym sende,
" Wyþ gode knyghtes, ȝour lond to fende ;

to Britain."

" Hym to Bretaigne schaltow lede,
" þorow gode grace for [8] to spede."

Constantine is sent for,

He sente þenne for Constantyn,
& bytaughte hym sire Gwyncelyn.

Archbishop Guncelyn blesses him,

Whan Guncelyn byheld þe knyght/,
þe hand he lyfte þat was þe ryght,
& gaf Constant þe benisoun :
þe knyght byfore hym kneled doun,
þe bisschop foure wordes seyde ;
þe wordes arn, o [9] Latyn leyde,
" *Christ*us vincit, *Christ*us rengnat !
" *Christ*us vincit, *Christ*us inperat ! [10] "

and Aldroan gives him 4,000 men-at-arms, and 3,000 foot.

þe kyng þen bitaughtym four þousand [11]
Of men of armes wel [12] seruand,
& þre þousand men of fote.

[1–1] Wace gives these two lines after the sailing of Constantine, l. 6569–70 (*Wace.*)

[2] *my self wald.* [leaf 41, bk., col. 2.]

[3] *frankis men.* [4] *at ilk assay.*

[5] MS. *wymnynge.*

[6] MS. *Constantyn.* P. has *Constant.*

[7] trois mil armés, *Wace*, l. 6553.

[8] *godes grace wele.*

[9] *ere of.*

[10] *imperat.*

[11] *bitauht him knyghtes tuo þousand.* (trois milliers, *Wace*, l. 6564.)

[12] *tuo þousand squiers þam.*

. þe kyng þan seyde, " þys[1] may do bote
. " To saue ȝour lond ilka del.
. " My kynde þer-inne, gret þem wel." 6972

Syre Guncelyn aryued at Toteneys,
& sire Constant wyþ his harneys. Constantine lands at Totness.
þat herde þe Bretons alle aboute,
þo þat er skulked for drede & doute. 6976 The Britons flock to him from their hiding places,
Out of wodes & out of mountaynes
(þat durste nought er[2] come to þe playnes,)
To Constant come þen men ynowe,
þat þer enemys ouer al slowe. 6980 and he slays their enemies,
. He dide hym vntil Westmorland;
þe countre al wasted he fand;
. Al þe lond, leye hit lay,
. þe folk for fere wer[3] fled away; 6984
. Hadde þey nought vn-to þe[4] fode, [leaf 30, back, col. 2.]
. Bot bestes wylde, & fische on[5] flode.
. þeyr enemys þer þey broughte of lyue, and drives out those he does not slay.
. þe remenaunt out of lond gon dryue. 6988

¶ Apud Cirencestriam coronatus est Rex Constant*inus*.

To Circestre Constant wente,
& held þer a parlymente. Constantine is crowned king of Britain,
Sire Guncelyn *þer* gaf hym þe coroun;
þer-of was fayn ilka Bretoun. 6992
þenn tok he wyf auenaunt & god, marries a fair wife,
Sib þe bischop, of Romayns blod.
þ[r]e childre on hure he gat auenaunt, and has three children.
þe eldest, highte his name Constant; 6996 1. Constant,

[1] *kyng said* þise.
[2] þat *durst not are.*
[3] *for pouerte.* [leaf 42.]
[4] þer.
[5] *in.*

who turns monk ;

He dide hym norice[1] at Wynchestre,
And ȝald[2] hym monk in þat same estre;

2. Aurelius Ambrosius ;

Þat oþer sone highte Aurelyus,
His to-name was Ambrosius ;

3. Uther.

Þe þridde child, Vter he hight,
Þat lyuede lengest, & best was knyght.
Þe bischop, þorow leue of þe kynge,
Hadde þe two in his kepynge.
ȝyf Constant had lyued ani sel,[3]
He schuld haue mended þe lond ful wel;

Constantine reigns two years, and is killed by a traitor, the Welsh Vortiger.

Two[4] ȝer he regned, & namo ;
. Lyst how a traitour dide hym slo :
. ∫ On ffortyger, of Walsche blod,[5]
. Þat neuere in truþe no stude stod,[6]
. He ȝerned mikel þe kyndam.

Hear now:

. Lyst how þe treson fro hym[7] cam :

∫ De quodam Pycto traditore.

Constantine has a Pictish servant in league with Vortiger,

Y þe kynges court serued a Peyght,
. þat was þorow ffortegers deseit ;[8]—
Þis Peiȝt, longe wiþ þe kyng had ben;
Of treson he þoughte ay by-twen ;

and one day, while alone with the king,

Þys Peyt ȝede wyþ þe kynge a day
Vntil[9] an herber alone to play ;
. Bot hit was perceyued of non
. Whider þe kyng & þe Peyt was gon.
Þe kyng of treson wende nought,
. Bot þe Peyt þeron he þought ;
As þey boþe to-gyder sat,
. & speken þer of many what,
Þe kyng til hym gaf no tent.

---

[1] *norish.*
[2] *mad.*
[3] *any seele.*
[4] *ten.*
[5] *One Vortiger of Wales blode.*
[6] *while stode.*
[7] *listes how* þis *treson for him.*
[8] þorgh *Vortigers sleiht.*
[9] *In to.*

þat saw þe Peyt, & his knyf out hent,
& smot þe kyng vntil[1] þe hert,
& fledde awey also smert.
Pryuely þat fame ȝede
þat fforteger had don[2] þat dede.
. fforteger was of þe Walscherye,[3]
. þat euere louede trycherye;
[4]. Queynte he was, & fer couþe þenke
. To compasse a wykked blenke;[4]
. ffaire he spak *þer* he wolde gyle;
. & *þer* he hated, þer wolde he smyle;
. Wel couþe he preyse & lakke somdel,
. & treson couþe he teche wel:—
. & somme þat arn at þis tyme here,
. þat craft of hym nought nedeþ[5] lere.—

the Pict stabs him, and flees.

Vortiger had it done,—one of the treacherous Welshmen,—

a plotter,

a hypocrite,

and a conspirator.

(We've got some like him now.)

∫ De electione Constanti Monachi in Regem.

∫ þe clergie for þis dide make asemble, [leaf 31.]
Whilk of þe children best kyng myght[6] be;
Bot þey were so lytel & ȝonge,
Reson couþe þey non wiþ tonge.
Constant was eldest & mere,
& was a monk, a man of lere.
þey seide atones, alle & som,[7]
þem noughte nout[8] reue hym fro religion;[9]
Ne lawe nolde hit by no weye,[10]
A monk to take fro his abbeye:
To take an oþer, þe[11] Conseil ches.
þen stirte vp Forteger in al þe pres,
& seide, "Hit is to drede no þyng,

The Britons consult on who shall be king.

They resolve that Constant the monk shall not be.

But Vortiger says that

---

[1] *to.* [leaf 42.]
[2] *Vortiger gart do.*
[3] *an erle* þat *lufed tricherie.*
[4] Wace, lines 6638–40.
[5] þat *of him* þar *no thyng.*
[6] *childre kyng mot.*
[7] *it myght not be don.*
[8] (=ne oughte not.) P. *ne oughte not.*
[9] *to take him fro religion.*
[10] *of no right we se no way.*
[11] *take on* þe *two* þer.

Constant's being a monk doesn't matter:

" Of þe monk to make a kynge.
" He ys eldest;—of þe habite no tale!—
" þe oþere arn ȝonge, & ouer smale.

king he'll make him.

" Y graunte non oþer kyng to be.
" ffor al þe synne, y take on me."
Non oþer assented to þat dome,
þat þe monk scholde a kynge bycome;

He, Vortiger, doesn't care for the sin of it.

þey dredden[1] swylk a þyng bygynne;
Bot fforteger dredde[1] nought þat synne:
What he wold do, non durste hym werne,

He goes to Winchester,

To Wynchestre he hyed hym ȝerne,
He asked leue atte priour
To speke wyþ Constant y þe parlour:

and tells Constant

" Constant," he seide, " þy lord ys ded;
" þy breþere ar ȝonge; what ys þy red?
" Y wolde þou haddest[2] þe herytage,
" ffor þou art man most of age.

that if he'll love and trust him,

" Wiltow[3] auaunce my rente, my fe,
" & loue me wel, & triste on me.
" þy blake cloþes schalt[4] þou loþe,
" & y þe richest y schal[4] þe cloþe;
" þy monkhod þow schalt[4] al weyue,

he'll get him the kingdom.

" þe heritage of þe reome reseyue."
þys monk was blent wyþ veyn glorye;[5]

Constant throws off his monk's habit,

Abyte & ordre he let al flye,
ffor he ȝerned more pryde þan prow,
& wel more vice þan vertu.

plights his troth to Vortiger,

þat fforteger asked, he hym hight,
& þer-to his trouþe he dide hym plyght.

leaves his abbey,

Out of his abite he hym schok,
Syþen out of þe abbeye hym tok;

goes to London,

In faire cloþes he hym cledde,
Wyþ hym to Londone Constant he ledde.[6]

---

[1] *dred.*
[2] *I. wild* þou *had.* [leaf 42, back.]
[3] *witt.*
[4] *satt.*
[5] *monke* ȝ*erned seignorie.*
[6] *London he him led.*

Was noman wyþ-seyde hym o[1] nay;
. þey seye hit was þe monkes[2] pay. 7088
. To somone þe folk anon þey bed;[3] summons the people,
Bot þerchebischop þat tyme was ded[4]
þat felle to make þe corounement;
þer-to non oþer durste consent; 7092
Bot ffforteger þe coroune forþ fet, and is crowned by Vortiger.
And on Constantes heued hit set;
[5][was þer non oþer benyson,
bot Vortiger set on þe croun,][5] 7096
& Constant þe coroune tok,
& ordre & habite al forsok;
þus to worschipe gan he lende,
Wiþ schame he parted[6] at his ende. 7100

¶ Hic ffortygernus traditor factus est custos Regny sub Monacho Rege.

þenne ffortyger hadde alle þe maystrie, [lf. 31, col. 2.] Vortiger does what he likes with king Constant,
þe kyng at wille, & þe marchalsye;[7]
. Al to-gedere þe kyng he ledde,
. & al he dide þat he hym redde; 7104
þe kyng dide al as ffortegers wylde,
& al his conseil he fulfylde.
He saw þe kyng couþe no god,
Ne kynde skile nought vnderstod; 7108
[8][on clostire skill couth he maste,
& his breþer with þe leste.][8]
He sey þe force of þe barons falle,

---

[1] *no man* þat *said him.*

[2] *sawe it was* þe *mokes* [so in MS.].

[3] *non ne beed.*

[4] P. adds (wrongly) line 7086 again:—
with him to London Constant he led.

[5–5] These two lines are from the Petyt MS., representing lines 6677-8 of Wace, i. 308.

[6] *schame departid.*

[7] *marchaucie.* (senescaucie, *Wace*, i. 308, l. 6695.)

[8–8] These two lines are from P., leaf 42, back, col. 2, and represent Wace's lines 6701-2, vol. i. p. 309.

& saw his stat heyest of alle,
and schemes to get the kingdom for himself. [1][Þe folk discord nouht *in* a wiłł;
Þan he þouht *in* hert fułł stiłł,][1]
& þoughte þe regne haue in[2] his syde;
Her whuche a deseyte[3] he spak *þat* tyde:
He tells Constant ¶ "Of o þyng, sires,[4] y wot right wel,
" Þer-of ȝe owen to wyte[5] som del,
that the Danes " Þat þe Daneys, wyþ men of Northweye,[6]
." On ȝow wyl þey lyue & deye;
" & for þou art no knyght[7] of armes,
." Þe more þey wayte þis lond wyþ harmes;
will invade Britain next summer, " On vs þey wyle þis some*r*[8] haste,
" Þy casteles take, þy lond to-waste;
" Here-of y rede þou nyme[9] ȝeme,
and he must garrison his castles against them. " Þy lond to fende, þy folk to queme."
In casteles he sette garnysons[10]
ffor þe drede of o*þer* traysons;[11]
" To þo *þat* castels couþe loke,
" To swylke y wolde *þat* þou hem toke."
Þan seyde þe kyng to ffortyger,
Constant puts everything into Vortiger's hands, " Tak þou þe lokyng[12] in þy power;
" As þou wilt, hit schal be so;
" Ouer þe wol y *þat* noman do;
" Þe castelles alle y þe bykenne,[13]
" Now loke *þat* noman slo ne bre*n*ne.
" In þy conseil onlyk am[14] y,
and exhorts him to be true to him. " Loke to me þou do truely.
" Of cites & of tresor al;
" Right as þou wilt, so be hit schal."

[1–1] These two lines are from P., and represent Wace's lines 6705–6, vol. i. p. 309.

[2] *to haf þe regne on.*

[3] *here a desceite.*

[4] *sir.*

[5] *auh to witte.*

[6] *with þe Norweie.*

[7] *ert no kyng.*

[8] *þe soner.*

[9] *take.*

[10] *castels set þi warnisours.*

[11] *traitours.*

[12] *take þe kepyng.*

[13] *biken . . . bren.*

[14] *conseile þan.*

¶ Þenne was ffortyger at ese,
ffor alle þe strengþes he gan to sese.[1]
When he had alle þys forceresses,[2]
Wyþ cites, tounes, & alle richesses,[3]
. ȝyt he þoughte on oþer[4] wyse
. To contreoue a fals queyntyse:
" Sire," he seyde, " ȝyf þou wilt do
" þat y schal conseille þe to,
. " þy lond schaltow ful wel saue,
. " & do þyn enemys of þe stond awe.[5]
" Sent for knyghtes þat conne of sleytes.[6]
" & þat ar bolde men in feyghtes;[7]
" Lat þeym be alle þy souders,
. " ffor of alle kyndes þey knowe þe maners;
. " ffor ȝyf þey be y þy court wyþynne,
" On whilk side þat[8] werre bygynne,
" þen may þou sende hem aboute,
" To serche of wham þer ys most[9] doute,
[10] " þaw þe Peytes & þeir kendes,
. " þat ofte han schewed þey were oure frendes."[10]

Vortiger takes possession of all the fortresses,
7144 towns, and treasure,
and then advises Constant to
7148
send for many crafty and bold knights
7152
to be in his court,
7156
men who know the Picts, and can find out the king's foes.
7159

¶ Exe iam tradicio falsy ffortygerny.

Þe kyng to fforteger þus seyd: [leaf 31, back, col. 1.]
. " My purueaunce[11] ys on þe leyd;
" Do ryght als þy seluen wyle;
" Tak & lef as þou sest[12] skyle,
" Als manye as þou hast[12] of nede;
" Bettere þan y þou wost[12] þe dede."

Constant tells Vortiger to
7164 settle it just as he likes.

---

[1] *þe forcelettes he did him seise.*
[2] *now has Vortiger þe forcelesse.*
[3] *richesse.* [4] *on oþer.* [leaf 43.]
[5] *& of þin enmys no drede haue.*
[6] *Sende . . . can of sleghtes.*
[7] *quante men ere alle þe peihtes.* (Des Pis d'Escoce soldiers, *Wace*, i. 310, l. 6742.)
[8] *what tyme so any.*
[9] *of whom is moste.*
[10–10] *þorgh þe peihtes & þer frendes. may men witte how mykell wendes.*
[11] *purueiance.*
[12] *sees . . . has . . . wote.*

Vortiger then gets 100 Picts to the court,

Þen fforteger had his wille ynow;
An hundred Peyghtes to þe court he drow.
Of castles, tounes, & tresorye,
Of al he hadde þe maystrie;

gives them rich presents,

. He gaf þe Peytes what þey wyld,
. Al þer askyng he fulfyld,

honours them,

He honured hem swyþe mykel,
· ffor wel he wyste þey were ful fykel;

feasts them,

Wyþ metes & drynkes he made þem glade,
& often dronken he þem made;
. He preised hem faste in his sawe,
. & oueral dide þem forþ drawe;

and prefers them above all others.

fforby alle opere[1] he þem honured;
þat mester hadde, he þem socourred;

For this the Picts say that Vortiger

þer-fore comunly ylka Peight,
Byfore alle þey seyde on heyght,
" þat fforteger was more curteys
" þan þe kyng was ony weys,

is more like a king than Constant.

" & bettere semed to bere þe honur
" þan þe kyng or his auncessour."

. In ilka stede whare[2] þey ferde,
. þus þey seyde; þey ne roughte ho herde.
& for þe Peytes on hym seyde þis,

And Vortiger rewards them for it.

fforteger þer-of had gret blys;
& þe more þat þey hym preysed,
þe more he þem vp areysed.

∫ De Adulacione ffortygerny.

Vortiger feasts the Picts;

A day hit was, to þeym he drank
. ffor to gete of hem more þank;

and while they are drinking,

& right as þey dronke[3] & songe,
Com fforteger þeym alle among,

[1] *bifor oþer.*
[2] *als.* [leaf 43, col. 2.]
[3] *als þei sat drunken.*

. & to þem seyde, "God glade ȝow here!"
· Bot yuel he let, wyþ sory chere.
" Knyghtes," he seide, "mykel y ȝow loue, — he says, "I love
" I haue ȝow holpen to ȝoure aboue, 7200 you Picts,
" & more y wolde, ȝyf y hadde ought; — and I'd give
" þys [lond][1] ys þe kynges, & myn ys nought; — you more than I do, if I had it.
" Here hauy nought þat ought amountes; — But I get no-
" þat y spend of, y ȝelde acountes, 7204 thing
" ffor y þys contre[1] haue y nought;
" ffro fer hit comeþ þat me ys brought.
" To serue þe kyng y do my tent; — from the king
" Of hym hauy no lond ne rent, 7208 for serving him.
" So þat y may nought holde to me
" ffourty squiers[2] on al my fe;
" ȝyf y more hadde, hit were ȝour prow, — If I did, you
" þer-fore nede y mot parte[3] fro ȝow; 7212 should share it.
" & þat ouer-þynkes[4] me ful sore, — But I must leave you,
" ffor pouere y am, & may namore. — as I'm so poor.
" Bot ȝyf ȝe se þat y ought mende,
" Boldely comeþ to me, or sende, 7216 Still, if any of
. " And y schal fonde, at al ȝour nede, — you are in want, tell me,
. " Boþe forto cloþe & [to] fede." — and I'll help you."

ſ Exe iam falcitas ffortygerny.

Fortyger þenne turned his bak; [leaf 31, back, col. 2.] Vortiger then
Fals he was, & feyntyse spak; 7220 leaves the Picts,
And þo þat hadden dronke wel, — and they, excited by drink
Trowed his sawes[5] ylkadel;
His word to truþe al þey hit turned,
þat he to falsnesse had performed; 7224
þey seide til oþer, "what haue ȝe mynt? — say:

[1] *lond.* (ceste tere, *Wace*, i. 312, l. 6780.)
[2] *sergeanz.* (sergans, *Wace*, i. 312, l. 6788.)
[3] *bot nedes .I. mot.*
[4] *forþenkes.*
[5] *falsnes.* P. leaves out the next two lines.

"This fool of a king gives us little;

" þys *cur*teys knyght[1] now haue we tynt.
" þys folted king, he gyueþ[2] vs lytel,
" ffor a monk can nought bot his chapitel.
" To slo þ*at* folt, wel were to[3] done;
" A bett*ere* myghte we haue ful sone;

let's kill him, and make Vortiger king."

" Go we now, & sle þat vnþrift/,
" & ffortyg*er* to kyng we lyft,
" ffor he ys worþy to haue[4] empyre,
" & bett*ere* hym[5] semed lord & syre
" þan þis monk þ*at* nought ne can;
" Go we & sle þis folted[6] man!
" He haþ no kynde þ*at* vs þarf[7] drede,
" þ*at* myghte may[*n*]tene host ne lede;
" Ne hym self schal neu*ere* be nought;
" Go we & do þ*at* we haue þought!"

They rush to Constant's room, cut his head off,

þe whyles[8] þ*er* wylle was þus hot,
þey stirte tys chaumbre[9]; his hed of smot.
Wyþ þe heued als swyþe þey went,

carry it to Vortiger,

To ffortyg*er* þey made a present,
þey gon to c*rie*, "here may þow se
" þ*at* we wyl auaunce þe!

and bid him take the crown.

" þis monk ys ded! now do þy wylle!
" Tak þe coroune, & hold vs stylle!"

But Vortiger, though really glad,

ffortyger, þ*at* saw þe kynges heued,
Glad he was þey haddyt hym reued;
Naþeles he cou*ere*de hym queyntely;

feigns sorrow,

Semblaunt he made he was sory,

has the murderers slain,

& for þ*at* dide þo Peytes deye,[10]
And at Londone he dide crye,[11]

and proclaims death to other guilty Picts.

' þ*at* al þe Peyghtes þ*at* men myght wyte,
' þ*er* heuedes scholde al of be[12] smyte.'

---

[1] *man.*
[2] *kyng serues.*
[3] *it.*
[4] *he were worþi to haf.* [lf. 43, bk.]
[5] *he.*
[6] þ*at foltid.*
[7] þ*ar.*
[8] *to while.*
[9] *to his chambire.*
[10] *& more to did his felonys.*
[11] þer*for in London did he crie.*
[12] þer *hedes of suld men.*

Manyon were þat trowed & seyd,
þat 'non of þeym hadde handes leyd
' On þe kyng wyþ yuel[1] manere'
' Wyþoute þe conseyl of ffortygere;'
. & þe Peyghtes seyde þe same,
. þat þey dide hit for his frame.
þo þat þe children had in kepyng,
Aurelius & Vter, boþe ȝyng,
Dredde þat þorow þe conseil of þo
þat slowen þe kyng, þem wolde þey[2] slo;
þer-fore þis conseil þey tok,
To Bretayne þey sentem, hem to lok,
To þe kyng Budice of þer kynde,
þat ful nobly dide hem fynde,
And honured hem þorow al the lond;
When tyme was, armes hem fond.

However, many folk believe that Vortiger prompted the murder.

The guardians of Aurelius and Uther, fearing that the boys will be slain, send 'em to Budice, king of Britanny, who cares for them well.

∫ Hic cepit Regnare ffortygernus.

Fortiger had al in kepynge þe land,
Casteles, & cites, al in hys hand;
. & at his wylle þe folk he ledde;
. ffor his power, noman he dredde;
He sey fortune toward hym[3] falle,
And regned þen kyng ouer þeym alle.
Of two þynges wakned hys wough; [leaf 32.]
Of þe Peytes þat he slough;
þey cald hym traitour wyþ manace,
& to meschaunce þey scholde[4] hym chace;
An oþer þyng men hym telde,
þat whan þe childre were of elde,
þey scholde venge Constant her broþer;
. War[5] hym wel, & hope non oþer.

Vortiger reigns over all Britain, threatened only by the Picts,—who declare they'll hunt him to grief,—and the report that Aurelius and Uther will avenge Constant's death.

[1] *itt.* [2] *slouh þe kyng þam wild.* [3] *he sauh his chance wele wild.* [4] *mischefe þei suld.* [5] *were . . . no noþer.*

[leaf 43, back, col. 2.]

256 In tempore ffortygerny venerunt Saxones primo in Anglia.[1]

Three ship-loads of fine men, led by Hengist and Horsa, land at Sandwich.

Whyle þat ffortegerr þus[2] regnede riche,
þre schypes aryued at Sandwiche
Wyþ fair folk & wel y-dight,—
Hengist & Hors þer maistres hight;—
Of fair stature wyþouten lak,
& a selcouþ speche þey spak.

Vortiger says

þis ffortyger þat held þonour,
At Canterbury he made soiour;
To þe kyng men tydynge tolde,
'þat a fair folk, wyþ faces bolde,
'At Sandwyche late gonne aryue;
'So faire y-schape were non alyue.'[3]

that if the strangers come in peace, in peace they may dwell,

þen seyde þe kyng, "ȝyf swylk be comen,
" & peysibly þe hauene han[4] nomen,
" In pes lat þem take þer rest,
" & wyþ my pes to do þer best,
" And ȝyf þey speke wyþ me in pes,

and go where they like.

" & right[5] so wende als þey ches."

¶ Hengistus, & Horsus frater eius, cepunt portum apud Sandwycum.

Hengist and Horsa come to Vortiger,

¶ When þyse breþere Hengist & Hors
Had leue of þe kyng & of þe ports,
He greyþed his feres[6] to fare al myry
To speke wyþ þe kyng at Caunterbyri.
When þey come, þe kyng þey grette,
& alle þat were by hym sette.

---

[1] This heading is at the top of the front page of leaf 32 of the Lambeth MS., as a head-line.

[2] *In tyme* þat *Vortiger.*

[3] *so gentilt of schap is non of lyue.*

[4] & *in pes haf hauen.*

[5] & *in* þat.

[6] þei *dight* þer *fers.*

Þe kyng byheld þyse bachelers
Were faire of schap, & face clers,
How þey were mad so gentilly,
ffayrest of al *þer* compaigny:
Þen seyde þe kyng, "of whennе[1] be ȝe?
What haue ȝe sought to þis contre?"
Þen was Hengist eldest & more;
ffor alle his feres onswered he þore:
" In Saxoyne[2] were we born & fed;
" ffro þennes[3] hyder our God vs led.
" ȝyf ye wil wite al þe manere,
" Whi & for what we ar com here;
" To telle ȝow, sire, gyues[4] me leue,
" Þat ȝe ne ȝoure[5] wyþ me ne greue."
Þe kyng gaf hym þe grauntyse,
& Hengist teldym þen in[6] his wyse:

who sees how handsome they are,
and asks them whence and why they have come.
Hengist answers,
"From Saxony
are we come hither,

" Sire kyng," he seyde, "ȝyf þou euere herde,
" So waxynge[7] folk in al þys werde,
" Ne so gendryng,[8] ne so plentyue,
" Ne so gracious kynde[9] to þryue,
" Als we arn of oure kynde,
" In no lond scholde men fynde,
" Ne selcouþloker so[10] to gendre,
" Ne haue so manye childre tendre,
" & wexen boþe men & women y-nowe,
" Þat alle þer dwelle þey ne mowe.[11]
" ffor whan þe folk ar woxen & larged,[12]
" & þe lond ys ouer-charged,
" Oure Prynces perceyue þer ar so fele,
" þe ȝonge dur þey nought out wele,[13]

because our folk are such waxing ones,
and breed so many children, who all grow into men and women,
and over-burden the land.
When our princes see this,

[1] *what lond.* [leaf 44.]
[2] *sessoyne.*
[3] *þien* (no *fro*).
[4] *þe sir gif þou.*
[5] *þou ne þin.*
[6] *tellis on.*
[7] *waxand.* [8] *genderand.*
[9] *þrod* (? for *þeod* (A.-S. *þeod*) people; or A.-S. *þreot, þreat,* a crowd).
[10] *ne so selcouþly.*
[11] *duelle ne mouh.*
[12] *is waxen & largid.*
[13] *þe ȝenge þorgh þei do wele.* (*wele* = choose: see page 98, note [1].)

they make all the young strong men cast lots, and go forth to seek another land.

" Bot þulke of twenty[1] wynter elde
" Or more, þat con þem kepe & welde,
" On strong[e][2] men, lotes þey kest,
" & byddem[3] go purchace þem best,
" To seke oþer lond & lede,
" ffor[4] mykel people may hit nought fede.
" Mo childre þer are of oure gendrure
" þan bestes are in oure pasture;
. " & for we so multeplye,
. " We ar of þe kynde of Germenie.

Just now the lot fell on us,

" At þis tyme fel on vs þe lot,
" þer-fore, nede, of lande[5] we mot,
. " To seke vs oþer on to lende;

and our God Mercury brought us here."

. " & hidere oure Godes dide vs wende;
[6] " Mercurius, þat vs saues & schildes,
" Haþ vs brought vnto þys yldes."[6]

Vortiger asks the names of the Saxon Gods,

When þe kyng herde hym nemne a God,[7]
He asked þenne how þey trowd,[8]
& what þer Godes name hight,

and which is the chief. Hengist names five,

On wham þey trowed[9] had most myght.
He seide, "We haue Godes seeres[10]
" ffor whos wyrschip we make auteres;[11]
" Mars, Iubiter, & Saturnus,
" Dyane, & Mercuryus:

but says, that above all others

. " þis ar Godes of oure paen lay,
. " þat we worschipe[12] at þer day.
" & mo Godes ȝyt we holde,
" As oure auncestres by-forn vs tolde;
" Bot on ouer alle wyrschipe[12] we mest,

[1] *þat ere of fiften.* (qui de quinze ans sunt, et de plus, *Wace*, i. 319, l. 6911.)
[2] *stronge.*
[3] *bid þam.*
[4] *so.*
of ond nede.
[6–6] P. leaves out these two lines.
[7] *herd þam neuen.* [leaf 44, col. 2.]
[8] *trod* (see next note).
[9] *whilk þei trowed.*
[10] *sere.*
[11] *to whom we mak autere.*
[12] *wirschip.*

" Sire *Mercurius*, & holde his fest.
" Mercury ys on oure langage
" 'Woden,' louerd, ys oure vsage,—
" Oure auncessour set hit so,—
" þe ferþe day we halewe hym to.
" ffor we þat day worschipen hym alle,
" 'Wodenesday' þat day we calle.
" Wyþouten hym an oþer we haue,
" A Godesse þat we for help to craue;
" On oure speche we calle hure ffre;
" þe sixte day, hure worschipe we;
" ffor 'ffre' we calle hit ffryday,[1]
" & worschipe hure on payen lay."

Nota de die Mercurii & Veneris.

they worship Mercury or Woden; his day is the fourth of the week, and therefore called Wodensday. Also they have a Goddess Fre; and her day, the sixth, is called Fryday.

¶ þen seide þe kyng, " ȝe leue al wronge;
" Wyþ false Godes ȝe make monge;
" On swylk ar nought for to leue,
" Hit ar ffendes þat schol ȝow greue;
" & þat sore ouer-þynkes[2] me;
" Naþeles," he seyde, " welcome ar[3] ȝe!
" ffayre men ȝe are, & stalworthe seme.
" And ȝe wyl serue me to queme,
" Euerilkon y wyl ȝow take, [leaf 32, back, col. 1.]
" & riche men y schal ȝow make.
" þe Peytes wayten me wyþ wo,
" þe Scottes also vs brenne[4] & slo;
" ȝyf hit be so, ȝe may me vaille
" To vencuse[5] þem in pleyn bataille;
" Gyftes schol ȝe haue ful gode
" Til ȝoure cloþynge & ȝour fode;
" & kepes wel ay þe Northe cost;[6]
" ffro þennes comen ouer al þeyr[7] ost.

Vortiger tells them that their Gods are fiends; but, nevertheless, if they'll serve him, against the Picts and Scots, he'll give them rich gifts. They must keep well the north boundary.

[1] *it freaday.* (Freedai, *Wace*, i. 321, l. 6950.)
[2] *forþinkes.*
[3] *welcom ere.*
[4] *robbe.*
[5] *venquis.*
[6] *þe north kepis ay wele þat cost.* A fresh hand writes a page here in the Petyt MS., (leaf 44, back,) and the initial *qw-* for *wh-* comes in: see notes [9], [10], p. 261, below.
[7] *þine comys euere att oþer.*

. " Loke y fynde in ȝow no feyntyse;
. " ȝe schul me *ser*ue of swylk seruise."
Thus Vortiger brings the Saxons among the Britons.
On þys man*er*e come þe Saxouns [1]
. þorow ffortyg*er* among þe Bretouns. 7404
. Hengist tok leue at þe kynge,
. To Londone [2] for to brynge his þyng;
& sone com to þe court agayn
Wyþ manye faire knyght & swayn. 7408

¶ De Bello int*er* Saxon*es* & Pyctos.

Soon after, the Scots and Picts ravage England
Wel sone after þat [3] þey were come,
þe Scottes & Peytes bataille nome,
And comen faste in-til þys lond,
Pylede [4] & brente al þat þey fond; 7412
up to the Humber.
Right [5] to Humber water þey cam.
Vortiger and the Saxons march against them,
þe kyng wyþ Saxons [6] ageyn þ*em* nam.
. þe Saxons [6] were þer-of ful blyþe,
. þey arrayed h*em* wel, & þydeward swyþe,[7] 7416
þey smyte to-gedere bataille smert;
þe Peytes were eu*er*e ful egre of hert,
þey stode wel furst & hardyly;
ffor þey were wond to haue þe [8] mais*tri*. 7420
þey wende haue had þ*er* elde custume,
þe l*en*ger ageyn þe Bretons þey nome.
þ*er* wenyng þ*at* day þey tynt,
and drive them back.
ffor þe Saxons [6] did þem bakward stynt, 7424
[9] [& were discoun*f*et at þ*at* dai;
þe Sessons bare þe prise a-wai.] [9]
Vortiger is a jolly man over this,
. þen was þe kyng a ioly [10] man
. þ*at* he þe bataille of þem so wan; 7428

---

[1] *sessouns.*
[2] *lond.*
[3] *was it not long sethen.*
[4] *robbid.*
[5] *reght.*
[6] *sessons.*
[7] *dyght* þem *wele & þidir swiþe.*
[8] wer *won haue.*
[9-9] From P., representing lines 6995-6 of Wace (i. 323).
[10] *ioiefutt.*

makes the Saxons large allowances, and gives Hengist many fair places.

Þen let he mykel[1] of þe Saxons,[2]
& dide hem amende þer liuersons.[3]
Þe kyng gaf Hengist faire[4] maners
In Kent, & fele oþere stedes seers:[5]
Þys loue lested bytwyxt þem longe,
ffeyþfullike, wel & strong.
Hengist sey til hym þe word wold schape,[6]
His nedes to spede þen had he rape;[7]
He sey oþer do[8] þer queyntyse,
Wher-of auauntage myghte aryse,[9]
& also þoughte he þan seye som þynge
ffor to plese wyþ-al þe kyng.
On a day by þe kyng he sat,
To-gydere spekynge of many what;[10]
He sey þe kyng was mury[11] at ese,
Wyþ his conseil he gan hym plese:
" Sire," he seis, " ȝe han do[12] me honour,
" & mykel y haue y-take[13] of ȝour.
" ȝyf y haue serued þe to wille,
" ȝyt bettere wol y forward fulfylle;
" & mikel haue y herd & seen
" Syþen y haue y þy court y-ben;[14]
" ffor þou hast neyþer baron ne knyght,
" þat alle ne hate þe wyþ her[15] myght.
" Of two childre y here þem speke,
" þat on þe harde schul[16] þem wreke;

One day Hengist says to Vortiger,

[lf. 32, bk., cl. 2.]

"I find that all your barons and knights hate you, and talk of two children who

[1] *þe king lete mikitt.*
[2] *sessons.*
[3] *did amend* þer *liueresons.*
[4] *of his.*
[5] *In Lindesai in stedis sers.* (In Londesia regione, *Galf. Mon.*, vi. 11; Lindesée, MS. du Roi, 7515[3.3]. Colb.; Lindesie, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé, *Wace*, i. 323.)
[6] *saw þe werld wild skape.*
[7] *for to spede & rape.*
[8] MS. *to.* P. has *do.* (Wace's comment 'Comme cascuns faire 'devroit,' (i. 323, l. 7006), on Hengist's 'D'avancir soi s'entremetoit,' is not translated.)
[9] *qwere-of auauntige mote rise.*
[10] *spekin of mani qwat.* [lf. 44, bk., col. 2.]
[11] *wele.*
[12] *Sir king þou has done.*
[13] *had.*
[14] *Alls I haue in þi court bien.*
[15] *att þe hate at* þer.
[16] *of þe ful herd þei satt.*

shall avenge themselves on you,

" þer lige lordes þey scholden[1] ben,
" þorow heritage of þer faderes fe; 7456
. " & bynne schort terme[2] schul[1] þey come,
" & of vs boþe take harde dome:
. " & þis ys þe comune sawe of alle,

and bring you to an evil end.

" þat yuel[3] endyng on þe schal[1] falle. 7460
" þus þey þrete wyþ[4] manace,
" & ful yuel þey[5] procure & purchace.

When I hear this,

" When y here þem þus ȝelpe,
" þen þenky[6] how y myght ȝow helpe; 7464

I think I'd better send to Saxony for my kin,

" þer-fore to Saxoyne woldy sende,[7]
" ffor my sib kynde, & oþer freinde;
" & ȝif y her hadde childre or[8] wyf,
. " þen were y holden, on lymes & lyf, 7468

and then I could protect you better.

. " þe forto socoure & to saue
. " Wyþ al þe strengþe[9] y myghte haue;
" þe sikerer mightest þow[10] be for me,
" & y scholde deserue more loue of[11] þe; 7472
" ffor alle þyn enemis, þaw þey wild[12] fond,
" Ne durste nought reue þe a fot of lond.
" ffor y þe serue & loue truely,
" Haue y on me many enemy; 7476
" & y lyg euere so naked syde,
. " & oure fomen spred ful wyde;

Also if I had any fortlet,

" ȝyf y had ony fforcelet,
" To haue þer-inne som[13] syker recet, 7480

we should be more secure against our enemies.

" þen myghte we þe more be syker,
" What tyme our enemis wold giue vs byker.

It would be better for you

" þer-fore wer hit prow to þe
" þat y hadde som[14] castel or cite 7484

---

[1] *suld.*
[2] *In scort time.*
[3] *An iuell* ('ill' was the first scribe's word).
[4] *þei þe with itt.*
[5] *And to.*
[6] *þink .I.*
[7] *in to sesson wild .I. send.*
[8] *&.*
[9] *On att þe purtenaunce.*
[10] *mote þou.*
[11] *i suld be loued bettir for.*
[12] *enmis þou ne.*
[13] *haue on.*
[14] *oiþer* [leaf 45, in the first scribe's hand again].

" Where-inne y mighte sauely slepe,
" þat none enemis on vs lepe;
" [wele more þan, þei wild me doute][1]
. " þan þey do now y lygge þer-oute."

if I had a castle or city."

Þenne seide þe kyng vnto Hengist,
" þorow sonde y wolde þy folk hit wist,
. " þat þey were her when we had nede;
" Inow þey scholden haue[2] to mede.
" To gyue þe a toun, y ne may,
" ffor þou art of þe Payen lay;
" ffolye hit were, more þan resoun,
" To gyue a Payen a Cristen toun;
" Of oþer þyng þe entermet,
. " ffor of toun getestow no recet."

Vortiger

refuses altogether to give a Christian town to Hengist, a heathen.

ſ De cordys Corey Taury.

[3]" Syn þou," seide Hengist, " wyþseyst þat me,
. " A skylful preiere þou graunte me:
" Of þy maners þat y mot haue—
" Wher-inne þat y may my lif saue—[3]
" Namore lond,[4] wyd ne syd,
" þan y may sprede a boles hyd."

" Well then," says Hengist, " give me at least as much ground as a bull's hide 'll cover."

þat graunted anon kyng ffortygerne.
þen Hengist of sente his frende ȝerne;
A boles hyde, he broughte hit þyder;
On ponges he carf hit al[5] to-gyder,
And knytte hem alle þen on o ponge;
& al so fer as hit was long,
& euenlik al so mykel in brede,
þe lond he tok hit ouer ȝede.

[leaf 33.]

Vortiger agrees to do this;

and Hengist cuts his bull's hide into thongs, knits these into one, takes the square measure of that in land,

[1] From the Petyt MS.
[2] *satt haf.*
[3–3] *Said Hengist, if þou witt nouht. ne dar not gif .I. þe of souht.*
on of þi maners þat *.I. haue. grante it me myself to saue.*
[4] *ne no more lond.*
[5] *thuonges he karue it att.*

builds a fortlet on it,

. þe lond aboute he dide hit stake,
A fforcelet *þer*-on *þan* dide he make,
& on his wyse[1] he gaf hit name,
' þe Castel of þonges,'[2] þe firste fame;
. Syn, als schorter speche fel,

and calls it Thong Castle.

. Hit was called ' þong castel;'[3]
. Bot Frenschemen couþe nought so seye,
& caldit ' Castel de Correye;'
. þat vse[4] men byȝonde þe se,
& Bretons caldit ' Kaer Karre.'[5]

¶ Exe Castellum factum est, cui dedit nomen þongcastre.

When þongcastre[6] was al closed,
. þe name y-gyuen,[7] oueral alosed,
Of þo þat Hengyst sente his sonde,

Hengist's friends come in 16 ships,

þer comen sexten schipe[8] to londe,
Wyþ mikel folk, knyghtes, swaynes,
& oþere þat were of his demaynes.

and with them his lovely daughter Ronewen

¶ In a schip wyþ gentil[9] men
Com Hengiste doughter þat hight Ronewen,[10]
A ȝong woman & louely,[11]
. Auenaunt, & fair & semly;[12]
. Bot þis lewed men sey & synge,

(whom stupid people say was called Inge).

. & telle þat hit was mayden Inge.[13]

---

[1] *langage.*

[2] Vancastre (*Wace*, i. 327), MS. du Roi, 27; Gancastre, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; Tuancastre, MS. de l'Ars., 171, B.-L.

[3] *thuangcastett.*

[4] *vses.*

[5] Wace adds that many now call it ' Lancastre ' who don't know the cause of its first name, l. 7082–4.

[6] *thuang castett.*

[7] *giffen.*

[8] *xiij. schippis.* [leaf 45, col. 2.] (dix huit nés, *Wace*, i. 327, l. 7087; decem et octo naues, *Galf. Mon.* vi. 12.)

[9] *geentitt* [leaf 45, col. 2.] the second scribe wrote this column and the next two: see his *q*, *-it*, *-is*, *-in*, in the notes [10], p. 266; [13], p. 264; [11], p. 266; [1], [12], p. 265.

[10] Roven, *Wace*, i. 328, l. 7091.

[11] *a fair woman & a loueli.*

[12] *auenaunt gret & fair was hi.*

[13] *and tellit it was a maydin ȝinge.*

. Wryten of Inge,[1] no clerk may kenne,
. Bot of Hengiste doughter, Ronewenne.
. Al þe folk Hengist fore sent;
. To þoncastre[2] ilkon þey went.
. (ffro Angle, a contre in Saxonye,
. Comen alle Hengistes compaynie;
. So þat for Angle, y vnderstond,
. Bretayne was cald Engelond.)
þen Hengiste faste hym purueyd,[3]
& sente unto þe kyng, & seyd,
. ‘ Preyenge,[4] as he loued his griþ,
‘ þat he wolde ony night herberwe[5] him wyþ,
‘ A day to ete a sop, & drynke,
‘ & se his werk, how þat hym þynke;
‘ & of his folk, how þat hym þought,
. ‘ & wyþholden[6] þo þat to hym dought.’
. Hengystes[7] werk fayn wolde he se;
He ȝede þider al in pryuete.
Whan he hit saw, wel he hit preised,
& þat þer myght be folk wel aysed;[8]
& þo knyghte[9] þat late cam,
ffor þer sonde wyþ hym þey nam.
Hengist þat day dide his myght
þat al was[10] glad, kyng & knyght;
& als þey were best in gladyng,
& wel cuppe-schoten,[11] knyght & kyng,

Nota de nomine Engelond. (*In a later hand.*)
Hengist's friends come from Angle in Saxony, and that is why Britain is called England.
Hengist
prays Vortiger to come and see Thong Castle,
Vortiger goes, and likes Hengist's castle and his friends.
When Vortiger is merry at the feast, and well cup-shotten,

[1] *writin of Ingge.* Robert Manning poohpoohs this *Inge* notion again, when writing of King Engel, near the end of the first part of his *Stori.*
[2] *thuang castett.* P. leaves out the next four lines, 7539–42.
[3] *A day Hengest him purueid.*
[4] *Praid him.*
[5] *A night herber.*
[6] *& held.*
[7] *þe king his.*
[8] *þat þus myght folk be wele asaied.*
[9] *knightes.*
[10] *wer.*
[11] *cop schotin.* (enivré, *Wace*, i. 239, l. 7108.)

¶ Exe Ronewenna, pulcra puella, quam Rex fforty-gerus desponsauit secundum legem Paganorum.

comes the beautiful Ronewen with a cup of wine,

ffro chaumbre cam Ronewenne so gent,
Byfore þe kyng in halle scheo went;
A coupe wyþ wyn sche hadde in hande, [lf. 33, col. 2.]
And hure atyr[1] was wel farande;
kneels to him, and says, **Wassail.**
Byfore þe kyng o knes sche hir sette,
In hure langage ful faire him grette:
"Wassayl, my lord! wassail!"[2] seyd sche.
Vortiger asks what it means,
þen asked þe kyng what þat myght[3] be:
On þat langage þe kyng ne couþe,
Bot a knygh[t] þat speche had lered[4] in ȝouþe—
and Sir Breyth, who knows Saxon,
Breyþ[5] highte þat knyght, y-born Bretoun,
þat wel spak langage of Saxoun.[6]
þys Breþ was þe kynges latynier;[7]—
tells him that Ronewen has greeted him as king,
& what scheo seyde, teldyt ffortyger:[8]
"Sire," Breþ seyde, "Ronewenne ȝow gretes,
"And kyng calles, & lord ȝow letes;
according to the Saxon custom,
"þys ys þer custume & þer gest,
"Whan they arn at þer [ale or][9] fest,
"Ilk man þat loues, þer hym best þynk[10]
"Schal sey 'wassail,' & to hym drynk;
and that he's to answer *Drynk hayl*, and Ronewen'll kiss him, and then he's to kiss her.
"He þat haldes schal sey[11] 'wassayl,'
"þat oþer schal seye ageyn 'drynk hayl';
"þat seys [wassayl] drynkes[12] of þe coppe;
"Kissing his felawe, he gyueþ[13] hit vppe;
"'Drynk hail,' he seyþ, & drynkeþ[14] þer-of,
"Kyssyng[15] hym in bourde & scof."

1 hir hatir.
2 Lauerid hing/ wassaitt.
3 þe king askid what suld.
4 langage lerid.
5 Breȝ. [leaf 45, back.]
6 þat lerid þe langage of sessoun.
7 Breȝ was þe latinier.
8 told Vortager.
9 are at þe ale or.
10 louis qware him þink.
11 bidis satt say.
12 sais wosseitt drinkis.
13 Kissand his felaw he giues.
14 drinks.
15 kissand.

Þe kyng seide as þe knight gan kenne,
" Drynk hayl," smylynge[1] on Ronewenne.
Ronewenne drank right as hure lyst,
& gaf þe kyng, & syn hym[2] kist.—
Þat was þe firste wassail in dede,
. Þat now & euere þe[3] fame ȝede.
Of þat wassail men tolde gret tale,
& vsed 'wassail' when þey were at þale,
& 'drynkhail' to þem þat drank;
Þus was wassail take[4] to þank.—
[5]. fful often þus þys[6] mayden ȝyng
. Wassailed & kyste þer þe kyng;[5]
Of body sche was ful auenaunt,
Of fair colour, wyþ swet semblaunt.
Hure atir, ful wel hit bysemed;[7]
Merueillyke þe kyng scheo[8] quemed;
Out of mesure was he glad,
Opon[9] þat mayden he wax al mad.
Þe ffend & dronkenesse hit wrought;[10]
On[11] þat Payen was al his þought.
As meschaunce þat tyme[12] hym spedde,[13]
He asked þat Payen for to wedde;
& Hengist wernde hym bot[14] lyte,
Bot graunted hure hym al so tyt;
& Hors his broþer consented sone;
Hire frendes seyd alle, hit was[15] to done;
Þey askede þe kyng to gyue[16] hure Kent,
In dowarye, to take of rent.

Vortiger says, "Drynk hayl,"
7589 and Ronewen kisses him.
7592 (Thus were *wassail* and *drynkhail* brought in here.)
7596
Ronewen wassails and kisses Vortiger often; and she's so
7600 pretty
and well dressed,
7604 that he gets quite wild about her, and, worked on by the devil and drunkenness,
7608 asks to wed her. Hengist at once gives her to him,
7612 and asks for Kent as her dowry.

[1] *Drinkheitt smiland.*
[2] *gaue þe king sine him.*
[3] *& þat first of.*
[4] *tane.*
[5–5] These lines are in the MS. de Ste. Gen. Y. of Wace, fol. 10. *Wace*, i. 332, note *b*.
[6] *ffele sithes þat.*
[7] *Hir hatire futt wele it semid.*
[8] *Meruelike þe king sche.*
[9] *ffor of.*
[10] *Drunkenes þe feend.*
[11] *Of.*
[12] One stroke too many in the MS. *m*.
[13] *A meschaunche þat time him led.*
[14] *Hengist wild noght draw o.*
[15] *Hir frendis said it were.*
[16] *gife.* [leaf 45, back, col. 2.]

Vortiger gives Kent to Ronewen,

Vpon þat mayde his herte so kast,
What-so þey asked,[1] þe kyng mad fast.
I wene þe kyng tok hure þat day,
& wedded hure on Payens lay.

weds her in Pagan wise,

without Priest or Mass,

Of prest was *þer* no benisoun,
Ne messe songen, ne orysoun;

and has her that night.

In sesyn þe kyng had hure[2] þat nyght; [lf. 33, bk., col. 1.]
Of Kent he gaf Hengist þe ryght.

Earl Gorogon, who holds Kent, doesn't know it is given to Hengist, till he is driven out.

þe Erl þat tyme þat Kent[3] held,
Sire Gorogon, þat bar[4] þe scheld,
Of þat gyft no þyng he ne wyste
Til he was dryuen out[5] wyþ Hengist.

Vortiger dispises the Christians, and they forsake him.

þe Payens conseil þe kyng vnderstod,
& despised þe Cristene blod;
& alle þe Cristene hym forsok,
ffor he hym to þe Payens tok;

So do his three children by his former wife,

His owen kynde hated hym mest,[6]
His children loued hym alder lest.[7]
Byfore tyme he hadde a wyf,
But deþ hadde departed[8] þer lyf;
Wyþ þat wyf he had þre sones
þat helde ageyn hym for þe Bretons;

Vortimer, Patens, and Catyger.

þe eldest highte sire Vortymer,
þat oþer, Patens, and Catyger.[9]

∫ De blandicione Hengisty.

Hengist says to Vortiger,

Hengist wente wyþ þe kyng aboute,
To be syker for drede & doute,
& seyde, "y se hit on many gate

"We are both hated;

" þat þou for me of summe hast[10] hate;

[1] þat þei *askid.*
[2] *seisine he had hir.* (si l'ot, *Wace*, l. 7183.)
[3] *Erett . . . Kent att.*
[4] *had.*
[5] *To he was cast oute.*
[6] *kin hotid him.*
[7] *childir loued him alle lost.*
[8] *Bot dede had depart.*
[9] þe toþer *Passence & Katiger.*
[10] *has.*

" & y am—syker mot ȝe be—
" Hated for þe loue of þe. 7644
" þou art my sone, for þys skyle,
" þou hast[1] my doughter; as lawe hit wyle,
" Y am þy fader, als in honour and as I'm your father,
" To be þe a god conseillour; 7648 I'm bound to give you good counsel.
" ¶ ȝyf þou wilt regne, trist on me wel,
. " & help on my partie som del.
" ȝyf þou wilt greue þyn enemis,
. " Y schal þe conseille by god auis,[2] 7652 Therefore I advise you to send for my son Octa, his cousin Ebsa, and a noble knight, Kerdyk,
" Send after my sone, sire Octa,
" & ffor his cosyn Ebsa,[3]
. " & ffor a noble knyght[4] Kerdyk;
. " in al Saxoyne nar[5] non þem lyk; 7656
" þey ar fighters, & noble iustours,[6]
" & queynte men & werreyour[s];
" Gyf hem lond y þe norþ to lende,— and settle them in the north
" þy werre comeþ euere in by þat ende,[7]—
" ffro þyn enemis þey schul[8] þe were, 7661 to protect you against your enemies."
" þat nought of þyn schulle þey[9] dere;
" So myght þou haue, til þy deses,[10]
" O þys half Humber þy lond in pes." 7664
¶ þen seyde þe kyng, " send after þo, Vortiger bids Hengist send for them,
" & of þe beste, ȝyf þer be mo."
Hengist hadde his sonde[11] sone;
. þem to brynge þey were al bone; 7668
Wyþ hem ćam a fflute of fflode, and they come with 30 ship-loads of knights.
þritty schiþes[12] alle gode;
Knyghtes þat wolde wende for wages,
Wyþ Octa wenten þe ryuages. 7672

[1] *has.*
[2] *I. satt þe counseitt a gode vis.*
[3] *Ebissa* (in Wace, and Geoff. too).
[4] *man.* [leaf 46.] The first scribe begins again.
[5] *sessone ere.*
[6] *þise ere feihters nobitt in stours.*
[7] See p. 235, l. 6703–4; p. 259, l. 7399, 7400, &c.
[8] *satt.* [9] *satt robbe ne.*
[10] *may þou haf to þi decese.*
[11] *had his sondes.*
[12] à trois cent nès, *Wace*, i. 335, l. 7231; cum trecentis navibus, *Galf. Mon.* vi. 13.

Then come smaller parties of Saxons,

After þat fflute, com ouer þe se
. Schipes vmwhile by two or[1] þre,
[2]By foure & fyue, by six & seuene,
By eyghte & nyne, by ten & enleuene;[2] 7676

till there are as many Pagans as Christians in England. This annoys the Britons, and they ask Vortiger

In a þrowe were mo Payen men, [leaf 33, back, col. 2.]
Or al so manie, as were Cristen.
. þis seye þe Bretons, & were onoyed,[3]
& seide þe kyng þe lond destruyed; 7680
To þe kyng þey pleyned in curteys sawe;[4]
" Payens ageyn þe Cristen lawe
" Bygynneþ gretly vs to greue;

to send them out of the country.

" To wende a-wey, sire, gyue þem[5] leue, 7684
" Alle, or þe moste partye,
" ffor to Cristendom ȝe do vylenye."

He will not.

þe kyng answered, & seyde, " nay,
" Y sente for þem; þey serue to pay." 7688

ſ Vortimerus, filius ffortigerni, factus est Rex.

On this the Britons

Whan þe Bretons herde þat þe kynge
Wolde nought leue for no þynge,
At Londone þey sette a Parlement,

make Vortimer king,

& Vortymer to kyng þey hent, 7692
þe eldest sone of ffortyger,
þat was a doughti bacheler.

and by his order

. þis Vortymer dide crie a cry,
. ' þat no Saxon[6] were so hardy, 7696
. ' In his demeynes dwelle ne be,

drive the Saxons out of his dominions.

. ' Neyþer in burgh ne in cite.'
Anon alle out he dide hem keste;[7]

---

[1] *bi.*

[2–2] P. leaves out these two lines, though Wace begins at four ships and goes up to ten, i. 335, l. 7237–8.

[3] *noied.*

[4] *þei praied him he suld not drauh.*

[5] MS. *vs.* P. *gif* þam. (Départe les, *Wace*, i. 336, l. 7249; ut ipsos expelleret, *Galf. Mon.* vi. 13.)

[6] . . . . *krie a kri*
þat *no sessone.*

[7] *smertli att did* þam *out kest.* [leaf 46, col. 2.]

Among þe Bretons myghter non reste.[1]
þe kyng, for loue of his wyf,
Held wyþ þe Saxons, & meyntenđ strif.[2]

Vortiger holds with the Saxons,

De infortuniis Saxonum.

. . Hys sone hadde *þer*-wyþ *en*uye,
. & sey his ffader meyntende folye;
He spied þe Saxoyns,[3] whar þey ware,
& chased hem as hound doþ þe[4] hare;
His folk was god, hym-self doughti,
& meyntende wel his party.
Baldely bolded on hym þe Bretons
Ageyns his fader & þe Saxons;[3]
ffoure tymes þey bataille nomen,
& eu*er*e þe Saxoyns[3] were ou*er*-comen;
þe firste bataille was vpon Derewent,
. *þer* were þe Saxons[3] alle y-schent;
þat o*þer* at Berforde, att a brok,[5]
þer þe Saxons eft bataille tok,[6]
þer was Hors & manye ano*þer*
Ageyn Catyger, Vortym*er*es bro*þer*;
. Gretly þey ȝernde ilk o*þer* tasayle,
& bo*þe* were slayn at þat bataille.
þe þridde tyme in Kent, at an hauen;
To *þer* schipes *þer*[7] þey were drawen;
þer wer þey so harde byset,
þey fledde to þe yle of Tanet;
ffro byȝonde Hu*m*ber, vnto *þat* ylde,
Was no Saxon[3] so bold ne wylde,
þat he ne dide hym *þ*yder chace,

De exilis Saxonum.

Four times do the Britons beat the Saxons in battle:
1. On Derwent;
2. At Berford,
where Horsa and Catyger
are both slain:
3. In Kent,
when the Saxons flee to the Isle of Thanet.

[1] *non mot rest.*
[2] *held þe sessons mantende stryfe.*
[3] *sessons.*
[4] þam *als hunde dos.*
[5] *Breford at a broke.* (Epifor, *Wace*, l. 7273; Episford, *Galf. Mon.*)
[6] *þer eftsons bataile þei toke.*
[7] *as.* P. transposes the next two lines.

. ffor in ffortiger[1] þey fond no grace.
þe Bretons folewed þem & slowe;
þo þat ascaped, to þe hil[2] þey drowe.
I þe yle þey assailled þem þer-ynne
Wiþ botes, as þey myghte þem[3] wynne;
By þe se syde on þem þey carf;
O þe oþer syde for hunger þey starf.
þan sey Saxons[4] on ilk syde wo,
& þoughte best[5] were to wende þer-fro;
þey sente her sonde to ffortyger,
' þat he wolde so sende to[6] Vortymer,
' To gyue hem leue a-wey to wende
' Wyþouten slaughter,[7] as he was hende;
. ' ffor þey ne leften nyght ne day
. ' þem tasaille wyþ strong afray:
. ' His trewes, þer-fore, fond vs[8] to gete.'
þen drowe þe Saxons[9] alle to a fflete,
& dight þer schipes, & sette vp sayl,
Left wyf & childre, & oþer porayl:[10]
On þis manere a-wey þey scaped,
Ouer se til oþer land þeym[11] raped.

4. In the Isle of Thanet, where they follow the Saxons,

who die for hunger.

Then the Saxons ask Vortiger to get them leave from Vortimer to leave his land peaceably;

and they sail off, leaving their wives and children behind.

∫ De Restauracione ecclesiarum per Vortimerum.

Vortymer dide þanne restore
þat for þem hadde any lore.
He dide kirkes reyse & make,—
. þo þat Hengist dide doun schake,—
& dide Godes seruise be songe & seyd,
þat for þe Payens longe was leyd.

Vortimer restores the churches,

and has God's service sung in them.

---

[1] *for att þe kyng.*
[2] *Ilde.*
[3] *to* þam.
[4] þe *sessons sauh.*
[5] þare *best it.*
[6] *wild praie sir.*
[7] *scaþe.* P. leaves out the next two lines.
[8] *In þis treus leue.* [leaf 46, back.]
[9] þe *sessons drouh* þam.
[10] *childe & oþer apparaille.*
[11] *Into* þer *awen lond* þam.

He sente to Rome, to seint Romeyn,
& he sente hider þe byschop Germeyn.
Þen com wyþ hym seint Lowys,
An holy bischop & a wys,—
Þey were sent þe londe to assoille,—
He kepte þe sege of the apostoylle.[1]
Þyse two *tur*ned þe folk ageyn,
To Crist & to his lawe ageyn ;[2]
& manion þorow hem saued was
Þat er wer gyuen to Satanas.
Þorow hem schewed God many *ver*tu,
Þat in þis lond dide gret pru.

The pope sends him Bishops Germeyn and St. Lowys,

and they turn the folk to Christ again.

¶ De Maledicta Ronewenna.

When þey had stabled Godes lawe
þorow miracle & þorow þer sawe,
Anoþ*er* sorewe com vp ryf,
þorow Ronewe*n*ne, ffortyg*er*es wyf:
Scheo made a drynke þorow treson,
& Vortym*er* sche dide poyson;
Scheo poysend hym *þat* louede Crist,
ffor þe payen, hu*re* ffader Hengist.
Whan Vortym*er* wyste he scholde deye—
Leches to lyue couþe hym non seye,[3]—
Þe*n* sent he after his barons bolde,
Bytaught he*m* alle his tresor to holde,
& seide, "takeþ conseil & red,—
"Of me nys non, for y am ded,[4]—
"Men of armes swyþe[5] ȝe take,
"By alle þe costes[6] quykly to wake
"Þat no Saxoyn[7] on ȝow aryue,

Then Ronewen poisons Vortimer;

and when he knows he must die, he bids his barons

set watches on the coasts, so that no Saxons may land;

[1] *see of þe apostole.*
[2] *to leue þe cristen lawe certayn.*
[3] *not seie.*
[4] *.I. am bot dede.*
[5] *knyghtes of sonde .I. rede.*
[6] *bi þe se side.*
[7] *sesson.*

" Ne receyueþ non for þyng alyue;
" Holdeþ þe stat þat y ȝow wan,
" And *trau*ailleþ forþ as y began;
" And ȝyf ȝe do als y schal rede, [leaf 34, col. 2.]
" On ȝow to come þey schul drede.

and bury him by the sea side

" By þe se side, byrieþ me þere,
" þe sight of me ȝyt schal hem fere;[1]

under a very high tomb,

" & doþ make a toumbe þat longe may last,
" þe sight þerof schal þem agast;
" On alle manere ȝe make hit heye,

that may always meet the Saxon's eye, and keep them off.

" þat y be euere ageyn þer eye;
" þat wey of me þan schul þey scurne,
" Ne neuere haue grace on me to turne."

Vortimer then dies; and, as dead men's words are soon

Nota.

forgotten, his barons bury him in London.

Vortiger reigns again over the whole land; and, on Ronewen's asking,

sends word to Hengist to come over again, but with few folk, so as not to frighten the Britons.

þus he þem taughte, þus he þem seyd,
& þenne byforn þem alle he deyd.
Bot þei dide nought his comandement; **Heu pro**
þe dedes conseyl[2] ys sone ouer-went,— **morte Vor-**
To Londone his body þey bar, **timery!**
& in þe cite biried hym þar.
Þen wax ffortiger ful stout;
Als he fore dide, he[3] regned þorowout.
Ronewenne þenne hure lord bysought
þat Hengist myghte a-geyn be brought.
Anon tys[4] wif, his wille he went,
& after Hengist his lettre sent:
To come sleightly he scholde[5] fonde,
& litel folk wyþ hym brynge[6] to londe,
[7] So þe barons þem nought mispaye,
Ne þe comun folk affraye;[7]
" Hit nedeþ no þyng gret folk to haue,
" ffor Vortymer lygges ded[8] in graue."

[1] *satt þam afere.* [lf. 46, bk., col. 2.]
[2] *dede conseile.*
[3] *he are was.*
[4] *titt his.* [*went*=turned]
[5] *com slily he suld.*
[6] *bot bring not mykett folk.*
[7–7] P. leaves out these two lines.
[8] MS. *dred.* P. *dede.*

ſ Hengistus reconsiliatus est.

When Hengist herde þo tydinges,
His God he þanked,[1] & made offrynges;
He dight hym folk, an hundred[2] þousand
Of armed men, brought þem to land.
Many a Breton þen dredde hym sore,
& so schold oþer þat þenne [ne][3] wore.
When þe kyng herde Hengist was comen,
& wiþ mykel folk þe lond[4] had nomen,
He dredde hym sore, & mente his mone.
þe Bretons were greued ones[5] ilkone,
& seide 'þey wolde do[6] þer myght
'To sle þem doun wyþ force &[7] fight.'
Bot Hengist herde, what loud, what stille,
þe Bretons to hym hadde yuel[8] wille.
Hym self was euere ful feloun;
He sente to þe kyng al in tresoun,
'þat he wolde speke wyþ alle in pees,
'& simplely[9] wyþouten pres;
'Pes he asked, pes wolde he seke,
'Til hym in pes he wolde be[10] meke,
'& he wolde nought þe Bretons greue,
'Ne dwelle wiþ force ageyn þer leue,
'Bot chese þem-seluen, as þey wol say,
'Wheþer we schul dwelle, or go our way.'[11]
On þat couenaunt & þat deuis
þey hadde trewes on boþe partys.
When þe partys to trewe[12] wer brought,

But Hengist
brings over 100,000 men with him.
This frightens the Britons
and Vortiger too,
and the Britons say they'll fight.
On this, Hengist treacherously
declares that he wants peace only,
that he'll not grieve the Britons,
but will stop or go as they choose.
So a truce is made,

[1] *he þankid his godes.*
[2] *þre hundreth.* (trois cent milliers, *Wace*, i. 343, l. 7380; trecenta millia, *Galf. Mon.* vi. 15.)
[3] *þan ne.*
[4] *hauen.*
[5] *euer.*
[6] *þei suld fond.*
[7] *& do him flie þorgh force of.*
[8] *had wikked.*
[9] *scmpely.* [leaf 47.] A fresh scribe (? not the second) writes this page of P. and has *-in*, *-is*, *-id*, &c.
[10] *wild him.*
[11] *or at* þer *will go home* þer *weie.*
[12] *treus.*

. Hengist of treson hym bypought;[1]
porow *trist* of trues, of[2] on assent
and a day for parleying fixed, on Salisbury plain, by the Marvel of Ambresbury. Pey sette a day of Parlement 7844
Opon pe Playne of Salesbury,
Byside the *Mer*ueille of Aumbresbyry,[3]
Pey bede Hengist no gret folk lede, [leaf 34, bk., col. 1.]
Hengist is told to come alone; . Bot senglely come, & noman[4] drede, 7848
. & what lordyng he gan mete,
. Als he pem dredde he scholde[5] lete.
but he says he'll come with men unarmed. Hengist sent hym bode a-geyn,
pat he wolde comen to pe Playn 7852
Wypoute arm*ur*e on any wyght,
ffor drede of contek & of fight.

∫ De tradici*on*e Hengisti, & occisione Britonu*m* cu*m* Sexis.

On the 1st of May the meeting at Salisbury is held. To *pat* playne pey come *pat* day,
Of Salesbury, pe firste of May, 7856
. Many a man (wypoute[6] somons)
. Of pe Saxons[7] & of pe Bretons:
. Herep now how Hengist pought,[8]
But the traitor Hengist has told his men to bring two-edged knives—sexes—hidden in their hosen, . What treson he schop to be wrought.[9] 7860
" ffelawes," he seyde, "what so bytydes,
" Get 3ow knyues egged on[10] bope sydes,
" & ber *pem priuely*, *pat* non ne se,
" In 3oure hoses harde by 3our kne.[11] 7864
" When we haue *pem*, & pey vs gret,
to set themselves, each one " & ilkon of vs by a Breton[12] set,—

[1] *who wild haue wend of treson* þo*gh*t.
[2] *treist & treus on.*
[3] *Nunnis of Ammesberi.* (l'abeie, *Wace*, i. 344, l. 7410; cœnobium, *Galf. Mon.* vi. 15.)
[4] *simpli no man suld.*
[5] *so suld he.*
[6] þoru.
[7] *sessons.*
[8] *heres now hov . . . wroght.*
[9] *þis tresoñ who wild haue þoght.*
[10] *puruey 3ou kniues egid.*
[11] *In 3oure bosums be 3our the.*
[12] *Ilkone be sidyn o*þer.

. " On alle manere fondes how,
. " Ay on of hem, anoþer[1] of ȝow,—
" Nymeþ out[2] ȝour sexes when y so say,
" & handes on ȝour felawes lay,
" On ilka Breton þat sittes ȝou nest,
" & strykeþ hem ded þorow bak &[3] brest."
. When Hengist to þem þus had yseyd,[4]
. Ilka Saxon[5] a sex purueyd,
. & com to þe Playne of Salesbury,
. ffair felawschip,[6] & ful mury.
When þey were alle set in fere,
Als he had seid hem þe[7] manere,
" Nymeþ out[8] ȝour sexes," seide Hengist;
. Bot what hit mente þe Bretons nyst.[9]
Þe Saxons[10] anon þer sexes drowe;[11]
His felawe next, þe Saxons[10] slowe.
. Þe kyng sey þat, anon vp stirt,
Bot Hengist laughtym[12] by þe skirt,
& he held hym as stille as ston,
þat he mighte helpe to saue non.
. Þe Bretons seye þey were by-traischt,[13]
. fful deolfuly were þey þenne abayscht.[14]
. þat so sodeynly had þer lyues[15] reft/,
. & so fewe lordes as þer were left;
ffor þer wer slayn of knyghtes[16] bolde
Þre hundred[17] & sexti Bretons tolde;
Alle were þey lordes[18] euerilkone,

next to a Briton,
and, when he, Hengist, calls,
let each Saxon draw his sex, and stab the Briton next him, in the back.
So every Saxon brings his sex,
and when Hengist gives the word,
each kills the Briton next him,
while Hengist holds Vortiger down.
360 British knights are slain;

[1] *& on.*
[2] *takis oute.*
[3] *& smyte with knife þrou bak or.* leaf 47, col. 2.] After, *brest* P. adds,
att gate þat ȝee him slo.
no poer haue ferer to go.
[4] *whan þis treson to þem was said.*
[5] *man.*
[6] *felichip.*
[7] *said on þat.*
[8] *takis oute.*
[9] *ne wist.*
[10] *sessons.*
[11] *drohe . . . slohe.*
[12] *toke him.*
[13] *be traist.*
[14] *So sodenly þei were o beist.*
[15] *& þer liues so sone.*
[16] *baroñs.*
[17] quatre cens, *Wace*, i. 346, l. 7438; quadringentos, *Galf. Mon.* vi. 15.
[18] *att riche men.*

. ffor whilk þe lond made mykel mone;
but some escape, defending themselves with stones. & þo þat ascaped out of þe place,
Wyþ stones foughte as[1] þey had space; 7896
ffyghtyng þey fledde, þey hadde al[2] nede.
Eldok, earl of Gloucester, gets hold of a tree, Þe Erl[3] of Gloucestre was in þat drede;
A tre he laughte, & þer-wyþ smot,
& his dint on þe Saxons[4] bot; 7900
Sire Eldok, þe noble Erl so[5] hight,
. His dint wyþ-stonde, no Saxon[6] myght,
and with it kills 30 men. ffor he slow þer of Hengistes[7] men,
Als hit telles, twenty[8] & ten. 7904
He bar hym so in þat pres [leaf 34, back, col. 2.]
þat of wounde he was wem-les,
þey seye he scaped so[9] wyþ þe lyf,
& kesten after hym many a knyf; 7908
He escapes to Gloucester. þer his hors was, þider he gan[10] spede,
& to Gloucestre on þat hors he ȝede;[11]
And so he warnyscht al þat toun
. þat þey ne dredde no Saxoun.[12] 7912
Vortiger's life is saved by Hengist, Þen Saxoyns[12] wolde han slayn þe kyng,
Bot Hengist wold nought for no þyng;
He bad hem "leue, do him bot god,
" ffor he haþ au*a*unced mykel my blod: 7916
" Als in lawe he ys my sone,
" Elles he scholde o*þ*er weys mone."
but he is prisoned in London; þey ledde hym þe*n*ne to London,
& þer þey dide hym in prison. 7920
London was þeirs, to Lincolne þey hasted,
Wynchestre & ȝork þey toke & wasted.

---

[1] *wit stonis fault wen.*
[2] *ffehtand þei fled as þei had.*
[3] *Erett.*
[4] *Sessons.*
[5] *þis eritt sir Eldok he.*
[6] *to stond his dint non ne.*
[7] *þe Hengist.*
[8] *seuenti.* (soixante dis, *Wace*, l. 7449; septuaginta, *Gulf. Mon.*, vi. 16.)
[9] *þei sau he was schapid.*
[10] þer *his hors was þidir him.*
[11] *on him to gloucestre he fled.*
[12] *sessoun . . Sessons.* [lf. 47, bk.] (These readings will not be given again.)

ffortyger saw how þat hit foor;[1]
What þey hym asked, he þem swor.
ffor to ben out of þer prisoun,
& quit of alle manere raunsoun,
He graunted þem þanne to haue Southsex,
Oxenfordschire,[2] & Middelsex,
ffor þey marchen vpon[3] Kent
þat he gaf Ronewenne to rent.
& forto mene ȝyt of þe tresons
Of þe sexes & of þe Saxons,
þo countres haue þer-of þe[4] name,
Sexes, fo[r] þe Saxons schame.
Sire ffortiger þe kyng þankede God þo,
þat so quit & sker had lat hym go.[5]
Toward Walys þen fledde he ȝerne,
ffer awey byȝonde Seuerne;
þere he dwelled & made soiour:
Now hereþ how he þer made his tour.

and, to get free,
gives the Saxons Sussex, Oxfordshire, and Middlesex, which border on Kent.
Vortiger thanks God he is quit of the Saxons, flees to Wales,
and builds a tower there.

ſ De castello ffortygerny in Wallia.

He dide sende after þe clergye,
þe wysest men of astronomye;
At hem alle, conseil he took,
'How he myghtym safliest lok[6]
'A-geyn his enemis for to fende,
'ȝyf host byseged hym as he wende.'
þus redde hym þenne his conseillours:
'To make a strong castel wiþ tours
'þat non wyþ force mighte hit take,
'Ne wyþ engyns hit perebrake;[7]

Vortiger asks his wisest astronomers
how he can best defend himself against his enemies.
They advise him to make a strong castle,

[1] *fore . . . suore.*
[2] *& estsex.* (Essexe, *Wace*, i. 348, l. 7474, from MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé.)
[3] *merched opon.*
[4] *haf þo cuntres þerfo to.*
[5–5] *Whan þe kyng sir Vortiger was laten go quyte & clere.*
[6] *sauely loke.*
[7] *non engine perbrake.*

and fortify it.

'& when hit [was][1] dight at his auys,
'To warnyschit[2] ageyn his enemis.'
In fele stedes þenne ches he
Where was best & most ese.

Vortiger chooses the hill Mount de Tyre,

On an hil hight Mount de Tyre,[3]
þer-on was his moste desire;

and sets masons to work at his castle.

Masons brought he þenne[4] þer-tille,
Bygonne þat castelwerk o[5] þat hille;
Morter þey made, & ston dide fet,
& spedde hem faste þer-on to set.

But all that they build up in the day, falls down at night.

Alle þat þey made a day vpright,
ffallen was doun vpon þat nyght;
Often þey les al þeyr iornes,
þat what [þei][6] made, lay doun on knes.

Vortiger sends for his wise men,

þat saw þe kyng hit misferde[7] so; [leaf 35.]
þe maistres he dide eft com hym to,

and asks them why the work falls,

& preide þem telle 'what þyng hit deres
'þat þe erþe þys werk ne beres;
'& ȝif þey mighte, þey scholde fonde

and what'll make it stand.

'To wyte what myghte don hit stonde.'
þys wyse maistres þer bokes kest,[8]
Why þat werk ne wolde nought lest;

They search their books, and answer

þey fondyt þenne in þer musyng,[9]
A gret selcouþ, & telde þe kyng:

that if a child, not begotten by a man, can be found and killed, the work will stand on mortar mixed with his blood.

"ȝyf ani man myghte a child fynde
"þat hadde no fader of mankynde,
"ȝyf he were taken & slayn sone,[10]
"& menged his blod wyþ morter & stone,
"Vpon þat morter þat blod wer inne,
"þat werk men mygh[t] safly bygynne."

---

[1] *whan it were.*
[2] *warnissed.*
[3] Mont de Rir, *Wace*, i. 349, l. 7510; ad Erir montem, *Galf. Mon.*, vi. 17.
[4] *slie he brouht.* [lf. 47, bk., col. 2.]
[5] *began a kastett opoñ.*
[6] *þat þei.*
[7] *þe kyng sauh it misfare.*
[8] *maistres lotes caste.* (ont deviné et sortoi, *Wace*, i. 351, l. 7529.)
[9] *fond in* þer *lotes kestyng.*
[10] *on one.*

Þe kyng als sone his sonde sent, — Vortiger sends
ffro toun to toun þorow Walys went;
In ilka contre, þorow euery[1] schire,
He hadde spyes for to spyre; — 7984 spies all over Wales and other countries
& in oþer landes seeres
Sente þe kyng his messegers:
Two to-gyder, aboute þey ȝede,
Þe bettere for to spirre & spede. — 7988 to find such a child.
Two of þyse wente þorow Walys, — Two of the spies see, at Kermerdyn in Wales,
Of swylk a child ȝif þey herde tales.
So fer in to þe lond þey nam,
Atte last to Kermerdyn þey cam: — 7992
By-fore þe ȝates y þe way
Sawe þey manye childre play; — many children playing.
Bytwyxt to þer a stryf þey herde, — Two children
Of grete reprefs[2] ilk oþer onswerde; — 7996 quarrel,
Þey wyþ-stode, & gon abyde
. ffor to here þe children[3] chide.
. When wraþe bygynneþ, þen comeþ vmbreyd;[4] — and as when wrath rises, re-
. Al þat men wot, ys þen forþ seyd; — 8000 proaches follow,
. So dide þey þat weren wroþe,— — so one child,
Dynabus, Merlyn, (þus hight þey boþe,)— — Dynabus, says to the other, Merlin,
ſſ Dynabus seyde, " Let be, Merlyn!
. " ȝyf þou me vmbreyde,[5] þe schame ys þyn. — 8004 **Merlinus.**
" Y am born of heyer kynde — " I'm better born than you!
" þan any man of þe may fynde.
" Hit aughte þe schame in al þy lyue
" þat þou, Merlyn, wyþ me wilt stryue; — 8008
" ffor y am come of kynges blod, — I come of king's blood!
" & þou, Merlyn, art nought so god;
. " þy kynde & myn ys no þyng euen,
" Ne þy fader canstow nought neuen, — 8012 But nobody knows who your father was,
" Ne neuere hym seye, ne hym ne knew,

---

[1] *þorgh ilk a.*
[2] *vpbreide.* [leaf 48.]
[3] *childir.*
[4] *wrath comes þan is vpbreid.*
[5] *þou vpbreid.*

" Ne of what kynde þat he grew!
. " þer wot no man of wham þart come,[1]
You are no man's son!" " þer-fore y halde þe no mannes sone!" 8016
The messengers þe messegers lystn̄ed, & þought
þat swylk a child hadde þey sought;
ask the citizens þey spird[2] at men of þat cite,
þat Dynabus seyde, ȝyf hit myght be, 8020
about Merlin's father. þat ffader wystey hym haue[3] non.
þey of þe cite seyde ylkon,
They say they don't know his father, but they do his mother, who " His moder we knowe, þat hym bare;
" Of his fader ne wyte we whare; 8024
. " Hys moder kynde alle we knawe,[4] [leaf 35, col. 2.]
" Bot his ffader we neuere sawe.
is the daughter of king Dymenice, " Scheo was þe kynges doughter, Dymenice,[5]
" Of Walys he hadde half partye; 8028
and now a nun at St. Peter's church. " Scho ys nonne of relygion
" At Seint Petres kirke of þis toun."
The messengers take Merlin þey ȝede to þe Meyre of Kermerdyn,
O þe kynges halue asked Merlyn 8032
þat neuere ȝit no fader had;
and his mother His moder also wyþ hym þey lad.
þe Meyre þen wolde þem nought werne,
Bot sped þem on þer wey ful ȝerne. 8036
to Vortiger, þey come to þe kyng ffortyger,
& he welcomed hem on faire maner:
and he asks her ∫ " Dame," seyde þe kyng, " welcome be þou!
" Nedlike at þe y mot wyse how, **Dicta**
who begat Merlin on her. " Who þan gat þy sone Merlyne, **Matris**
. " & on what manere was he þyne." **Merlyny.**
His moder stod a þrowe, & þought,
. Er sche to þe kyng onswered ought. 8044
When scheo had stande[6] a litel wyght,
She says "I never saw or Sche seyde, " by Marye bright,[7]

[1] *ne no man of þe may kone.*
[2] *þe spired.*
[3] *wist þei him haf.*
[4] *knowe . . . sowe.*
[5] *demetie.*
[6] *standen.* [leaf 48, col. 2:]
[7] *bi ihesu in Mari liht.*

" þat y ne sey, ne neuere knew,
" Hym þat þis child on me sew;[1]
" Y ne wiste neuere, ne y ne herde,
" What manер wyght[2] wyþ me so ferde;
" Bot þis þyng am y wel of graunt,
" Whon y was of elde auenaunt,
" On com þer to my bed, y wyst,
" & wyþ force me clipte[3] & kyst;
" Als a man y hym felt,
" & als a man he me welt,
" And als a man he spak to me,
" Bot what he was myght y nought se.
" So often to my bed he cam,
" & ofte me kyste, in armes nam,
" & knew me als a man schold do,
" Byforе ne syþen did neuere non so:
" Al þus[4] conseyued y þys knaue,
" & als y wiste, told y ȝow haue."
Þen dide þe kyng a maistер calle,
Magait[5] he highte, wysest of alle;
He asked ȝyf hit myghte be so,
þat þyng þat scheo[6] telde þem to.
" ȝe,"[7] seyde þe Maistere to þe kyng,
" Hit may bityde, swylka[8] þyng.
" ffor we fynde writen in our scrytes
" Of swylk manere of spyrites;
" Bytwyxte þe mone & þe erþe þei wone—
" So telleþ vs our bokes þat we kone;—
" Som what tak þey of mannes kynde,
" & mengyt wyþ angles, as we fynde;
" ffor þeyr wonyng ys in þe eyr,
" Vmwhile to þe erþe þey make repeir.
" Mykel skaþe do þey nought;

knew the begetter of my boy.
A being came to my bed,
who felt like a man,
spoke like one,
and kissed and knew me as a man would. But I never saw him, though I conceived my child by him."
Vortiger asks his wisest man, Magait, whether this is possible.
Magait says "yes;
there are spirits living between the moon and earth,
who have partly man's nature, and partly angel's.

[1] *knaue on me sewe.*
[2] *schap.*
[3] *he me halsed.*
[4] þus*gate.*
[5] *Magaunt.* (Malgant, *Wace*, i. 356, l. 7623.)
[6] *als scho.*
[7] ȝa.
[8] *of suilk a.*

" Drecchynge by tymes haue [1] þey wrought.
When they take man's nature,
" Mannes nature vmwhile þey take;
" þat ys þer myght þey may so make,
." Whan hit ys tyme here powere,
they are like bodies here,
." To haue lyknesse of bodyes here.[2]
." What tyme þey tak hit, wot noman
." Bot he þat al may wyte & kan.
and can do women shame.
" þise spyrites do women schame; [leaf 85, back, col. 1.]
Incubi they are called, or *Fiends-in-Bed.*
" Incuby / demones, ys cald þer name,
." ffendes-in-bedde, as our bokes [3] sayn,
" þat many woman han forlayn.
One of them may have begot Merlin."
" On þis manere myghte Merlyn
" Be geten & born, by [4] oure deuyn."
Merlin bids Vortiger tell him plainly why he sent for him.
¶ þen seide Merlyn: " Sire kyng! þou has
" Sent after me; sey me þy [5] cas! **Dicta**
" What þou wilt, sey me þy wille, **Merlyny.**
." Whether hit is for god oþer ylle!"
Vortiger says " To find out from you why my castle-work
þen seid þe kyng, " þou schalt here;
." ffor þe y sente, at þe to lere.
" A castel y haue bygonne,[6]
." & lore þer-on þat y haue wonne;[7]
set up in the day, falls down at night.
" Al þat þey make þer on a day,
" O nyght alone [8] stand hit ne may;
" & eft when þey gynne [9] þe walles,
" Eyþer hit synkes, or cleues, or falles;
" & ffayn y wolde þe werk haue hasted,
" & mykel of myn þer-fore ys wasted.
My diviners say your blood must be shed on the walls."
" Bot þus seide alle my dyuinours,
" þat þer ne schal stande wal ne tours
" Bot þy blod þer-on be schad,
" þow þat neuere no fader had."
Merlin answers,
þenne seide Merlyn, " þat wold nought God,

---

[1] *poyntes haf.* [leaf 48, back.]
[2] *sere.*
[3] *so þei.*
[4] *in.*
[5] *what.*
[6] *begunnen.*
[7] *& lost* þer*for* þat *.I. haf wunnen.*
[8] *holy.*
[9] *begyn.*

" þat swylk a fals schold be bytrowd,[1] 8112 "God will not have such a lie believed.
" þat þorow þe mengynge of my blod
" þy tour schold stande strong & god.
" Y schal *proue* þem fals fur-sworn
" ȝyf þou brynge þe*m* me byforn: 8116 Bring your diviners here,
" þo þat on me lotes cast,
" & seyde my blod myght makyt[2] fast,
" Y schal þem *proue* for lyer*es* olde, and I'll prove them old liars."
" þylke[3] maistr*es* þat þe so tolde." 8120
þe kyng dide þem come ilkone, Vortiger has up the diviners,
Ageyn M*er*lyn hym self alone. and Merlin says to 'em:
" Maistr*es*," he seyde, " what haue ȝe seyd,
" What lotes haue ȝe on me leyd, 8124 "What have you been saying about this work tumbling down?
" ffor þys þyng ys *þus* ffarand,
" þe kynges werk hit may nought st*a*nde?
" Con ȝe sey non o*þ*er enchesoun[4]
" Whi þat þis castel *þus* falles doun? 8128
" & ȝyf ȝe can non o*þ*er sey If you know nothing certain about it,
" Why þat hit falles som c*er*teyn wey,
" How coupe ȝe wyte þat þorow my blod how can you tell that my blood 'll make it stand?
" þis to*ur* myght stande stark & god? 8132
" Seys what þyng ys on[5] þe ground
" þat hit ne may stande hol ne[6] sound,
" & seyþ what þyng hit helpe myght,
" þat þys castel myght st*a*nde vpright. 8136
" & ȝyf ȝe ne c*o*nne nought do hym wyte
" What þe fallyng may wyþ-syt,[7]
" þat ȝe haue seyd, hit ys bot fable, That is a mere fable.
" þat my blod schold make hit stable! 8140
" Seys now hym al þe dest*ur*blaunce,[8] Tell the king now what *is* the cause of this wonder!"
" & where-of comeþ þat wonder chaunce!"
þise maistr*es* of astronomie & of deuyn[9]

---

[1] *suilk fals worde so suld be trod.*
[2] *mot.* [3] *þo ilk.*
[4] *cheson.* [leaf 48, back, col. 2.]
[5] *in.*
[6] *may not be hole &.*
[7] *with site.*
[8] *disturbance.*
[9] *þat said þat devyne.*

The astronomers can't say a word.

Onswered[1] nought o word to Merlyn.
When Merlyn sey þey ne onswered[1] nought,
Right to þe kyng he sayde his þought:

¶ Dicta Merliny ad Regem. [lf. 35, bk., col. 2.]

Merlin explains that at the foundation of the work is a running stream.

"Syre kyng," he saide, "gyf now entent![2]
"By-neþe þe erþe, atte ffundement,
"Is a water rennyng dep,[3]
"þat makes þy werk slyden o slep.[4]
"& serteyn þer-of [þat] þou be,
"Do graue þe erþe al vp, & se."

If they dig, they'll find it.

Þe kyng dide come mynours[5] ynowe,
þat þe erþe vp caste & drowe.
As Merlyn seyde, þe water þey fond.

Vortiger's miners do dig, and do find the water.

"Ze maistres," seid Merlyn, "of þys lond,
"Zyf ze con telle vs now here
"What merueille ys in þys ryuere,
"Seyeþ now þe righte certeynete,
"Ze þat diuined þe deþ of me!"

"Now you diviners," says Merlin, "tell us what wonder is in this stream!"

They can't answer a word.

Þe maistres alle stille þey stod,
þey seyden neyþer yuel[6] ne god.

Merlin says, "Scoop out the water, and turn the bourne."

Þen to-ward þe kyng Merlyn gan turne:
"Do scope þis water, & turn þe borne.[7]
"Sykes do ze graue & groupe,[8]
"þe water þer-inne[9] men schal scoupe."

This is done.

Þe kyng dide come folk ynowe,
þat þe water wiþ scopes vp drowe.

---

[1] *ansuerd . . . ansurd.*
[2] *þi tent.*
[3] *rynnand depe.*
[4] *to slide o slepe.* (Par quoi ta tor en terre font, *Wace*, i. 359, l. 7694.)
[5] *grauers.*
[6] *seid noiþer itt.*
[7] *burne.* [leaf 49.]
[8] MS. *groupes.* P. *groupe.*
[9] *in þam.*

∫ De diuersitate duorum Draconum.

When þe water was oute clene,
Merlyn schewed what hit wold mene:
He telde þe folk alle atones,
þat "y þe ground leye two hole[1] stones;
" By-twyxte þe stones were to dragons,
" þat dide hym make al þe[2] somons.
" Do þat þo stones weren a twynne,
" þe dragons schul ȝe fynde wyþynne."[3]
þey brast þe stones vp al so tyt,
& founde a red dragon & a whyt.[4]
þis rede dragon was grym to se;
ffel to fyghte þen semed he;
þe white was nought so grym of[5] sight,
Ne so fel semyng[6] to fyght.
" Sire kyng," seid Merlyn, "to me þou herk!
" þyse two dragons fordede þy werk!
" ffor whan þy werk on heyght[e] larged,
" þen schok þe ground,[7] & þeym ouer charged;
" þen meued þey hem, þe water al quok,
" & þe werk abouen al schok;[8]
" Of þat y seyde, nought y ne ley."[9]
Vp in to þe eyr þe dragons þen fley,
& foughte so þat hit was selcouþ;
fflaumes as fyr fley fro[10] þer mouþ.
Al þe folk seide comunly,
þey hoped þe rede schold haue þe maistri.
When þey hadde longe to-gyder smyten,
Spatled, spouted, belewed,[11] & byten,

Then says Merlin,
"Two stones are there; and betwixt them, two dragons. Break the stones, and you'll find the dragons." The people do so: a red dragon, grim and fell;
and a white not so fell.
"These two dragons upset your work," says Merlin,
"by moving when it gets heavy on them."
The dragons then fly into the air, and fight fiercely

[1] *two holle.* [leaf 49.] (hole-y, Fr. *chaves.* Wace, i. 360, l. 7712.)
[2] þis.
[3] þer *Inne.*
[4] The explanation and dragon-fight are not in Geoffrey of Monmouth.
[5] *grimly in.*
[6] *semand.*
[7] *þe grounde satled.*
[8] *to schoke.*
[9] *say nouht .I. leih.*
[10] *of fire com of.*
[11] *spouted sperkes bolned.*

. Wyppyng wyþ wenges, ouer-wepen[1] & went,
. Cracchyng wiþ clawes, rubbed, & brent;[2]
all that day and night.
. Þe bataille lasted day & nyght,
. Vntil þat oþer day was lyght. 8200
. Þe folk wondred þat þe white dragoun
. To þe rede had any foysoun.
At last, the white dragon burns up the red one,
. At þe ende, þe white a fflaume out cast, [leaf 36.]
. þat þe rede bolnede & brast. 8204
. When he was ded, þe rede dragoun,
. Þe white ȝede & leyde hym doun;
and dies himself three days after.
. Þre daye þen lyued he, & na mo,
. Þe ferþe he deyde, y trowe, for wo. 8208
Vortiger asks Merlin the meaning of this.
ſſ Vortyger sey þanne þis chaunce;
He askede Merlyn þe signifiaunce,
& preyed hym telle what hit wild mene,
. Wheþer hit tokned ioye or tene. 8212
Merlin then speaks prophecies
Þenne seyde Merlyn many thynges,
What y þis lond schuld tide of kynges,
that are in the books of Blase,
. þat are in Blase bokes write,[3]—
. þey þat hauyt, mowe hit wyte,[4]— 8216
Tolomer, and Amytayn,
. And in Tolomer & sire Amytayn;[5]
. Þyse hadde Merlynes bokes playn,
who wrote them, and were his masters.
. ffor þyse þre write his prophecyes,
. And were his maistres in ser[6] partyes. 8220
. Som men haue þem mykel in hande,
. þat con nought þem wel vndestande.
But I have no wit to undo the knots that Merlin knit.
Y sey for me, y naue no wyt
To open þe knottes þat Merlyn knyt. 8224
. Men may sey more þan he haþ seyd,

[1] *wipped . . . ouerwarpen.*
[2] *kracchid with clawes rombed & rent.*
[3] See Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Liber septimus, qui est de Pro-" phetiis Merlini." Wace leaves it out too:
Ne voil son livre tranlater,
Quant jo n'elsai entepréter:
Nule rien dire ne volroie
Qu'issi ne fu com jo diroie.
Wace, i. 361, ll. 7733–6.
[4] *þo þat it haf þei it witen.*
[5] (?) *Auntayn.*
[6] *were maistres at sere.*

. þat noþyng þer-to may be leyd.
. Merlyn spak on swylk a manere,
. þat til hit be gon, non may hit lere.

He spoke so, that till the thing happened, no body knew it.

¶ De interpretacione draconum per Merlynum.

Þe kyng held Merlyn in mikel pris,
ffor his seynge was god & wys.
. (In ffortiger tyme, men hit[1] told,
. He was þat tyme bot twolf ȝer old.)
Þe kyng bisoughtym þat he wold seye
What manere deþ þat he schold deye.[2]
. " Sire kyng, to wyte hastow[3] desir:
" Al way war þe[4] wel fro fyr
" ffro Constantes childre,[5] þat ar comand,
" þat sone schul aryuen here on land.
. " þou signefiest[6] þe rede dragoun,
" þat ffader & broþer slowe wyþ tresoun;
. " & hit menes, þer bataille strong,
" þat þou hast halde[7] þer lond wyþ wrong.
. " þe white dragon ys syngnefiaunce
" þat þey schul take of þe vengaunce:
" fful yuel þou slowe þer ffader & broþer,[8]
" & madest þe kyng, þat was anoþer.
" þe þridde combraunce þat ȝit þe mones,
" þou receyuedest þe Payens Saxones.
" On alle halue comes þy wo:
" þe Saxoyns wyl waite þe to slo;
" I þat oþer halue þe eyres schul come,
" & aske þer lond of þe þorow dome;

Vortiger asks Merlin how he (the king) shall die. Merlin says, "Beware of fire from Constant's children, who will soon land here. You are the red dragon, You slew their father and brother. They are the white dragon, and shall take vengeance on you. The Saxons will try to kill you too. Constant's heirs

[1] *Merlin men.*
[2] *dede he suld dye.*
[3] *haues þou.*
[4] *war þe wer þe.* (Garde-toi, distil, garde-toi, *Wace*, i. 361, l. 7742.)
[5] *Constant Childir.*
[6] *signifise.*
[7] *þou haues.*
[8] *An euell þou didis þou slou þer broþer.* (The second scribe began again in P. at line 8229.)

" þey ar now saylynge[1] in þe se;
" Awey by tyme y rede þow fle.
will land to-morrow at Totness, and march after you. " þey schul[2] aryue vp at Totneys
" To morn, wyþ hors & wyþ harneys;
" To renne on þe [þey] schul[2] þem renge; [lf.36, cl.2.]
" ffader & broþer þey schul[2] þan venge.
Flee at once to your best hold. " þer þou wenst best recet[3] to haue,
" ffle now faste,[4] þy self to saue.
" 3yt schal y warne þe of þys þynge,
Aurelius shall reign first, but only a short time. " Aurelius schal[2] first be kyng;
" & he schal[2] lyue nought bot a stounde;
" þorow poyson schal[2] he be brought to grounde.
Then Uther shall succeed, " Vter, his broþer, after hym schal[2] be
" Kyng, & regne als dide he.
and after him his son (Arthur) from Cornwall, " Vter sone schal com fro Cornewaille,
" As a fyghtyng bor[5] in bataille;
" þe traiturs of þyne þat he may fynde,
" He schal furdo, and al þer kynde;
who shall destroy all his enemies." " Of prowesse he schal haue þe pris,
" & destruye alle his enemis."
Merlyn stynte,[6] & spak namore.
Vortiger starts at once. þen ffortegeer tok his[7] leue þore;
ffo[r] þes tydynges dwelt he[8] nought,
On Merlynes wordes was al his þought.

∫ Hic de Aurelyo Rege.

Next day, Aurelius, Uther, and their host, land at Totness, Þat oþer day, as Merlyn seyd,
Totenesse was vmbyleyd[9]
Wyþ schipes wyþ þe children[10] host,
& spred aboute by al þe cost.

---

[1] *sailand.* [leaf 49, back.]
[2] *salt.*
[3] *wote best refute.*
[4] *suyth.*
[5] *als a feihtand bore.*
[6] *left.*
[7] *at Vortiger he toke.* (Et Vortiger d'iloc torna, *Wace*, i. 363, l. 7778.)
[8] *ne Vortiger duellid.*
[9] *be layd.*
[10] *childir.*

Bretons þat herde, & weren blyþe;
. Þey gadered þem, & þyder swyþe;
Þo þat were a-sondred ful[1] wyde,
Com to Toteneys on ilka syde;
. Lordes riden, & fotmen ran,
. Bretons were bliþe ilka man.
Hengist byforn had don hem skulke
In wodes, in hilles, to crepe in hulke,[2]
& had ney slayn al þer barons
Wyþ þe sexes of þe Saxons.[3]
. Þen were þey bolde of þe cominge;
Þey tok Aurelius, & made hym kyng.
. Wyþ þe Bretons was blisse ynough,[4]
. & þretten Hengist to wake hys wough.[5]
ſſ þys tidyng com to ffortiger,
. þat Aurelius & sire Vter
. Were comen, & hadde seysed þe lond,
. Þeym to venge, ȝyf þey hym fond.
ffor þo tydynges & þo tales
He fledde & warnyschet hem[6] in Wales;—
Genoyre hight þe castel name,
. (I not ȝyf hit haue ȝit þe same;)
Þe hil hight Cloart, þer men hit kennes,
& byside þe water of Weye[7] rennes;
Þe contre þat hit standes yn,
Þe name þer-of hight Dergryn;[8]—
Þider gadered his folk & þaire vitaille,
& warnyschet[9] hem, ȝyf ought myght vaille.
ſſ þe ȝonge kyng & his broþer,
. Wyþ mania Breton, on & oþer,
. & folk wyþ hym þat he brought,

De Morte ffortygerny.

and all the Britons in great joy resort to them.

Till then, Hengist has made the Britons skulk in woods and corners:

now they'll wake his woe [?] [See l. 8558.]

Vortiger hears of this,

and flees to his castle Genoyre, in Wales,

on the hill Cloart, near the Wye,

in Dergryn, and garrisons it.

Aurelius and Uther, with their Britons,

[1] *or sundird.*
[2] *to krepe & hulk.*
[3] Wace, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé. De Lincy's No. 27 has 'Des castiax ot la signorie,' *Wace*, i. 364, l. 7790.)
[4] *eneughe.* [leaf 49, back, col. 2.]
[5] *wakin his wouh.*
[6] *wanisid him.*
[7] *be side wye a water þat.*
[8] *Hergrin.*
[9] *warnisid it.*

march to Wales and besiege Vortiger.

In Walys fforteger þey sought.
þey byseced straite his castel;[1] [leaf 36, back, col. 1.]
ffele arewes þey schotten, & quarel[2]
þey caste þer-to, on manie a gate,
ffor þey had þer-to ful gret hate.

Eldok the Earl of Gloucester (who escaped from the slaughter at Ambresbury, p. 278) is in the host,

I þe ost was þe erl[3] of Gloucestre,—
In Walys he knew al þe estre,—
Eldok he highte, man of honur,
. And hardy knyght & god werrour.

and Aurelius appeals to him

þe kyng Aurelius asked hym red
. ffor to venge his fader ded,
& seyde, "Sire Erl,[3] þou furgetest ylk del

(for Constant's gifts to him,

" þat my fader feffed þe wel,
. " & gaf þe armes, & made þe knyght;
" Syþen my broþer, in al his myght;
" & ȝif þou louedest[4] hym feyþfuly,
" Help me to venge his enemy!
. " Let now no god wille be wane,
. " Bot help to venge my fader bane!

and the Saxons' treachery,) to avenge Constant's death.

[5]. " þenk o þe Payens þat sexes drow,
. " & at þe Parlement þe lordes slow!"[5]

They shout "to arms,"

When Eldok herde, he made swilk mone,
þey cried "as[6] armes" euerylkone,
. To gyue[7] assaut to þem wyþynne;
. Bot þe castel was yuel[8] to wynne.

fill up the castle ditch with brush-

þey comaunded to al men lyk,[9]
Wiþ brusch to come,[10] & fylle þe dyk.
When hit was ful, fir þey set,

---

[1] *besegid his castett Genoire.*

[2] *& fondit ȝif þei might it peire.*

[3] *erett* (still in the second scribe's hand).

[4] *louedis.*

[5–5] *& þink hov he ye paiens droughe þat Hengist at þe parlement slouh.*

(leaf 50, where the first scribe begins again.)

[6] *Has.*

[7] *mak.*

[8] *itt.*

[9] *þat att olike.*

[10] *brusche suld com.*

. & on a lowe at ones hit set;
þe lowe was mikel, & vp-ward stey,
So þat hit in to þe castel fley,
& vp in to þe tour hit went,
þat alle þe houses aboute brent;
Castel, houses, wyþ al þer atyr,
. Man & best, al was on fyr;
. Til al was brent, woldit nought lynne.[1]
þe kyng hym self was brent þer-ynne,
& alle his folk euerylkone,
. Brente to deþe, body & bone.
. Of ilka traytour swilk ys þe ende!
. Last of his lyue wyþ wo schal[2] wende!
. Of a traitour ys al of spoken;
. Of Hengist wolde þe kyng be wroken.

8340 wood, and set fire to it.
The flames mount up,
8344 and burn all the castle, house, man, beast, and king Vortiger and all his folk, to
8348 death.
So end traitors!
8352

When Aurelius & sire Vter
Were venged on sire ffortyger,
Al þe land, ouer al aboute,
Wyþ loue he did hit til hym loute.
· Whan he wyste þat al þe land
. Was til his wille bowand,
. He seide, 'he wolde no lenger abide;
'Agayn þe Saxons wold he ryde,
'Deliuere þe land of þem al klene;
. 'þey han vs do ful[3] mykel tene.'
Hengist herde þo tydynges seye,
Toward Scotland he nam[4] his weye;
þe souþ contre al he fursok,
& ouer Humber þe way he tok;
Of[5] Scottes & of Peytes þere
He hoped of help, ȝyf nede we[re].
þe kyng hym spedde,[6] when he hit wiste,

8356
All the land submits lovingly to Aurelius,
8360
and he resolves
to drive the
8364 Saxons clean out of it.
Hengist goes to Scotland,
8368
in hope to get help of the Scots and Picts.
Aurelius

[1] *wald it not blynne.*
[2] *ill salt.*
[3] *haf vs wrouht.*
[4] *toke.*
[5] *at.*
[6] *spied.*

follows him, [lf. 36, bk., col. 2.]

Toward þe northe after Hengyste.
When Bretons herde þe kyng passed Humbre,
So fele to hym come, men myghtem nowt noumbre.
Towards þe northe al ways[te] þey[1] fonde,
Were þere non left myght tyle þe londe,
Casteles broken, tounes[2] brent,
Holy kirke was broke & schent;
þyse Payens Saxoyns al had reft.

and finds the whole country, churches and all, destroyed by the Saxons.

. þen sey þe kyng nought waster[3] left:

Aurelius vows to restore it if he lives.

Al he highte to restore,
ȝyf he myght lyue, & eft come[4] þore,

Hengist fears, and doesn't know which way to turn.

¶ Whan Hengist wyste þat[5] þe kyng cam,
. ffor drede he ne wyste what[6] wey he nam;
. ffor to fle myght hit nought vaille,

But, as he *must* fight, he calls his men together, and says, "These Britons

Bot ned he mest byde[7] bataille.
He calde his felawes,[8] & bad þem rest,
& seide, "felawes, what ys þe best?
. " þis Bretons folewe vs faste & ney;
. " Vs by-houes be queynte & sley.

will give us battle;

. " In bataille now þey[9] wil vs frayst,
. " Lok þat ȝe be trewe & traist;
" Dredeþ nought þer gret compaignye;

but if we stand well, they'll soon flee. You know what Britons are:

. " ȝyf we wel stande, sone schul þey flye.
" Wel wot ȝe what Bretons are;
. " þey feynte ful sone ȝyf non þem spare.
" Standeþ styf & truely[10] ageyn,
" We schul þen of hem make feldes pleyn.[11]
" Wyþ fewe, we han seyn many[12] tyme,

---

[1] *waste he.* [leaf 50, col. 2.] (Mult trova li rois pais gaste, *Wace*, i. 368, l. 7867.)

[2] MS. þey *breken tounes* þey. P. wisely leaves out the two þeys.

[3] was there. P. has *was* only.

[4] *if he had life eft to com.*

[5] *herd.*

[6] *for him he wist* þe.

[7] *nede bord him stand to.*

[8] *called his folk.*

[9] *we.*

[10] *standes stifly a þrow.*

[11] þan *gif* þei bak & þe *felde att playn.*

[12] *with litiȝt folk many a.*

" We haue þeym sondred & smyten in swyme.
" Tak ȝe non hede[1] of þeyr grete host,
" ffor wel ȝe wot þei ar bot bost,
" & fals folk, wyþ feble heuede;
" ffor þem our wed schal nought be leued.
" He ys a child þat hem ledes!
" He can nought ȝit on swylk[e] dedes![2]
" & we ar noble werreours
" þat han be[3] proued in many stours!
" Standes now wel ageyn ȝour fo!
" Raunsom for vs non may go.
" Defende oure lyues, best is to chese,
. " Now al to wynne or al to lese!"
When Hengist had conforted hem þus,
þey armed þeym alle att o frusch,[4]
& riden fol softe & semly
Ageyn þe Bretons wyþouten *cri.*
þey hoped vnarmed þe Bretons mete,
& al vnwarned on þem schete;
Bot þe Bretons, ilka conrey,
. Were as wel armed as þey;
þey hadden of þe Payens drede,
Night & day armed þey ȝede.
þe kyng herde seye þey come þat syde,
And to bataille þey wolde abide;
A feld he ches, fair & brod,
He wente þyder, & þere abod.

nothing but brag and feeble polls!

Nota.

They're led by a child,

and we are proved warriors.

Stand well,

and defend your lives! It's 'win all, or lose all' with us!"

Hengist's men arm, and advance quietly,

hoping to catch the Britons unarmed.

But the Britons are well armed,

and Aurelius

chooses a broad plain to fight in.

De Bello inter Aurelium Regem & Hengystum.

þre hundred[5] knyghtes of his meyne
þat wyþ hym comen ouer þe se,
Alle doughty knyghte, fro ferne he fet.[6] [leaf 37.]

[1] *Mak ȝe no force.*
[2] *of suilk dedis.*
[3] *& has ben.*
[4] *at a frusse.*
[5] *þousand.* [leaf 50, back.] (mil, *Wace*, i. 370, l. 7915.)
[6] *ferne fette.*

He sets two companies of Welshmen to stop the pagans taking to the hills and woods,

. Boþe batailles þen sone wer set;[1]
Of þe Walsche he tok to[2] companies,
. Paþes to waite, & stretes, & styes,
þat Payens schulde for no nede
þe hylles take, ȝyf þeym fel drede.
& þe wodes he dide so loke
. Al so wel þat non þem toke,
þat ȝyf ony þider drowe,
þe Walsche men sone þem slowe,

and keeps the stalwartest men in his own line.

þe star-worþest[3] to fyght & fende,
& his owen bataille þen schulde[4] be hende.

Aurelius lets his trusty kinsmen bear his banner.

When his batailles[5] wer set & dight,
Renged & redy for[6] to fyght,
þe men of kuythe[7] þat he wel knewe,
þat he wyste were gode[8] & trewe,
þem dide he bere his baner,
& fro þo was he nought fer;
Sire Eldok was euere hym by,
& oþer barons also were ney.

Earl Eldok hopes he may meet Hengist, and repay him for his treacherous slaughter of the Britons at Ambresbury.

" Lord," seide Eldok, " had y þat grace,
" Hengist for to mete in place!
" Wel oughte[9] me þe treson mene
. " þat on þe playne ȝit is wel sene:
" þe flour of al þis Empyre
" Wer slayn bysydes Ambresbyre[10]
" þe firste day of clene May.
" Wyþ mikel wo[11] y scaped away;
. " Vneþes to Gloucestre y wan,[12]

---

[1] *bi þe to side att were sette.*
[2] *toke tuo.*
[3] *stalworthest.*
[4] *his awen bataile suld.*
[5] *barons.*
[6] *renged att redi to.*
[7] *kith.* (Od ses homes fu naturax, *Wace*, i. 370, l. 7931.)
[8] *treist.*
[9] *Wele burd.* (*mene* = A.-Sax. *mænan*, mind, remember, *Bosworth.*)
[10] *ambirschire.*
[11] *with mykitt.*
[12] *cam.*

" Elles had we be[1] slayn, ilkaman."
Als Sire Eldok þus mente his mone,
Com Hengist & his men ylkone,
& vmbyleyden al þe feld,
. Redy armed wyþ spere[2] & scheld.
Sone after þat[4] þey were comen,
þe bataille bytwyxte þem was[3] nomen.
. Boþe partys ful felly[5] hated,
þe sonner to-gedere þey þem raped :[6]
þer myghte men se strokes set
. Bytwyxt enemis þat scharply[7] met ;
[8][sore he smote, þat smerte couht * smyte ; [* So in MS.]
bitterly bote, þat best myght bite ;
Ilkone peyned oþer to slo,
for euerilkone was oþer[es] fo ;][8]
. Mercy was non on neyþer partye,
. Ne no raunsom, bot al schold deye.
þorow plate & hauberk þe spere out[9] brast ;
Ilkon oþer to deþ doun cast ;
þat doun was[10] cast, þem lye most[11] nede,
ffor hors & man vpon þem ȝede.
. fful wel foughte þe Payen men,
. & mykel better þan dide[12] Cristen ;
. Bot sone after, þer force gan falle.[13]
Vpon þer Godes þen cried þey alle ;
þe Crysten cried [for] help to Crist
. A-gayn þe Payenes[14] force Hengist.
þe Cristenmen þeir bataille brak ;
When þey wer sondred, þey turd þe[15] bak ;

Hengist comes with his host,
and a battle to the death begins ;
no mercy is given, or ransom taken.
The Pagans fight well at first, but soon fail.
The Christians call on Christ,
and the Pagans break, and flee.

[1] *þat þei were.* [lf. 50, bk., col. 2.]
[2] *helm.* [3] *nouht fult long sen.*
[4] *was with* þam.
[5] *parties felonly.*
[6] *abated.* [7] *smertli.*
[8–8] From the Petyt MS.
[9] *þorgh schelde & hauberk launces.*
[10] MS. *wast.*
[11] *was cast die suld.*
[12] *myhelt bettere* þe. (Et assés mius li Crestien, *Wace*, i. 372, l. 7964.)
[13] þe *paien force fast gan falle.*
[14] *paien.*
[15] *& sondred* þam *þat þei gaf.* [? *tur* the base of *tur-n*. See *tur-de* . 8509.]

. ffele were slayn als þey fledde,
. & fleyng þey sparplyed[1] & spredde.
Hengist takes refuge in
When Hengist saw his folk fleand,
& his force faille, & myght nowt stande,
Coningsburgh castle,
He ffley[2] to þe castel of Conyngesburgh,
ffor he wende saued haf ben þer-þorugh.
whither Aurelius
þat herde þe kyng, & after 3erne, [leaf 37, col. 2.]
. þe entre of þe castel him for to[3] werne,
pursues him.
& cried þen faste, "folewe we to[4] slo!
. ffor þyse ar þey þat dide vs[5] wo."

But Hengist does not like being in a castle;
When Hengist wiste þe kyng hym sywed,[6]
. þorow castel þen wold he nought be rescowed:
. Hit was bot pyne, wel hadde he herd,
. Wyþoute socour in castel be sperd;
and resolves to fight in the open.
Leuere hym were holde hym wyþoute;
. þat held he betere, & lasse[7] doute,
þan yn castel be closed yn,
ffor he nyste ho hym out schude wyn.[8]
. 3it þoughtym best myght hym[9] a-uaille,
. To relye his folk, & gyue[10] bataille.
He rallies his men;
þen gedred he his folk þat weren o stray,
ffor he wolde 3it eft[11] make asay.
they turn eagerly to battle,
þe Payens to bataille turde agayn
fful egrely, boþe knyght & swayn,
Agayn þe Cristen ful hardyly,
& ascryed þem þanne wyþ a gret cry.[12]
and at first beat the Christians,
At þat comyng[13] þe Cristen les,
So [s]toutly[14] þe Payens on þem gan pres:
. Grysly[15] & grym was hit to se,

---

[1] *fleand þei sparpled.*
[2] *þei fleh.*
[3] *to entre þe kastell he wald him.*
[4] *He cried & said folow fast &.*
[5] *3ow.*
[6] *herd þe kyng him sued.*
[7] *an enture him he was in.* [leaf 51.]
[8] *he ne wist who suld him out wynne.*
[9] *he sauh no þing mygh[t] more.*
[10] *þan for to stand to.*
[11] *& said he suld 3it.*
[12] *& discried þam with a cri.*
[13] *criyng.*
[14] *stifly.*
[15] *greuous.*

. Syn neyþer partye wold blyþely[1] fle. 8516
. In auen*tur*e þen was þe kynges syde,
. Bot his þre hundred knyghtes[2] holpe wel þat tyde
þat comen out of þe Lytel Bretayn;
. ffor, þis Paiens þey feld doun playn;[3] 8520
. Vpon þe Payens þey trauersed þe feld,
& þe kynges side wel vp þey held.
Bot þe Payens so faste þey fought,
. þey hoped of no soco*ur* þat dought, 8524
ffor wel þey wyste þat þe ne myght
Ascape wyþoute stren*g*þe[4] of fyght;
. þer-fore þei foughte as þey were wode,
. Abated þem boldely,[5] & styfly stode. 8528

who are in great danger, but are rescued by 300 knights of Britany,

who ride through the Saxon host. But still the Saxons fight

as if they were mad.

¶ De Pungna inter Eldok & Hengystum.

. As þey were boldest in þer baret,
Eldok & Hengist to-gedere met;
Sire Eldok, Hengist ful wel knew,
His herte a-geyns hym gros & grew: 8532
. þey hit[6] so dide, ful wel hit aughte,
. Gret encheson mad þeym vnsaughte;
He preied to God his desir[7] fulfil,
þat he of Hengist might haue his wyl. 8536
Wyþ scharpe swerdes to-gyder þey[8] ran,
& Hengist kepte hym as a man;
Eldokes strok ful wel he sat,
. Hengist ageyn anoþer smat; 8540
þer myg[h]te men se fighteres bolde;[10]
. ffor dynt of deþ spare þey ne wolde;[11]

Then Eldok and Hengist meet.

They fight,

fearing not death.

[1] *fo noiþer partie wald biþeli.*
[2] *his men.* (li trois mil, *Wace*, i. 373, l. 7990.)
[3] *opon þe paiens þei mad bargayn.*
[4] *ascaped þorgh force.*
[5] *bold.*
[6] *if it.*
[7] *He þanked god he hoped.*
[8] *with scharp spere tiłt him he.*
[9] One stroke too many in the MS. *m.*
[10] *se tuo Iuste & turne.*
[11] *for doute of dede non wild scurne.* [leaf 51, col. 2.]

The sparks fly like fire from flint;

and Hengist is winning, when Eldok, heartened by Earl Corlyeus's coming,

rushes at Hengist, seizes him by the vizor, and then by the neck.

Eldok thanks Jesus that his yearning is fulfilled, his worst foe taken, the hound that never had pity.

He sends Hengist as a present to Aurelius.

Wyþ swerdes of werre double[1] dyntes,
þe sparkles fleye as fir of flyntes;
ȝyf Eldokes help ne hadde be ney,
Hengist had had[2] þe better party;
Bot þe Erl Corlyeus[3] of Cornewaille,
Cam right y[4] þe moste trauaille.
Whan Eldok sey þat þe Erl cam,
More hardynesse in herte he nam,
fful egrely þanne til Hengist he[5] went, [lf. 37, bk., cl.1.]
& by þe vyser[6] he hym hent,
& heldit til he had sesed his nekke:—
þe Payens wer al mat[7] wyþ þat chekke:—
" þanked be[8] Iesu, þat þou hit wylde!
" þat y haue ȝerned, now ys fulfilde!
" Now hauy take oure moste fo,
" þat haþ vs wakned many wo!
" þis ys þe hound—wo mot hym be!—
" þat neuere of vs hadde pyte!
[9]." þis hound y soughte, now y hym fond,
" He was heued to struye þis lond![9]
." Sire Erl, þys hound, þys comelyng,
." O myn half present hym to þe kyng,
" & sey his enemy ys ouer-comen
" Now þys hound Hengist ys nomen!"

¶ De capcione Hengisti per Comitem Gloucestrie.

Aurelius keeps him in chains.

þan was Hengist ful-like[10] schent,
þat ffetered to þe kyng was sent.
þen dide þe kyng kep hym ful streit
In cheynes bounden for deseit.[11]

---

[1] *with scharp suerdes þei dubled.*
[2] MS. (*h* altered) *hed.* P. has *had.*
[3] *erle Gorleus.*
[4] *com in alle.*
[5] *for belde of him to Hengist.*
[6] *nasett.* (nasal, *Wace*, l. 8012.)
[7] *were mate.*
[8] *Merci.*
[9-9] Not in the Petyt MS.
[10] *fouly.*
[11] *fo desceite.*

Hengistes sone þat highte Octa,
& his cosyn sire Ebbesa,
Wyþ gret pyne þey boþe ascaped,
& ȝork to take þey hem raped.
Bot whan þey hadde þe toun taken,
Warly wayted, & held þem waken,
þoþer þat lefte, fled her & þer,
By dounes & dales, by[1] wodes ay-wher.
þe kyng was ioyful þat he so spedde,
Hengist was taken, & his folk fledde;
To Conyngesburghe þe kyng gan turne,
& þere þre dayes mad he soiourne,
þe wounded for to hele & reste,
þe Payens fro þe Cristen keste.
In þat tyme þat þey þer lay,
þe Bretons[2] alle, þat oþer day
To conseil þe kyng cald hem to,
þe beste to wite[3] what were to do:
Whether Hengist þey redden[4] hym[5] to slo,
Or hym enprisone,[6] or lete hym go.
A byschop onswered,—sire Eldadus,
Sire Eldokes broþer,—& seide right þus:
" I deme Hengist þe same wys
" As in þe bible Samuel seys.
" Samuel did Agag to þe ded—
" Kyng of Amalek was þat qued,—
" A ful fers[7] kyng, riche & kene,
" To Godes folk he wroughte al tene,[8]
" He robbed here godes, þer tounes brent,
" & alle he slow þat he myght hent.
" Swylk sorewe[9] myght nought longe dure;
" He was taken at a desconfyture,

Hengist's son, Octa, and his cousin Ebbesa, take York.

The other Saxons hide in dales and woods.

Aurelius rests three days at Coningsburgh to heal his wounded.

He asks his Britons what shall be done with Hengist.

Bishop Eldadus, Earl Eldok's brother, answers and says:

" Hengist shall be treated as Samuel treated Agag, the king of Amalek, who worried God's folk.

When he was taken, and Saul

[1] *in.* [2] *barons.* [leaf 51, back.]
[3] *Of Hengist.*
[4] MS. *reddem.*
[5] *whedir þei red him for.*
[6] *Hold him in prison.*
[7] *proude.*
[8] *titt godes folk he did ay tene.*
at att his myght wo þam wrouht.
& euer werre oñ þam souht.
[9] *suilk mischefe.*

" & brought byfore Saul þe kyng,
" ffor his mysdedes to haue demyng.[1]
asked what judgment he should have, the prophet Samuel
" Saul asked what iugement
" Schuld Agag haue, er þat he went.
" þan ros þe prophete Samuel, ſ Exemplum de
" Keper of þe folk of Israel, Iudicio Hengisti.
" And vpon Agag handes he leyd; [leaf 37, bk., col. 2.]
answered that as Agag
" Tyl hym & alle, þise wordes he seyd:
" 'Agag, þou has manion trauailled,
had made many widows and fatherless,
" 'Manion slayn, manyon assayled;[2]
" 'Many lond mad wast & wylde,
" 'Many wydewe, many faderles childe;
" 'þorow þe haue [many] ben lorn & slawen,
" 'Many soule & bodies brought of dawe.[3]
" 'þe same wyse schal þy body[4] be refte!
so his mother should be left childless; and he hewed Agag in pieces.
" 'Childles for þe þy moder ys left!'
" Agag siþen he al to-hew,
" Thorow out þe contres þe peces þrew,
" & seide, 'oueral þou hast don wo,
" 'Of þe oueral schal wonder[5] go.'
Even thus shall Hengist be slain."
" As þe prophete gaf dom þorow lawe,
" So schal ȝe do Hengist to-drawe."[6]
Eldok at once cuts off
When sire Eldok herd hym so say,
& þat holy wryt schewed þat euene way,
Hengist's head, and Aurelius has him buried
Smertly wyþ þe dom al hot,
Hengistes heued of he smot.
þen dide þe kyng þe body graue
I þe manere of Payen lawe.[7]

Aurelius then marches with his host to York,
Syþen quikly þe kyng hym spedde,
He ȝared[8] his host, to ȝork þem ledde,
þe toun & his enemys for to wynne;[9]

---

[1] *How he had don to here endyng.*
[2] essillié, *Wace*, l. 8082, from MS. du Roi, 7515[3,3]. Colb.
[3] *many saule of body drawen.*
[4] *satt þi soule.*
[5] *satt wondryng.*
[6] *so suld ȝe do Hengist of dawe.*
[7] *oñ þat maner þat paien satt haue.* [leaf 51, back, col. 2.]
[8] *Dight.*
[9] P. leaves out this line.

ffor Hengistes sone was þer-ynne,
[1] & oþer manye lordynges þer ware,
. & somme y þe contre in mykel kare.[1]
þen Octa studied in his þought:
. To stonde to fens auailled nought;
Socour to sende he wyste of non,
. þer socour was for euere gon;
He couþe se no bettere bote,
Bot auntre, & [2] falle þe kyng to fote;
. ffel hit to wysdom or to foly,
He schulde auntre hym mercy to cry:
& alle his men red hym þer-tyl,
. Naþeles hit was his owen wyl.
Out of þe tour [3] ilkon cam;
. As prisoners, barfot [4] þey nam.
Octa had don, in stede of streng,
Aboute his nekke a chayne heng,
. & on his knes fel mekely,[5]
& seide, "Sire kyng! Mercy! Mercy!
" Alle oure Godes ar vs failled;
" þat we on trowe, haue vs nought vailled;
" ȝour God ys of wel more myght;
. " þat we in leue, ar nought so right;
" He scheweþ miracle for þy loue;
" We ar byneþe, & ȝe [6] aboue;
" We ar ouer-comen, þer-fore we [7] com;
" Mercy to crave,[8] to þe we nom.
" Haue here þys cheyne, & do þy wylle,
" Wheþer þat ȝe wil [9] vs saue or spille!
" We ar payed, wheþer þou wylt;
. " We arn aknowe we haue agilt.[10]

as Hengist's son, Octa, holds it.

Octa sees he can't defend the city, and that he

has no chance of help, so he resolves to chance it, and ask Aurelius's mercy.

Octa and his men come out barefooted,

and he, with a chain round his neck, kneels to Aurelius, and asks his mercy: " Our Gods have failed us;

and we are overcome. You may save or kill us;

we confess our guilt;

[1–1] *& many lordes of his kynd. & som in þe cuntre myght men fynd.*
[2] *bot for to.*
[3] *toun.*
[4] *als prisons bare fote.*
[5] *full myldely.*
[6] MS. *we.* P. has *þou.*
[7] *.I.*
[8] *haf.*
[9] *whedir þou will.*
[10] *I am oknowe .I. haf þe gilt.*

but if you will spare our lives, we'll serve you till we die."

" To haue oure lyues, ȝyf þou wilt graunt,
" What so þou saist, we holde couenaunt[1]
" To serue [þe][2] til oure lyues ende,
" Ne neuere more ageyn þe wende." 8668

Aurelius asks counsel of his lords:

Þe kyng was of ful gret pite;
He saide: "lordynges, what sey ȝe?
" What conseil wil ȝe me gyue?" [leaf 38.]

" Are the Saxons to live?"

& seide, "rede ȝe þat þey lyue?" 8672

Bishop Eldadus says,

Þenne spak þe Byschop Eldadus
Vnto þe kyng Aurelius:

" He who craves mercy should have it.

" Wel ys worþy, mercy to haue,
" þat mekely mercy wyl craue. 8676
" Agayn mercy who-so ys grym,
" God wyl haue no mercy of[3] hym.
" To þy mercy þey made asay,
" Mercy þey seke haue, ȝyf þe[y][4] may. 8680

Britain has many waste places. Give of these to the Saxons to till;

" ffor Bretaigne ys large & long,
" & many stedes wast among,
" Deliuere þeym lond þer þay[5] se skil,
" Let þem trauaille þer-on to tyl. 8684

but take hostages from them.

" Bot y rede, hostages ȝe take;
" Sykernesse þey schul[6] ȝow make,
" In alle seruise to be trewe;
" & ȝour mercy schal hem be newe. 8688

¶ Exemplum Byblie.

The folk of Gibeon wronged the Jews,

" In þe bible ensample bygan:
" þe folk of Gabaot, þat wyþ wrong wan
" Of þe Iewes, & syþen hit les;

and then asked mercy for it.

" At þe Iewes þey bysoughte pes, 8692
" Of þer wrong bysoughte[7] mercy,

---

[1] *sais we hold conant.*
[2] *þe.*
[3] *god has not mercy oñ.* [leaf 52.]
[4] *þei.*
[5] *ȝe.*
[6] *satt.*
[7] *asked.*

" & þey *gr*aunted hem al redy.
" Syn þey had mercy & pyte,
" Wirse þan þey, schul nought do we.[1]
" At þe Iewes, ensample nymes,
" Graunt he*m* mercy, lyf & lymes."
þe kyng *gr*aunted þem þ*a*nne his pes
As þe bischop Eldade ches.
Bysyde Scotlond he gaf hem londes;
þey tylede, & were grete husebondes;[2]
Er þey wente, þey geue hostage,[3]
Children of þeyres, of best lynage.[4]
ffiftene dayes his court gan ly,
þ*e*n dide he somone al þe clergy,—
& gaf þ*e*m landes, rentes, & fees,[5]—
Bischopes, abbotes, of þe contres.[5]
Schirreues, baillifs, he sente[6] ay-whore,
His rentes to gadere & to restore;
Masons, whrightes, kyrkes dide make,
þ*a*t þe Payens dide doun schake;
þ*a*t fordon were þorow Hengist,
Were wrought a-geyn to s*er*ue C*r*i*s*t.
ffro þ*e*nne[7] to Londone euene he went:
þe toun he fond peyred & schent;
Kyrkes, houses, were bet*e*n doun;
To þe kyng þey mente he*m* of þe toun,
þ*a*t many of þe beste burgeys
Were fled, e*u*e*r*y man his weys.[8]
He bigged eft þ*a*t er was playn,—
Clerkes, burgeys, dide come agayn,—
& gaf ilkon ageyn þer estre.
Syþen he wente[9] to Wyncestre,
& bygged kirkes & houses[10] þere,

The Jews granted it;
and you must not be worse than Jews."
Aurelius forgives the Saxons,
settles them on the Scotch border,
but takes hostages of them.
Aurelius then endows the clergy,
sends bailiffs to collect his rents,
makes masons rebuild churches,
and then goes to London,
which he repairs.
He does the same at Winchester,

[1] *suld we not be.*
[2] *gode hosbondes.*
[3] *he toke ostages.*
[4] *childere of þer best lynages.* P. transposes these lines.
[6] *sett.*
[7] *þiþen.* [leaf 52, col. 2.]
[8] *& ilk man ȝede his weis.*
[9] *turned.*
[10] MS. *housed.* P. *houses.*

Als he had don elles where.
Syþen he ȝede to Salesbury,
and then goes to Ambresbury, & til þe abbey of Aumbresbury; 8728
& til þat stede he tok his waye[1]
Þere Hengist dide þe Bretons deye.
where he wishes to build an everlasting memorial over the Britons' graves. Þeyr buryels he þoughte for to honure [lf. 38, col. 2.]
Wyþ som þyng þat ay myght dure, 8732
. & ffryþe þe[2] stede þer þey lay,
. þat hit myght laste til Domesday.
. He dide masons diuise a cast
. What werk myghte lengest last. 8736

∫ De consilio Tremorii Epis*copi*.

Archbishop Tremore Wyþ þe kyng a clerk was þore,
His name[3] was sire Tremore,
Was Erchebischop of Kerlyon;
advises Aurelius to send for Merlin, He seyde the kyng a god[4] reson: 8740
. " ȝyf he wolde make a werk fyn,[5]
" Do send ȝour sonde after Merlyn.
" To make þis werk, may no man
" Gyue swylk conseil als he can; 8744
and do what he says. " He can þe telle what schal bityde:
" After hym, y rede, ȝour werk abyde."

∫ Rex mysit hic p*ro* Merlyno.

The king agrees, Þen seyde þe kyng, "hit scholde so be;
" Mikel y desire Merlyn to se; 8748
" Of his wysdam woldy here,
. " He telleþ wondres[6] on many manere."
and his messenger finds Merlin at the At a welles[7] fer in Walys—
'Baynes' hit highte by olde tales— 8752

[1] ? MS. *a* altered to *e*, or first *e* to *a*.
[2] *frithe* þat. (*frithe*, preserve.) MS. *mame*.
[3] *he did* þe *king* in.
[4] *if he wild mak a werk of fyne.*
[5] *sais selcouthes.*
[6] *wett.* (a Labenes, une fontaine, *Wace*, l. 8217.)

Þe messeger Þen Merlyn fond:
" Cum, spek wyþ Þe kyng! he sent his sond."
When he com byfore Þe kyng,
He made ioye for his comyng,
& honured hym, for he was wys,
& cherisched him ouer alle oþere of pris;
He praaied hym wel wyþ louely[1] speche,
What scholde bytide, he wolde hym teche.
ʃʃ " Syre kyng," he seyde,[2] " certes nay, **Responcio**
" To opene my mouþ y ne dar ne may, **Merlyny.**
" Bot hit [be] a byhouely[3] Þyng at nede,
" Þat were warnyng or tokene of dede,
" & ȝit wyþ gret lownesse of hert,
" Þat pruyde turne hit nought ouerthwert.
" ffor ȝyf y spak Þorow pride or bost,
" Oþer for scorn, ageyn my gost,
" Þat ilke gost Þat in me wones,
" Þat al me kennes & al me mones,
" Out of my mouþ hit wolde hym drawe,
" Of my connyng reue me my sawe,
" Þat namore myght y Þen spek wyþ mouþ
" Þan an oþer Þat nought ne couþ.
" Þer-fore of swyilk priuete
" Þenk nought Þer-on, but let hit be.
" Þenk on Þat why Þou me soughtest;[4]
" Bryng Þat til ende whi Þou me broughtest:
" ȝyf Þou wilt make a werk stedefast,
" Þat fair wyl be, & euere to last,
" Sent for Þo[5] stones, Þere Þey stande,
" Þat Þe Geaunt[6] broughte til Irlande.
" Rounde aboute, Þen ar Þey set;
" Out of Aufryke were Þey fet;
" Ilkon on oþer ys set vpright,

well of Baynes in Wales.
Merlin comes.
Aurelius makes much of him,
and begs him to tell him what will happen.
Merlin says,
" I dare not open my mouth except in case of real need,
and with lowness of heart;
for if I were to speak from pride,
the spirit in me that teaches me everything, would leave me.
Therefore, Aurelius, think not of such secrets, but only of what you sent for me for.
If you want to set up an everlasting work here, send for the stones that the Giants brought to Ireland from Africa."

[1] *futt louand.* [leaf 52, back.]
[2] *said Merlyn.*
[3] *bot if it be a behouely.*
[4] *souhtes . . . brouhtes.*
[5] *send for Þe.*
[6] *Geantz.*

" No man in erþe haþ no myght
" ffor to take doun a ston;
." Ne sette þeym eft ys þer non." 8788

Aurelius laughs, and says,

þen seyde þe kyng, & on hym low:[1] [leaf 38, bk., col. 1.]
." Sertes, þat were selcouþ ynow[2]
" þat þo stones þat þou of seys,
" Ar so heuy, & of swylk peys, 8792
" þat non haþ force ne fuysoun
" To remue þem vp ne doun,
." & ar so fer ouer þe se!
." Who myghte þem þanne brynge to me?" 8796

" What strength can't do, sleight and knowledge can.

Sleight can bring the stones to Britain, while strength can't move 'em their own length.

Who's to bring 'em here?"

ſ Prudencia superat omne Robur.

Merlin answers,

þen seide Merlyn vnto þe kynge,
" Queyntise ouer-comeþ alle þynge.
" Strengþe ys god wyþ[3] trauaille;
" þer strengþe ne may, sleyght wil availle; 8800
" Sleyght & connyng doþ many a chare,[4]
" Bygynneþ þyng þat strengþe ne dar;
" Wyþ sleyght myght þou þe stones wynne,
" & in Bretaigne set þem inne, 8804
." þer þou ne schalt wyþ no strengthe
." Remewe hem a stones lengthe.

ſ Exe virtus de Stonhenges.

" Giants first brought these stones from Africa to Ireland,

" In Aufrik were þey compassed & wrought;
" Geauntz til Irland þennes hem[5] brought,
." & sette þem on an hil ful hey 8809
." Wiþ engyns ful queyntely.
" ffirst when þey ware compassed newe,
" þey dide gret god to þem þat knewe; 8812

---

[1] *louh.*
[2] *it were þan grete ferly how.*
[3] *vnto.* [leaf 52, back, col. 2.]
[4] Engins et ars font mainte cose, *Wace*, i. 386, l. 8265.
[5] *fro þiþen þam.*

" þo þat were seke, or had laught[1] skaþes,
" Wasche[2] þe stones, did hit in baþes;
" þat felde hem greued of grettere[3] þynges,
" Wasched þem[4] of þe selue waschinges,
" & warysched[5] wel of al þer pyne;
" Had þey non oþer medycine."
ſſ When þe kyng herde of þer vertu,
þat þey myght falle þe folk to prw,
He had longyng for þem to go,—
& of þat wyl wer oþer mo,—
þe stones to Bretaigne for to brynge,
þat Merlyn made of sermonynge.
þey chosen[6] Vter, þe kynges broþer,
þe kyng ofred hym self þat oþer;
Of folk þey ladde fyftene þousand,
Agayn þe Irische[7] for to stand;
Wyþ þem wente daunz Merlyn,
ffor þo stones to make engyn.
When Vter wyþ his folk was ȝare,
To schip þey went, ouer se to fare,
& aryued vpon þat cost.
þe Irisch[7] kyng gadered his host;
Ageyn þe Bretons þey cam right ȝerne,
þe lond ȝyf þey myghte þem werne.
þe Irisch kyng þat regned þar,
His name was sire Gwylomar;
When he wyste why þat he cam,[8]
& so fer viage for stones nam,
He scorned þem on his langage,[9]
' So fer for stones to make passage,[9]
' Ouer se til an oþer lond,
' ffor þey no stones hender[10] fond;'

and sick men were cured by water that had washed the stones."

Aurelius then longs to send and fetch the stones to Britain. So Uther is sent, with 15,000 men, and Merlin, in ships to Ireland.

The Irish king Gwylomar scorns them for coming over to fetch stones, as if they'd got none in their own land.

[1] *& lauht.*
[2] *wesch.*
[3] *felt* þam *greued of grete.*
[4] *bathed* þam.
[5] *heled.*
[6] *ches.*
[7] *Iris* (but *Irisch* l. 8837).
[8] *whi* þei *kam.* [leaf 53.]
[9] P. leaves out these lines.
[10] *ne stones hender.*

'But they shall buy the stones here dear.'

. & seyde, "þe stones þey schold haue here, [lf. 38, bk., col. 2.]
. " þey schul by hem first ful dere;
" ffor ȝyf we may, þey schul nought spede,
" þe stones out of my land to lede."
. He scorned & seyde, "hit schal be nought,
. " þey schul faille þat þey haue sought."
þys kyng byhig[h]t hem foul despit,[1]
Bot wykke þey were to desconfyt.[1]
So longe he manased & þret,

At last the hosts meet,

Atte laste to-gydere þey met.
At þeyr metyng, hit was nought lyte
When þey gonne to-gyder smyte.
. fful wel foughte boþe partys,

and the Britons soon win. The Irish

. Bot þe Bretons wan sone þe pris;
þe Irische[2] couþe nought so wel feight,
Ne of armure þey hadde no sleight,
. Ne þer-of were so wel bone,

flee, and

þer-fore þe Irische[2] fledde ful sone;
ffro stede to stede þey fledde to sculk,

hide in holes.

. On heþ & hilles to hyde in[3] hulk.
When Bretons hadde don þat chace,
& rested þeym a gret[e][4] space,

Merlyn takes the Britons to see the stones on the hill Kylomare.

Merlyn had þem alle at ones
To þe hil to se þe stones.—
Kylomare highte þe hyl
þer þe geauntz broughte þem tyl.—

∫ De asportacione lapidum de Stonhenges, de Hybernia in Brytanniam.

They look at the circle of stones,

þys Bretons aboute renged þe feld,
þe carole of þe stones byhe[l]d.[5]
fful often ȝede þey[6] aboute,
. Byhelde wyþynne & eke[7] wyþoute;

[1] P. leaves out these lines.
[2] *Iris.*
[3] *oñ hii hilles to hide &.* (*hulk*, cubile, tugurium, hovel, sty.)
[4] *long.*
[5] *beheld.*
[6] *many tyme ȝede þam.*
[7] *within biheld.*

Alle þey seyde, so seyde þe kyng, — and say they
‘ þey sey[1] neuere so selcouþ þyng.’ — never saw such a strange thing.
How þey were reysed þey had wonder,
& how þey scholde be brought a-sonder.[2]
Merlyn seyde, “now makeþ assay — Merlyn bids
“ To potte þe stones, ȝyf þat[3] ȝe may; — them try and push the stones down.
“ & wyþ force fondeþ þem to bere:
. “ þer force ys mykel, lesse wyl þem[4] dere.”
. þe host atones to þe hil þey went, — The Britons
& ilk man tok þat he myght hent,
. Ropes to drawe, tres to potte,[5] — get ropes to pull, trees to push.
þey schouued, þey þriste, þey stode o strot,[6]
On ilka side, byhynde, by-forn; — They shove and thrust.
Al for nought; þer trauail was lorn.
. When þey ofte hadde[7] put & þryst, — All no good! Push as they will,
. & ilk man do what hym do lyst,
. & left þer pottyng[8] many on,
ȝit stirede þey nought þe leste ston. — no stone stirs.
Bot Merlyn wiste hit scholde nought vaille: — Merlin tells
. Strengþe of body ne myght nout vaille.
He bad hem alle drawe þem o drey; — them to stand aside.
“ þorow strengþe come ȝe neuere þem ney.”
Al stille[9] he stod, syþen hym bywent,
& spak, but non wist what he ment; — He speaks;
His lippes þey seye stire vp & doun, — they see his lips move, but do not hear his conjurings.
Bot non herde his coniurysoun.
When he had gon alle aboute,
. Wyþynne þe carole, & wyþoute,
& seide his coniurisouns,
Ageyn he calde al þe Bretouns, — Then he tells the Britons they can easily
And seyde, “now may ȝe lyghtly bere [leaf 39.]

[1] *sauh.*
[2] The Petyt MS. adds,—
with þat worde þei þam rescued.
þei ne wist how þei suld remued.
[3] *putte þis stones doun if.*
[4] *þe lesse witt.* [leaf 53, col. 2.]
[5] *put* (push).
[6] *o strut.*
[7] *att þe had.*
[8] *puttyng.*
[9] *a lititt.*

carry the stones to their ships.

" þe stones to schip wyþouten dere.
" Goþ now alle, & spedeþ ȝow,
" ffor ȝe schal welde þem wel ynow."

They do so,

Als Merlyn þem taughte & seyd,
In[1] to þe schypes þem lyghtly leyd;

and carry them to Ambresbury,

. þen had þey wonne þat[2] fer had sought.
. To þe playne of Salesbury þem brought,
Of Aumbresbyri bysyde an abbay,

on Whitsunday. Aurelius summons all his bishops and nobles;

& hit was atte Whitemonday.[3]
þen dide þe kyng make somons
Of bischopes, erles, & barons,
& oþer lordes of þe nobleste,[4]

is crowned;

& dide hym coroune at þat feste.
þre dayes laste þe feste fode;[5]
þe ferþe day he gaf[6] gyftes gode—
Croces [riche] to clerkes of pris,

and gives St. Dubrice the see of Kaerlyon, and St. Saunson the see of York.

To seint Saunsom[7] & seint Dubris.
Seint Dubrice he gaf Kaerlyon,
ȝork he gaf to seint Saunson;[7]
. þys gaf he at his coronement,
. & many mo, þorow[8] comun assent.

Merlin sets the stones as they were before, in Ireland;

. Byfore þe lordes þat come þyder,
Merlyn sette þe stones to-gyder;
Als þey were or, in þat certeyn,
So stande þey now vpon þe pleyn.

and within their circle are buried the bones of the lords whom Hengist slew (p. 277).

. Wyþynne þe compas of þe stones
. Ar byried alle þo lordes bones
. þat Hengist atte Parlement slow;
. Here byforn ȝe herde wel how.

---

[1] MS. *Im.*
[2] *won þei.*
[3] *& was at þe whitsonenday.* (à Pentecoste, *Wace*, i. 391, l. 8370.)
[4] *folk of noble geste.*
[5] *sat þe feste of fode.*
[6] *oñ þe ferth day gaf he.*
[7] *Sampson.*
[8] *bi.*

ſ De Pascencyo, filio ffortygerny.

Of ffortyger, þat þe kyng had brent,
Was left a sone þat highte Passent.
ffor drede of Aurelius & of Vter,
Vntil Alemayne he fledde fer,
& purchaced hym folk on þe se,
& aryued vp y þe northe contre,
Tounes struyed, contres wasted.
þe kyng herd seye, & sone hym [1] hasted.
When Pascence herde þat þe kyng cam,
Ageyn to þe se þe wey he nam;
þer he cam fro, durst he nought wende,
Vpon Irland his flute [2] gan lende;
He spak so wyþ þe kyng of þat land,
þat he was his wel willand
Vpon Bretaigne a route to renge,
& on þe Bretons for to venge.
Passent calanged [3] his fader wones,
þe kyng for robberye of þe stones;
Truþe to-gydere boþe þey plyght,
To take vengaunce at þer myght.
Wyþ al þe force þei myght gete,
In Walsche lond [4] aryued þer flete.
þey spirde aboute in ilka contre;
Meneue þey tok, was a [5] cite;
Meneue ys langage on Bretoun,
& now hit hatte Seint Dauy toun.
In þat tyme þat þey cam þus,
Syk lay oure kyng Aurelius
At Wynchestre mani a day;
Longe bedrede þer he lay,

8936 Vortiger's son Pascent,
who had fled to Germany, and raised men
8940 at sea, lands in North Britain, and wastes it; but hearing that Aurelius is
8944 after him, he sails
to Ireland, and persuades its king
8948
to join him in invading Britain.
8952
8956 They land in Wales,
take Meneue,
8960 now St. David's (see p. 110, l. 3097).
Aurelius lies sick at Winchester,
[leaf 39, col. 2.]
8964

[1] & þider.
[2] flete.
[3] chalanged.
[4] & in wales.
[5] toke þat.

þat he ne myghte neyþer coue*r*e ne deye,
. Bot eue*r*[1] more languisched on[2] weye.
and hears that Pascent and the Irish king are in Wales.
As he lay sek, bode hym was sent
þat ffortige*r*es sone, sire Passent,
In Walys was, & þe Irische[3] kyng,
. On hym to make a chalangyng;
. He chalanged hym of robbery,
. & sire Pascent[4] of felony.
He sends Uther against them, as he cannot go himself;
þe kyng seide, "Vte*r* for me schal go,
"ffor y ne may, me ys ful wo."
Sire Vte*r* seyde, "y am redy;"
His folk somonde al pryuely,
. Wyþ hors & armes redy to ryde,
. & com til hym; he scholde þem byde.
but a long time goes by before Uther gets all his host into Wales.
Longe hit was y þe somouns,
& þe buschyng[5] of þe barouns;[6]
God whyle[7] hit was er he þe*m* wan
In-til Walys, ilka man.

∫ Appas *tra*ditor.

So I'll tell you about Appas,
∫ In al þys drechyng als þey gan dwelle,
Of on Appas y schal ȝow telle:
an artful Saxon,
Appas he highte, & was a Saxon,[8]
& well coupe contreue a treson;
who pretends to be a doctor, and can speak many tongues.
He ffeyned hym to be [a][9] leche,
& coupe speke diue*r*se speche.
A day to Pascent þis Appas spak,—
. Treson he þoughte, & out hit brak,—

---

[1] MS. *ouer*.
[2] *euer languest one.* [leaf 53, back, col. 2.]
[3] *Iris.*
[4] *passent of dede.*
[5] *buskyng* (preparing, getting ready).
[6] P. adds these two lines, not represented in Wace's text, ii. 3,—
dred þei were þe kyng suld die.
& in to wales fer was þe weie.
[7] *gude stound.*
[8] *Appas was a sesson.*
[9] *fened him to be a.*

" Passent," seyde Appas, " wel y wot,
" Bytwixt þe kyng & þe ys hatrede[1] hot.
" What wiltow gyue me, & y schal go,
" þe kyng Aurelyus for to slo?"
Passent seyde, " y schal gyue þe
" A þousand pound of god mone,
" Wyþy[2] þy word be certayn
" To sey me when þou hast hym slayn."
Appas seyde " wel y graunt;"
Seide Passent, " y holde couenaunt."
. Appas spak Latyn parfit,
& clad hym in a monkes habyt;
Als a monk he dide hym schaue,
Contenaunce couþe he ful wel haue.[3]
. Venyn[4] for salue wyþ hym he nam,
Als a monk to court he cam;
ffor yueles[5] he couþe medicine make,
þe kyng he seyde he wolde vndertake:
' ȝyf he wolde do after[6] his queyntise,
' Sone he scholde[7] do hym vp ryse.'
He tasted his pous, saw his vryn,
He seide he knew his medycyn.[8]

He asks Pascent " What'll you give me to kill Aurelius?"

" £1,000."

The bargain is struck.

Appas, who knows Latin,

disguises himself as a monk,

goes to Aurelius,

and undertakes to cure him.

He feels the king's pulse, looks at his urine, and says he knows the cure for him.

ſ De Morte Aurelij Regis per Appas traditorem Saxonem.

þe kyng ȝerned his hele mykel,[9]
He wende nought a monk were fykel;
He dide hym in kepyng of þe feloun,
& he gaf hym drynke poysoun,

Aurelius puts himself in Appas's hands

---

[1] *hatered.*
[2] *with þi* (with that, so that).
[3] Od contenance monial, *Wace*, ii. 5, l. 8465.
[4] *Venom.* [leaf 54.]
[5] *Iuels.*
[6] *at.*
[7] *so he wild.*
[8] A bit from the Normandy of Wace's time.
[9] ' Si com cascuns de vous vol- ' droit,' adds Wace, ii. 5, l. 8476.

Appas gives him poison and bids him sleep, that the poison may work.
Then Appas flees.
And Aurelius soon knows that he must die.

& happed hym warme, & bad hym slepe,
ffor in his lymes hit schold al lepe.
When þys Appas his nedes had sped,
Al so swyþe a-wey he fled;
And sone after in a þrowe [leaf 39, back, col. 1.]
þe kyng hit wiste, & men wel sowe,[1]
þat he scholde al-gate deye.
þen preied he men þey scholde hym leye

At Stonehenge

At Stonhenges in a graue,
His byriels for to mene & saue.
On þys manere þe kyng was ded,

he is buried.

. & beryed als after his red.

∫ De stella Cometa que apparuit.

When Aurelius dies, men in Wales see a star called a Comet, which shows a king's death.

Vter þat tyme in Walys was
. þat þe kyng was poysond wyþ Appas.
Als he was ded, þen ros a sterne
þat many a man biheld ful ȝerne,
'Comete' ys cald in astronomye,
Kynges deþ[2] wil hit signefye.
ffro þat cam a bem ful bryght,
Onlyke on, þat lemede lyght;

From it goes a beam

. þe lemyng was boþe red & schir,

like a dragon,

Lyke a dragon þat sparkled fyr;
. Was þer neuere erl ne[3] baroun
. þat þey ne lykned hit til a dragoun.

with brands out of its mouth,

Two brondes come out of his mouþ
. þat lightned Est, West, & [4] Souþ:

1. stretching over France, and to Italy,

Vpon ffraunce lygh[t]ned[5] þat on;
þat oþer vntil Moungow schon;

2. over Ireland, this second dividing into seven branches.

þe þridde, þat vntil[6] Irland ȝede,
In seuen braunches gan it[7] sprede,

[1] *knowe.*
[2] *dede.*
[3] *was noiþer erle no.*
[4] *est with þe.*
[5] *lighted.*
[6] *þrid vnto.*
[7] MS. *þey.* P. has *it.* (see 9096.)

& alle were þey schynand
On þe water & on þe land.
Þys ilke merueille þat þus was sene,
Men wondred what hit wolde[1] mene.
Sire Vter, þe kynges broþer,
Hym merueilled more þan anoþer;[2]
Merueillyng, he was affrayed;
Of þat affray he was nought payed;
He preyed Merlyn ful specialy
þe toknyng þer-of to telle,[3] & why.
Þen sey Merlyn þat[4] sire Vter
Sore sykede, & feightit[5] fer,
And stod as he were in dwale,
No word ne seide, bot wax al pale.
When his spirit was comen ageyn,
& þoughte, 'þat may nought helpe, ys veyn,'
Seid Merlyn, "Sorewe[6] may þey mone,
"Alle þat now in Bretaigne wone!
"Lore þey haue þer noble kyng
"þat brought hem of Saxons[7] encombrynge,
"Out of þe false Payens[8] handes,
"þat manion broughte in[9] bitter bandes!"
When Vter herde his broþer was ded,
He bycom as heuy as led:
"Alas!" he seide, "now haþ Bretaygne
Loren þer noble cheuentayne!"[10]
He syked[11] for sorewe, deol was to se.
Þen seyde Merlyn, "Vter, let be;
"þer no bote ys ouer sore ne sorewe!
"þy lyf may no man bye ne borewe;

Men wonder what this comet means; and Uther is afraid and ill at ease.

He asks Merlin about it.

Merlin sighs, and at first says nothing, but turns pale.

Then his spirit comes again,

and he tells Uther that Aurelius is dead.

Uther turns as heavy as lead,

laments, and sighs sorely.

Merlin tells him

Nota.

"sorrowing is no good,

---

[1] *mot.* [leaf 54, col. 2.]
[2] *any oþer*; and leaves out the next two lines.
[3] *to telle him what it ment.*
[4] *Merlyn sauh it with sir vter.*
[5] *Sore sighyng he fecched it.*
[6] *Ihesu he said sore.*
[7] *yam of.*
[8] *þe paiens sessons.*
[9] *to.*
[10] *lorn hym þat was a noble chef-tayn.*
[11] *sighed.*

" Of deþ may non þe[1] bale bete,
." þe sorewe nedly byhoueþ men[2] lete;
attack your foes at once. " Bot haste þe swyþe on þyn enemis!
" Of þe bataille þou getest þe prys, 9080
You'll win the battle, [3]" To morewen schul þey boþe be schent, [lf. 39, bk., col. 2.]
." & al þer folk boþ sleyn & hent.[3]
and then be crowned king. " Syþen schaltow þe coroune take,
." þe pes to menteyne & to make. 9084

∫ De interpretacione Comete per Merlynum.

"The comet betokened Aurelius's death; ." "Þe sterne þat þou seye[4] so red,
." " Bytokneþ euere þe kynges ded.
the dragon yourself, " þe dragon, þat semeþ[5] so hey,
" þy self hit menes, þat ys so hardy; 9088
the first brand " þe brond þat schyned out of his mouþ,
." þat spreden[6] boþe Est & South,
your future son (Arthur), " þat ys, of þe schal[7] come a sone
." Doughty of dede, many on schal mone; 9092
whom France and Italy shall obey; " Alle ffraunce þen schal[7] hym loute,
" Vntil Mongow men schal[7] hym doute.
the second brand with seven branches, " þat oþer, þat schon West so euen,
" Toward þe Norþ hit spredde in seuen, 9096
your daughter, who shall marry the king of Scotland, and have seven sons, all kings." " A doughter hit ys, y vnderstande,
" þat maried schal[7] be bysyde Scotlande;
" Hure eyres bymene þo[8] seuen brondes,
" þat schullen[7] welde alle þo londes." 9100
Uther ∫ Syre Vter listned ilka del
How Merlyn conforted hym wel;
He bad his host reste al þat nyght,
next morning On morn erlik[9] to bataille þem dight. 9104

---

[1] *dede may non no.*
[2] *sorow bos men nedes.*
[3-3] *of þe Iris kyng & passent. to morne satt þei boþe be schent.*
[4] *ses.*
[5] P. inserts *flaumand.*
[6] *spredes.*
[7] *satt.*
[8] *mene þe.* [leaf 55, back.]
[9] *arely.*

Þe Irische[1] wyste whan þey schold come,
& made hem redy alle & some;[2]
Stalworthly to-geder þey fought,
Bot þe Irische[1] sone were brought to nought,[3]
ffor þe Irische[1] kyng & Passent
Were slayn, & þer host al to-schent;[4]
& þo þat wyþ þe lyf ascaped,[5]
To þer schipes faste þem raped.
Of þo þat fledden[6] to þe se,
Þat was ouer-taken, slayn was he.
Whe[n] al were slayn þey myghte hent,[7]
To Wynchestre sire Vter went.
I þe weye he mette a messeger,
Þat teldyt al to[8] sire Vter
What manere þat þe kyng deyd,
& byryed [was][9] þer (als he seyd)
At Stonhenges so louely,[10]
Wyþ þe byschopes & al þe clergy.
As Vter com rydyng[11] y þe stret,
Þe folk on hym sore gon[12] gret,
& seyde, "sire, haue mercy on vs!
" Ded ys þy broþer Aurelyus
" Þat mayntende vs in al his myght;
" Tak þou þe coroune, hit ys þy right,
" & be our heued, for we hit ȝern,
" & fend vs from our enemys fern."

attacks the Irish and Pascent, defeats them, and kills Pascent and the Irish king.

Only a few Irish escape to their ships.

Uther goes to Winchester,

and hears how Aurelius was poisoned, and buried at Stonehenge.

Uther is prayed by the folk

to take the crown, and

defend them from their foes.

---

[1] *Iris.*
[2] þei *dight* þam *& agayn* þam *nom.*
[3] *sone nouh ne douht.*
[4] MS. *alto schent.* P. *alle schent.*
[5] *with* þe *life scaped.*
[6] *& þei* þam *folowed in.*
[7] *mot ouerhent.*
[8] *tald att titt.*
[9] *was.*
[10] þe *stonhenges solemply.*
[11] *ridand.*
[12] *gon sore.*

¶ Vter apud Wyntoniam cepit coronam.

Uther is

Syre Vter sey hit was to do,
. ffor his heritage hit was of blod al so. 9132
. Hys barons þyder he dide somoune,
crowned at Winchester, & made a feste, & dide hym coroune.
ffor Merlyn tolde þat toknyng
þat Vter scholde be doughty kynge, 9136
& of hym swylk heyres schold be,
. Alosed þorow-out[1] al Cristiante,
. And for þat dragon he sey in syght [leaf 40.]
. Bytokned hym self kyng þorow right, 9140
and has two dragons made; He dide make two dragons
By conseil of hys barouns;
one to be borne before him in war, þat on he dide byfore hym bere,
& ilka[2] tyme he ȝede to were; 9144
the other hung in St. Peter's church; þat oþer dragon he did wyrk,
& heng hit[3] at seinte Petres kirk.
and from this cause he is called Uther Pendragon. ffor þat skyl & þat enchesoun[4]
Was he cald Vter Pendragoun: 9148
Pen ys heued in Walsche langage;
Dragon ys seyd on oure vsage;
. Pendragon was his to-name
. In all his lyue for þat same. 9152

¶ De Octa, filio Hengysty.

Octa, Hengist's son, Octa, Hengystes sone þat was,
When Aurelius furgaf[5] his trespas,
& had hym gyuen,[6] & his meyne,
Londes y þe norþ contre; 9156
When he wyste þat he was ded

---

[1] *named* þourh. [leaf 54, back, col. 2.]
[2] *at ilk.*
[3] *it hang.* (A l'iglise de l'Evesquié, *Wace*, ii. 11, l. 8610.)
[4] *cheson.*
[5] *Forgyuen before.*
[6] *& þe kyng gaf him.*

Þat þeym þe lond furst furbed,
Of hym he gaf nought, þat was newe,
Til hym þoughte he neuere be trewe.
What dide þis schrewe, þe false Octa?
Conseilled wyþ his cosyn Ebessa,[1]
Wyþ alle þo of his owen kynde,
& oþer Saxons þat þey myght fynde;
& fele of þo wyþ hem went
Þat scaped atte[2] slaughter of Passent;
Þat fro Vter handes[3] fled,
Þey com til Octa, & he þem led.
By-ȝonde Humber al þe land
Octa tok vntil hys hand,
Al til Scotland in lengþe & bred.
To ȝork syþen al þey ȝed,
Þat [toun] for to bysege[4] & to wyn;
Þey defended hem faste wyþyn;[5]
Þe kyng þe sege wolde remewe,
Þe toun a-geynes þeym rescuwe;
He þoughte nought longe fort[6] abyde,
Bot gadered folk on ilka syde.
When he was comen, he abod nought,
Bot on þe Payens bataille sought;
& þe Payens egre & stout,
Þorow þe Bretons held þem out;
Payens & Cristen, many were slawen,
& many a sowle fro[7] body drawen.

pooh-poohs Uther,

consults with Ebessa, and gathers a large host of Saxons.

They seize all Northumbria,

and besiege York.

Uther collects his folk,

and attacks the Pagans,

[1] *Cosa.* (Eossa, *Wace*, ii. 12, l. 8640; Eosa, *Galf. Mon.* viii. 18.)
[2] *fro þe.*
[3] *in weles.*
[4] *þe toun for to sege.*
[5] *fended it* that *was* þer-*In.*
[6] *long to.* [leaf 55.]
[7] *Many saule of.*

¶ **Obsitus est Vterus Rex super collem qui vocatur Damer; et exe saluati sunt per consilium Gorleni Comitis.**

but is driven back

Þe Bretons þat tyme myght nought sped;
Bak þey turnde, þey saw ned;
Þe Payens after folewed fast,
& many vn-to dede cast.
. Whider to fle þey were al wyl;[1]

to a hill called Damer.

Þe Payens hem chased vntil an hyl,[1]
'Damer'[2] þe hil so hight.
Þe Bretons tok hit þo þat nyght;
Hey & streit, ful narow[3] to prykke,
Aboute y-busched wyþ þornes[4] þykke.

There the Pagans besiege them, but cannot assault, because of the night.

When þe Bretons þe hil had taken,
Wyþ sege þe Payens held þem waken,
. Bot hit was atte þe nyght,
. Þeym to saille þey ne myght;
Þey logged þem stille in þe playn, [leaf 40, col. 2.]
& þe Bretons were y þe mountayn;
. Þe Payens to þer loggyng[5] gan lep;
. Wery þey were, & fulle on slep.

Uther is anxious about saving his men,

Þe kyng had of hym self gret drede,
& of his folk þat he schold[6] lede,
. How he scholde[6] a-scape þem fro;
. þer weyes wer stopped þer þey schold[6] go.

and asks Gorlens, the Earl of Cornwall, for advice.

Þe Erl of Cornewaille was o þat hyl,
Gorlens he highte, a man of skyl,
Wysest he held hym of ylkon;
To hym for conseil þey mente þer mon,

---

[1] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

[2] Daniens, *Wace*, ii. 13, l. 8675; Damen, *Galf. Mon.*

[3] *hiie & narow fuit strayte.* (agus en som, *Wace*, ii. 13, l. 8676.)

[4] *busked with hesils.*

[5] *loges.*

[6] *suld.*

. ffor he was man of gret queyntyse,[1]
& neuere louede no cowardyse.[1] 9212
He seide "for conseil ȝe com me to;
" Y schal ȝow conseille, ȝyf ȝe wil so.
" ſ Mercy to God, first we schal cry,
" & mende vs of al oure foly, 9216
" & preye Iesu our Saueour
" To schulde vs fro[2] mysauentour,
" & gif vs grace & powere
" Ageins þe Payens þat sege vs here, 9220
" þat vs often wo han vs[3] wrought,
. " & hym for Lord ne knowe þey nought;
" þat he to day stonde vs by,
" On hys enemys to haue maystri. 9224
" ȝyf he wyl helpe, our Lord Ihesus,
" Who may þanne ageyns vs?"
To his conseille þei graunted alle,
& faste on Iesu þen gon þey calle, 9228
& highte to make amendement,
. þat tyme to schape ȝyf[4] he þem lent.
" Arme ȝow," he seyde,[5] "pryuely,
" & go we stille, wyþouten cry; 9232
" þey arn a[6] slepe, y am right siker;
. " þey trauailled faste to gyue vs byker,
" & wene nought we dur vs abate,
. " ffor þey desconfit vs so late; 9236
" þey hope to morn atte sonne rysyng
" Vs to slo, or[7] take our kyng.
. " Arme vs swyþe, & go we doun,[8]
. " Wyþoute any more sarmoun!" 9240
ſ þey armed þenne[9] knyght & swayn,

Gorlens bids the Britons ask God's mercy,

and pray to Jesus

for strength against the Pagans,

his enemies.

The Britons accordingly pray, and promise amendment if they escape.

Gorlens then tells them to arm, and attack the sleeping and weary Pagans.

The Britons arm,

---

[1] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

[2] Wace invents this piece of piety; but puts it (ii. 15) after Geoffrey's and his advice to attack by night.

[3] *vs cristen wo has.*

[4] *scape. if.* [leaf 55, col. 2.]

[5] *vs he said now.*

[6] *ere oñ.*

[7] *&.*

[8] MS. *douns.*

[9] *þam sone.*

come down to the sleeping and unarmed Pagans,

Pryuely com doun in to þe playn,
& fond hem slepyng,[1] als he sayd;
Vnarmed, ilkon were þey leyd.

¶ Occisio Paganorum.

. When þe Bretons were spred aboute
. In *þer* host, wyþynne[2] & wyþoute,
and slaughter them pitilessly.

Þen was slaughtere wyþoute pite;
Was non for merci ȝolden fre;
Þorow wombe & breste þe speres bot,
Hedes, handes, fet, of smot.
To arme þeym þey nadde no space,
Ne to fle had þey no grace;
ȝyf any fledde þat fle myght,[3]
Þe merknesse saued [hem] þat nyght.[3]

Octa and Ebessa are taken, and prisoned in London.

Octa & Ebessa[4] o lyue þey tok,
At Londone in prison he dide þem lok.

Uther goes through Northumberland and Scotland,

¶ When þis Payens were desconfit,
Toward þe norþ þey went ful tyt;
Northumberland, Scotland, þorow þey rod,
. Als hit was fer, [boþ] long & brod.

takes the unruly into his own hands, and establishes peace.

Þo þat myghte no men[5] iustise,
Al he drow til his seruise;
Ouer al he sette swylk pees, [leaf 40, back, col. 1.]
Bettere neuere no man ches.

Then he returns to London for Easter,

When he was kyng kyd & couþ,
He tok his gate toward þe souþ;
At Londone his Pasches he held,

and bids all his nobles, bishops, and burgesses, with their

Wyþ erl & baron, & knyght of scheld;
·Byschopes, abbotes, he dide somoune,
. & riche burgeyses, & oþer in[6] toune;

---

[1] *slepand.*
[2] MS. *wyþynne & wyþynne.*
[3] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines; but they are in Wace, ii. 17, l. 8761–2.
[4] *cosa.*
[5] *non myght ore.* (La gent qui estoit sans justice, *Wace*, ii. 17, l. 8773.)
[6] *of.* [leaf 55, back.]

He dide comaunde, vpon þer lyf,
þat wedded men schold bryng þer[1] wyf,
[2]& opere honeste of his meyne,
Man or woman, whepher þey be;
Al he bad vntil his feste,
þat were worþy & honeste.[2]

wives, to his Feast.

∫ De festo Vtery Regis.

When alle were comen þat schold or wylde,
Innes taken, ne[3] fulfilde,
& at þe kirke þer seruise seyd,
In halles & hales bordes leyd,
þe kyng was set, & serued of mees,
& at þat oþer ende was a dees;
þer set þe barons of pris,
þe Erl of Cornewaille ageyn his vys;
By hym sat Igerne his wyf,
Of whas fairhede was speche ryf;
In al þe reome,[4] so fair was non,
Ne of swylk kynde, bot scheo al on.[5]
Often þe kyng had herd hure preyse,
þat sche was fair, god, & curteyse;
Mikel desired he hure to se.
When he hure sey,[6] more louede he;
þe sight of hure hym al to-blast;[7]
His herte on hure ageyn he cast;

When all are come, and Mass is said,

Uther is seated

and opposite him, Earl Gorlens (who rescued him), with his lovely countess Igerne.

Uther has often wished to see her,

and when he does so, the sight of her blows him all to pieces.

[1] *his.*
[2–2] *& if he wild his* oþer *meigne* þat were *auenant in courte to se. Man or woman* þat *were honeste att he bed vnto his feste.*
[3] *&.*
[4] *regne.*
[5] *ne of suilk was* þer *non.*
[6] *hir sawe.*
[7] *att to brast.*

ſ De Igerna, Comitissa Cornubye.

Eating or drinking, Igerne is always in Uther's head,

Whe*þer* he et or drank, spak ought or nought,
Igerne was eu*er*e in his þought,
Ne cam sche neu*er*e out of his hert,
To hur*e* was his eye eu*er*e ou*er*-thwert.
By his pr*i*ues often [he] hur*e*[1] grette,
& his pr*e*sentes byforn hur*e* sette,
Often hur*e* lout,[2] & on hur*e* low,
& made semblaunt of loue ynow.
Hur*e* contenaunce was, & hur*e* se*m*blaunt,
Sche nought ne seyde, ne nought wold gr*a*unt;
þe kyng of hur*e* nought vnderstod
In contenaunce but[3] stable & god.

and he can't take his eyes off her.

He sends her presents, smiles at her, and looks loving; but she'll have none of him.

Earl Gorlens sees Uther's little tricks,

What for laughynge & o*þer* tyhtes,
What for pr*e*sentes & o*þer* delites,[4]
þe Erl p*er*ceyued & þoughte ful ȝerne
þe kyng louede his wyf Igerne;
& þoughte[5] no feyþ til [him] wold[6] bere,
But he in pes his wyf myght were.

and at once starts up from the board,

Vp þe*n* stirt he fro þe bord—
To þe kyng ne spak he word,—

takes his wife, calls his knights, and goes off

His wyf by þe hand he hent,
& calde his knyghtes, & þe*n*nes[7] went.
Hastely þ*er* hors were bone,
& to Cornewaille þey come sone.

to Cornwall. But before he goes, Uther orders him back again,

Er he was redy for[8] to wende,
þe kyng comaunded, as he was hende,
‘ þ*a*t he schold comen to court a-geyn,
‘ Or he dide vylenye[9] til his sou*er*eyn;
‘ And ȝyf he ne wolde come bleþely, [lf. 40, bk., col. 2.]

or he'll be his enemy.

‘ Waite hym wel as for[10] his enemy.’

---

[1] *of he hir.*
[2] *oft on hir luke.*
[3] *bo.*
[4] *sightes.*
[5] *þoughte* = *þought he.* P. *He þouht.* [leaf 55, back, col. 2.]
[6] *þat faith he ne wild him.*
[7] *þien.*
[8] *ȝare redy.*
[9] *els did he vilte.*
[10] *kepe him wele he were.*

Þe kynges sonde he wolde nought here,
He made no force of his preyere.
When þe kyng wyste þat he wold nought
. Come ageyn, as he bisought,
He manased hym wyþ [felle][1] herte,
. & seyde he schold hit[2] sore smerte.
. ffor no[3] manace ne wolde he byde;
. Bot he ne wyste what scholde bytide.
Two casteles he hadde in Cornewaille,
Þo he warnisched wyþ vitaille;
In þe castel of Tyntagel
He dide his wyf to kepe wel;
Of defens hit hadde[4] gret los,
Wyþ dyk & se hit[5] ys in clos;
Who-so kepes þat [ȝate][6] in nede,
In oþer stede dar[7] hym nought drede;
Þer-inne scheo was[8] ȝemed & sperd,
& he til his oþer castel ferd;
Þider he ledde his souders,
. To kepe þe kyng at sautes sers;
I þat castel was, þat he to cam,
Þe force of al his erldam.

Gorlens disregards Uther's orders,

and Uther declares he shall smart for it.

Gorlens puts his wife Igerne in his impregnable castle of Tyntagel,

and goes himself to his other castle,

with all his forces.

¶ De obsisione Gorlencii Comitis per Regem.

Þe kyng wyste he made purueaunce
A-gayns hym to stande[9] to chaunce.
Þe kyng also sone purueyed his host;
. Þer þe Erl was, byseged þe cost;
Þe castel þat þe Erl was in,
He byseged hyt for to wyn.

There Uther besieges him;

[1] *felle.*
[2] *it suld him.*
[3] *att þe.*
[4] *it his.*
[5] *see & fen it.*
[6] *þe ȝate.* (la porte, *Wace*, l. 8852.) See l. 9412 below.
[7] *þar.*
[8] *he did hir be.*
[9] *at stand.*

but after a week wins nothing.

Al a wyke[1] þe kyng *þer* lay,
He spilte his tyme, sped of no pray;
Of þe Erl nought he ne wan,
Ne dide scaþe til no man,

Gorlens expects the Irish king's help.

ffor þe Erl kepte eu*er*e þe comyng
Hy[m][2] to socour*e* þe Irisch*e* kyng.

Uther is in a hurry to get Igerne, and is disgusted at losing his time.

þe kyng sey þe sege was wast;
Igerne to haue he wilde hym hast;
He was ful gretlyk onoyed
þat his tyme so was destruyed.

He tells Ulfin how bad he is.

He calde Vlfyn, his p*ri*ue baroun,
To conceill*e* hym of som resoun:
" Vlfyn," he saide, " þou conseil me;
" My beste conseil y take at þe.
" On Igerne y am enam*ur*ed[3] strong,
" I deye ȝyf hit me laste long;

" I love Igerne so much that I shall die if it lasts long.

" Y ne may slepe, wyþ wo y wake,[4]
" So am y in hur*e* loue y-take;

I can't eat or drink. Love has brought me to death's door, What shall I do?"

" Ete ne drynke ne may y nought,
" So lowe hur*e* loue haþ me[5] brought;
" Loue dereþ me so, to deye[6] y dred;
" Y aske conseil how y may sped."

Ulfin says: "You love your foe's wife, and think to win her by war! You're too late.

Seyd Vlfyn þe*n*, " y here m*er*ueilles!
" þou louest his wyf þ*at* þou[7] assailles!
" Wenestow þ*er*-wyþ to ben aboue?
" þorow werr*e* wynne[8] his wyf to loue?
" Hur*e* to loue þou com to late;[9]

Who put this way of making love in your head?

" Hur*e* loue to gete, hur*e* lord to take.[9]
" At wham toke þou þis conseil,
" To loue in tene & in[10] turpeyl?

I can't advise you about it. No doubt Merlin can.

" Conseil of þis can y non kest;
" Of swylk conseil M*er*lyn can best;

[leaf 41.]

[1] *seuenyght.* [lf. 56.] [2] *him.*
[3] *anamorde.*
[4] *slepe wo .I. waken.*
[5] *hir luf benethen has me so.*
[6] *luf has me wonded dede.*
[7] *lufes his wife & him.*
[8] *to wyn.*
[9] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[10] *with.*

" He can ynow of swylke craftes,
" Of alle vig*ures*[1] he turnes þe schaftes.
" ȝyf he can kenne þe no weye,[2]
" Igerne to wynne, can no man seye."[2]
þorow þe conseil of sire Vlfyn
þe kyng dide sende after Merlyn.
Merlyn com þe kyng byforn;
He seide, " Merlyn, y am ner lorn![3]
" Conseille me, syn þat þou can,
" & y schal eu*ere*-more be þy man!
" Y haue ner lorn wyt & lyf
" ffor Igerne, þe kynges[4] wyf!
" Help me now, þat y hure haue;
" & what þou wilt, y vouche saue."

If he can't, no one else can."

So Uther sends for Merlin, and tells him, " I've nearly lost wit and life for Igerne. Help me to have her."

Dicta Merlyny.

" Syre,"[5] seid Merlyn, " God furbede
" þat þou for hure schold be in drede,
" ffor Igerne to haue þe ded![6]
" Er schold y don anoþ*er* red;
" þou schalt hure haue wyþoute pyne,
" & ȝit wol y haue nought of þyne.
" Bot, sire Vt*er*, þou wost hit wel,
" Strong ys þe hold of Tyntagel;
" & scho ys loken þ*er*-yn so strait,
" Bot þorow queyntise or deseit
" Noman ne may hure out[e] take,
" þorow noñ engyn þat men can make;
" ffor two men þat oughtes[7] be,
" May kepe þe issue[8] & þe entre;
" & þey al hit be wykke to wynne,
" fful wel schal y þe brynge[9] þ*er* ynne.

Merlin says: " God forbid that you should die for Igerne!

I'll manage it. You shall have her.

But you know Tyntagel is so strong that you can only get her by stratagem.

Two brave men can keep the castle gate.

But I'll take you in.

---

[1] *figures.*
[2] The Petyt MS. leave out these lines.
[3] *am forlorn.*
[4] *erles.*
[5] *Sir kyng.* [leaf 56, col. 2.]
[6] *in drede for to haf þi dede.*
[7] *without* (*aht*, *oht*, brave).
[8] *issheu.*
[9] *I. sall do þe.*

¶ De *tr*ansfiguraci*one* Merlyny.

I can turn any form into another ;

" ffor alle manere forme þat ys,
" Kan y turne til o*þer*[1] lyknes:

can change the face, body, and speech of any one,

" A face to be like anoþer,
" & a body vnto þat oþer;[2]
" Stature of body, speche & leryng,[3]
" & contenaunce of ylka þyng,[3]

so that they shall be thought another's.

" Y schal chaunge, what so þey are,[3]
" Ilkon schal wene þat oþer ware.[3]

Now Earl Gorlens has two trusted knights, Bertel and Jordon.

" þe Erl cher*ly*[4] wyþ hym ledes
" Two knyghtes, doughti of dedes;
" Sire Bertel þe*n* hat þat on,[5]
" þat oþer heyghte sire Iordon;
" þis are his pr*iue* conseillo*urs*:

I'll make you, Uther, like the Earl; I'll be Bertel; and Ulfin shall be Jordon.

" Til þeir lyknesse y schal *turne* oures;
" Y þe Erles lyknesse y schal þe dight,
" Y schal be lyke Bertil[6] his knyght,
" Lyke Iordan schal[7] be Vlfyn;
" þus schal we come þe castel yn;

We'll all three go to Tyntagel,

" Alle þre at euen schol[7] we go
" To þe castel, wyþouten mo,
" & speke þ*er* speche & þer facounde;

and you shall work your will with Igerne."

" We schul[7] come in þen on a stounde.
" Dred þe nought of no man,
" ffor no queyntise þat any can;
" And þou schalt haue hure to[8] þy wylle, [lf. 41, col. 2.]
" þy grete desir[9] to fulfille."
Al þat euere Merlyn teld,

Uther gives his host in charge to a leader.

As gospel þe kyng hit held:
þe*n* comaunded he til on certeyn,
þe host to kepe til he com ageyn.

[1] *turne þe.*
[2] *& his agayn vnto þe toþer.*
[3] (? MS. *heryng.*) The Petyt MS. leaves out these four lines.
[4] MS. *chly.* P. *þe erle specially.*
[5] *bretett hate þe ton.*
[6] *& .I. satt be bretett.*
[7] *satt.*
[8] *at.*
[9] *ȝernyng.*

Merlin charms

þem charmed Merlyn þorow vertue,
& colour & cloþyng dide remue,
Contenaunce, speche, þe same assise;
. He turnde þe kyng on þe Erles wyse,
. & he & Vlfyn, to alle[1] sightes,
. As Bertel & Iordan, þe Erles knyghtes.
At euen þey come to Tyntagel,
& þo þat wende haue knowe þem wel,
Receyued þeym wyþ glad[e] chere,
As hit were þe Erl lef & dere.
. What þey wilde, non wold þem werne;
þe kyng lay þat myght by Igerne,
& scheo conseyued of hym þat nyght
Arthur, þat was so mykel of myght.
In þe host was told anon,
' þat non wiste whider þe kyng was gon: '
His ordynaunce þey al fursok,
þat þe kyng þe kepyng took;
þey armed hem to make asaut,
. ffor þat þey hadde of heued defaut,
& went forþ y þe morn[e][2] tyde;
. Non for oþer[3] wold oþer abyde;
Of bataille sette þey no right[4] renge,
. Bot ilkon forþ, þe kyng to venge.
[5]þen gon þey assaille boþ fer & hende.
þe Erl ageyn þem faste ga[n] fende:
As he stod, er he lest[6] wende,
He was schot to deþe, & made his ende.[5]
. When he was ded, his side gan slaken;
Lightly was þen þe castel taken.

9448 Uther into Gorlens, himself into Bertel, and Ulfyn into Jordon.

9452 They go to Tyntagel,

are received gladly, and

9456 get all they want.

Concepcio Arthury.

Uther lies by Igerne, and begets Arthur on her.

9460 Uther's men hear that he's away;

they won't attend to his substitute,

9464

but go to assault Gorlens's castle,

all out of proper formation.

9468

Gorlens defends his castle,

9472 but is shot and killed,

and his castle soon won.

---

[1] *be* þo. [leaf 56, back.]
[2] *morne.*
[3] *honour.*
[4] *ne bataile set ne rightly.*
[5–5] *was* þer *non held right aray. bot ilkone went to* þe *assay. on ilk a side* þei *gaf batayle.* þe *erle agayn gan fast assaile. as he & his stode* þam *to fende. he was slayn or* [þat] þei *wende.*
[6] MS. *left* (*lest*=least).

¶ De Morte Comitis Cornubye.

Gorlens's men that escape tell Igerne that her husband is dead, and his castle taken.

Uther (personating Gorlens) starts up, says "Thank God, I'm alive!

Don't believe such lies! No doubt my men are in trouble. When I left, I never told any one where I was going;

and as I haven't come back yet, they think I'm dead. It is a sad thing that my men and castle are lost; but I'm alive, thank God!

I'll go now, and make peace with Uther, and be friends with all."

Igerne agrees.

þo þat askaped wyþ þe lyf,
Brought tydyng to the Erles wyf,
'Hure lord was slayn y þe mornyng,
'þe castel taken vnto þe kyng.'
þe kyng hym selue þe tydyng herd,
He styrt vp, & þem answerd:
" Let be ȝour tales to tene my wyf,[1]—
" Y þank God y am her on lyf![2]—
" To telle swylk tales for to greue!
" Lesynges ar nought to byleue!
" Y wot wel þey are in doute;
" Vnwarned fro þeym y went oute;
" ffor when y out of þe castel ȝede,
" Y spak to non,—þat ys þer drede,—
" Ne seyde whider þat y wold[3] go,
" ffor doute & treson[4] of my fo;
" & for y cam nought sone[5] agayn,
" Wene þey now þat y be[6] slayn.
" Bot þat my folk doun ys born,
" Slayn, & [eke] þe castel lorn,
" Hit may do tene & greuaunce;
" Bot y lyue, God þanky þe[7] chaunce!
" I schal me haste, out y schal[8] wende,
" Pes for to seke; þe kyng ys hende.
" Er any more skaþe falle, [leaf 41, back, col. 1.]
" Y wyl acorde me wiþ þem alle.
" ȝyf he wyþ sege sperre me her-yn,[9]
" More wo þan ys, þen scholde bygyn."[9]
To þat conseil Igerne redde,—
Alle tymes þe kyng scheo dredde;—

[1] *þei be not trod.*
[2] *I. am o life .I. tanke it god.*
[3] *suld.* [leaf 56, back, col. 2.]
[4] *drede.*
[5] *suyth.*
[6] *am.*
[7] *lyf þank god þat.*
[8] *witt .I.*
[9] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

In armes boþe ilk oþer hent,
Þe kyng hure kyste, & out he went. — Uther kisses and leaves her.
ʃ When þey[1] passed, alle þre,
Ilkon was, as fel to be,[2] — 9508 He, Merlin, and Ulfin, take their own forms,
& come dryuande vntil þe host;
Afte*r* þe Erl he spyrde most, — and Uther asks his men who advised the
Who gaf conseil for to go,
Þe castel to take, þe Erl to slo? — 9512 attack on Gorlens.
Þe soþe þe*n*ne[3] was hym told,
Of on & oþe*r*, symple & bold.
Þe kyng þe*r*-fore was wo ynow,
He wraþed wyþ he*m* þa*t* hym slow; — 9516 He is angry at first,
Bot longe nold he þe*r*-fore mourne,
To Tyntagel a-geyn gan tourne, — but soon turns back to Tyntagel,
& to þeym of þe castel spak
& seide: "y rede ȝe tu*r*ne ȝour bak, — 9520 tells the folk
. " ffor he þa*t* bataille on me bed, — that their Earl is dead, and
" Þe Erl ȝour lord, [he] ys now ded[4]; — they can't resist any
" Now schol ȝe of non fynde soco*ur* — longer.
. " Agayn[e]s me to stande in stour." — 9524
When þey herde þe kyng þu*s* seyd,
þe*r* soco*ur* lorn, þe*r* heued[5] doun leyd,
Þe castel anon til hym þey ȝolde, — They give up Tyntagel to
. & leet hym do what þa*t* he wolde. — 9528 Uther,
He ȝede anon to dame Igerne; — and he tells Igerne
. Als he had don, he teld hire ȝerne,
. Al how he by hure lay, — how he lay by her,
. & how he wente fro*m* hure away: — 9532

ʃ Rex desponsauit Igerniam.

. " Y am," he seide, " wyþouten wyf, — and offers to wed her.
. " & þou art a sengle woma*n* of lyf;

---

[1] þei *were*.
[2] com estre dut, *Wace*, ii. 28, l. 9022.
[3] *sone*.
[4] *he is dede*.
[5] *hede*.

" Y wol þe wedde, ȝyf þou wilt so."
She consents. Dame Igerne consented *þer*-to : 9536
" Of no deseite nere wist y ;
" Bot of þy weddyng, sire, *grau*nt m*er*sy."
þe child scheo[1] conseyued byforn,
Arthur is born ; When tyme fel, hit was born : 9540
Arthur was þe childes name,
A noble man, of ful gret fame.
then a daughter Anna, who is A doughter þey hadde,—Anne sche hight,—
þat gyuen was til a doughti knyght, 9544
married to sir Loth, and has a son, Gawain the courteous. Vntil sire Loth of Lonneys ;
Hys sone was Wawayn þe *Cur*teys.
Syþen regned Vter ful longe,
Uther falls ill, and lies bed-ridden. & þan fel hym[2] an yuel stronge ; 9548
Bedrede doun ful longe he lay,
& languissed so forþ fro[3] day to day.

ſ D[e] Octa, filio Hengisty.

The keepers of Octa and Ebessa (see p. 324, l. 9256). Þo þat kepte Octa, Hengistes sone,
& Ebessa,[4] at Londone in prysone, 9552
þey greued þem of *per*[5] longe lokyng,
And Octa gaf þem mykel þynge.
ffor gyftes gyuen ofte & gret, [leaf 41, back, col. 2.]
let them out of prison, and go with them to Saxony. þey leet hem scape of þe prison sket, 9556
& wente wyþ hem ouer þe se
In-til Saxoyne, þeyr contre.
Octa gathers a host, þer gadered Octa ful gret host ;
Toward our kyng þey blewen[6] bost ; 9560
gets a fleet, He purchased[7] hym a fflute on flod ;
Wyþ men of armes &[8] archers god

---

[1] *scho had.* [leaf 57.]
[2] *in.*
[3] *languysced fro.*
[4] *Cosa.*
[5] *þei were greued of.*
[6] *he lewe.*
[7] *purueid.*
[8] *with knyghtes & with.*

Toward Scotland þey gan vp ryue,
Pyled & brent, men broughte of lyue.

lands in Scotland, and ravages it.

Our kyng þat lay in langoryng,[1] ¶ **De langore Vtery Regis.**
Of hym was non help ne socuring
His lond for to fende &[2] were,
He myghte nought ryse armes to bere;
þer-fore he bad alle his barouns
Don after Lotes[3] somouns,
ffor he was doughti, noble & wys,[4]
& sley cheuentayn of god auys.[5]
Sire Octa þat hadde folk ynowe,
Oueral þe Bretons þei pyled[6] & slowe;
He bolded hym wyþ mykel pryde,
þat þe kyng ne myghte go ne ryde;
To meschef he putte al þat he fond,[7]
Man & wyf, þorow al þys lond.[7]
Bot often Lot wyþ hym met,
& ofte hym chaced þorow[8] baret.
Many tyme of hym he wan,
& eft on hym þat oþer ran:—
Hit ys custume þat werre bygynne,[7]
Somme to lese, & somme to wynne:—[7]
Lot ful often[9] dide hym fle,
& chaced hym vnto þe se;
Bot gret dedeyn [was] of þe barouns,
þat wold nought come for Lotes somouns,—
þey þought hem al [so][10] gentil of blod,
& al so mykel in stede stod
At ylka tyme, or more þan he,
& also mykel of rente & fe;—
þus þey delayed,[11] long was þe drede,

Uther lies ill, and
cannot rise.
He bids his barons obey his son-in-law, Loth,
a skilful chieftain.
Octa pillages the Britons
and slays all the folk he finds.
Loth often beats him,
and then he beats Loth, (as is the custom in war).
But the British barons will not obey Loth,
think themselves as good as he,
or better,
and delay their musters,

[1] *langoure . . . socoure.*
[2] *fend no.*
[3] *to do after sire loth.* [lf. 57, cl. 2.]
[4] *knyght of gode auys.*
[5] *douhty man large & wys.*
[6] *þe bretons ouer robbed.*
[7] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[8] *with.*
[9] *son.*
[10] *als.*
[11] *deleyd.*

Til[1] þe kyng sey how þat hit ȝede;
till Octa wins all the north, and the south to St. Alban's.
. ffor Octa, al þe Norþ he wan,
. & of the Southe to seint Alban;
. þys wan he for þe barons defaut,
. þat for Lot nolde gyue[2] assaut.
The land cries to Uther,
Al þe lond, to þe kyng þey pleyned
þat þe barons alle[3] feyned.
ſ Bot hereþ now of þe kynges wyl,
and he, though sick, rises from his bed, has a litter made,
þat lefte[4] for syknesse ne for yl
þat he ne ros vp ful auster,
& dide hym make a liter
Corneled[5] as an hors bere,
and says he'll see who'll neglect his summons.
& seyde þis word þat alle myght here:
" Now schal y se ho schal wyþstonde,
" & ho wyl come for my sonde!"
He summons first those who disobeyed Loth.
He somounde firste þo til his werre
þat deyned nought for Lot come nerre.
They all come
þey come, & were ful sore agrysen
. Whan þey wyste þe kyng was rysen.
to Verulam,
To þe toun of Wyrolhram[6]
þe kyng & alle þe barons cam:
where St. Alban lies,
Seint[7] Albon, þer lygges he, [leaf 42.]
þat highte Wyrolhram[6] þe cite.
and where Octa and his host are.
þer com þey to þe toun wyþ wyn;[8]
Octa & hyse were alle þer-yn.
Uther besieges St. Alban's,
þe kyng byseged hit aboute,
Dide make engyns stronge & stoute.
but the town is so strong,
þe toun was þanne so strong & fyn,
Hit hadde no dere[9] of non engyn;
and Octa and his men so bold,
Octa & hyse were ryght[10] bolde,
. þey hadde god folk & syker holde,

---

[1] *to.*
[2] *wild gif non.*
[3] *att þam.*
[4] *He ne left.*
[5] *kirneld.*
[6] *Verolhram.*
[7] *At saynt.* [leaf 57, back, col. 1.]
[8] *þe kyng com þat toun to wyn.*
[9] *doute.*
[10] *futt.*

& seyde, ‘ hit was neuere [to] fere[1]
‘ Of half a dedman lyggyng on[2] bere,
‘ Ne for swyche on to kepe þe[3] gates loken ;
. “ Cowardyse of vs scholde[4] be spoken,
. “ ffor to haue of swylkon drede,
“ þat in a bere to bataille ȝede.”
. Alas ! hit[5] was no Cristen man,
. þes[6] Octa þat so fer wan.
His ouerwenyng & his pryde
Dide þem opene þe gates wyde,
& com stoutly vnto þe byker ;
. Bot *þer* hap was al vnsyker ;[7]
. ffor synne of Octa, fals & fursworn,
Dide al his felawes & hym be lorn ;
ffor slayn was *þere* sire Octa,
& his cosyn sire Ebessa ;
Oþer ynowe ȝit þey skaped,
Vntil Scotland þey hem raped,
& ches þeym a prynce, sire Colgroyn,
þat was sire Octa cosyn.
. Longe þey lendend[8] by þat cost,
. & gedered þere[9] anoþer host.
ʃʃ But for þis noble ouercomyng
þat God gaf Vter oure kyng,
ffor ioie he stirte vp[10] of his bere
Als he hadde be[11] hol & fere,
. Al armed in-ire[n][12] & stel,
& bolded alle his barons wel,
& seyde, þus standynge, & low :[13]

Dicta Vtery.

that they say they've no fear of a half-dead man on a bier :

it would be cowardice to keep the gates shut for him.

For pride they open their gates,

and attack Uther ;

but Octa's sin is their destruction,

and he and Ebessa are also slain.

Some of their men escape to Scotland, and choose Colgrym king.

For joy of this noble victory,

Uther starts from his bier as if he were well,

and says,
“ It is more

---

[1] *it was schame to bere fere.*
[2] *for a half dede man* in *a.*
[3] *For to hold* þer.
[4] *of* þam.
[5] *he.*
[6] þis.
[7] *was not siker.* For the next two lines P. has—
þer *fals trouth did* þam *misfalle.*
þat *fell to wyn he wan* þam *alle.*
[8] *lenged.*
[9] þam.
[10] *out.*
[11] *had bene.*
[12] *Irne.*
[13] *standand & louh.*

honour to lie in a bier, and win,

" More worschip ys, as me þynkeþ[1] now,
" In a bere for to lye,
. " In syknesse wynne þe maistrie,

than be whole, and lie dead on the ground.

" þan be a man hol & sound,
" & schamely lygge ded on[2] ground.

Octa despised me, and

" Octa despised me many a day,
" ffor þat y sek in bedde lay;

held me only a half-dead man; but the half-dead man has slain his whole foes,

. " Skornful wordes þey me bed,
. " & held me bot an half man[3] ded.
" þe half dedman ful felonlyk
" Haþ slayn his fos, boþ hol & quyk.
. " þe hole & quyke ar dede & fled;

and lives still!

. " ȝyt lyueþ þe syke þat lay in bed;

I'll follow the fleers too,

" ȝit schal[4] y folewe þem þat fle!
. " Do dight ȝow alle, & wendeþ wyþ me!
. " ffor no þyng ne schal[5] y leue

and pay hard measure to the destroyers of our lands."

. " þat y ne schal exyle[6] & reue,
. " & ȝelde þem ful harde stoures,
" þat my lond destruyde,[7] & ȝoures."
ſ When þe kyng had seyd his wille,
Hys barons bed hym byleue stille

But the barons persuade Uther to keep still till he is cured, while

Til he were warysched of his syknesse,
Or his penaunce y-swaged lesse.[8]
. þus departed alle þe barouns,

they chase the Saxons.

. & chased after þe Saxouns.

The pursuit ended, the Saxons gather again, and consult how to put Uther to death

When þe chas was al lefte, [leaf 42, col. 2.]
& þe Saxoyns were gadered eft,
þey conseilled hem, & toke þer red,
. How þey might do þe kyng to ded:
þey seide, 'ȝyf þey myghte þe kyng destruye,
' He hadde non eir þat scholde þem noye;
. ' & al so lange as he myght lyue,
' Bataille dirste þey neuere hym gyue,

[1] *men say.*
[2] *schamfully leid to þe.* [leaf 57, back, col. 2.]
[3] *cald me bot a man half.*
[4] *witt.*
[5] *no sekenes satt.*
[6] *I. satt exille þam.*
[7] *My lond þei destroied.*
[8] *or a partie suaged les.*

‘ Bot ȝif hit were þorow tresoun,[1]
‘ To gyue hym venym & [2] poysoun.’ **Consilium** by poison.
ſſ Þen ches þey men þat couþe swilk dede; **explora-** They choose
To go þider þey gaf þem mede: **torum.** assassins,
To Wyrolhram [3] þey bad hem go, bid them go to
& fonde [4] þe kyng for to slo. Verulam, and kill Uther.
In pouere [5] wede þey dide þem dight, The assassins
& þyder þey come byn [6] seuenyght; come in poor
Alle manere langage þey couþe clothing,
. þat semeþ [7] wel in traytours mouþe.
Þey ȝede aboute þe court to spye and spy about
Wher þey myght do þer trayterye. the court.
So yuel þey spedde of [8] þer pray, They can't get
þat þey ne myght come þer þe kyng lay. to the king,
So longe al wey to þe [9] court þey ferde, but they find
þat þey perceyued & often herde that he always
þat for certeyn was hit told, drinks cold
Þe kyng drank nought bot water cold, water
þat was best for his peyne,
& euere of o welle certeyne from a well
þat sprong vp byside his halle, near his hall.
. & beste water forby alle;
Non oþer þyng þought hym so god,
. þat best ageyn his yuel stod.
When þo þat his deþ so sought,
Wiþ þer wyles auailled nought, This well they
Þey wente & venymed þat welle poison,
. Of þat he drank, als þey herd telle.
ſſ When þey had don þat wykked dede, and then leave
Out of toune sone þey ȝede, **De morte** the town,
& ay lystned what [10] þey herd seye, **Vtery.** and listen to hear of the king's death.

[1] *poyson.*
[2] *or.*
[3] *Verolhram.*
[4] *to fond.*
[5] *pure.*
[6] *& com þidir þat day.*
[7] *comes.*
[8] *wele þei sped neuer.* [leaf 58.]
[9] *att gate so long to.*
[10] *were listenand whan.*

How þe kyng schold[2] sone deye.
When Uther drinks the poisoned water, he turns black and dies;
þe kyng, whan he þe wat*er* drank,
He wax al blak, & bolned rank,
& deyde sone yn[3] a þrowe
. Byfor*e* his meyne *þat* hit[4] sowe;
and so do many others that drink of it,
& so dede[5] fele o*þer* mo
þat drank *þer*of, to de*þ* gon go.
till the wile is found out. Then the people fill up the well with earth and stones, and make a hill of it.
. & þis lasted a god whyle
Til men ap*er*ceyued *þat* gyle.
Þen ȝede þe comune alle atones,
& stopped þe welle wyþ er*þe* & stones.
So longe ber þey er*þe* *þer* til,
þat er was welle, now ys an hil.
Uther is
When sire Vter oure kynge
Was ded, & don his endynge,
buried at Stonehenge.
At Stonhenges, as he seyde,
Bysyde his bro*þer* men hym leyde.

∫ Arthurus, filius Vtery, fact*us* est Rex, & coronat*us* ap*ud* Cyrencestriam.

The Erchebishop his conseil held, [leaf, 42 back, col. 1.]
A great Parliament
Of erles, barons, & knyghtes of scheld;
. Ilkon after o*þer* sent
To come to comune Parlement,
& after sire Vteres sone Arthorghe[6]
is held at Cirencester, and Arthur is crowned king by common agreement. He is only 15 years old.
To come to Circestre, þe noble[7] burghe;
& *þer*e bitaught hym þe coroun,
. þorow comun *grau*nt of ilka baroun.
. fful ȝonge *þen* was he, lond to welde;[8]
ffyftene ȝer *þan* was his elde;

---

[1] This is the heading to the page in the MS.
[2] þe *kyng were ded or suld.*
[3] *son within.*
[4] *men þat þei.*
[5] *did.*
[6] *Arthure.*
[7] *to Cecestre.*
[8] ȝ*elde.* [leaf 58, col. 2.]

. At Circestre þat tyme þar
. Was first tyme þat he croune bar;[1]
Some of his þewes y wil descrye;
I trowe y schal nought mykel lye:[2]
ſ Craftily dide he mannes dedes,
Doughtiest knyght at alle nedes;
. Þan of myrþe most was[3] in halle,
. Glad-chered, louely, & lordlyest of alle;[4]
Ageyn þe proude, proud herted[5] was he;
Ageyn þe meke, debonere[6] & ese;
Þe hardiest man hym self to fende,
. Bleþely gaf, largely wold spende;
Þat nedful was, & hym bysought,
Þat he myghte, he werned hym[7] nought;
Mykel loued he ioie & worthly[8] þynge,
Doughti dedes made of menyng;
Nobliche his court he ledde,
Richely alle hyse he fedde;
. Ilka day come tydynges newe;
. Gestes of ioye, wyþ knyghtes trewe;
Ouer alle prynces þe pris he nam
Of curteseye & of wysdam;
Was no þyng so noble of þewes,[9]
As men reden of hym, & schewes.[9]

I'll tell you some of his ways, and think I sha'n't lie much. He is the doughtiest man, the merriest, handsomest, and lordliest. Proud to the proud, gentle to the meek; bold, generous, a helper of the needy, a doer of doughty deeds, and above all princes in courtesy and wisdom.

When he had take þe regalte,
& mad oþ by[10] his wille fre,
'Þat Saxons schulde neuere haue pes
'In stede of his þer þey ought ches,'—
Hys fader & his em þey slow,

Arthur swears the Saxons shall never have peace in his land.

---

[1] *croune on hede nouht he ne bare.*
[2] Noiant ne vous en mentirai, *Wace*, ii. 39. l. 9250.
[3] *Man of myrth most.*
[4] *& glad to gle his gestis alle.*
[5] *man.*
[6] *suete.*
[7] *warned he.*
[8] *worþi.*
[9] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines. Wace has for them,
"Et de valor et de largece."
ii. 40, l. 9264.
[10] *an othe he mad.*

& oþer wo þey wroughte y-now,—
Arthur summons his folk, He dide somoune þe folk, & fette;
Largely he gaf, & wel þem hette, 9776
. & bad hem be redy wyþ hym to wende:
passes York and meets the Saxons, under Colgrym, with the Scots and Picts, þey passed ȝork toward[1] þe norþ ende.
Colgrym of Saxons was[2] cheuetayn
Syn Octa was at Wyrolhram slayn; 9780
ſ þe Scottische men wer at his cry, ſ Colgrim princeps Saxonum.
þe Peytes wyþ hem were ay redy
A-geyn Arthur, &[3] al þer myght,
& redy wyþ hym for to fyght. 9784
near the river Douglas. Bysyde þe water of Douglas,
þere þey mette att a pas:
þe partys were bolde, & þoughte wel[4] byde;
Many on wer slayn on ilka syde. 9788
Colgrym is defeated, Desconfit was þer sire Colgrym,
. Vnneþe he scaped[5] wyþ mykel pyn;
and flees to York, Toward ȝork Colgrym fley,
Arthur hym pursued faste & ney;[6] 9792
where Arthur besieges him. ȝork he tok for drede & doute, [leaf 42, back, col. 2.]
& Arþur byseged hym wyþoute.

ſ De Balduk fratre Colgrym.

Colgrim's brother Balduk Colgrim had a broþer on þe se,
Balduk, þat hadde gret meyne; 9796
He abod þe kyng of Alemayne,
. þat cam wyþ host toward Bretayne.
Son hym was told of on & oþer
hears of Arthur's besieging York, þat Arþur byseged Colgrim[7] his broþer, 9800
How in bataille [he] was[8] disconfit.
. To londe he drow hym þenne as[9] tyt:

---

[1] *to.* [2] *After* þat *Octa.*
[3] *at.*
[4] þat *wele wild.* [leaf 58, back.]
[5] *vnneþis fled he.*
[6] *folowed bi bank & begh.*
[7] *had biseged.*
[8] *How he was in bataile.*
[9] *drouh futt.*

In a wode by þat cost,
ffyue mile Balduk busched[1] fro þe host;
& many were in his compayny,
Six þousand armed redy,
þat scholde haue stolen þat ylke nyght
Vpon Arþur, al redy dight.
A man perceyued þer enbuschment,
& til Arþur þe bodeword sent.
When Arþur wyste þat þey wer þer,
He calde to consail þe Erl Cador
þat was lord of Cornewaille:
Hys lyf to lese ne wold he faille.
. " Cador," he seyde, " Balduk wyþ gyle
. " Ys enbusched fro vs four[2] myle.
" Tak sex hundred of gode knyghtes,
" þre þousand oþer,[3] ȝyf þou myghtes;
" Al vnwarned on þem falle,
. " Lightly may þou wynne þem alle."
. Sire Cador dight þem al redy,
& wente wyþoute noyse &[4] cry.
. Al vnwarned right þore þey ware;
Sore[5] to smyte wold he nought spare;
þe most del was slayn of[6] þat frape,
Vnneþes myghter[7] any a-scape;
ȝyf any of hem ascape myght,
þe derknesse[8] saued hem þat nyght,
& wode letted þem to renne;[9]
. þe redy wey couþ þey nought kenne.[9]
ſ Balduk fledde, & durst nought byde,
ffro busche to busche[10] on ilka syde;
Lorn he hadde[11] his men ilkon,

9804 and puts 6,000 men in ambush,

to attack Arthur at
9808 night.

Arthur is told of this wile.

9812 He bids Earl Cador

9816 take a force,

and fall on
9820 Balduk's men when unarmed.

Cador does so,

9824

and slays more than half the Saxons.

9828 A few escape by help of the darkness and a wood.

Balduk flees from bush to
9832 bush,

---

[1] *he bussed.*
[2] *es bussed hiþen bot fyue.*
[3] de la geude (foot-soldiers), *Wace*, ii. 42, l. 9317.
[4] *or.*
[5] *wele.*
[6] *More þan half was slayn.*
[7] *myght.*
[8] *mirknes.* [leaf 58, back, col. 2.]
[9] P. leaves out these lines.
[10] *busk to busk.*
[11] *lost he had.*

and doesn't know how to help,
or to get to, his brother Colgrym.
So, as he can sing and harp,
he feigns himself a juggler, and comes to Arthur's camp with head and beard all shaven.
He gets to the wall of York, and Colgrym's men let down a rope,
and draw him into the city.
They want to escape; but soon hear that their ally Cheldrik has landed with a great host.

Conseil coupe he take at non
How he moughte his brop*er* helpe,—
. Of gret los[1] mighte he make his ȝelpe,— 9836
ffayn he wolde wyp hym speke,
. Bot of his enemis ne[2] myght him wreke.
He coupe of notes & of layes,
& of harpe he knew pasayes;[3] 9840
He feyned hym as a iogelour,[4]
& cam to pe ost of kyng Arpour;
His hed, his berd, he dide al[5] schaue;
Men wend a[6] were a folted knaue; 9844
. Als a gleman gan he synge,
& coupe a p*ar*ty of harpyng.
Longe he ȝede p*us* aboute,
Non ne wende of gyle ne doute; 9848
. Bot he was bope wyly & sley;[7]
pe wal he neighede ful ney;[7]
. He spak to peym, & pey hym knew, [leaf 43.]
Doun to hym a rop pey prew, 9852
& he knytte hym p*er*-inne al,
& pey drow hym ou*er* pe wal.
Netheles pey were at meschef,
ffor to ascape pem were ful lef; 9856
Bot sone com pem tydynges gode,
p*at* sex hundred schipes on flode[8]
Out of Alemayne were comen,
& in Scotland had hauen nomen. 9860

---

[1] *of tynsett* (loss).
[2] *he ne.*
[3] *att pe saies.*
[4] *him a Ioguloure.* (comme jonglère, MS. du Roi, 27; come Juglères, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; *Wace*, ii. 43, l. 9336.)
[5] *half.* (par mi, *Wace*, ii. 43, l. 9341.)
[6] *he.*
[7] *slehi . . . neghi.*
[8] *schippes gude.* (à cinq cent nes, *Wace*, ii. 44, l. 9355.)

¶ De potestate Cheldryk contra Arthurum.

. Til Arthur cam bode als quyk,[1] — Arthur too hears of Cheldrik's coming,
þat þider schold come þe child[2] Cheldrik
. Wyþ mykel people[3] on ilka syde,
þat Arthur schold nought dur abyde. 9864
þe beste frendes þat were hym couþ, — and is advised by his friends,
Conseilled hym turne toward þe South,
& gyue no bataille at þat tyme, — not to give battle at once,
. Bot let his folk sprede & ryme: 9868
" Hys folk ys fresche[4] & ful auster
" & twyes so fele[4] as we haue her;
" & ȝyf þey folewe vs ouer Humber, — but to retreat over the Humber, and get fresh folk there, while Cheldrik's men grow less.
" þe sonner schul we þem a-comber; 9872
" þen schal vs come folk ay fresche,
" & þey schul euere wexe þe lesse."
To þat conseil he gaf god tent,
& to Londone right fro þenne[5] he went. 9876 So Arthur retreats to London.
¶ þe folk hadde sorewe & wo, — His men are much afraid;
. þe drede[6] þat al to deþe schold go;
þat hadde castele, þider þey drow;
. þat non ne hadde, þey hem slow; 9880 some are slain,
. To holes & hilles men crep[7] for nede; — others hide themselves.
. þat sykerest was, had ful gret drede.[8]

¶ Hic Arthurus misit pro Ohele, Rege Mynoris Brytannie.

But men gaf Arthur in conseil, — Arthur sends to his cousin Ohel, king of Britany,
To sende for his cosyn Ohel,[9] 9884
Kyng of Bretayne, his sister sone:
By lettre his nedes gan hym mone,

---

[1] *com tiþinges att quike.*
[2] *com kyng.*
[3] *folk mykitt.*
[4] *fett.*
[5] *fro þiþen to london.* [leaf 59.]
[6] *þei dred.*
[7] *crept.*
[8] *had grete nede.*
[9] *Oheile.*

and prays for help,

. & preyed hym of help a stounde,
. Or elles he scholde go to grounde:[1]
" Bot y *som* help of *þe* now haue,
" Or of som *oþer*, my lond to saue,
" Wyþynne a þrowe hit schal be lorn,
or he will lose his land. . " *þat* oure auncestres han had byforn;
" & schame hit were til oure lynage
" So sone to lese myn *her*itage."

Ohel at once starts with all his forces,

fful wel he[2] vnderstod his nede.
Wyþ al þe poer *þat* he myght spede
He made no long soio*ur*nynge,
Hors & harneys[3] he dide bryng,

15,000 knights and other men,

ffyftene þousand helmes clers,[4]
Wyþoute *se*riauntz & archers.
God wynd þey hadde *þat* gan hem dryue,

and lands at Southampton. Arthur is rejoiced,

At South*aum*ptone þey dide vp ryue.
Mikel ioye made sire Arthurgh,[5]
& feire receyued hym in toun & burgh.
Wolde þey make no lenger[6] delay,
. ffor þey nadde ney*þer* drede naffray;[7]

summons his folk, and they come.

Bot sende messegers [ful] smert,[8] [leaf 43, col. 2.]
& folk com til hym wyþ ful god hert.

∫ De bello apud Lyncoln*iam* per Arthur*um*.

The Britons and Bretons march quietly to Lincoln, which Cheldrik is besieging,

To Lyncolne wente ilka baroun,
ffor Cheldryk hadde biseged þe toun.
Wyþoute noise, sp[e]che, or cry,
þey come to Lyncolne al stillely;[9]
No scaþe ȝit þe toun had taken,
. ffor þey wyþynne held *þem* wel waken.

---

[1] The Petyt MS. leaves out this line.
[2] *Ohel.*
[3] *armes.*
[4] Douse mil orent chevaliers. *Wace*, ii. 46, l. 9392.
[5] *kyng Arthoru.*
[6] *long.*
[7] *Þei had no drede of non affray.*
[8] MS. *snert.*
[9] *stilli.*

Þe host was aryued on a þrowe,
Bot horn ne trompe dide non[1] blowe,
. Ne oþer dene in[2] none manere,
. Til alle were splayed ilka banere,
. Alle þey wroughte at on a-vys,
& priuely þe felle o[3] þeyr enemys.
Neuere ȝyt byfore of no Saxon
Was er[4] so gret destruccion,
In no stude þer men wyst whare;
. ffor sex þousand wer slayn þare.
Þey caste[5] þer armes, þer horses let,
Naked þey fledde on þer fet,
In to þe water faste þey ran,
Of þeym were drenkled many a[6] man;
Þe Bretons on þem were euere prest,
Þey suffred þem nought[7] to haue no rest.
A wode byside hight Calydoun,
. Þat now men calleþ hit ffyskertoun;
By þe water side þe wode was set,
Þer-inne had þey gret recet.
Þe Bretons byhalued þe wode aboute,
. Þat no Saxon dirst come wyþoute;
Arthur dide hit loke so streit;
ffor þe[8] nyght he dredde deseit,
He dide hewe tres & pykke,
& palysed hit aboute ful þykke;
Tre ouer tre, stok ouer stok,[9]
As þikke as men myghte hem schok.[9]
His ost was logged to þat oþer[10] party,
Þat non com in, ne ȝede forby.
Þo in þe wode hadde no mete,

arrive there,
9916
9920 and fall privily on the Saxons. Never before was such a slaughter!
9924 6,000 Saxons are slain,
9928 and others drowned.
Some take refuge in the
9932 wood Calydon, now Fiskerton.
The Britons
9936
surround the wood with
9940 a palisade
9944 so that no one can come out. The Saxons in the wood have

[1] Þat *trompe ne horn non did.* [leaf 59, col. 2.]
[2] *dyn on.*
[3] *priuely felt on.*
[4] *are.*
[5] *kest.*
[6] *was dronkeld many.*
[7] Þei *þoled* þam.
[8] *for on* þe.
[9] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[10] *on* þe *to*þer.

no food, can provide none, on account of their rapid flight.

. Ne non þem broughte þat mought out gete,
Ne nought had purueyd þer byforn,
Neyþer bred, [ne] mele ne corn;
. Þey were so hasted, faste þey fley,[1]
. Bot helpless weren fer or ney.[1]

For three days they taste nothing, and then, seeing death before them,

Þre dayes hit was þey nought ete,
. Ne nought drank þat was wete;
Þey sey wel alle þat þey schuld deye,
Þorow force myghte þey make no weye.
Þey toke conseil oþer weys,

offer to leave their arms, go quietly to their ships,

‘ To leue armes & harneys,
‘ In pes to þer schypes to go
. ‘ Wyþouten any more wo,

give hostages,

‘ & þey schold leue þem god hostage,[2]
. ‘ þer best men of noblest lynage,[3]

and pay Arthur tribute.

‘ & gyue hym truwage ilka ȝer
‘ In pes, wyþouten wo & wer.’

Arthur agrees to this,

takes hostages of them,

And Arþur gaf hem þe grauntyse
ffor to wende forþ on þat wyse:
Ostage he tok atte remenaunt,[4] [leaf 43, back, col. 1.]
Þat þey schold holde þe couenant;

gives them their ships, and takes their arms.

He deliuered þem schipes wyþoute mo harmes,
& lefte þer robes, & harneys of[5] armes;
Al senglely[6] to schipe þey went,
No þyng was þem gyue ne lent;
. & ȝit he dide gret curtesy
. þat wyþ þe lyf gaf hem merci.

¶ De reuercione Regis Cheldryk apud Totenes.

Cheldrik and his men set sail,

· Þey set vp sail, þe wynd hem blew,
So fer þei seyled þat non þem knew.
When þey were so fer born

[1] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[2] *suld leue gode ostages.*
[3] þer *lynages.*
[4] One stroke too many in the second MS. *n.*
[5] *herneis &.* [leaf 59, back.]
[6] *Sengli.*

Þat we of þeym þe sight had lorn,
ȝut þoughte þey more treson & gyle,
þey turnde þer flute wyþynne a while
Bytwix Ingeland & Normandye,
þey dighte eft hydeward þer nauie,
& entred in til Dertemuthe ;[1]
. Neyþer fond þey arest ne[2] rescue ;
At Totenes toke þey hauen &[3] lond ;
Al ȝede to deþ þat by-forn hem[4] fond.
In þe contres þey spredde aboute ;
To go to deþ[5] al was in doute ;
Robes þey refte, armure þey tok,[6]
Tounes brente, houses doun schok.[6]
þe contres trauersed þey ouerþwert,
. Ouer al was wo, & no whar[7] quert ;
Deneschire,[8] & Somersete,
& a partie of Dorsete,
Al þey wastes,[9] & robbed þe god ;
Was þer non þat hem wyþstod ;
þe knyghte þat aughten haue[10] ben at hom,
To Scotland wyþ Arþur þey nom.
þe Saxons dide so mykel scaþe,
þey robbed in to þe toun of Baþe ;
Bot þey of Baþe held þem wyþoute,
. & þey byseged hit alle aboute.
ſ Arthur werred vpon þe Scottes,
. ffor þey had don as foule[11] sottes,
Holpen[12] Colgrim & Cheldryk,
& ageyns þer lord do so wyk ;

9976 but afterwards traitorously turn back,
9980 land at Dartmouth,
9984 kill the inhabitants,
9988 rob, burn, and destroy the towns.
9992 They waste Devon, Somerset and Dorset, —
9996 the English knights being with Arthur in Scotland,—
10,000 and besiege Bath.
When Arthur hears of this in Scotland,
10,004

---

[1] *Dertmue.*
[2] *was* þer *non mad* þam *rescue.*
[3] *Toteneis* þei *toke.*
[4] *to dede bifor* þam.
[5] *dede.*
[6] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[7] *& noure.*
[8] *Douerschire.* (Neversire, MS. du Roi, 27 ; Venescire, MS. du Roi, 7515[3.3.] Colb. ; *Wace*, ii. 50, l. 9480.)
[9] *wasted.*
[10] *fett haf.*
[11] þei *did as fole.*
[12] *helped.*

Bot when he wyste þat þe Saxons
. Brek couenaunt, & dide tresons,
& hadde byseged þe toun of Baþe,
. Hei seyde, "þe Saxoyns false me ful raþe."

.War. þer ostages ilkon he heng 10,009

he hangs the Saxon hostages,

. Heye on galewes, wyþ rop & [1] streng.
. When *þer* ostages to deþ wer done,

and marches south,

Toward þe souþ he hyed hym sone 10,012
Ohel his cosy[n], & his meyne,

leaving Ohel sick in Aclud (Dumbarton),

He lefte sek in a cite,
In Aclud, *þer*-inne he lay,
. þat was þe name by þat day. 10,016
Wyþ al þe folk Ohel myght spare,

to raise the siege of Bath.

Toward Baþe, Arþur was ȝare.
Cheldrykes sege he wolde remue,
His men wyþynne he þoughte rescue. 10,020

Arthur halts his men near a wood, to arm and arrange them.

In a playn by a wode syde
Arthur dide his folk abide,
To arme þem, & til ordeyne
Whylk schuld go, & wyþ whilk seyne. 10,024
Hym self was armed fynly wel [leaf 43, back, col. 2.]

He himself is armed in mail foot-, leg-, thigh-, and knee-pieces, breeches, hauberk, lower, upper, and side arm-pieces, and an aketon,

[2] Wyþ sabatons, & spores, & iaumbers of stel,
. Doublet & qùysseux, wiþ poleyns ful riche,
. Voydes, breche of maille, wyþ paunz non liche
Hauberk wiþ plates y-burnuscht ful wel, 10,029
. Vaumbras & rerbras, wyþ coters of stel,
. þer-opon an aketon wyþ stof & al sylk,

and is girt with Caliburn, his good sword made in Ramesey, 10 feet long,

. His cote of armes *þer*-on; in world was no swylk; [2]
& *þen* girt[3] wyþ Caliborne, þat gode brond; 10,033
. A bett*e*re cam neu*e*re in no kynges hond;
Ten fote longe was þen þe blade,
In [4] Ramesey & o*þer* stedes þe m*e*rke ys ymade; [5]

---

[1] *with a.* [leaf 59, back, col. 2.]

[2–2] *with gode chambres of Iren & stele.*
& a Hauberk þat *non was sui lk. abouen an acton mad of silk.*
For *swylk*, l. 10,032, L. has *swyik.*

[3] *& gird.*

[4] *Im* in the MS.

[5] *in Rameseie þe merk is made.* (En l'ile d'Avalon fu faite, *Wace*, ii. 52, l. 9516.)

ffro þe hilte vnto þe pomel
. Was twenti vnche large, meten ful wel;[1]
þe brede of þe blade was seuen inche & more; seven inches broad,
. Wond was hit y þat world smite ful[2] sore.[3] sore-smiting.
An helm he had on his hed, no betere vp on molde; His helm is of jewels
[5]A riche corounal wiþ perre, al of brent golde,
þe nasel & bendeles of gold ful bryght, and gold; on it a dragon.
þer-opon a dragoun selcouþ of sight;[5]
Aboute his nekke heng his scheld, On his shield Prydwenne
. Pryd-wenne[6] hit highte, many hit byheld;
þer-on was purtrayd, next hym by, is an image of the Virgin.
þe ymage of oure swete leuedy,
In nede to byholde hure face,
Ageyn his enemis to haue grace.
Hys spere was gret,[7] he cald hit Ron,[8] His spear Ron
Wyþ an hed by-fore, ful noble þer-on;
Hit was long, & swyþe gret,[9]
þer was no scheld þat he ne þorow schet.[9] will pierce any shield.

¶ De recuperacione belly & montis per Arthurum.

When Arthur[10] was armed wel, Arthur bids his folk
& his folk dight ilka del,
Al softly he bad þem go,

---

[1] *Tuelue Inche grete þat tyme as felt.*

[2] *I trow* þat *wild smyte.*

[3] The Petyt MS. adds two lines not in Wace, ii. 52,—

Arthure luffed it wele Inouh.
Mishapped him neuer whan he it drouh.

[4] *om* in the MS. P. has, *His helme was gode non better on.*

[5–5] þe *naselt befor was all of golde.*
þe *bendeles of gold burnyst bright.*
a dragon aboun selcouth in sight.

[6] *pridwen.*

[7] *his lance grete.* [leaf 60.]

[8] Roit, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; Roil, MS. du Roi, 7515[3.3.] Colb.; Rederon, MS. de Ste.-Genevieve, Y, f. 10; *Wace*, ii. 54, note *c.*; Ron, *Galf. Mon.* vii. 2.

[9] P. leaves out these lines.

[10] þe *kyng.*

advance in an unbroken line.
Þat non schulde byfore oþer þro
Til þey come vnto þe bataille.
The Saxons flee to a hill,
Bot þe Saxons durst nought assaille,
Bot fledde vntil an hey hyl,
þat non myghte wel wynne þem til.
and hold it like a castle.
Þey helde þat hil als castel strong,
& defended þem ferly[1] long,
As þey were closed wyþ[2] a wal;
Bot atte þe laste hit stod no stal.
Arthur dislikes this delay,
. Arthur saw þe hil was taken,
& longe þere þey held hem[3] waken;
Tene hym þoughte þey fro hym brak,
& til his men þus he spak:
and says,
. ∫∫ "Lordynges," he seide, "þis hil ys hey,
"This hill is high;
. " & we may nought wel com þem ney
. " Bot hit were þorow long destresse.
but we must attack it at once.
. " þe lengþe fayn woldy schorte[4] lesse;
. " Ageyn to Scotland woldy[5] be,
. " Ohel my cosyn, fayn woldy[5] se."
. He bad[6] þem wyþ wordes smert
. þat [þey] schold alle[7] be gode of hert:
There are the foes who have wasted our land,
" Lo! here byforn vs þan ar þo
" þat han vs wrought ful muche wo!
. " þyse are þat han wasted our lond,[8]
. " þat riche was, & farre vs fond![8]
slain our ancestors,
" þise are þat slowe our auncessours,[8]
" Als wel myne als ȝoures![8]
assailed us!
" þis ar þo þat vs assailled,[8]
" & often in werre vs trauailled![8]
Take vengeance on them!
" Venge vs now we se hem here! [leaf 44.]
" Let hem abye[9] our godes dere!

10,060 10,064 10,068 10,072 10,076 10,080 10,084 10,088

[1] *fulle.*
[2] *with in.*
[3] *& long mot þei hald þam.*
[4] *wald .I. schorten.*
[5] *wald .I.*
[6] *monessed.*
[7] *& bad þam.*
[8] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[9] *late þam bie.*

" Lat þeym bye þey toke byforn,[1]
" & let hem now lese, for we haue lorn![1]
" & y schal ȝelde, ȝyf þat y may, — I will pay them
" þe fals oþ[2] þey swore þe toþer day; — for their false
" þer turnyng y wole rescowe,[3] — oath, and turning back to
" þat þey come til Dertemuwe.[3] — Dartmouth,
" ȝyf y may ought wyþ hem mele, — if I can but get
" Hand of hand strokes schul[4] dele, — at them."
" þey schul neuere eft haue power
" In bataille to neighe me ner!"

∫ De occisione Saxonum apud Bathoniam.

Wyþ þat word he smot his stede, — Arthur spurs
Byforn þem alle vpward he ȝede; — up the hill,
Hys launce ful wel he bar þe point,
Hys scheld byfore ful wel was ioynt;
þe firste Saxon þat wyþ hym met, — kills the first
His dayes were no lenger set. — Saxon he meets,
þen bygan Arþur to crye,
" A-geyn þes Payens, helpe,[5] Marie!" — calls on Mary
. & bar on hem þe breste byfore. — to help,
. After hym þe Bretons gon bore:
" þe firste strok þann ys myn!"
On he mette, & m[a]de hys fyn;
þen myghte men se þe Bretons strike,
& felle þe Saxons doughtilyke.[6]
. Arthur þen egred þem[7] so wyþ sawe, — and so cheers
. ffo[r] schame ne myghte þey hem[8] wyþdrawe; — on his men

[1] For these lines the Petyt MS. has—
þei haf don vs many trauaile
quyte þam þat þei scored on taile.
[2] *þat othe.*
[3] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[4] *to hand strokes.*
[5] ?MS. *helper.* P. *help me.* [leaf 60, col. 2.]
[6] *felled þe sessons douhtilike:* and P. adds—
Ilkon wald haf bien þe breste
& at his power Arthure neste.
[7] *& he þam egred.*
[8] *non mot þam.*

þey byhalued þem aboute,
that they charge through and rout the Saxons, while Arthur, with Caliburn, & ryden þorow þe Saxons route. 10,116
On ilka syde doun þey fley,
& eu*er*e Arthur vpward stey
Wyþ Caliborn drawen in his hond;
Was non his dynt þ*at* myghte wyþstond,
þ*at* hym ne byhoued nedly deye; 10,121
þ*er*-fore þey fledde, & gaf hym weye;
kills 400 Saxons more than all the rest of his army do. . So fele he slow, & broughte til schame,
ffor þ*us* þey counted þ*at* couþe þ*em* ame, 10,124
ffour[1] hundred he slow, mo allone
þan his host dide ilkone.
Balduk and Colgrim are slain; and Cheldrik, with some Saxons, flees towards Totness. Ded was Balduk, slayn was Colgrym,
& Cheldrik fledde wyþ mykel pyn; 10,128
Toward þer schipes to Toteneys
. þey fledde, & lefte al[2] o þ*er* harneys;
. Lyghtly to go, wightly to fle,
. þey leften al, & fledde to þe se. 10,132
Arthur tells Cador to pursue Cheldrik Arthur p*er*ceyued wel ynow
þ*at* to þ*er* schipes þey fledde & drow;
þ*en* bad he sire Cador of Cornewaille
Take ten þousand of gode app*ar*aille;[3] 10,136
. & after hem swyþe hey spedde,
. & ou*er*toke þo þ*at* fledde;
while he goes to Scotland to rescue Ohel from the Scots. ffor Arthur to Scotland went:
Ohel a messeg*er* hym sent, 10,140
& seyde 'þe Scottes byseged þe castel,
' & hadde ner taken sire Ohel.'
Cheldrik fledde til his nauye;
Cador goes by a byway to Totness, But Cador was queynte & wyly; 10,144
By a bywey[4] to Totenes lay,
Cador & hyse toke þ*at* way,
And to þe hauen wel raþer[5] cam [leaf 44, col. 2.]

---

[1] *fyue.*
[2] þer.
[3] *aparaile.*
[4] *bigate.* [leaf 60, back.]
[5] *ore.*

Er any Saxon to schipe nam.
Sire Cador, þe mene folk he tok,
He gaf *þem* þe schipes for to loke,
& bad þem ryde[1] fer fro þe land,
. *þat* Saxons ne raughte no bot wyþ[2] hand.
Syþen went he wyþ alle his ost,
. & y þe contres kepte þe cost,
& kepte *þem* eue*r*e as þey come;
By ten, by twelue,[3] vm-while þey nome;
Armure & robes hadde þey cast,
þat þey were lyght to fle right fast;
þey hadde but swerdes on *þer* hypes,
Sone to come vnto *þer* schipes.
Als þey passed þe water of Teyne,
Were þey war of Cadores seyne.[4]
When þey hit sey, þey held hem schent,
Hider & þyder a-wey þey glent.
As þey tok þe hil of Teynewyk,[5]
þer was he slayn, þe kyng Cheldryk;
þe o*þe*re *þat* wende wel haue scaped,
To deþe were þey al to-fraped;
þo *þat* ascaped to þe hauen vnslayn,[6]
. When þey com *þe*re, þey were vnfayn,[6]
. ffor þey kept [hem] atte brynke,
In to þe wate*r* þey dide he*m* synke.
. On alle halue wax þem wo;
To wodes & hilles fledde so*m*me of þo,
. þeym to hyde, *þat* non ne wyst,
Tyl þey deyde for hunger & þirst.[7]

10,148 gets there before the Saxons, and sends their ships out to sea.
10,152
He then watches for the Saxons as they come in by tens and
10,156 twelves,
armed only with their
10,160 swords.
10,164
Cheldrik is slain, and all the other Saxons are put to
10,168 death,
10,172 drowned,
10,176 or starved.

When Cador had mad þe contre clene, Cador hies
þat no Saxon were more sene,

---

[1] *houe.* [2] *in.*
[3] Dui et dui, trois et trois, *Wace*, ii. 58, l. 9616.
[4] *Cador syne.*
[5] *tenwik.*
[6] The Petyt MS. transposes these lines.
[7] *thrist.*

to Scotland, and finds Arthur and Ohel in Aklud,

He hyed hym faste toward Scotland.
In Aklud, Arthur he fond,
& Ohel wyþ hym, his cosyn,
Of his seknesse warisched fyn.

the Scots

þe Scottes [1] þer sege remued
When Arthur cam, Ohel rescued;
Al þe contre gan þey weyue,
& fledde a-wey vn to Murreyue,[2]

having fled to Moray,

. *þer* þey hoped best to be,

to a strong city, which they hope to hold against Arthur;

. & closed þem in a strong cite;
þere þey hoped Arthur to byde,[3]
A-geyns þem what wolde bytyde.[3]
Arthur wyste hit *cer*teynly
þey gadered ageyns hym party;

but on his advancing, they flee to the wondrous Loch Lumine (Lomond),

He hyed hym þide[r]ward ful ȝerne,
& þey herd hit seye, & fledde ȝit ferne
Right vnto þe Louh Lumyne:[4]
. A selcouþ þyng hit ys to see.

¶ De admirac*ione* Lac*us* Lumine in Scocia.

wherein are 60 isles,

[5] ¶ In þat louh ar sexti iles—
. In þo þe dwelte longe [6] whyles—

and in each isle a rock,

& ilk an yle haþ a roch*er* [7]
. & a water dep & cler.
In þo roches foules reste,

where eagles breed, and when any woe or war befalls,

& ernes brede, & make *þer* neste;
ȝyf any sorewe or any wo,
Or any werre or any þro,

---

[1] *sessons.*

[2] Murif, *Wace*, ii. 59, l. 9652.

[3] P. leaves out these two lines. [leaf 60, back, col. 2.]

[4] En l'estang de Lymonoi, *Wace*, ii. 60, l. 9660.

[5] The next fourteen lines are not represented in the MS. du Roi, 27, but are in four of De Lincy's other MSS., du Roi, 73, Cangé; 7515[3-3]. Colb.; de l'Ars. 17, B.-L.; de Ste.-Genev. Y. f. 10. *Wace*, ii. 61, note *a*.

[6] *in þo þei duelled long.*

[7] *rochere.*

Schal in þat lond tyde or gynne,
Alle þe ernes þat brede þer-inne
Schul crie & ȝelle, & make rere, [leaf 44, back, col. 1.]
þat al þe contre aboute schal here,
& feighte to-gydere four daies or fyue,
. & al to-pulle þe feþeres,[1] & ryue.
þys louh, Luminie men calle,
Sexti watres þer-inne falle,
& alle dwelle þer-inne ilkon;
Non rennes out to þe se but on.
Wyþynne þis lough had þey dwellynge,[2]
þe Scottes, for Arthur oure kynge.[2]
Arthur byseged alle þe loughes,
& gadered botes, chalans,[3] & trowes,
. þat non myghte brynge þem ne gyue
. Mete ne drynke, wyþal to lyue.
So wyþynne a lytel while
So mykel hunger was yn þe ile,
Men sey[4] by hundredes & þousandes
Ly[5] ded for hunger on þe sandes;
. Men seye þem go & falle right doun[2]
. ffor hunger, þat was lord of toun.[2]

these eagles cry and yell,

and fight for four or five days.

Sixty streams also fall into Loch Lumine.

Here Arthur besieges the Scots, collecting all the boats and barges so that no food may get to the Isles.

The Scots soon die by hundreds and thousands.

Gwylomar,[6] þe Irische kynge,
. Com ouer þe se wyþ many lordyng
To helpe þe Saxons[7] in þer nede.
. Lytel, y wene, myghte þey[8] spede!
He aryued[9] vp by þat cost
þer Arthur lay, & al his host.

The Irish king lands with a force to help the Saxons;

---

[1] þer *fedres*.
[2] P. leaves out these lines.
[3] The heavily-laden boats that navigate the Seine from Paris to Havre, are still called *chalans*. De Lincy, *Wace*, ii. 61, note [1].
[4] *sauh* þam.
[5] *lig*.
[6] Diramaurus, *Wace*, (ii. 61, l. 9690), MS. du Roi, 27; Gillamurus, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; Ghillomarus, MS. du Roi, 7515[3.3.] Colb.
[7] *scottis*.
[8] *he mot*.
[9] *ryued*.

but Arthur soon drives them back to Ireland.

Arthur & hyse a-geyn hym nomen,
Bot þe Irische wer sone ouer-comen;
He dide þe Irische wyþ force to fle
A-geyn til Irland, ouer þe se. 10,236

¶ De vastacione Scocie, & lamentacione Scotorum.

Arthur keeps up his siege of the Isles; but bishops

But ȝyt Arthur nought ne left
þat he þe Scottes byseged eft.
þen come þe byschopes of þe land,
& religious relikes bryngand, 10,240

and ladies barefoot and bareheaded,

And preyed Arthur of mercy;
& als wyþ hem com many ledy,
Alle barfot, & bare þe[1] heued,
þer her to-rent,[2] or litel leued; 10,244

with young children, come weeping,

ȝonge childre wyþ hem brought,
& reuly gretyng,[3] mercy bysought,

fall at Arthur's feet, and pray him to have mercy:

Mekely fulle doun til his fet.
Byschops, abbotes, & ladis[4] alle gret, 10,248
& asked hym 'mercy & pes,
'To saue þo childre helples:
" þyse ladies þat þis sorewe haue,
" ȝeld þem þer lordes, þer lyues[5] to saue! 10,252

" Give us those who live! Let not all die!

" ȝeld vs þo þat are on lyue![6]

" Let hem nought alle to depe dryue![6]

Let us not buy so dear the Saxons' felony! Not by our will did they harm you.

" Let vs nought alle so dere a-bye[7]
" þe false Saxons felonye! 10,256
" ffor hit was neuere by our wille
" þat þey com here to do ȝow ylle!
" Of þer comyng had we no frame,

They harmed us;

" þer dwellyng dide vs mykel schame; 10,260

---

[1] *& att bare.* [leaf 61.]

[2] vestéures descirécs, *Wace*, ii. 62, l. 9706, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé.

[3] *gretand.*

[4] *abot &.*

[5] *life.*

[6] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

[7] *bie.*

" Al day were we wyþ hem noyed,
" Oure lyf[e]lode [1] þey ete & stroyed, — eat our living,
" Catel þey bar a-wey, & spended; — and spent our
" Had we non heued [2] þat vs defended! 10,264 goods,
" þat we þem halp,[3] ys no trespas; [lf. 44, bk., col. 2.]
" Maugre oures, forsoþe hit was; — in spite of us,
" þeir force was more þan oures, — being stronger than we.
" We nyste of non to haue socoures. 10,268
" ȝe wot þey are of þe lawe Payen, — They are
" & we, as ȝe, ar men Crysten; — Pagans, we Christians:
" þer-fore þey dide vs þe more wo. — therefore they
" At ilka tyme, boþe to & fro, 10,272 did us woe.
" Wo dude þey vs! & worse haue [we] [4] now! — But we suffer
" & þat ys non honur til ȝow, — worse now from you,
" Vs to slo þat crye mercy,
" & deye for hunger so deolfoly. 10,276 and die for hunger.
" þou hast vs wonnen; lef vs þe lyf, — Leave us life!
" Lord to lady, husebande to wyf!
" & gyue vs lond on for to lyue! — Give us land to
" Trewe hostage we wol þe gyue. 10,280 live on!
" þorow righte reson þou scholde vs spare,
" ffor we ar Cristen as ȝe are; — We are
" & ȝyf we deye in swylk destresse, — Christians, so are you.
" Cristendam ys mykel þe lesse; 10,284 Destroy not
" þan ys þy peryl mykel þe [5] more, — Christendom! Wrath not
" þat þou wraþest [6] Crist so sore." — Christ!"

Arthur wiste þey seide reson, — Arthur
& wel excused hem of þe Saxon. 10,288
ffor byschope & clerkes þat hym bysought,
& þe relikes þat þey brought,
& of þe lauedies [7] hym rewed sore, — pities the ladies
& ȝonge childre þat þer wore, 10,292 and young children,

[1] *lifelade.*
[2] *we had no hede.*
[3] servis, *Wace*, ii. 63, l. 9736.
[4] *wars haf we.*
[5] *þe peritt myketl.* [leaf 61, col. 2.]
[6] *wrethis.*
[7] *ladies.*

and grants them all they ask.

He *grau*nted *þem* alle *þat* þey ches,
Lyf & lymes, & his pes.

Ohel tells Arthur

ʃ Ohel byheld þe lough, *þat* lake, **De primo**
& til Arthur *þer*-of he spak : **Lacu in Scoc*ia*.**

that he wonders at the Lake, its isles,

" Arthur," he seyde, " y haue m*er*ueille
" Of þis lough & of þis entaille :
" So many yles, y telde sexty,
" & ilkon haþ a roch*e* hey;

and eagles, with their cry.

" & so manye ernes nestes,
" & *þer cri* þat ilkon kestes:

Ohel thinks it a wonder.

" A wonder me þynkeþ hit[1] may be,
" Of ilka þyng *þat* y se!" **De secu*n*do**

But Arthur tells him of a greater :

ʃ *þen* seyde Arthur vnto Ohel, **Lacu ibid*em*.**
" Of þis ne m*er*ueilleþ me no del;[2]
" But of an oþ*er* ys selcouþ mor*e*,

a 20-foot square Loch with four corners,

" & so schaltow seye whe*n* þou comes þore :
" þat lough ys here yn þys contre,
" Cornerd as a ch*e*ker quarre ;
" Twenty fot of lengþe, as þe[3] brede, es,
" & fyue fot hit haþ of depnes ;

in each of which is a different kind of fish ;

" In þe wat*er*, atte[4] corners,
" Are fisches inne foure man*ers*:
" þo *þat* are y *þat* o corner,

and none of the four kinds ever mix with another,

" Neu*er* more come *þat* oþ*er* ner;
" Ne þe fisches alle foure,
" Ne wyþ oþ*er* menge ne voure ;[5]

though there's no partition between them.

" Ne no p*ar*tyng ys *þem* bytwene
" Of erþe ne ston, but water clene,
" Ne oþ*er* þyng *þat* may bywyte,[6]
" þat myghte þ*er* mengyng wyþ-sitte ;

What the reason of it is, Arthur doesn't know.

" I ne wot ȝyf hit be þorow kynde,
" Or craft of clergie, as me*n* may[7] fynde.

---

[1] *þink how it.*
[2] *me mervailes neuer a dele.*
[3] P. has þe, no *as*. " Vint piés de lonc, et vint de lé," *Wace*, ii. 65, l. 9780.
[4] *at foure.*
[5] *meng noure.*
[6] *man may wite.* [leaf 61, back.]
[7] *of clerk þat he mot.*

∫ De tercio lacu v*er*sus Wall*iam* iux*ta*[1] Seuerne.

∫ " Of anoþer ys more selcouþ, [leaf 45.] But a third Lake in Wales, near Severn, is more wondrous still.
" & þat lough ys in þat souþ,
" Toward Walys, bysyde Seuerne.
" When þe flod flowes þider[2] in ȝerne, 10,328 While the flood flows into it, it never rises at all;
" þe water wexes noþyng on hey,
" þan þe flod come neu*er*e þ*er* ney;[3]
" Als longe as flod þ*er*-ynne flowes,[4]
" þe water of þe lough no þyng ne growes,
" In no stede, by bank ne bre, 10,333
" þat any man may p*er*ceiue or se.
" But when þe flod drawes ageyn, but when the flood has ebbed,
" & ys atte þe ebbe[5] certeyn, 10,336
" þ*en*ne bygynnes þe lough to flowe, then the lake begins to rise, and overflows with great waves.
" & ou*er* þe bankes to r*en*ne & rowe;
" Wyþ rysyng[6] wawes, & wyþ grete,
" ffer aboute hym wil he wete. 10,340
" ȝyf hit beo a couþ man of þe contr*e* If a native of the country goes to see it, (with his face towards it,) it runs on him, beats him down, and drowns him.
" þat goþ þider þe water to se,[7]
" & feleþ[8] þe wawes þat so wetes,
" Hit r*en*nes on hym, & doun hym betes.
" Of-ten of þo þat so haue gon, 10,345
" Han be drenkled manion.
" ȝyf any co*n*nyng[9] man of þo But if an artful man goes sideways to it,
" Standeþ still*e*, or sidlyng can[10] go, 10,348
" He may stande on þe brynkes
" Al so lange as hym god þynkes:

---

[1] MS. *iux* with *a* contraction, above. P. has *walliam mirabili.*

[2] *flewes* þer.

[3] *þan þe flode . . . nehie.*

[4] *flewes . . . grewes.*

[5] *& es þe ebbe in.*

[6] *risand.*

[7] Qui véir l'aut, le vis torné, *Wace*, ii. 66, l. 9809; Si gens totius patriæ illius, facie versa, prope astaret, *Galf. Mon.* ix. 7.

[8] *fles.*

[9] *conand.*

[10] *or sidelynges.* Se home i vient, le dos avant, Les talons tornés, reculant, &c., *Wace*, ii. 66, l. 9816-7; Tergo autem verso, non est irroratio timenda, *Galf. Mon.* ix. 7.

it'll never wet him at all."

" Schal he neuere take[1] scathe,
" Ne haue wetynge[2] ne waþe."

Ohel thinks this a real wonder.

Ohel seyde, " yt is wonder[3] þyng,
" & selcouþ ho made þe gynnynge ! "[4]

Arthur has the " retire " sounded,

Þan dide Arthur bemes blowe,
Hornes, belles, þat men myght knowe
þat he wolde þennes[5] turne,
. & remue his host fro þat burne.

and bids his barons

His barons þat come fro ferne,
He bad hem renne hom ryght[6] ȝerne,

go home to their wives.

. To wyte how hit for[7] at home,
. & glade þer wyues whan þey come.

His host goes homeward merrily, praising Arthur to the skies.

Wyþ mykel ioye & mykel play
Wente þe ost homward þer way ;
. Of Arthur made þey mykel pris,
. How he was hardy, large, & wys,
& seyde " neuere or in Bretaigne
" Was so noble a cheuentayne ! "

Arthur spends his Christmas at York,

Vntil ȝork Arthur gan turne ;
þere al þe ȝol he made[8] soiourne.

has a feast on on Christmas-day ;

ſ On þe ȝol day he made his feste
. Wyþ þe[9] barons of his geste.

and as the houses and churches had been beaten down,

fful mykel enpeired was þe toun,
Kyrkes, houses, were beten doun ;
. þer burgeyses were bygged riche,
. Wast & Eyuere [?] was hit liche.—[10]
. þe bischop was slayn wyþ þe Saxons,
. & oþere manye religions ;—

he has them rebuilt.

. At he dide hit bigge ageyn
. As hit was byfore[11] certeyn.

---

[1] *latche.*
[2] *haf wettenes.*
[3] *selcouth.*
[4] MS. *gymnynge.* P., *ferly who mad þe gynnyng.*
[5] *wild þien.*
[6] þam *wend home.*
[7] *fore.*
[8] ȝole *mad* þer. [leaf 61, col. 2.]
[9] *many.*
[10] *wasten & way was att o liche.*
[11] *in þe right.*

Hym serued a prest, a ful god man,[1]
Hys name was cald sire Pyran ;[2] [leaf 45, col. 2.] Arthur makes Pyran archbishop of York,
He gaf hym þe erchebishopes se,
& bad hym 'kepe þat dignite,
' & holy kirke a-geyn restore,
' þat þe Saxons had wasted byfore.'
. Pes he dide oueral[3] crye,
. þat non dide oþer vylenye,
But in lawe, right, & skyle ;[4] proclaims peace over all the land,
Husebande men, bad hem tyle ;[4] bids husbandmen till,
ffrankeleyns þat hadde desheritison, reinstates
He dide þem seke[5] in ilka toun, franklins in
& gaf hem a-geyn þer heritage, their holdings,
Restored þem þer oþer damage.
þre þer were, doughti & gode, and divides all
Noble men, of kynges blode, the north country between
Loth, Aguisel, & Vryen, Loth, Anguisel, and Urien.
þe northe langed to þyse þre men ;
þyse þre departed þe northe lond
þorow Arthures gift, y vnderstond.[6]
To Lothe he gaf al Lounes,[7] Loth gets Lownes ;
Al þe contre, right as hit es.
Scotlond he gaf sire Anguisel ; Anguisel, Scotland ;
Vryen had Murreue vntil[8] his del ; Urien, Murreve.
. & alle to holde of hym þer þynge, All hold their lands of Arthur.
. ffor Arthur was þer chef[e][9] kyng.
Sire Lothe þat weddede Anne, Loth, who
Wawayn þer sone at Rome was þanne wedded Arthur's sister
. To norise, als þe romaunce seys, Anne, has his
. & he highte Wawayn þe curteys. son, Wawayn the Courteous, at Rome.

[1] *a gode man.*
[2] *Piran.* (Pyram, *Wace*, ii. 68, l. 9842.)
[3] *alle.*
[4] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[5] *did* þam.
[6] *þorgh Arture gift as .I. fond.*
[7] tot Loënois, *Wace*, ii. 69, l. 9874. Lot . . . ad consulatum Londonesiæ, ceterarumque comprovinciarum, quæ ad eum pertinebant, reduxit, *Galf. Mon.* lib. ix. § 9.
[8] *Morey tilt.* (Morayshire ?)
[9] *chefe.*

¶ Hic desponsauit Guenneuer*am*.

Arthur then weds

When Arthur hadde his lond iustised,
& don als he hadde auised,

Genoyre, a

Genoyre[1] he wedded, & mad hur*e* quen:
Norysched wyþ Cador had scheo ben;

cousin of Earl Cador's, born of the Roman line,

Sche was sir*e* Cador*es* cosyn,
& born was of þe Romayns lyn,
ffor hur*e* moder was of Romayns[2] kynde.

fair, courteous, generous, lovely of speech, and sweet to look on.

So fair as scheo myght no man fynde;
Y-now scheo couþe of *cur*tesy,
Large gyu*e*re, & spak[3] louely;
. Of body was scheo swyþe auen*aun*t,
. ffair contenaunced,[4] wyþ swete se*m*blaunt.

But, alas! they could get no heir.

Alas! þey myghte no*n* heyr haue,
Neyþer maide[5] child, ne knaue.

¶ Deuicit Hyberniam.

Next summer Arthur prepares a fleet

When wynt*er* cold was al away,
& hete comen of som*er*esday,
& fair weder on se to fare,[6]
A flute on flode Arthur dide ȝare;[6]

to conquer Ireland.

He seide he wolde til Irland,
& wynne hit al to Bretons hand.
Longe tyme wolde he nought waste,

He summons his folk;

He dide somoune his folk on haste,
. Erles, barouns, knyghtes, squiers,
Alle þe ȝongest bachelers
þat wel myghte, & best couþe
Stonde in werre, & were of ȝouþe.

---

[1] Genièvre, *Wace*, ii. 69, l. 9882; Guanhumara, *Galf. Mon.* lib. ix. § 9.

[2] *roman.* [leaf 62.]

[3] *giffer spekand.*

[4] *contenance.*

[5] *maiden.*

[6] P. transposes these lines.

Vpon Irland his fflute gan lende ; [leaf 45, back, col. 1.] they land in Ireland,
Swyþe vp to lande gon þey wende,
Vitaille to seke, & mele & corn ; and go foraging.
Bestes slayn to schipe were born, 10,440 They kill beasts,
Lyflode al þat þey myghte gete,
. To sustinaunce vntil *þer* mete,
. Ilkadel to schipe þey drow, and victual their ships.
. & vitailled hem wel y-now. 10,444
To Gwylomar, þe Irische kyng, King Gwylomar hears of this,
Com bode sone of þeir comyng ;
þat Arthur was aryued þere,
. Al his lond for to conquere. 10,448
þe folk pleyned hem aboute ;
þer godes were lorn,[1] & þey in doute. and of his people's losses.
þe Irische kyng dide folk somoune
. þorow-out þe lond, of ylka toune, 10,452 He summons his folk
. Of vpland & of burghe,[2]
To giue bataille to kyng Arthurghe.[2] to fight Arthur.
When boþe partis come to þe fight,
þe naked Irische were nought dight ; 10,456 The Irish are naked and unarmed.
Hauberk ne scheld ne myghte þey bere,
Ne fro þe arewes couþe þem nought were ;
þey nadde neuere seen non ar.
O syde þey fledde here[3] & þar ; 10,460 They flee at once,
. Ilkon made oþer agast,
. & conseilled hem to fle ful fast
To wodes, to hilles, *per* lyues to saue ; to save their lives.
Oþer socour þey wyste non haue. 10,464
þe kyng fley til a wode syde ; Gwylomar flees too ; but Arthur takes him,
Arthur hym folewed, & dide hym byde,
& al wyþ force hym þer tok ;
& he swor hym vpon þe bok, 10,468 and he swears fealty to Arthur, and
To holde of hym his heritage
& ȝelde hym ilka ȝer truwage.

---

[1] *was lost.* [leaf 62, col. 2.]
[2] P. transposes these lines.
[3] *hider.*

gives hostages to secure it.

Þer-til he gaf hym god hostage,
To holden his fewte & homage.

¶ Hic transfretauit, & Orchades cepit.

Arthur then goes to Iceland, and soon wins it.

When þat was pesed & brought til ende,
Til Island[1] [Arthur] dight hym to wende.
Island[2] sone al he wan,
ffor lord þey knew hym ilka man.

And there, Goneweys, king of Orkney, Doldan, king of Gothland, and Rumarek, king of Wentland,

Goneweys[3] þe kyng of Orkeneye,
. How Arthur wan, wel herde he seye;
So dide Doldan of Gotland,
& Rumarek þe kyng of Wentland;[4]
Tyl alle þre was hit told
þat Arthur was a conquerour bold.
Þyse þre kynges, þey hym dredde
ffor þe gret host þat he ledde;
Þey durste nought stande hym ageyn,
Ne þey ne hadde non host certeyn,
Ne þey ne wolde þer lond destruye,
Ne hym ne þeym to-gedere noye.

come and submit themselves to him.

Þe beste consail þey toke on hand,
& wente to Arthur into Island,[2]
& for þeyr landes made alle pes.

Arthur takes their fealty in lovely wise.

Arthur þem þanked þat þey so ches;
Louely tok he þer alle here fewte,
. ffor þey come alle so wyþ wylle fre.

He then returns to England,

When al was syker & certeyn, [leaf 45, back, col. 2.]
Til Ingland he turnde[5] ageyn;
. & when þey wyste þat he cam,
Wyþ ioye alle a-geyn[6] hym nam.

[1] MS. *Ingelond. Island*, P.
[2] MS. *Irland. Island*, P. Islande, *Wace*, ii. 72, l. 9941.
[3] *Geneweis.* Gonvals, *Wace*, ii. 72, l. 9945.
[4] Et Doldamer rois de Gollande
Et Romarec de Guenelande.
Wace, ii. 72, l. 9946-7.
[5] *com.* [leaf 62, back.]
[6] MS. *ageym.* P. *ageyn.*

Twelf ȝer[1] after þat comyng,
In reste & pes he regned kyng,
þat neuere on hym no werre bygan,[2]
Ne he ne werrede vpon no man.
He tok so mykel of curtesy,
Wyþoute techyng of any hym by,
. þat non ne mighte conne more,
. Neyþer þorow kynde, ne craft of lore.
. In alle answeres he was right wys,
Of alle manhede he bar þe pris;
Of non þat tyme ne was swylk speche,
þat til his nobleye mighte reche,—
Nought of þe Emperour of Rome,—
. þat he ouer hym ne bar þe blome;
. In alle manere þat kynge schold do,
. Non oþer hadde such grace þer-to.
He ne herde neuere speke of knyght
þat losed was of dedes wyght,
þat he ne ȝerned hym for to se,
& for to haue hym of meyne;[3]
ȝyf he for mede serue hym wolde,
He ne lefte for seluer ne for golde.

and reigns for 12 years in peace.

He knows so much courtesy that no one can know more.

He is wise, most manly, and more renowned than the Emperor of Rome.

Whatever doughty knight he hears of, he strives to get him in his household.

ſſ Hic ordinatur Tabula Rotunda.

For his barons þat were so bolde,
þat al þe werld pris of þem tolde,
ffor noman wyste who was best,
. Ne in armes doughtiest,
Dide Arthur ordeyne þe round table
þat ȝit men telle of many a fable.
At þer bord in tyme of mete,
Alle þis noble knyghte schold[4] ete;

For his bold barons, of whom no man knows which is best, Arthur ordains the Round Table. At this table at meals,

[1] Trente ans, *Wace*, MS. du Roi, 27; Douze ans, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé, &c. (*Wace*, ii. 73, note *a*).

[2] *neuer no were on him nam.*

[3] *of him mercy.*

[4] *þo douhty knyghtes suld.*

Non sat wyþynne, non sat wyþoute,
Bot alle euene rounde aboute;
no knight sits above another, . Non sat first, ne non sat last,
But per by per, in euen cast;[1] 10,532
Non sat heye, non sat lowe,[2]
but all sit as equals; . But alle euenlyk men myghte þem knowe;[3]
. Non was set at non ende,
. But alle a round, for[4] alle were hende; 10,536
. Non wyste whiche of pris[5] most was,
. þer-fore þey sete alle in compas;
all sit down, all rise, at once, . Alle at ones doun þey seten,
. At ones ros when þey hadde eten; 10,540
and all have the same allowance. Alle were þey serued of o seruise,
Euenly, alle of on assise.

ſ De gloria Curye Arthury.

Of whatever repute any knight may be, whether he is French, Flemming, Angevine, Irish, Picard, Zeelandish, Catalan, Provinçal, What knyght had ben in al þe werld,
. Had his los be neuere so wel byherd,[6] 10,544
Were he ffrenche,[7] were he Bretoun,
Normaund, fflemyng, or Burgoiloun,
Spaynard, Gascoyn, or Angeuyn,[8]
Scot, Irische, Pykard, or Peyteuyn,[8] 10,548
. Daneys, Norneys, or Selander,[8]
. Henner, ffryson, or Katelaner,[8]
. Arragoneys, Lombard, or Brabaunt,[8]
. Prouyncial, Nauerner, or Alemaunt,[8] 10,552
Of wham he held his fe, or how, [leaf 46.]
ffro þe Weste [or] Est vntil[9] Moungow,
he is held of no honour unless he has been with Arthur. He was told of non honour
Bot he had ben wyþ kyng Arthour, 10,556

---

[1] *pere bi pere euen kast.*
[2] *lawe.* [leaf 62, back, col. 2.]
[3] *euenly for to knawe.*
[4] *o round &.*
[5] *who of þam.*
[6] *þof his los had bene wele herd.*
[7] *frankis.*
[8] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[9] *west vnto.*

& hadde taken of his liuere,
Cloþ or queyntise,[1] þat knowe myght be.
Of ferne landes many on namen,[2]
& til þat court for worschyp camen,[2]
To lere honur & curtesy,[2]
& here þe prowesse of knyghtes hardy,[2]
. & to here þe faire gestes[2]
. þat knyghtes broughte & telde at festes.[2]
Somme come to se his faire wonyng,[2]
. & se & here þere selcouþ þynge;[2]
Pouere men, þey louede hym alle,
& riche honured hym in halle;
ffele kynges of ferne stede[3]
Sent hym gyftes for doute & drede;
. þey wyst hit wel, ȝyf þey wold ryde,[2]
. His werre durste no kyng abide;[2]
. Kynges aforced þer casteles aboute,[2]
. ffor alle landes of hym hadde doute,[2]
þat ȝyf he come, he scholde þem lese,[2]
Or gyue hym truwage as be wold chese;[2]
. þer-fore ilkon at þer myght[2]
. Aforced þer cites, & wel þeym dight.[2]

To him come many from far lands to learn courtesy,

and hear fair tales at feasts.

Poor men love Arthur;

many kings send him gifts,

and all lands fear him.

ſſ De nobilitate Arthury.

But in þysé twelf ȝeres tyme
ffel auentures þat men rede in ryme;
. In þat tyme were herd & sen
þat somme seye, þat neuere haþ[4] ben.
Of Arthur ys seid many selcouþ
. In diuerse landes northe & souþ
þat men holdeþ now for fable,

In these 12 years happen adventures, told in ryme, that some say are lies.

And yet many of these strange tales, held false,

[1] *þing.*
[2] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[3] *thede.*
[4] *had.*

are true.

All arn't true; but all arn't lies; yet all may be put to good use.

Arthur's deeds were greater than other men's, and if they'd not been written of, we shouldn't have known of 'em.

Geoffrey of Monmouth wrote of him, and blamed Gildas and Bede for not writing of Arthur, who was greater than any men they did write of (save saints.)

Arthur is written of everywhere, and specially in France; but not here.

We have to go to strangers' books for him.

But till Doomsday shall men write of Arthur.

. Be þey neuere so trewe ne stable.
Al ys nought soþ, ne nought al lye,
Ne al wysdam, ne al folye; 10,588
. [1] þer nys no þyng of hym seyd
. þat hit ne may be to godnesse leyd.[2]
. More þan oþere were his dedes,
. þat men of hym so mykel redes; 10,592
. Ne were his dedes hadde be writen,[3]
. Of hym no þyng men scholde haue wyten.[4]
. Geffrey Arthur of Monemu,
. He wrot his dedes þat were of pru, 10,596
. & blamed boþe Gyldas & Bede,
. Why þey wolde nought of hym rede,
. Syn he bar þe pris of alle cristen[5] kynges,
. & write so litel of[6] his preysynges, 10,600
. & more worschip of hym spoke þer was[7]
. þat of any of þo þat spekes Gildas,
. Or of any þat Bede wrot,
. Saue holy men þat we wot. 10,604
. In alle landes wrot men of Arthur,
. Hys noble dedes of honur:
. In ffraunce men wrot, & ȝit men wryte,
. But herd haue we of hym but lyte;[8] 10,608
. þere-fore of hym more men fynde[9]
. In farre bokes, als ys kynde,[9]
. þan we haue in þys lond:[9] [leaf 46, col. 2,]
. þat we haue, þer men hit fond;[9] 10,612
. Til Domesday men schalle spelle,
. & of Arthures dedes talke[10] & telle.

---

[1] See the lines 10,040–7 in *Wace*, ii. 76–7 from MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé, against the embellishers of the Arthur story throwing discredit on it by their fables.

[2] þat *ne it may to gode laid.*

[3] P. leaves out this line and the next.

[4] MS. *wryten.*

[5] *siþen he was pris of att.* [lf. 63.]

[6] þei *wild not write.*

[7] *of him was.*

[8] *Here haf we of him bot lite.*

[9] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

[10] MS. *takke.* P. *talk.*

Now ys Arthur of pleyn age,
He conseilled wyþ his baronage;
& his gode knyghtes hym redde,
þat he had fostred & forþ fedde.
He seyde he wolde ouer se[1] to Fraunce,
& wynne hit al wyþ dynt of launce.
But first he seide 'he wolde[2] to Norweye,
' þe kyng had sent hym bode[3] he hoped to deye;
" & Loth, myn neuew, schal he his eyr;
" To make hym kyng y am in speyr;
" His neuew he ys, of next degre,
" Of blod ys non nerrer þan[4] he."
Right as he seyde, also he[5] þought,
He wende þe barons wolde so haue wrought;
But when þey seye þat he was ded,
þey toke þem til anoþer red:
Loth to haue, þey hym forsok,
& anoþer kyng þey tok;
ffor alle[6] þey seide wyþ o mouþ,
' þey wolde haue no kyng[7] vncouþ;
' þey hoped nought þey schold hym fynde[8]
' Als godliche as þer owen kynde.[8]
' Alyens,' þey seyde, 'he wolde auaunce,
' þat schulde be þeire appurtynaunce.
' A heued þey wolde haue þem aboue,
' þat hem wolde auaunce & loue.'
þorow þat consail & þat reson,
Rycolf þey ches, was a baron,
& coroned hym, & now ys[9] kyng;
& þus haþ Lot[10] lorn þat þyng.

10,616 Arthur says
10,620 he'll conquer France;
10,624 but will first win Norway
for his nephew, Loth,
who is next in blood to the dying king.
10,629 But when the king does die,
10,632 the Norse barons choose a native king;
10,636 they wo'n't have a stranger,
10,640 who'll promote aliens, and not them.
10,644 So they crown Rycolf king;

---

[1] *he wald wend.*
[2] *bot first he wild.*
[3] *þe kyng sent.* (Sicelins li rois mors estoit, *Wace*, ii. 77, l. 10,052.)
[4] *non heire bot.*
[5] *Sichelyn said &* þus.
[6] þus.
[7] *man.*
[8] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[9] *mad him.*
[10] þus *gate hast.*

but Arthur declares

" ffor help," seid Arthur, " Loth haþ bysought;[1]
" ffaille hym by no weye wol y nought;
" Y wolde his hon*ur* & [his][2] right,
" & þ*at* schal y he[l]pe at my[3] myght.
" Rycolfes coroune y wolde abate,
" þ*at* þe Noreys gef hym so late."

he'll lay Rycolf's crown low.

¶ De conquestu Norgan*ie*.

Tyl Arthur com þ*er* folk ynow;
To schipes on flode faste þey drow;
þe wynd blew, & gan hem dryue,
Vp in Norweye gon þey aryue.
Ricolf was god, & wolde nought fle
Ne remue hym out of þe contre;
He gadered host, for wel he wende
Ageyn Arthur hym self defende;
But his wenyng was al[4] veyn,
ffor Ricolf & hise wer alle þ*er* sleyn.
When Arthur hadde Norweye wo*n*nen,
þe barons alle ou*er* riden & ro*n*nen,
Loth, his neuew, he gaf þe croun,
After Ricolf þ*at* was doun.
Loth made Arthur þe*n*ne feute,
Als til his chef ou*er* al þ*at* fe.
¶ Lothes sone, sire Wawayn,
Had ben at Rome to lere Romayn,
Wyþ Supplice þe Apostoille[5] to wone,
Hon*ur* to lere, langage to kone;
& þ*er*e was he dubbed knyght.
And holden hardy, strong, & wyght.
When Supplice had don his ende, [leaf 46, back, col. 1.]
Tyl Bretayne-ward Wawayn[6] gan wende.

Arthur and his folk sail to Norway,

slay Rycolf and his men,

and make Loth king.

Sir Wawyn [Gawein], who has been at Rome with Pope Simplicius

now comes home to Britain.

[1] *has souht.*
[2] *his.* [leaf 63, col. 2.]
[3] *& help* þerto þat *.I.*
[4] *alle.*
[5] *pape.* (St. Simplice, pope, 468–483 A.D. De Lincy, *Wace*, ii. 79.)
[6] *to bretayn Wawan home.*

Now ys Wawayn comen hom,
. fful blithe ys Loth al of his com;
Noble he was, & ful curteys,
Mykel hon*ur* of hym eu*er*e men seys:[1]
He loued mesure & faire beryng;
Pruyde ne bost loued he no þyng;
. Vnkynde, false, & fykele,[2] he hated;
. Lesynges, alle swilk he abated;[3]
More he gaf þan he by-hette,
Wel mor*e* he dide þ*an* terme of sette.

Now ys Loth in Norweye seised,
. & Wawayn comen, þ*at* mykel ys pr*e*ised.[4]
Alle þo men þ*at* were of myght,
þ*at* weren ȝonge, & couþe[5] of fyght,
. & loueden[6] mor*e* werre þan pes,
Arthur til hym alle swyche[7] ches;
Of swylk gadered he many on,
& schipes on se ful god won.
. When his host was styf & stark,
He schiped to-wardes Denemark.
Achil, þ*at* þ*en* was kyng of Danes,
Saw Bretons & Noreys come alle at anes
Wyþ Arthur, to wynne his lond,
. & for to destruye al þ*at* he[8] fond.
But Achil þoughte, as kyng ful wys,
þ*at*[9] Arthur ou*er*al hadde þe prys;
He wiste wel he schulde con*quere*
His lond of hym, ȝyf he come þere;
But he seide 'he wolde nought[10] so
' Hym seluen ne his lond fur-do,[11]

He is noble and courteous,
hates pride
and lies,
and gives more than he promises.
Arthur gathers a host of young fighting men,
and ships them over to Denmark.
The Danish king, Achil,
knows that Arthur will beat him.
He says he won't have his land destroyed,

[1] *honour of him men rede & seis.*
[2] *fals & fiketł lesyng.*
[3] *auauntour alle suilk he bated.*
[4] *is comen & preised.*
[5] *in youth* þ*at couth ouht.*
[6] þ*at lufed.* [leaf 63, back.]
[7] *Arthure att suilk men.*
[8] þ*ei.*
[9] *He sauh.*
[10] *if he suld not.*
[11] P. leaves out this line.

his folk slain, his treasure spent,

‘ Ne suffre his folk to be slayn,
‘ Ne his tresor spende in vayn,
‘ Ne his casteles beten[1] doun,

and his towns burnt.

. ‘ Ne kirke robbed,[2] ne brenne toun;’ 10,708

So he submits to Arthur,

But faire he spak, & wel he hette,
& wysly gaf giftes wel bysette,[3]

and is allowed to hold his land in peace,

So þat of Arthur he had grauntise,
þe lond in pes for his seruise; 10,712
& Arthur þen his seruise tok,

after swearing homage to Arthur.

Omage he swor hym on þe bok.
¶ Arthur was glad þat he þus wan,
So sone þe kyng bicam his man; 10,716

Arthur then picks out the best Danish knights and archers,

But ȝut he þoughte to wynne wel[4] more.
Of þe beste knyghtes he ches þore,
& squiers bolde, & gode[5] archers,
. þat louede werre, & knew þe maners— 10,720
I ne wot how manye[6] þousandes
þat he so gadered y þo landes;—
. Of gret folk mad he purueaunce,
ffor he seyde he wolde to ffraunce: 10,724

and wins Flanders and Boulogne;

fflaundre he wan, Boloyne he tok;
Tounes, casteles, for hym þey quok;
. His folk so wysly gan he lede,

but he plunders no land,

Struyed he no lond als he ȝede, 10,728
He tok no þyng fer ne hende,

takes only food for horse and man, and pays for it all.

But mete & drynke, & hors prouende;
ȝit toke þei non wyþ no maistrie,
But bought hit þere hit was to bye. 10,732

France is then called Gaul, is held by the Romans, and has no king of its own.

þat tyme þat þis chaunce gan falle,
þat now hat ffraunce, þo hight hit Galle;
þe Romayns þat ilke tyme hit held, [lf. 46, bk., col. 2.]
Was þer[7] no kyng bar croune ne scheld; 10,736

---

[1] *be casten.*
[2] *to robbe.*
[3] *giftes gaf & wisly sette.*
[4] *he wild wyn.*
[5] *gode & slie.*
[6] *þe hundrethes ne.*
[7] *þan.* [leaf 63, back, col. 2.]

. & ilk ȝer toke þey *þer*-of truage,
. Syþen[1] Iulius wan hit in *ser*uage.

¶ De ffrollo, Romano Regente ffrancie.

Frolle, a doughti bacheler,
Had hit in kepyng many a ȝer;
To Romayns[2] byhoue gadered *þer* rent,
& at termes to Rome[3] hit sent,
Or bar hit hym self to þe Emperour.
ffrolle was a ful hardy man in stour,
He was comen of Romayns blod,
He dredde[4] non *þat* ageyns hym stod.
Al day tydyng men hym told,
Þat Arthur com wyþ host ful bold,
. & *þat* no man myghte dwelle ne be
. But ȝif he helde of hym in fe.
. *Þat* herde ffrolle, & was ful[5] wo,
. & seide hit schuld nought *þat* wey[6] go.
He dide somoune[7] alle to come
Til hym, *þat* helde *þer* fe of Rome,
. ffor to brynge hors & armes,
. þe lond for to fende fro harmes,[8]
. & doughtily to-gydere stande
. Ageyn Arthur *þat* was comande.

Frolle holds France for the Romans, gathers their rent, and sends it to Rome.

He is a brave man,

and is told that no one can stand against Arthur.

But he says he will.

He summons his host

to fight

doughtily against Arthur.

¶ Hic gens ffrolly cecidit.

¶ Hit was nought longe bytwyxt hem set
Ar[9] *þer* hostes[10] to-gedere met.
ffrolle mysfel atte firste pres,
ffor ner alle his beste folk he les,

The hosts soon meet,

and Frolle is at once defeated.

[1] *sen.*
[2] þer.
[3] *termes home.*
[4] *douted.*
[5] *right.*
[6] *said it suld not so gate.*
[7] *did somond.*
[8] P. leaves out this line.
[9] *þat.*
[10] ? final *s* added by a later hand.

What y-slayn & ou*er* schaken,
. & nerhande hym self had ben taken.
No wonder either! For Arthur's host is so great that none can number it.
Hit was no wonder[1] *þat* he fledde,
ffor þe gret host *þat* Arthur ay ledde;
. Was non *þat* couþe hit nou*m*bre[2] ne seye,
þe folk he tok, comynge in[3] weye;
Hit was no lond *þat* he þorow sought,
Wherever he finds a doughty man, will he, nill he, forth he must with Arthur!
Eu*er*e þe beste wyþ hym he brought;
þat doughti was on horse or fote,
. Wold he, nold he,[4] forþ he mote:
Some come to him for love,
Som*m*e wente for his fair speche,
. & so*m*me for drede of o*þer* wreche,
& so*m*me for he gaf largely,
& so*m*me for his grete curtesy,[5]
and some for fear;
& so*m*me for los & doute of ded,[6]
Knowlechyng til hym þey bed:
and many French lords hold their fees of him.
Of ffr*a*unce many a lordyng
Comen to holde[7] of hym *þer* þyng.

¶ De obsidione ffrolly p*er* Arthuru*m*.

Frolle flees to Paris, his strongest city,
ffrolle fledde faste to Parys,
. Hit was þe stre*n*gest cite of pris;
He knew no bett*er*e recet to haue[8]
Ageyn Arthur, *þat* myghte hym saue;[8]
Night & day dide his tr*a*uaille
and victuals it.
To warnische[9] þe toun wyþ vitaille.
Mykel folk to Paris fledde,
Arthur follows him,
& Arthur þider faste hym spedde;
& Arthur vnderstod ful wel
þe purueaunce of ffrolle[10] ilka del;

---

[1] *was ferly.*
[2] *couth noumbre it.*
[3] *comand i þe.*
[4] *wild he ne wild he.*
[5] tant por la noblesce de lui, *Wace*, ii. 84, l. 10,210.
[6] *tynsell & doute of dede.* [leaf 64.]
[7] *com & held.*
[8] P. transposes these lines.
[9] *store.*
[10] þer *purueiance.*

. þer-fore he hasted his sege to sette,
. His purueaunce for to lette.
Arthur byseged hym so streit
þat ffrolle mighte wyþ no deseit
Of vitaille helpe hym at nede,
By londe ne by water lede
Ner al a monþe, as men teld,
· þat ffrolle þe cite of Paris held;
& al þat tyme Arthur þer lay,
. He ne remued night ne day.
So mykel folk was þer-ynne,
þe raþer bigan þer fight to gynne;[1]
Hit was despended, þat þey in drow;
þey hadde no tyme to drawe inow;
ffor hunger gan þey make mone,
Men, women, & childre, ilkone.
ȝyf ffrolle wylde as þey wolde,
þe toun had ben ful sone ȝolde;
þey preied ffrolle þorow[2] þe burghe
To make pes wyþ kyng Arthurghe.
ffrolle saw þey pleyned þem sore,
& þer vitaille was namore,
& seye wel þey[3] alle wylde
þe toun vntil Arthur ȝylde;
. & [þat][4] þought hym schame & vyl;
Hym self had leuere be in peril,
& auenture hym his deþ to take,
þan wyþ his wille Parys fursake;[5]
" Strengþe of body or wille y fonde."
Tyl Arþur he sente his sonde:
' ȝyf þat he wilde bytwyxt þem to[6]
' To-gedere fighte, wyþoute mo,

10,792 [leaf 47.] and besieges him in Paris so straitly that Frolle can get in no provisions during the month that Arthur lies before the town.

10,800

Food fails;

10,804

the people moan for hunger,

10,808

and pray Frolle to make peace with Arthur.

10,812 Frolle sees their distress, and that they want to give up the town to Arthur.

10,816 Frolle thinks he'd rather risk his life than be disgraced,

10,820 and accordingly challenges Arthur to single combat.

---

[1] *soner gon* þer *faute begynne.* (Et de viande poverté, *Wace*, ii. 85, l. 10,239.)
[2] *þorhout.*
[3] *þat þei.*
[4] *þat.*
[5] *þe toun forsake.* [leaf 64, col. 2.]
[6] *tuo.*

Whoever wins is to have all France.

‘ & whilk of þem were ouer-come,
‘ Or slayn, or wyþ force nome,
‘ Tak hym þe lond til his wylle,
‘ So þat þe folk nought ne spille.’

Arthur gladly accepts the challenge.

Þat bode cam Arþur wel to hert;
His gloue he gaf vp al so smert,
& tok hostage o boþe partys,
Of Arthures host[1] & of Parys,
. Þe bataille scholde be in a pleyne
. Bytwyxt two watres, Marne & Seyne.

ſ De bello inter Regem Arthurum & ffrollum.

When they are ready armed, the French folk tremble,

When þey were armed & redy dight,
& were comen þer þey schold fyght,
Men myght þer[2] se folk tremble & quake,
. On boþe partis gret deol to make,
. Handes wrynge, on knes to[3] falle,

and pray to God that he who wishes peace may win.

On Godes name to crie & calle,
‘ Þat he myght wynne, þat pes wold haue,
‘ & þe lond fro were myght saue.’

Arthur's folk pray that he may win.

Arþures folk stode & byheld,
. Redy [digh]t[4] wyþ helm & scheld,
& by[sought]e God inderly[5]
To [graunt] Arþur þe maistri.

Both knights are nobly armed for their trial;

Þy[se two] knyghtes þat forþ were fet,
N[obilly di]ght, on horse wel set,
. T[o assay]e þem how þey were wyght,
[Þe lanc]e to reyse, þer scheld to ryght.
[Who myg]hte[6] wel telle, & soþ to seye,

none better are in their time.

. [Þat sui]lk[7] wer non þat tyme als þey;

---

[1] *of Arthure.* (cil de l'ost, *Wace*, ii. 86, l. 10,274.)
[2] *men mot.*
[3] *wreng on knees.*
[4] A long piece has been torn out of the MS. The gaps are filled in from the Petyt MS., except as noted below.
[5] *praied god interly.*
[6] *ho mot.*
[7] *Suilk.*

. [Ilk o]f þeym was horsed wel,
. [Had a]rmes[1] stronge as any stel;
By sight myght non *þer* chese þe best, [lf. 47, col. 2.] You can't tell by look which is the doughtier.
. Ne whilk *þen* semed doughtiest;
Ne whilk schold wynne, ne haue þe gre,[2]
. By sighte myghte *þer* non hit se.[2]

When þey were bone, redy to smite,
& *þer* hors[3] sondred a lyte, They charge.
Wyþ speres þey smot,[4] þe bridel brayd,
þer scheldes sette, þer launces[5] forþ layd;
þer horses at *þer* power runnen,
þe p*ar*tis wende haue[6] lorn or wonnen;
But ffrolle failled of his dynt,— Frolle's thrust
I trowe his stede a syde stynt,— misses,
& Arthur smot hym in þe scheld. and Arthur
. þe hed[7] was god, & ful wel held,
& ffrolle out of his sadel cast unhorses him.
So fer so þe launce might last.
ffrolle vp stirte, & sydlynges glent, Frolle jumps up,
His scheld dressed, his launce vp[8] hent;
Til Arþures stede þe point he bar, stabs Arthur's
þorow þe breste þe herte he[9] schar. horse,
Arþur fel; he moste nede; and Arthur
. He was a fote, ded was his stede. falls.
þe Bretons seye he had *þat* fal, The Britons
þem þoughte for wo þey al to-swal,[10] shriek for woe,
. þe erþe dunede[11] for þeir cry,
To passe þe water þey were redy, want to cross the river, and
þe trewes to breke þey were ful wylde, break the truce.
To haue gon ou*er* in to þe ilde;

---

[1] in *armes*.
[2] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[3] *horses*.
[4] MS. *snot*. P. *smote*.
[5] *on lance*.
[6] *att*. [leaf 64, back.]
[7] *Iren*.
[8] *schelde dight his lance he*.
[9] *it*.
[10] *to swalle*.
[11] *stonyed*.

But Arthur is soon up again,

. But þey sawe hym sone vp a-geyn ;
. þey wyþstod þe*n*, & were fayn.
. When he was vp, he hadde no rest,
. Wyþ ffrolle to fighte he was ful p*r*est,

draws Caliburn,

He leyde his hand to Caliborne,
. þa*t* neue*r*e for armes wolde scurne.

and attacks Frolle.

þe*r*-wyþ on ffrolle ful sor*e* he sought,
& ffrolle a-geyn ne dredde hym nought;
. Agayn Arthur he stod & stynt,
Nought abaischt hym for[1] no dynt;

Frolle strikes Arthur,

His swerd had drawen, he lyft hit heye,
On Arþur he let hit sore fleye:
þe dynt was gret, for he was strong,
þe fir out fley, þe sparkles sprong,

cleaves his helm, basinet and coif, and cuts into Arthur's forehead.

þe helm he claf, & þe basyn,
& þe coyfe þa*t* was so fyn.
. þe swerd was scharp, & ful wel bot,
I*n* þe forehed Arþur he smot,
. þorow þe flesch*e*, vnto þe pan ;
After þe strok þe blod out ran.

ſ De occisione ffrolly, Regent*is* ff*r*anc*ie*.

Arthur

When Arthur felde[2] þa*t* he was wounded,
. Noþyng he ne[3] stinte ne stounded;

gets angry,

ffor, ful of yr*e*, wyþ colo*ur* teint,
Was he neyþer abaischt ne feint;

and with Caliburn

Caliborne he hadde in hande,

cleaves Frolle through head and breast.

. He tok hym byre þe strok teysande ;[4]
Abouen[5] his helm ful faste he dref;
Hed & nekke & breste he clef.[6]

The Parisians grieve ;

þey of þe cite mad deol ynow,
& þe Bretons þe*r*-fore þey low ;

---

[1] *abaist for him.*

[2] *felte.*

[3] *Noiþer he.*

[4] *bir þe stroke teisand.* [leaf 64, back, col. 2.]

[5] *Aboun.*

[6] *to þe girdit þe body clefe.*

What sorewe so þey made al gates,
Agayns Arthur þey opened þe gates, 10,912 but they open their gates to Arthur,
And let hym in, & alle hyse, [leaf 47, back, col. 1.]
& dide[1] hym omage & seruise. and do him homage.
When he had homage of lef & loþ,
Hostages he tok to halde *þer* oþ; 10,916
At Parys to soiourne he ches; Arthur stays in Paris,
Baillifs he sette to ȝeme þe pes;
He parted his host in haluendel,[2] but divides his
Bytaughte he *þem* to[3] sire Ohel, 10,920 host, and gives half to Ohel,
& bad hym 'go to wynne Burgoyne, to win Poitiers,
' Peytowe, Nauerne, & Gascoigne, Gascony, and
' & Lorreyne, ȝyf[4] he myghte, Lorraine.
' Assaye *þem* wyþ loue or fyghte.' 10,924
Ohel dide his comaundement, Ohel makes all
He tok þe folk, & þyder went; these lands pay
And alle þo landes[5] *þat* y haue seyd, tribute.
To gyue truage on *þem* he leyd. 10,928

∫ De austeritate Gwytardi.

Gwithard,[6] þe Duk of Peyters, Gwitard, the
Was a fel knyght & a fers Duke of Poi-
ffor to kepe his heritage, tiers,
Nought ne wolde gyue[7] truage; 10,932 will not give
Often he *turnde* Ohel þe vys, truage, but
& often of hym wan þe pris, often fights
& often a-geyn hym he les Ohel,
Er *þan* he wolde come til[8] þe pes. 10,936
Ohel destruide ner al þe lond; who destroys
þat he wyþouten castel fond, his land

---

[1] *mad.* [2] *& þe halfendele.*
[3] *betaught he vnto.*
[4] *lorenge if þat.*
[5] *& wan all þo.*
[6] MS. *Gwichard.* P. *Witard.* (Guitart, *Wace*, ii. 90, l. 10,375.)
[7] *he wild gyfe no.*
[8] *are he wild com vnto.*

and does not leave even the vines. Gwitard then

Al was destruyed, & al was reft,
Þe selue vynes[1] þey ne left.
When Gwytard[2] saw ner al was lorn,
. So *þat* he ne mighte be byforn,[3]
He saw hit was non o*þer* bote,
goes to Arthur, falls at his feet, and does him homage.
. Bot ȝede & fel Arthur to fote,
& dide[4] hym homage & feute,
. Of hym to halden al[5] his fe.
Syþen loued Arthur Gwytard[2] ful wel,
. Non so mykel, but only Ohel.
Arthur wins all the countries south of France.
þo o*þere* contres south fro ff*ra*unce,
Arthur *þem* wan til his alliaunce.

¶ Hic remun*er*auit Arthur*us* famul*os* & s*er*uie*n*t*es*.

Arthur pays off his old soldiers,

When Arthur had geten alle þo landes,
& wo*n*ne he*m* wyþ dint of his handes,
Til þo men *þat* tr*a*uailled sore,
Wel of elde *þat* wyþ hym wore,
and bids them go home.
ȝald hem *þer* sond & þer seruise,
Vnto *þer* contres he bad *þem* wyse.
The wild young men he
But þo *þat* were ȝonge & wylde,
þat neyþer hadde wyf ne childe,
& louede to bere spere[6] & scheld,
keeps in France for nine years; and in that time many wonders befall,
Nyne ȝer in ffraunce he *þem* held.
Manye wondres by times[7] sers
Bytydde Arthur þo nyn[e] ȝeres;
Many a proud man lowe he brought,
Til many felon, wo he wrought;
. Enuyous men he hated alle,[8]
. þe mysproude ful lowe dide falle.[8]

---

[1] *Þe vineis.* [2] *Witard.* [3] *he myght not be forborn.* [4] *mad.* [leaf 65.] [5] *hold att.* [6] *lufed to bere helm.* [7] *selcouth be tyme.* [8] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

. þer haue men bokes of al his lyf,
. þer are his m*er*ueilles red ful ryf;[1]
. þ*a*t we of hym here all*e* rede,
. þ*er*e were þey writen ilka dede.
. þyse grete bokes so faire langage,
. Writen & spoken of ff*ra*unces[2] vsage,
. þ*a*t neu*er*e was writen þorow Englischemen,
. Swilk stile to speke, kynde ne[3] can,
. But ffrensch*e* men wryten hit in prose,
. Right as he dide, hym for to alose;
. In pr*o*se al of hym ys writen,[4]
. þe bett*er*e til vnderstande & wyten.[4]

about which there are books in France.
The Arthur-books we have were written in France,
and never by Englishmen.
It's not their nature to write so well as Frenchmen wrote Arthur's deeds in prose, the better to be understood.

∫ Hic diuisit Arthur*us* Pr*o*uincias, & dedit Ducib*us* Comitib*us*, Baronib*us*, Militib*us*, & aliis, s*ecun*d*um* pr*o*bitates suas.

Arthur at Pasches,[5] at Parys,
He held his feste of gret[e][6] pris:
Til all*e* þo þorow hym had lorn,
Restored he als þey were[7] byforn;
. Rich*e* or por*e*, gentil or þral,
. þ*a*t he þ*em* aughte, he ȝald[8] þ*em* al.
After þ*a*t he was worthy,
He ȝald þ*er* s*er*uise largely:
To Kaye þ*a*t was his styward*e*,
Aungowe he gaf hym til his p*ar*t;
He gaf also sir*e* Beduer,
þ*a*t was of fe his boteler,
He gaf hym in fe all Norm*a*ndie,
But þ*e*nne hit was cald[9] Neustr*ie*;

One Easter at Paris, Arthur holds a noble feast.
He restores to all their losses by him,
gives Anjou to Kay;
to Beduer Normandy,
(then called Neustria);

---

[1] *kid fult rife.*
[2] *oñ france.*
[3] *no kynde.*
[4] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[5] *At þe pasch.*
[6] *fest of grete.*
[7] *had.*
[8] *paid.*
[9] *þat tyme men say it hight.* [leaf 65, col. 2.]

to Holdyn, Boulogne; to Borel, Maine; and gifts to under-vassals.

Boloyne he gaf to sire Holdyn,
And Mayne[1] to Borel his cosyn;
He gaf giftes of honurs,
& landes & rentes, to vauasours. 10,996

¶ Reuersio Arthury in Angliam, in Mense Aprilis.

Arthur comes back to England.

When he had feffed his barouns,
& mad his priues lordes of touns,
Þe nexte April, when somer gan,
Til Ingeland wente ilka man. 11,000

The Britons rejoice at Arthur's return.

When men wiste þat þey wer comen,
. Ageyn Arthur faste þey nomen;
þey made suche ioye, non myghte be more;
. Hys longe dwellyng þem for-þoughte sore;

Wives kiss their husbands, mothers their sons,

Ladyes kyste þer lordes swete, 11,005
Modres & childre for ioye gon[2] grete,
Sones welcomed þer fadres home,
& made al murthe for þer come;[3] 11,008

sweethearts their lovers,

. Lemmans leue ilk oþer kest,[4]
. Of more þey esed hem when þem lest;[4]
Neueus nyftes,[5] sistres broþer,

friends their friends.

Ilka frend welcomede oþer; 11,012

Everyone is out, asking Arthur's men how they have fared,

þey stode in ilka strete & sty,
In grete routes men passed for-by,[6]
þey spirde[7] at hem 'how þey hadde faren,
' & whi þat þey so longe waren, 11,016

and what they have won.

' & how þey spedde of þeyr conquest,
' & what þey wonne[8] so fer est,
. ' & how þey ferde in al þer wo:
. " We wole namore ȝe fare vs fro." 11,020

---

[1] þe *Mannes.* (Le Mans, *Wace*, ii. 92, l. 10,422.)

[2] *on childir for Ioy.*

[3] *at* þer *tocome.*

[4] P. leaves out these lines.

[5] A.-Sax. *nefa*, a niece.

[6] *in gashadles men passed bie.*

[7] *to spir.*

[8] *whan* þei *wan.*

& þen þey teld hem al þer chaunce,
How Arthur hadde wonne ffraunce,
. & of merueilles þat þey had sen,
& in what peryl þey had ben.[1]

The warriors tell them of their conquests and dangers.

. Þe lordynges of þys lond [leaf 48.]
. þat Arthur bifore hym fond,
. Riche presentes þey hym sent,
. Hys longe dwellyng mykel þey ment;
& he ageyn was ful curteys,
. Some gaf he hors or oþer harneys;
Gladly he gaf, & largely.
. ffor to schewe his curtesy,
. ffor to schewe his grete prowesse,[2]
& do by-knowe his grete richesse,[2]
& for to speken of his dedes[2]
. þat alle kynges doutes & dredes,[2]
þey conseilled hym his lond to somoune,
At Whitsonday,[3] to do hym coroune.
At Kerlyon in Glamorgan,[4]
Dide somoune þyder[5] ilka man.
Karlyoun was som[6] tyme riche,
Rome & hit lykned y-liche;
Hit standeþ on a water men calleþ Vsk,
To Seuarne hit rennes by bank & busk;
In Vsk men myghte þider wende,
Outlandes fer þat þider wol lende;
On þat o syde ran þat ryuer,
þat oþer side,[7] fforest, ful of der;

Arthur's lords send him presents, and he gives them others in return. To show his prowess and riches, Arthur summons his folk to crown him at Kaerlyon on Whitsunday. Kaerlyon was once as rich as Rome. It stands on the Usk; and on its other side is a forest full of deer.

[1] The Lambeth MS. has the next two lines twice over; first in this form,—

Alle þe lordes of þis Londe
þat Arthur byfore hym fonde.

The Petyt MS. wisely leaves out these lines.

[2] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

[3] Qu'à la Pentecoste, en esté, *Wace*, ii. 94, l. 10,458.

[4] *& Klamorgan.* [leaf 65, back.]

[5] *did somond þidir.*

[6] *þat.*

[7] *on þe toþer.*

Venisoun þer was ynow,
Plente of fysche in water þey drow;
Its meads and land are very fertile. Large medes wyþ gras plente,
Lond to tile, non bettere myght be. 11,052
It has two churches, Two kyrkes were in þe toun,
þat tyme had þey gret renoun;
St. Julius's Of seint Iuly was þat on,
þat oþer was of seint Aaron. 11,056
Seint Iuly in martirdam gan deye,
Nonnes were at his abbeye;
and St. Aaron's, Seint Aaron, þer was þe byschopes se,[1]
þe heued kyrke of þe cyte; 11,060
. þer-of Arthur was [þe] ffoundour,
and at the latter . &[2] set hit in seint Arons honour;
are learned þer were chanons of clergye,
astronomers, & knewe þem wel in[3] astronomye; 11,064
To knowe þe sternes, þer tente þey[4] leyd,
who tell Arthur how things will turn out. & til Arthur often[5] seyd,
þat what þyng he was aboute,
He schulde spede wyþoute doute: 11,068
Fine times then at Kaerlyon! Wel was þat tyme at Kerlyoun![6]
But siþ[7] þat tyme haþ hit go doun.
down now. . ffor þe plente of ffysche & flesche,
Of wode & water, hey & gres, 11,072
Of housyng, & of oþer aysement
. By water & londe men broughte & sent.
Arthur resolves to hold a feast and be crowned at Kaerlyon. þen seide Arthur he wolde þer holde
ffeste wyþ alle his barons bolde, 11,076
. & at þat selue samenynge
. He seyde he wolde be corouned kynge.

---

[1] *at saynt Aaron was þe bisshop see.*
[2] *did.*
[3] *þat knewe wele of.*
[4] þer *wittes.*
[5] *oft tymes.*
[6] *Fele was þan a karlioun.*
[7] *sen.*

¶ Exe q*uot* Reges Com*ites* & Barone*s* venerun*t* ad coronac*ionem* Arthury.

Messeg*ers*[1] he dide sende — Messengers are
ffor kynges & ducs, fer & hende, — 11,080 — sent to fetch kings and
And for erles & barouns, — [leaf 48, col. 2.] — nobles to Arthur's feast.
Knyghtes of castels, lordes of touns.
A legat fro Rome was sent[2] — A legate comes
. ffor to make þe corounement/ ; — 11,084 — from Rome,
Erchebischopes were *per* þre,— — three arch-
At Londone was þenne þe se, — bishops,
þat oþer was at Euerwyk,
At Kaerlioun was seynt Dubryk/ ;— — 11,088
Of Scotland king Agusel,[3] — kings Agusel,
. þat til Arthur was ful lel ;
Of Murreue þe kyng Vrian, — Urien (and his
Wyþ hym com his sone Ywayn ; — 11,092 — son Ywayn),
Stater of Southe Walys al, — Stater, and
Of North Walys þe kyng Cadwal, — Cadwal,
Cador þe Erl of Cornewaille,
ffor Arthur hadde many trauaille ; — 11,096
Sire Moryond þe Erl of Gloucestre, — Moryond,
Sire Mauryce þe Erl of Wyncestre, — Maurice,
Gurgoynt þe Erl of Hereforde,[4] — Gurgoynt,
& sire Beus of Oxenforde,[4] — 11,100 — Beus,
Sire Vrgence þe Erl[5] of Bathe,[4] — Urgence,
. þere þe Saxons dide scaþe ;
Sire Cursal of Chestre was,[4] — Cursal,
Of Dorcestre sire Ionatas,[4] — 11,104 — Jonatas,
Emoraund þe[6] Erl of Salesbury,[4] — Emoraund,

---

[1] MS. *Messe essegers*. P. *Messengers*.

[2] See Wace, ii. 100, l. 10,563. He gives the "legation" to Archbishop Dubrice.

[3] *Anguisell*. [leaf 65, back, col. 2.]

[4] These lines are from the Arsenal MS. of Wace, 171 B.-L. *Wace*, ii. 97-8, note (*c*).

[5] þat *was*.

[6] *Amorand*.

Kynmar, Baruk, Jugens, and Ergal.

& Kynmar, kyng of Kaunterbury,[1]
Sire Baruk, Erl of Circestre,[1]
& sire Iugens of Leycestre,[1]
Sire Ergal, þe Erl of Warewyk/,[1]
. Hys men come to court ful þyk/.

¶ De filiis Magnatum.

Of the magnates' sons, come

Of þer childre hit seis þe names;
. To nemne hem here, litel hit[2] frames:
Þer was Porfodes[3] sone, Donaunt;
Donaunt, Elaunt, Keneus, Catellus, &c.,
& sire Regines[4] sone, Elaunt;
& Coyles[5] sone highte Keneus;
& Catel sone, Catellus;
. & oþer names selcouþ to telle,
. But hit ys nought on þem to dwelle;

who serve at the Round Table.

Þyse serued atte rounde table;
To rekene þem alle hit ys but fable.

So many there are, it would be a bore to name them all.

So manye þer were in chaumbre & halle,
Men schuld yrke to telle þem alle;
. What of þo þat y fond writen,[6]
. & of þo þat fewe men wyten,[6]
. Hit are but fewe þat can þem telle,[6]
. & þo þat can, þer-to ne wyl dwelle.[6]

¶ Nomina Regum.

Of outlandish kings come

. Outlandische[7] kynges þat of hym held,
. þat bowed vntil Arthures scheld,
. þo þat he wan wyþ his hand,[8]

Gwylomar,

Gwylomar þe kyng of Irland,[8]

---

[1] These lines are from the Arsenal MS. Wace, 171 B.-L. *Wace*, ii. 97-8, note (*c*).

[2] *here it ne.*

[3] *Porsud.*

[4] *Regin.*

[5] *Cohel.*

[6] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

[7] *Outlandes.* [leaf 66.]

[8] P. transposes these lines.

Þe kyng of Demark, sire Askyl, — Askyl,
Loth of Norweye com hym tyl, 11,132 Loth,
Goneweys þe kyng of Orkeneye, — Goneweys,
. (By Irland he cam in his weye,)
Doldan þe kyng of Gouthland, — Doldan,
. & Reumarek,[1] kyng of Wentland, 11,136 Reumarek,
. Of Nauare þe kyng, & of Gascoigne,[2] — and the king of Navare.
Sire Liger, þe Erl[3] of Boloyne,[2] — Of earls, come
And of ffl̃aundres, þe Erl Holdyn, [leaf 48, bk., col. 1.] — Liger, Holdyn,
Of Chartres, þe Erl Geryn,— 11,140 Geryn,
He was a man noble & fers,
Wyþ hym come alle þe dusze pers,—
Sire Gwytard,[4] þe Erl of Peyters, — Gwytard,
& sire Caye,[5] lord of Aungers; 11,144 Caye,
Of Normandie, sire Beduer, — Beduer,
. (Of fe þe kynges boteler,)
& of Manns,[6] þe Erl Borel, — Borel,
Of Bretaigne, sire Ohel;[7] 11,148 Ohel, and others
Sire Ohel & þo of ffraunce,[7] — of France.
Þey were of noble contenaunce,[7]
Wel clad & arayed y þe richest,[7]
& horsed alle for þe best.[7] 11,152

ſ Pro quantis comoditatibus venerunt ad Curiam Arthuri.

Hit was nó baron in al Spaigne, — Every baron
Ne þenn̄es in-til[8] Alemaigne, — from Spain to
Þat he til Arthures feste ne ferde, — Germany comes
Þat doughti was, & þer-of herde; 11,156 to Arthur's feast.
Somme, hym seluen for to se, — Some come to see Arthur;

---

[1] *kynmare.*
[2] P. transposes these lines.
[3] MS. *Erk.* P. *erle.*
[4] *witard.*
[5] *Key.*
[6] *þe Mans.* (Del Mans, *Wace*, ii. 101, l. 10,591.)
[7] P. leaves out these lines, though they are in Wace, ii. 101, l. 10,593-6.
[8] *þien vntiłł.*

. & to byholde[1] his meyne;
. & somme, to se on[2] what wyse
. þey ordeigned *þer* faire seruise;
some to see the Table Round;
. & some, to se þe Table Rounde
. *þat* neuere byforn *þat* tyme[3] was founde;
& somme, to se his faire paleys;
. Somme, to biholde his riche harneys;
some to see the folk;
. Somme, þe folk to by-howe;
& somme, his knyghtes for to knowe;
& somme, for his geftes gode;
some, for Arthur's noble food;
. & somme, for his noble fode;
& somme come for to haue bailly;
and some, to learn courtesy.
& somme, to lere *þere* curtesy.
¶ When Arthures court was[4] plener,
When all the guests are come,
& alle were comen, fer & ner,
þe erþe abouen[5] stired & quok,
the earth shakes with the tramp of their horses.
So faste hors & man *per* schok:
per was puttynge, þristinge, & þro,
Wyþ fot-folk *þat* come to & fro,
Those who can't get inns, pitch tents.
Innes for to teme & take;
þat non hadde, pauilons did make;
Marshals are busy about.
per maistres mareschals ferde aboute,
Deliuered innes[6] wyþynne & wyþoute;
. Bordes broughte, cordes & cables,
& made mangers[7] to stande in stables.
Laddies wash palfreys and steeds,
Þen mighte men se þe ladies[8] lede
Many fair palfray & stede
. In mud, in mires, to soille & dasche,[9]
Siþen in wayers to watre & wasche,[9]
tie 'em up, and feed 'em.
Syþen to wype, & to mangers teye,[9]
Hey & prouende byfor *þem* leye.[9]

[1] *be holden of.*
[2] *of.*
[3] *ore or* þat.
[4] *Arthure courte was att.*
[5] *about.*
[6] *stedes.* [leaf 66, col. 2.] (soliers et cambres, *Wace*, ii. 102, l. 10,616.)
[7] *mad maniores.*
[8] *þan mot men laddes.* (escuiers, *Wace*, ii. 102, l. 10,619.)
[9] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

ſ penne come chaumberleyns & squiers, Chamberlains and squires
Wiþ riche robes of[1] mani maners,
To folde, to presse, & to pyke, fold up clothes
& sòmme to hange, & som to strike,
Manteles, forours[2] of riche pris, and furs, miniver, stranlyng,
Of meneuer, stranlyng, veyr, &[3] gris;
Oþer pelure ynowe þer were,[4]
. Þe names of þem y ne wot what are,[4]
. Lomb or boge, conyng or hare,[4] budge, rabbit, or hare.
. Y ne knowe me nought in swylk chaffare.[4]

Þe[5] morn when þe feste schuld be, [leaf 48, bk., col. 2.] On the morn of the Feast,
Come þe Erchebischopes of þer[6] degre;
. Wyþ hym,[7] of Rome cam þe legat;
And oþer bischopes of mener stat;
&, right als þe story seys,
Dubrice corouned hym in his paleys; Archbishop Dubrice and the legate of Rome crown Arthur in his palace.
. A legat of Rome & he
. Dide þer þat solempnete.
. When he was corouned on þat wyse, Then they go to church.
To þe kyrke þey ȝede to þer seruise;
þe two Erchebischopes þat þer war, Two archbishops lead Arthur to a chair;
þey ledden hym, ys armes vp bar,[8]
& sette hym in a riche chayer,
. þer he scholde his seruise her.
ffoure swerdes of golde were born four swords are borne before him by the kings of North Wales, Scotland, and South Wales, and duke Cador of Cornwall.
Wyþ foure kynges hym byforn,—
þat seruise fel to þer[9] scheld
When þat Arthur his feste held,—
þe kyng of North Walys & of Scotland,
& of Southe Walys (þus wryten y fand),

---

[1] *on.* [2] *forres.*
[3] *strinkled with.*
[4] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[5] *On þe.*
[6] *Archbisshop of his.* [7] *him.*
[8] Chascuns un bras li sostenoit, *Wace*, ii. 103. l. 10,643 (from the MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; whence the next line comes too).
[9] *fell ilk a.* (Cist mestiers lor apartenoit, *Wace*, ii. 104, l. 10,649.)

Of Cornewaille, þe Duk Cador,
þe fferþe swerd bar he þor;
þaw[1] his stat were nought so hey,
ȝit was he man ful wel[2] worþy.
Dubrice and the Romish legate perform the service.
Dubrice, þat was a noble prelat,
& of Rome þe Legat,[3]
þat office þey dide, þey myghte best,
Of dignete þey were heyest.

¶ De Regina Guenore.

Queen Guenore is served by
Þe Quen Guenore, on hure syde
Was serued of mykel pryde,
ffor scheo had byfore y-sent
ladies and maidens,
After leuedys & maydens gent
þat were of hure owen[4] kynde,
& oþer of pris þat scheo myght fynde;
queens and countesses.
Quenes, cuntesses, oþer laydys mo,[5]
Comen to mayntene þe fest þo;[5]
She is crowned in her chamber with a coronal,
And in hure chaumbre vpon a pal
þey corouned hure wyþ a coronal.
and then led to St. Julius's church to hear Mass.
When[6] scheo was corouned, þe leuedys
Led hire to kyrke of Seint Iulys;
þer were þe nonnes of religion,
& þer þe Messe schulde[7] be don.

¶ De *processione eorum.*

Guenore and Arthur are crowned sepa-
To ben a twynne,[8] so þey ches,
ffor to departe þer mykel pres;

---

[1] þof.
[2] *man most.*
[3] Dubric, qui de Rome ert légas,
Et de Charlion ert prélas.
Wace, ii. 104, l. 10,658-9.
See p. 387, n.[2] above.
[4] *hir awen.* [leaf 66, back.]
[5] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[6] *with.*
[7] þer *suld hir messe.*
[8] þer *to be.*

. þey myghte nought be in o stede,
. ffor folk vnryde, & mykel crede.[1]
ffoure ladies wente þe same assise
. As þe kynges dide Arþures seruise,
ffour white douues byforn hure bare;—
þe ladies, kynges wyues ware;—
& after þem come oþer leuedys
Richely cled in pourpre & bys,
. In cloþes of golde þat schon so schene,[2]
. & oþere in scarlet & in grene,[2]
Alle were þey richely y-dight;
. þer was neuere seyen swyche a[3] sight!
[6]. I trowe þer were many doude[4]
. þat proudly spak for noble schroude;
. Ilkon[5] oþer faste byheld,
. And of þe faire, mykel was of teld.[6]

rately because of the rough crowd.

Four kings' wives bear four white doves before her; and after them, come ladies, in purple, gold, scarlet, and green.

Many a dowd speaks proudly for her noble shroud.

De Cantu ad Missam.

[leaf 49.]

When þe Procession was gon,
þe Messe bygan sone anon:
þer myghte men se fair samninge
Of þo clerkes þat best couþe synge,
Wyþ treble, mene, & burdoun,
Of mani on was ful swete soun;
Of þo þat songe heye & lowe,
& þo þat couþe org[a]nes blowe,

After the procession, Mass begins.

Clerks sing sweetly, treble, tenor, and bass;

and blow organs.

---

[1] *krede* (crowd). A.-S. *cread*, a company, troop. *Lye*, in *Bosworth*.

[2] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines. Wace has others, ii. 105, instead of them.

[3] *& gay to behold in*.

[4] Common dowdy girl or woman. See the *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 312.

If she be never so fowlle a *dowde*,
with hir kelles and hir pynnes
The shrew hir self can shrowde,
both hir chekys and hir chynnes;
She can make it fulle prowde
with japes and with gynnes,
Hir hede as hy as a clowde.

[5] MS. *Iilkon*.

[6–6] For these four lines the Petyt MS. has,—

Grete presse was at þe procession.
Ilkon proudere þan þe lion.

. Inow þer was of menestralcie,
. & of song gret[1] melodye.
þer myght men se folk come & go
To þe kyrkes, boþe to & fro,
Knights listen, look at the ladies, Of knyghtes & [of][2] squiers bolde
To listne song, leuedis[3] byholde;
and run from one church to another ffro þat o kyrke to þe oþer þey ran;[4]
Where was þe beste, wyste no man;[4]
At neyþer þem þoughte þey dwelled longe,[4]
to hear the singing: they want it to last all day. Ne nought were ful to here þe songe;[4]
ȝyf hit had ben at her pay,
þat song had lasted al þat day.
After Mass, ſſ When þe Messes were boþe done,[5]
. & homward þey were al bone,
Arthur and Guenore þe kyng dide of his atir[6] þar
. þat he vntil þe kirke bar,
& tok anoþer of lasse peys;
change their heavy clothes þe quene dide þe same weys;
þeir heuy atir þey dide of boþe,[4]
for lighter ones; & in lightere dide þem cloþe.[4]
þe kyng com vntil his paleys
he goes to one feast with his men, and she to another with her ladies, & sat atte þe mete þat ilke weys;
þe quene vntil anoþer ȝede,
& þe leuedis wiþ hure gan lede:
after the manner of Troy, But custume was whilom in[7] Troye,
þat when þey made feste of ioye,
Men to-gydere schuld[8] go to mete,
þe ladys by þem self schuld[8] ete;
which the Britons adopted. þe Bretons had þe selue vsage,[4]
. þey were of þe Troiens lynage;[4]
. þat ilke vsage was at þer feste,

---

[1] *faire.*
[2] *of.*
[3] *liste songe ladies to.* [leaf 65, back, col 2.]
[4] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[5] *were don.*
[6] *tire.*
[7] *Som tyme was custom of.*
[8] *suld.*

. No womman cam among þer geste;
þe wommen wyþoute men schuld be,
But seruiturs of here meyne. 11,300

¶ De nobile Conuiuio & seruientibus.

Þe kyng was set vp at þe des, Arthur sits on the dais;
. þer was in ful[1] mykel pres,
But aboute hym þe lordynges sat,
Ilkon after his astat.[2] 11,304
Kay was styward, chosen of alle Kay is steward,
. To serue byforn þe kyng in halle;
Hys cloþyng was god[3] & fyn, clad in ermine,
. & þe pelure of eremyn;[4] 11,308
Wyþ hym serued byfore þe kyng
A þousand y þe same cloþynge;[5] and has 1,000 servitors clad like him.
Out of the kechene serued sire Kay,
& alle his felawes þat day. 11,312
¶ Sire Beduer on þat oþer partie, Beduer is butler,
He serued of þe botelerye;[6]
Wiþ hym was clad in eremin[4] has 1,000
A þousand þat serued of[7] þe wyn: 11,316 ermine-clad servants too,
Was þer non þat serue bad,[8]
But he in riche pelure were clad.[8]
þe kynges coupe sire Beduer bar, [leaf 49, col. 2.]
& ȝede byforn al þat þer war; 11,320 and bears Arthur's cup.
After hym come alle þe route
þat serued þe lordes[9] alle aboute.
¶ þe quene was serued ful richely, Guenore is
Hure seriauntz were assigned[10] redy 11,324 served richly also

---

[1] *about him* þe.
[2] *ilk a lord after his state.*
[3] *riche.* (Vestus d'un vermel siglaton, *Wace*, ii. 107, l. 10,742.)
[4] *pelore of hermyne.*
[5] vestu d'ermine, *Wace*, l. 10,745.
[6] *boterie.*
[7] þat *brouht.*
[8] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines, but they are in Wace, ii. 108, l. 10,755-6.
[9] *barons.*
[10] *hir seruantz were signed.* [leaf 67.]

In alle offices for to serue,
with carvers, . & byfore þe ladys kerue.
coloured vessels, Many a vessel was *þer* riche,
. Of sere colo*urs*, nought alle y-liche; 11,328
many meats and drinks. Of metes many man*e*re ser*u*ise,
& seer drynkes of[1] *þat* wyse.
I can't tell you all the grand things, or name the bold men at this feast. Al þe nobleye couth*e* y nought telle,
Ne y naue no stounde[2] *þer*-on to dwelle, 11,332
þe names to seye of þe richesse,
Ne of þe men of prowesse;
However high-born a knight is, [3]Was *þer* no lond in al þe werd,
Of gode knyghtes so mykel of herd.[3] 11,336
Was *þer* no knyght of so hey blod,
Ne so mykel hadde of wordles[4] god,
he gets no honour unless he has been proved thrice in fight. *Þat þer* fore scholde be holde in[5] pris,
But[6] he in dede were *pr*oued þrys; 11,340
þries y-*pr*oued atte þe leste;
Þen was he alosed at þe feste,
Then his arms and clothing are all of one hue, Þen schulde[7] his armes *þat* men knew,
& his cloþyng [be] al on hew; 11,344
þe same queintise his armes had,
In *þat* same schuld[7] he be clad;
and his wife's too. . & his wyf clad y þe same colo*ur*,
. ffor hur*e* lord was man of hon*ur*. 11,348
If he's unwedded, he must choose a sweetheart. ȝyf on[8] were doughti, & sengle man,
Þen schuld[7] he chese hym a lem*m*an;
Elles schold[7] he nought be byloued

---

[1] *sere drinkes on.*
[2] *Ne myght stonde.*
[3–3] *Ne þe curteisie ne þe honour of cristiente þer was þe flour.* Wace (ii. 109, l. 10,772-82) puts it better for England :—

De biax homes et de noblèce,
Et de plenté et de ricèce,
De cortoisie et d'onor,
Portoit Engletere la flor.
De tos les resnes environ,
Et sor tos cels que nous savon.
Plus erent cortois et vaillant,
Néis li povre païsant
Que chevalier en autres regnes;
Et autre si erent les fenes.

[4] *werldes.*
[5] *suld be holden of.*
[6] *Bod.* (The treble proof is from the MS. du Roi, 7515[3·3·] Colb. of Wace. See De Lincy's edition, ii. 110, note (*a*).
[7] *suld.*
[8] *if ane.*

But he had ben in bataille proued.
Þo leuedys þat were holden chast,
. ffor noþyng wolde do no wast,
Þo leuedis were clad al in on,
. & by þeir cloþyng men knewe ilkon.

Those ladies who are chaste are clad all in one colour.

∫ De diuersis Ludis ibidem.

When þey had eten, & schulde[1] rise,
Ilk man dight hym on þat wyse
þat he best couþe inne playe.[2]
In to þe feld þey tok her[3] waye,
& parted hem in stedes sers
To pleye ilkon on þer maners:
Somme iusted, þat couþe & myght,
ffor to schewe þer stedes wyght;[4]
Somme skipte, & keste þe ston,
& somme skirmed[5] ful god won,
Dartes schoten, launces cast,
. & þo þat couþe, wrastled[6] fast.
Ilkon pleide þe gamen þey couþe,
. þat mest had vsed in his ȝouþe;
þat best dide in his pleynge,
He was brought by-fore þe kynge,
& þe kyng gaf hym mede,
þat he was paied er þat he ȝede.
∫ þe ladies vpon þe walles stey
ffor to biholde al þer pley;
Who so hadde lemman þan[7] in place,
Toward hym turned boþe eye & face;
. On boþe sides ilk oþer byhelde,

After eating, they go to their games: joust, cast the stone, fence, dart, wrestle, &c. The best men get prizes from Arthur. Ladies look on from the walls, and look at their lovers.

---

[1] *suld.*
[2] *þat he couth in play.*
[3] *vnto þe felde he toke his.*
[4] *lyght.*
[5] *wrestrld.* [leaf 67, col. 2.]
[6] *skirmed.* (alèrent escremir, [faire des armes, se battre], *Wace*, l. 10,807.
[7] *þore.*

. þo on þe walles, þey in þe felde.[1]
Iogelours were þere ynowe, [leaf 49, back, col. 1.]
. þat þer queyntise forþ[2] drowe;
[3]Many mynestrales þorow out þe toun,
Som blewe trompe & clarioun,[3]
Harpes, pypes, & tabours,
ffyþeles, sitoles, sautreours,
Belles, chymbes, & symfan,[4]
& oþere y-nowe, þat nemne y ne can;[5]
Gestours, singers, þat merye sang,[6]
. So gret murþe was, þat ouer al rang;[7]
Dysours y-nowe tolde þem fables,
& somme pleide wyþ des &[8] tables,
& somme pleide at hasard fast,
& lore & wonne wiþ[9] chaunce of cast;
Somme þat wolde nought of þe tabler,
Drowe forthe meyne for[10] þe cheker
. Wyþ draughtes queinte of knight & rok,
& oþer sleyghtes ilk oþer byswok;[11]
At ilka mattyng[12] þei seide 'chek;'
þat most þer loste, sat y þe blek.[13]

Jugglers are there,
and minstrels with clarions,
tabours,
fiddles,
cymbals, &c.
Singers sing,
Fablers fable.
Men play at dice, hazard, and
chess, with knight and rook,
crying "check" at every mate.

[1] The next 20 lines are abridged from the Wace MSS., du Roi, 73, Cangé; du Roi, 7515[3.3.] Colb.; de l'Ars. 171, B.-L.

[2] *forþe.*

[3–3] *Mynstrals many with dyuers glew.*
souns of bemes þat men blew.

[4] *Chymes & synfan.* (Monacordes, cymbes, chorons, *Wace*, ii. 112, l. 10,832.)

[5] *Oþer Inouh neuen .I. ne kan.*

[6] *Sangsters þat myry song.*

[7] *sounde of glew ouer all rong.*

[8] *deez at.*

[9] *lost & wan bi.*

[10] *of.*

[11] *with grete sleiht ilk oþer suoke.*

[12] *matyng.*

[13] *most les sat in his nek.*

¶ De donis Arthury.

Þre daies þe feste sat[1]—
I trowe neuere non was lyke[2] þat— After three days' feasting,
& when hit cam to þe[3] Wodnesday, people go,
þat þe people schuld parte, to wende þer[4] way,
þe kyng þem gaf his giftes riche, 11,405 and Arthur gives them gifts:
þo þat til his seruise were briche,
& for þer seruises held hem at fees;[5]
& somme he gaf burwes & cites; 11,408 burghs and cities,
Bischopes & abbotes, auaunced þer[6] rent rent,
Er þan þey fro his court[e] went;
And opere þat of strange landes[7] were,
þat for worschip were come þere,[8] 11,412
He gaf þem stede,[9] & coupes of golde, steeds, gold cups,
& opere iuels, þe beste on[10] molde; jewels,
Somme gaf he hauberks, & somme grehoundes, greyhounds,
Somme riche robes, wyþ[11] many poundes, 11,416 robes,
Somme manteles wyþ veyr & grys, furred mantles,
& somme masers of riche pris,
& somme helmes, & somme[12] hauberkes; hauberks,
& gode palefrays he gaf to clerkes; 11,420 palfreys,
Bowes, arewes, he gaf to[13] archers, bows,
Rounsyes[14] gode vnto squiers;[15] hack-horses,
Som gaf he plates & swerdes[16] of plyght, 11,423 armour,
Somme gyrdles & knyues ful[17] richely dight; knives,

---

[1] *lasted þe feste.*
[2] *was neuer non as.*
[3] *it com.*
[4] *folk suld parte a.*
[5] *seruise held þer feez.* [lf. 67, bk.]
[6] *Abbot & bisshop auanced his.*
[7] þat *of oþer londes.*
[8] *for luf com.*
[9] *gaf stedes.*
[10] *non richere aboun.*
[11] *worth.*
[12] *helmes &.*
[13] *& arwes he gaf.*
[14] *Runces* (? for Wace's *chacéors*, hunters, ii. 115, l. 10,890.)
[15] The Petyt MS. adds,—
som he gaf hauberions.
som plates & som aktons.
[16] *som he gaf knyues.*
[17] And *som suerdes.*

jugs, basins, ermine.

. Somme gaf he ewer & basyn,[1]
. & somme pelure of fyn eremin.[1]

To Tellers of Tales he gives clothes, or lions, leopards, bears, and apes.

. Vnto disours þat telde þem gestes,
. Gaf he cloþes, or[2] wylde bestes,
Lyouns, lepards, þat wold þem take,[3]
Beres & apes boþe white & blake;[3]
Was þer non ought worthy
þat he ne gaf hym ful bleþely,
. & after þat his astat was lyft,
. Als he rewarded hym of[4] gyft.

¶ De Nunciis Lucii Inperatoris Rome.

As the gifts are in giving,

Ryght als þis giftes were in gyuyng,[5]
& alle y-serued, knyght & kyng,

and Arthur is on the dais with all the kings and nobles round him,

Arthur sat [vp]on[6] þe des,
And aboute hym his mykel pres
Of kynges, dukes, erles,[7] & barouns, [leaf 49, bk., col. 2.]
. & of straunge lordes[8] & Bretons,

come twelve messengers from the Emperor of Rome,

. & schulde haue taken leue, & went,
Twelue messegers til hym were sent
. ffro þe Emperour of Rome:
Two to-gydere, faire þey come

with olive branches in their hands,

In to þe halle, Arthur byforn,
Wyþ olyue braunches in handes born,
Wyþ softe pas & [fulle] seine[9]
Gret þei Arthur & his meyne:
þey seide þei were "messegers,
" Comen in pes & in faire maners

---

[1] The Petyt MS. puts these two lines after l. 11,428, but varies them thus:—
som gaf he pelore of hermyn.
som lauour of siluer with bacyn.

[2] *he gaf cloþes of.*

[3] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

[4] *so he rewarded him with.*

[5] *gyffyng.*

[6] *opon.*

[7] *Of kynges erles.*

[8] *of vnkouth knyghtes.*

[9] *fulle seine* (or *seme*).

" Out of Rome, þenne[1] ful fer,
" ffro þe Emperour Lucius Iber,[2]
." þat ys oure lord lef &[3] dere;
." By vs he sendes his lettres here,
." & þe comaundeþ on alle weys
." þat þou do as þis lettre seys."
þe lettre in his hand þey leyde;
List now what þe lettre seyde:

and with a letter from the Emperor Lucius, who bids Arthur do as the letter says: and it says,

¶ fforma litere Lucii Inperatoris.

" Lucius, þat Rome had[4] in baillie,
" & ouer þe Romains haþ[5] maistrie,
" Sendeþ til Arthur þe Bretoun
" Als on of his enemys feloun.
" Me merueilles mykel, & ilka Romayn,
" & merueillyng, we haue[6] disdeyn
" þat þou dar bere þe so heye,
" Ageyns a Romayn open þyn eye.[7]
" Y wondre at the bost þou makest,[8]
" & at wham þou conseil takest,[9]
" Ageyn Rome to reyse strif,
" þe whiles þou wost o Romayn has lyf.[10]
" þou gaf þy self a sory chek,
" Ageyns Rome[11] to reise cuntek,
" þat al erthe þorow dom hit[12] demes,
" & as hed of al þe word hit[13] ȝemes!
" þou wot nought, ȝit wist shal hit be,
" Ne nought hast seyn, but þou schalt[14] se,

"Lucius Emperor of Rome, to Arthur the Briton, his foe! I marvel at and disdain your presumption in opening your eye against a Roman, and in raising strife against Rome, the judge of all the earth! You shall see

---

[1] þien. [leaf 67, back, col. 2.]
[2] ybere.
[3] lord & our.
[4] has.
[5] þe.
[6] meruailand we haf.
[7] ons open þin Ie.
[8] of þe bost þou makes.
[9] whom þou conseile takes.
[10] Whils þou wote a romeyn o lyfe.
[11] agayn Romeyns.
[12] þorh dome.
[13] & hede of att þe world it.
[14] nouht þou sawe bot þou satt.

what it is to wrath Rome !

" How gret hit ys to wrathe Rome
" þat al þe werd schal iustice &[1] dome !
" Ageyn kynde hastou gon !
" Reson ne mesure hastou non ! 11,480

How dare you keep back our tribute, and rob us of our lands ?

" Wheþen come þou ? what þyng þe boldes ?
" Oure truage takes, & has, & holdes,
" Oure landes vs reues as þou wyldes,
" & til vs no þyng þou [ne] ȝeldes ! 11,484

What right have you to them ?

. " What right hastow *þer* vnto ?
. " þy folye hit ys *þat* þou didest so !
" ȝyf þey may longe wyþ þe so leue,
" *þat* we þorow force þe *þem* nought reue, 11,488

Do you think the wolf will flee for the wether,

" *Þen* may þou seye, & scorne, þe wheþer[2]
" *þat* þe wolf fleþ[3] for þe weþer ;
. " & ȝit *þat* he so longe slep
. " *þat* durste nought wake to asaille a schep,
" Or þat a got þe wolf[4] dyd dare, 11,493

or the grey-hound for the hare ?

" & þe grehound[5] fledde for þe hare.

Not so !

" But swilk a þyng may nought bitide !
" Namore schal hit on oure syde ! 11,496

Our ancestor Julius Cæsar won Britain ; and we've taken tribute of it 400 years.

" Oure auncestre Iulius Sesar
" Wan Bretayne (art þou nought war ?)
" And tok trewage *þer*-of longe— [leaf 50.]
. " ffour hundred ȝer we gon hit fonge,— 11,500
" & of o*þe*re ildes aboute ;

But now you won't pay it ; and you've

" But now þorow þe we are wyþoute.
" ȝut hastou don vs more vilte
" þan al *þat* los[6] we telle to þe, 11,504

slain our baron, Frolle, and taken France and Flanders !

" *þat* þou ffrolle, our baroun,[7] slow,
" ff*ra*unce & fflaundres[8] from vs þou drow !
" ffor þou hast of Rome no doute,
" Ne til his lordschip wil þou loute, 11,508

---

[1] *world iustise with.*
[2] *skorne & say to where.*
[3] *woulf fles.* (lions fuit, *Wace*, l. 10,948.)
[4] *goot þe woulf.* [leaf 68.]
[5] lupars, *Wace*, ii. 117, l. 10,950.
[6] *þe losse.*
[7] *seruant.*
[8] et Bretaigne, *Wace*, l. 10,964.

" Y make þe somouns vnto Rome, — I summon you to Rome
" & comaunde þe þat þou come,
" ffolewyng atte[1] nexte heruest.[2] — next harvest,
" Hit schal nought helpe cheson to kest; — without excuse,
" But com, & amende[3] þyn vnright, — to amend your unright.
" þat þou so slowe ffrolle oure knyght,
" & als amende on oþer weye
" Of þat we conne[4] to þe seye.
" But ȝif hit be so þou make delay, — If you don't come,
" þat þou nelt[5] come at þy day,
" Ne come[6] til oure comaundement,
" þan telly þe outrely[7] schent! — I'll ruin you utterly;
" ffor, þorow force, ffraunce y schal[8] þe reue; — take France from you, and
" Of Bretayne nought o fote byleue![9] — leave you no foot of Britain.
" Y trowe[10] nought þou wilt abide,
" & ȝyf þou do, þou schalt þe hide, — If you resist,
" & siker[11] on þys half þe se
" þou schalt nought[12] dur schewe þe to me;
" & ȝyf þou on þys half bes,[13]
" At my comyng[14] for soþe þou fles,
" þou schal nought tapice[15] a night to slepe
" þat y ne schal do þe sterte & lepe,
" & brynge þe to Rome in bondes,[16] — I'll bring you to Rome in
" & leue þe þer in Romaynes hondes![17]" — bonds!"

At þat word was noise & cry — The Britons shout for wrath,
Of þe Bretons þat stoden ney; — and swear
Opes þey swore þat "þey schold deye[18] — they'll hang the messengers.

[1] *folowand at þis.*
[2] a mi-aost, *Wace*, ii. 118, l. 10,969.
[3] *mend.*
[4] *kon more.*
[5] *& witt not.*
[6] *bewe* (bow).
[7] *tett .I. þe þat þou ert.*
[8] *.I. witt.*
[9] *a fote leue.*
[10] *wene.*
[11] *I. trowe nouht.*
[12] *þou satt.*
[13] *halfe bees.*
[14] *if .I. kom.*
[15] tapir (to crouch), *Wace*, ii. 119, l. 10,985.
[16] *bandes.*
[17] *þe in þe Romeyn handes.*
[18] Que cil seront deshonoré, *Wace*, l. 11,993.

" þat broughte þat lettre of vylenye !
. " & for his loue þat sente ȝow hyder,
. " ȝe schul ben honged alle to-gyder ! "
. Lytel letted þey nadde be slayn or hirt ; [1]

But Arthur says the messengers shall take no ill :

But Arthur þenne anon vp stirt :
" Bretouns ! " he saide, " holdeþ [2] ȝow stille !
" þe messegers schul haue non ylle !
. " Ne neyþer ille haue ne [3] here,
. " But come & go in faire manere ;
" Messegers of Rome þey are,
" In pes þey come, so schul þey fare ;

their message is their lord's.

" þer message þat þei haue seyd,
" A lord þey haue, on þem hit leyd."
When þe noyse [4] was wel pesed,
& eft hadde þeir sittynge [5] sesed,

Arthur then consults his wisest barons,

þe kyng tok wyþ hym two or þre
Of his wysest barouns priue,
. þat best couþe conseille til honour ;
Wyþ hym þey ȝede vntil a tour,—
þe name þer-of, hit was in haunt

in the Giant's Tower.

As y fond writen, þe Tour Geaunt—
þer sat Arthur, & þey byside,
To conseille how myghte best bytide.

∫ Dicta Cadoris Cornubye. [leaf 50, col. 2.]

Earl Cador of Cornwall says, "I've often feared

Sire Cador spak firste, & low, [6]
& seyde, " sire kyng, y schal sey ȝow :
" Often in studie haue y ben,
" And in gret drede ay bytwen,

that idleness has made the Britons courageless.

" þat þorow ildelnesse [7] of pes
" Are Bretons feble & herteles ;

---

[1] *letted* þat *men* þam *hirte.* [leaf 68, col. 2.]
[2] *hold.*
[3] *non ille haf non ille here.*
[4] *dynne.*
[5] þei *had* þer *setes.*
[6] *louh.*
[7] *Idelnes.*

" ffor Ildelnesse[1] norischeþ but iuel; — It leads to temptation of
. " Temptacion of flesche &[2] of þe deuel; — the flesh and
" Idelnesse makeþ man ful[3] slow, — the devil,
" & doþ prowesse falle right low;[4] — 11,568 cowardice,
" Idelnesse norischeþ lecherye, — lechery,
" & doþ vs tente to such[5] folye;
" Ildelnesse[1] & long rest,
" ȝougþe in wast awey wil kest, — 11,572 waste,
" & doþ men tente to folye fables,
" Tyl hasardrie, des,[6] & tables. — dice and gaming.
. " We haue now al þis fyue ȝer — For five years
. " Lyued in lechours[7] mester, — 11,576 we've lived in lechery,
" &[8] þorow rest & such soiour
" Haue we lorn gret[9] honour. — lost honour,
" A long while[10] þen haue we slept, — and slept.
. " þat noman wakynge[11] vs kept; — 11,580
" But, þanked be God[12] & oure lady, — But, thank God!
" Now ar we wakned a party;[13] — We're waked up now!
" Som grace is ronne in Romayns herte[14]
" þat þey chalange vs so smerte,[15] — 11,584 The Romans have claimed
" Vs to bynime oure landes[16] & fees, — our lands!
" & oure conqueste of[17] oþer contres.
" ȝyf Romayns be so coraious — If they try to take 'em,
" þat þey wil do as þey send vs, — 11,588
" ȝit schul þe Bretons wynne þem los — we'll beat them.
. " Of Romayns þat in Rome gos;
" ffor longe pes louede y neuere, — I don't like a long peace."
" Ne nought ne schal, þey y lyue[18] euere."
ſſ þenne spak Wawayn þe curteys: — 11,593 Wawayn the courteous says
" Merueillike, Cador, þou seys!

---

[1] *Idelnes* [no *ffor.*]
[2] *& myketł temptacion.*
[3] *mas man right.*
[4] *louh.*
[5] *dos vs tent to suilk.*
[6] *to deez.*
[7] *vsed rioterie.* [leaf 68, back.]
[8] þat.
[9] *haf we lost grete.*
[10] Piece, *Wace*, ii. 121, l. 11,031.
[11] *wakand on.*
[12] *.I. þank god.*
[13] un petit, *Wace*, l. 11,032.
[14] *ronen in þe romens þouht.*
[15] *chalenge on vs souht.*
[16] *for to haf* our *londes.*
[17] *att* our *conquest in.*
[18] *satt þof .I. lyf.*

that he does like peace.

" After werre, god ys pes;
" & after wo, þe wele god ches;

Men can fight for love then.

" In pes ys don gret vasselage,
" ffor loue men doþ gret outrage."[1]
& at þat word þey set hem doun,
þe kyng & ilka baroun.

Arthur then speaks.

When þe kyng saw þem set,
Alle þat were til conseil fet,
þe kyng þoughte a þrowe,[2] þen lifte his hed,
When þei hadde þer ianglyng leued:[3]

" Barons! you are my fellows, share with me in loss and gain,

" Barouns," he seide, " þat ben now here,
" ȝe are my felawes, me[4] ful dere;
" When y lese, ȝe haue part þer-ynne,
" & felawes ȝe are when þat y wynne;

take part in woe and war.

" When wo or werre haþ me comen,
" ȝour part wyþ me haue ȝe nomen,
" As felawes in prosperite[5]
" & felawes in aduersete;[5]
" ffor wheþer y haue wonne or loren,
" ȝour hap wyþ me haue ȝe forþ boren;

Through you have I won honour,

" þorow ȝoure help & god auys
" Hauy wonnen mikel pris;
" By water, by londe, haue y ȝow led,

sped well in my need. Ever have I found you true.

" þorow ȝow in nede haue y wel sped;
" Euere y haue founde[6] ȝow trewe,
" & euere ȝour conseil god & newe;
" Alle þe londes þat y haue wonne,
" Wyþoute ȝow was nought bygonne.

The Romans

" þe Romayns, as ȝe haue herd [leaf 50, back, col. 1.]
" By þys lettre þat here ys sperd,[7]

threaten both you and me.

" Me & ȝow þey manace fast,
" Wyþ grete wordes þey wene me gast.

---

[1] *many rage.*
[2] *a while he þouht.*
[3] *carpyng leued.*
[4] *& me.*
[5] P. leaves out these lines.
[6] *att tymes haf .I. fon.* [leaf 68, back, col. 2.]
[7] *þat here is folden & vp sperd.*

" ȝyf God wil helpe me & ȝow; But if God
" þeir þret schal nought be for þer[1] prow; 11,628 helps us,
. " Of vs gete þey neuere nought, they shall pay
. " But ȝif hit be ouer dere abought.[2] for it!
" þey haue gret power, & ar ful riche, They are
. " þer nis no power to þeires[3] liche, 11,632 strong;
" þer-fore we moste[4] bifore purueye so we must
" What we wil do, what we wil seye, settle what
" & auenauntly[5] & resonable, we'll do and
. " & þat we seye, hold hit stable. 11,636 say,
" A þyng for þought[6] þat men wil rede, and then hold
" Hit is þe betere mayntened at nede; firm to it.
" An arewe þat ys schoten, ȝe se, An arrow shot
" Eyþer bihoues[7] hit men fendit or fle; 11,640 at you, must be
" þat same weys byhoues[8] vs do. guarded or
" þyse Romayns han yschoten[9] vs to; avoided.
" Now conseille we, & keuere[10] vs raþe, The Romans
" So þat her schetyng do vs no scaþe. 11,644 have shot at
" Trewe þey aske, so haue þey had; us; we mustn't
. " þat ys bihinde, send þem þey bad, let 'em hurt us.
" Of þis lond & opere mo; They ask tri-
" & ffraunce wil þey nought[11] furgo. 11,648 bute of us,
and demand
France.

∫ Dicta siue Responcio Arthury ad Romanos.

" For Bretaigne wil y first[12] answere, As to Britain,
. " Writen in lettre þat þey schul bere,[13] I'll send them
" Answeryng[14] for ȝow & me, this letter:
. " þat lettre wil y þat hit so be. 11,652

---

[1] þer *manace is no þing.*
[2] *bot it be futt dere bouht.*
[3] *non is* þer *pere ne to* þam.
[4] *bus vs.*
[5] *Auant like.* (avenanment, *Wace.*)
[6] *þing be for.*
[7] *ouþer bos.*
[8] *þe sam wyse bos.*
[9] *haf schoten.*
[10] *couere.*
[11] *witt not.*
[12] *witt first.*
[13] *satt here.*
[14] *ansuere.*

. " þus wil y seye, *þus* wol y write
. " My skile; leste[1] me a lite:
'Cæsar won this land by force. " Cesar of Rome þis land first wan,
" A[l] þorow fight & force of man; 11,656
" þe Bretouns mighte nought[2] defende;
" Trewe byhoued *þem* to[3] sende;
Force is not Right; " & force, ȝe wite wel, ys no god right,
" But pruyde out of mesure myght; 11,660
does not make Law; " Hit is no skile, ne lawe non makes,
" þyng þat þou þorow force takes;
but can be upset by Force. " & swylk giftes men schal furdo,
" þat wyþ wrong was taken so. 11,664
The Romans upbraid us with their conquest of our ancestors. " þey repreue[4] vs of our auncessours,
" þat þey ouer-cam þem wyþ harde stours;[5]
" Of pouerte þey make vmbreyd,[6]
" & of trewage[7] byfore seyd; 11,668
" & of þis þey make auauntement,
" þat here-byforn our fadres schent.
The more reason that we should harass Romans now, hate 'em, and beat 'em down. " So mykel oughte[8] we greue *þem* þe more.
" & þey ar halden vs to restore; 11,672
" Wel oughte we hat hem *þat* hem han[9] hated,
" & bere hem doun[10] *þat* hem abated.
" þey wolde don[11] vs þe same outrage,
" & seye hit ys *þer* heritage 11,676
They say our land is their heritage! " To haue oure godes, & vs to reuille!
. " þey schul nought bide eft *þat* while;
By their reason, I may claim Rome; " ¶ But by[12] *þer* resoun & þer dome,
" Wyþ skile y may chalange[13] Rome; 11,680
" So wyþ skile & reson[14] y may wel
" þe lond of Rome aske euery[15] del.

---

[1] *my skitt listens.*
[2] *þat tyme mot not.*
[3] *treuage bord* þam *to* þam.
[4] *vpbraide.* [leaf 69.]
[5] *hard schours.*
[6] *vpbraide.*
[7] *þe treuage.*
[8] *awe.*
[9] *We awe to hate* þat *þei haf.*
[10] *& bete doun* þo.
[11] *witt do.*
[12] *with.*
[13] *.I. witt set chalange on.*
[14] *& with* þer *skitt.*
[15] *ask ilk a.*

" Belyn was kyng of Bretouns,
" And Bre*n*ne duk of Burgoilouns;
" þyse bre*þer*e, of Bretaygne born, [leaf 50, back, col. 2.]
" Conquered Rome here byforn,
" & of Rome tok[1] truages,
" & henge *þer* twenty of þeir hostages
" Byfor*e* *þer* eyen, *þat* þey myght se,
" & si*þ*en co*n*quered al þe cite.
" When Belyn turnde to Bretayne,
" Of Rome he made Bre*n*ne cheftayne,
" & bad hym gou*er*ne al þe hono*ur*,
" & he so regned as Emperour.
" Now wil y late of[2] Belyn,
" & speke y wil of Constantyn,
" Constances sone & Eleynes,[3]
" *þat* held Rome als his demeynes.
" Constance, of Rome had seyn*ur*ye fair,
" & Constantyn þen was his heyr,
" & y am heir of Constantyn;
" þorow *þat* desent Rome schal be myn.
" Maximyan, Leons[4] sone,
" Kyng of Bretayne, at Rome gan wone;
" He wan Neustr*ie*, þe Lesse Bretayne,
" & al ff*r*aunce & Alemayne,
" & al Mongow & Lombardye,
" And of Rome hadde þe seign*ur*ye;
" þyse were myn ancesso*ur*s of scheld,
" *þat* only þe[5] hono*ur* of Rome held.
" Now þorow skil haue ȝe knowen
" *þat* Rome by reson schold[6] be myn owen
" Al so wel as Bretayne þeyres,
" þorow eld auncetr*ie* til heyres.

for Belyn and Brenne,
Britons born,
conquered Rome, and took tribute from it.
Moreover, Belyn made Brenne Emperor of Rome.
Then again,
through Constant, who was lord of Rome, and whose son's heir I am, Rome should be mine.
Thirdly, Maximian
was Lord of Rome.
These are my ancestors,
and Rome ought to be mine.
If the Romans claim Britain,

[1] *þe Romeyns toke.*
[2] *.I. leue.*
[3] *Constancius sonne & Elyns.*
[4] *leonyne.* [leaf 69, col. 2.]
[5] *þat þe.*
[6] *Rome ouh to.*

" Rome had trewage, & hit fur-sok;
" & trewe of Rome myn auncestres tok;
I claim Rome. " þey cleyme Bretayne, & y cleyme Rome;
" þat we boþe cleyme, ȝut[1] ys to come;
Let them take Britain if they can! " Let þem wynne hit ȝif þat þey may,
" ȝit haue y kept hit al my day.
" ffraunce y wan of ffrolle þer knyght;
" To kepe hit lengere he hadde[2] no myght;
" þorow force þey wonne hit, als y hit wan;
" Wyþ force so mighte anoþer man.
" Wherto chalange þey so bolde[3]
" þat þey ne myghte no lenger holde?[3]
Force is their only title to it, and that's free to any one. " þorow right skil haue þey no seruise,
" But al þorow force & couetyse,
" þat ys to anoþer al so fre[3]
" Als hit was to þeym or me.[3]
The Emperor threatens to lead me bound to Rome! " þe Emperour makeþ vs gret[4] manace,
" Out of þis lond me for to chace,
" & in bondes to Rome lede.
" Nolde God he scholde[5] so spede!
I value him little, and fear him less. " Y preyse hym litel, & drede hym[6] lesse!
" ȝyf he on me wil[7] seke prowesse,
" Encountre he getes er þat[8] he go,
" þat eft ne schal he me manace ne[9] slo,
" Ne to none of myne do ylle;
" So schul we don hym chaunge his wille.
Let him bring Rome! I'll bring Britain. And let the winner have both." " But when þey come to chalangyng,
" Bryng Rome, & y schal Bretayne bryng!
" & whilk of vs þat most may,
" Bere Rome & Bretayne boþ a-way."

---

[1] *it.*
[2] *lengere þei.*
[3] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[4] *makis his.*
[5] *god witt not he.*
[6] *lititt he me praises & dredes.*
[7] *he to me.*
[8] *a countir he getis or.*
[9] *Me eft satt not manace to.*

¶ Dicta Ohelys Regis.

When Arþur had seid his resoun,
. Wel was hit alowed of ilka baroun.[1]
. Wiþ o word seide þei alle at ones,
. " Wel haue ȝe seid, sire, for þe nones!"
. When þei were stilled a party,
ffirst spak sire Ohel þat sat hym by,
& seide: " no man ȝong ne old[2]
" Schuld ought amende þat ȝe haue told;
. " But syþen þou sest[3] þat þou art þret,
. " & may nought passe wyþoute baret,
" Somoun þy folk, & make þem ȝare,
. " & set þem day when þou wilt fare.
. " But make no long drecching þer-to,
. " ffor y wile, ȝif þat þou wilt so,
" & passe Moungu in to þe mountz,[4]
. " & holde[5] day of þy somouns.
. " & ȝif we wende so alle[6] to-gyder,
. " & he se þat we come þyder,
" So may bytide,[7] þen schal hym rewe
" þat he bigan þis bale to brewe;
. " & hit bytydes many[8] stoundes,
. " þat who so bygynneþ,[9] hym self confoundes.
" I trowe þat God wil vs auaunce;
" Grace ys to-ward, & gode chaunce.
" þe Emperour sendes after þe;
" Sek hym þer-fore,[10] wher so he be,
" & baldely bede we on hym þe bars;[11]
" Sone schul we se þen ho ys chars;[12]

11,748 11,752 11,756 11,760 11,764 11,768 11,772

All Arthur's barons approve of his speech (or letter).

[leaf 51.]

Ohel says,

" Summon your folk at once;

cross the Alps;

and when Lucius sees us all, maybe he'll be sorry that he brewed this bale.

He has sent for you; go to him,

---

[1] *with ilk breton.*
[2] *alde . . . talde.* [leaf 69, back.]
[3] *sen þou sees.*
[4] *Mongow in to þe mouns.*
[5] *hold þe.*
[6] *wend with þe.*
[7] *tide.*
[8] *it tides often.*
[9] *þat on bigynnes.*
[10] *þan.*
[11] *& bede baldlie oñ him bares.*
[12] *so may we se who vs chares.*

and frighten him well.

" Set þe Emperour in swylk a drede
" þat he tys court nere dur vs[1] bede.
" Loke what seis þe prophesie,—

The Sibyl prophesied that Briton should govern Rome.

" Sibille þe sage [þat][2] wil nought lye:— 11,776
" þe Bretons,[3] of Bretayne schul come,
" & þorow[4] force gouerne Rome."

Four Britons have done so; and you shall be the fifth.

" ffoure ar[5] passed, wel we mene;
" þou art þe fifte schal[6] do þem tene; 11,780
" þe fifte þou art, y wot hit we[l],[7]
" þat Rome schal haue ilkadel.[7]

It is ordained.

" Syn so ys ordeyned to bityde,

Delay not then! Forward all!

" Wher-to schold we longe[8] abide? 11,784
" Auaunce now boþe þy self & ous![7]
" Oure wil to helpe ys coraious;[7]
" Y dar wel seye, so hastou founde,[7]

We fear not blows or death!

" ffor we ne doute no dynt ne wounde,[7] 11,788
" Ne deþ, ne prison, ne langour,[7]
" So wilne we faste þyn honour![7]
" Leue nought now, but faste þe spede,

I will bring 10,000 full armed knights,

" & y schal, ȝyf þat þou haue[9] nede, 11,792
" Come wyþ ten þousand of gode knyghtes,
" Horsed & armed[10] at alle rightes.
" & ȝyf þou for tresour lette,

and will pledge all my lands to get you money."

" Al my lond schal y wed-sette 11,796
" ffor gold & seluer, þe to take,
" Er þou þis viage schuld fursake."[11]

(Archbishop Dubrice turns hermit,

(Seint Dubrice, þe holy man,
At kyng Arþur tok leue þan 11,800
ffor to chaunge his abyte,

---

[1] *þat neuer to courte eft dur þe.*

[2] *þat.*

[3] Que trois roi, *Wace*, ii. 128, l. 11, 210.

[4] *þorgh fyne.*

[5] *tuo er.* (Dui de cels, *Wace*, l. 11,212.)

[6] *ert þe thrid satt.* (Tu es li ters, *Wace*, l. 11,216.)

[7] P. leaves out these lines. They are in *Wace*, ii. 128–9.

[8] *satt þou long.*

[9] *satt help if þou haf.*

[10] *with hors & armes.*

[11] *or þou þi wendyng forsake.*

. & bycam anon [1] heremyte ;
. & Dauid, Arthures em, hit tok,
. þe erchebischopriche [2] þat Dubrice fursok.) 11,804

and Arthur's uncle David is made Archbishop of Kaerlyon)

∫ Dicta Aguselly, Regis Scocie.

After þe speche of sire Ohel,
Seyde þe kyng sire Agusel,[3]
Sire Lothes broþer, & sire Vrien,[4]—
. Alle þre were doughti men,[4]— 11,808
& seide, " ȝyf þou wilt werre bygynne,
" Spek now to þo þat ar here-ynne,
" þe beste of alle þy baronage,
" þat wyte & herden þe message, 11,812
" And wite þer wille, what þey wil do, [leaf 51, col. 2.]
" & what þat þey may helpe [5] þer-to.
" Now ys tyme to purueye [4]
" Of help, & god conseil to seye,[4] 11,816
" Alle þo þat of þe holde,[4]
" Riche lordes, & barouns bolde,[4]
" þat oughte to helpe þe þorow skile,[4]
" & wel y trowe þat so þey wyle.[4] 11,820
" No tydynge neuere y ne vnderstod
" þat gladed me so mikel in mod,
" As wyþ þe Romayns for to werre,
. " þat alle men in þer daunger sperre. 11,824
" Y ne may þem nought loue ne preise,
" ffor þey ar proude & vncurteyse,
. " Gode men so mykel to [6] despise,
. " þat schul nought liue but [7] in þer seruise ;
" & þey ar men of non honour, 11,829
" But couetous to gedere tresour,

King Aguysel of Scotland, says to Arthur,

" Ask all the best of your barons

what help they'll give you.

They ought to help you, and I believe they will.

I myself never heard such glad tidings as that we're to fight the Romans.

I don't like 'em. They're proud,

and covetous,

---

[1] *bicome ane.* [leaf 69, bk., col. 2.]
[2] *Archbisshop see.*
[3] *Anguisel.*
[4] P. leaves out these lines.
[5] *help þe.*
[6] *þei.*
[7] *þei may not lif bot.*

" Gode men [1] wyþ-al to noye,[2]
robbing men's lands. . " & þer londes to robbe & struye.[2] 11,832
They'll come to grief yet, " Y trowe þei schul ȝit [3] mis-bytide
. " ffor þer couetise & þer pryde;
" Of þys þat þey haue y-sent,[4]
" þey schul be wrothe er hit be ent; [5] 11,836
. " Wonder were elles, or art me failles,[2]
and have to repent for it. . " But þey pleye wyþ repentailles.[2]
" & þaw þey [6] neuere had hit by-gonne,
" We scholde þorow right [7] on þem haue ronne
" ffor to venge our auncessours, 11,841
" & bate þer pride as þey wolde ours.
They got their tribute from Britain " þey seide þey had of þeym [8] trewage,
" & chalange hit for here heritage: 11,844
" I trowe þat þey nere þem [9] non gaf,
by force, by robbing like thieves. " But þorow force þem ouer haf,
. " As þeues robbed þem, & reft:
. " þat wil we chalange of þem now eft/; 11,848
" Wyþ force þey gaf hit to þe Romayns,[2]
And by force we'll have it back again. " Wyþ force we wil haue hit agayns.[2]
. " So harde oure force may to þem byte,[2]
. " þat alle oure scapes schul þey quyte;[2] 11,852
" We haue wonnen many a stour,
" & ouer al born a-wey [10] þe fflour,
We'll lower their pride! " So schul we ȝit þer pride abate,
. " ffor þer couetise & þeir hate. 11,856
. " þat we haue wonne, y sette at nought,
. " But ȝif þe Romayns to ryng [11] be brought;
Nothing do I want more than to be at them. " Noþyng now desire y more [12]
" þan þider-ward we redy wore, 11,860

---

[1] MS. *mem.* P. *men.*
[2] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.
[3] *trowe þam saȝt.*
[4] *haf vs sent.*
[5] *ent* = ended.
[6] *bot þof þe.*
[7] *suld þorgh reght.*
[8] *þei say þai had of vs.*
[9] *þam neuer.*
[10] *ouer aȝt we haf born.*
[11] *rounge.* [leaf 70.]
[12] *mare . . . ware.*

" & þat we were at þe bataille,
" To se who scholde [1] best assaille ;
" þer schuld [2] we wynne prowesse & prow, — I know we shall win their treasure,
" Hors, harneys, tresor ynow ; 11,864
" ȝif God vs graunte our lyf to saue,
" þat we þem aske, we schul [2] wel haue,
" Rome & al þat þer-to langes ; — and Rome too.
" þen schul [2] we ryghte, þat now vs wranges.[3]
" ȝyf God wil graunte vs wel to [4] venge, 11,869
" Toward hym we schal [5] wynne Lorrenge
" & Alemayne, ȝyf þat we may ;
" Algate, ȝut schul we make [6] assay ! 11,872
" Als y seye, so wol y rede,
" & þat ilke [7] wil do in dede.
" ȝif God me graunte wel to spede, — God helping me, I'll bring
" Two þousand [8] schal y wyþ me lede, 11,876 2,000 knights,
" & fot folk ynowe, gode at nede : and good foot-folk too."
" ȝif God wyle, noman schul we drede ! " [9]

When þe Scottysche kyng had his tale [10] told, [lf. 51, bk., cl. 1.]
Alle þey seide wyþ tonge o fold, 11,880 All Arthur's barons declare they'll go with him.
' þat schent he schold be of hem alle,[11]
' On wham þat þe wendyng schulde nought [12] falle.'
When ilkon had seid his wylle,
Arthur listned, & sat ful stille, 11,884 Arthur sends for a clerk,
Let calle [13] a clerk wyþ inke & penne, has his answer written,
& bad hym write he scholde hym kenne.
Als he had seyd in alle maners,
& bitaught hit [14] þe messegers 11,888 and gives it, sealed, to the

---

[1] *whilk suld.*
[2] *sall.*
[3] þat þerto *langes.*
[4] *vs forto.*
[5] ȝit *sall we fond to.*
[6] *all gate we will mak.*
[7] *& all þe same.*
[8] dix mil, *Wace*, ii. 132, l. 11,316.
[9] *will we sall not.*
[10] *Anguisell his tale had.*
[11] Honis soit, *Wace*, l. 11,321.
[12] þat *wendyng suld not.*
[13] *did calle.*
[14] *He tauht it to.*

head messenger,

ffaire folden, & wel enseled,[1]
. & to þer maister was hit deled,[2]
& dide þem alle gret honour,
. Y-now he gaf hem of tresour, 11,892

and bids them tell the Emperor, "Arthur of France and Britain, will defend his lands against the Romans.

& bad hem seye to þe Emperour,
þat "Arthur of ffraunce [is] gouernour,
" & of Bretaigne chef & flour,
" & schal defendit, castel[3] & tour, 11,896
. " & be þer warant & socour[4]
" Ageyns Romayns to stonde in stour."[4]
" Seis[5] ȝour lord, y wil nought let
" To come þat day þat he haþ set; 11,900

He will come to Rome, too, not to pay tribute, but to fetch it."

" No trewage to ȝelde, but trewage to[6] fet;
. " Loke he be redy, do þat he het!"

The Roman Emperor's messengers tell him of the grandeur of Arthur's court,

Þe messegers þer leue þey tok,
Toward Rome þer wey þey schok, 11,904
& telde þe Emperour, when þey come,
þe grete nobleye of Arthures home,
. How mykel folk þey wyþ hym fond,—
. So doughti þer nar[7] in no lond,— 11,908
& in what stede his court he held,
Al þe stat þer-of, þey teld,
. How curteisly to þem he spak,

of Arthur's courtesy and wisdom: "No kaiser living is like him,

" Nought but wysdom[8] of his mouþ brak; 11,912
" Nys non on lyue, cayser ne kynge,
" þat semeþ so wel[9] his beryng,
. " Ne so curteys þer-wyþ-al;

so courteous,

" His giftes ar large, & stonde[10] in stal; 11,916

so generous,

" þer ys no kyng doþ suche[11] costages

so hospitable,

. " Of mete ne drynke, ne giftes of[12] wages;

---

[1] *we seilde.*
[2] *deilde.*
[3] *Sall defend boþe toun.*
[4] P. leaves out these lines.
[5] *say.*
[6] *bot forto.* [leaf 70, col. 2.]
[7] *non is.*
[8] MS. *wysdon.*
[9] *semes so wele.*
[10] *standes.*
[11] *it is no kyng to his.*
[12] *no to gyue.*

" Ne swilk *ser*uise ys *þer* non — so well-served.
" In no court, as in[1] his allon. 11,920
" To aske hym trewe, hit is for nought; — You needn't ask him for tribute: he wants it of you."
" He *þenk*es to aske ȝe *þenn*es[2] brought."
. Þe chartre þey schewed þer barouns,
. & seide, " swich ys Arthur*es* respouns." 11,924

When þe Romayns had wel herd — The Romans, on hearing this, and Arthur's letter,
How þe messegers answerd,
& þeir *lettre*[3] acorded wel
Vntil þer sawe ilka del, 11,928
þat Arthur wolde no *ser*uise do,
But haue trewage,—þe *lettre* wild so,—
þey seide to the Emp*er*our alle aboute, — tell the Emperor he must
" Wyþ force ȝe schul don hym loute. 11,932 force Arthur down,
" Passeþ Moungu wiþ host right stoute;[4]
" & ȝif he come, we schal hym route, — and take his realm, in spite of his snout.
" & reue hym his regne, maugre his snoute,
" & wyþ righte force hold hym wyþoute."[4] 11,936

∫ De Consilio Romanor*um* con*tra* Arthur*um*, cu*m* no*min*ibus Regum eor*um*.

When Luci*us* wyste Arthur*es* respouns, — Lucius summons his host
. He saw[5] þe wille of his barouns,
& dide somoune wyþoute delay
To be redy byn þe twentyþ[7] day, 11, 940 for the 20th day.
Wyþ hors & harneys to wende al prest [lf. 51, bk., col. 2.]
Ageyn Arthur toward þe west:
. " ffor y schal nere stynte no stounde[4] — He'll not stop till he gets to Arthur.
. " Til y come þere þat þey hym founde."[4] 11,944

---

[1] *courte bot.*
[2] *þien.* [what ye thence took.]
[3] *chartre.*
[4] P. leaves out these lines.
[5] *& sawe.*
[6] *he.*
[7] *be þe tuenty.* (al disme, *Wace*, ii. 134, l. 11,362.)

ſſ Nomina Regum.

These kings come to Lucius : Epistrot, Otheon, Hurtak,

ffirst com Epistrot þe kyng of Grece,
& Sire Otheon, Duc of Boece,
Sire Hurtak þe kyng of Turkeys,
A doughti knyght & a curteys,

Pandras,

Pandras þe kyng of Egipte,[1]

Ypolipte,

& of Cyce[2] þe kyng Ypolipte,—
He was of gret seignurie,
An hundred cites at his baillie ;—

Evander,

Out of Syre cam Ewander,

Teucer,

& out of ffryse þe kyng Teucer,

Macipsa,

& out of Babilloyne sire Macipsa,[3]

Elephatina,

& out of Spayne sire Elephatina,[4]

Bockus,

& out of Mede þe kyng Bockus,

Sertorius,

& out of Lubye sire Sertorius,[5]

Polidetes,

Out of Bycynie sire Polidetes,

Serses, and Musensar.

& out of Tyre þe kyng Serses,[6]
Sire Musensar, kyng of[7] Aufrik,—
A lond ferne a ful gret stryk ;
But he broughte tresor gret plente,[8]
& fair folk, & fele, to se.[8]—

Of Roman Senators, come

þo þat were of þe senatours,
Men of Rome most of honurs,

Marcel,

Of þeym cam Marcel, Lucius, Catel,[9]

Metel, &c.,

Octa, Gayus, & sire Metel,

so many, that if one could find their names

Manye oþere[10] of þe same kynde,
þat noman may þer names fynde ;

---

[1] Crète, MS. du Roi, 27; d'Egypte, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé ; *Wace*, ii. 135, l. 11,374.

[2] Gète, MS. du Roi, 27 ; Crethe, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé ; *ib.* 11,375.

[3] *Micipsa.* [leaf 70, back.]

[4] *Alifatina.*

[5] *Sertonius.* (Sertorius, *Wace*, l. 11,383.)

[6] Et d'Iture li rois Xersès, *Wace.*

[7] *Mucensar out of.*

[8] P. leaves out these lines.

[9] *lucius katett.*

[10] *& oþer Inouh.*

. & þey alle þe names wer founde,[1]
. Me þynkeþ hit were but tynt, þe stounde[1] 11,972
. To write þe names of so fele hounde[1] it'd be lost time to write 'em.
. þat were vncristned in þys mounde.[1]
When alle were comen, symple & bolde,
ffour hundred þousand *per* wer tolde, 11,976 400,180 armed men,
& an hundred & foure score,
Alle armed men, hit telles[2] byfore,
Wyþoute fotmen & seriauntye,[3] and foot-soldiers without number,
. þat þe noumbre kan non descrye. 11,980
· When alle were comen þat þider schold come,
At þe Lammesse þey wente[4] fro Rome, start at Lammas for the Alps.
. & tok *per* weye toward Moungu
. Wyþ mykel noyse & cry & heu.[5] 11,984

ſ De tenentib*us* Regis Arthury.

When Arthur departed his meyne, Arthur
. & schulde go *per* þey wold be,
By name he made *þem* alle somouns
Er þey wente, alle þe barouns, 11,988
& preied hem of help at here myght,— asks his helpers
But þat þey saued wel þeir ryght;—
And how mikel ilkon myght brynge, how many men they can bring him.
. þat wolde he wyte ou*er* alle þynge. 11,992
Irland, Gutland, & Norweye, Ireland, Iceland, &c.
Denmark, Island, & Orkeneye,
Sex[6] score þousand þey hym het,[7] promise 120,000
Of alle þo landes gedered & fet,— 11,996
Knyghtes were namo of[8] þo,
But o*þere*,—þat on fote most[9] go; men on foot, armed

[1] P. leaves out these lines.
[2] *of armes men telle.*
[3] *sargeancie.*
[4] *remoued.* (Entrant aost, de Rome murent, *Wace*, ii. 136, l. 11,401.)
[5] *hu.*
[6] Set, *Wace*, ii. 136, l. 11,412.
[7] *mette.* [leaf 70, back, col. 2.]
[8] *non of alle.* (N'estoient mie chevalier, *Wace*, l. 11,414.)
[9] *þei kouth not ride þei suld.* (N'il ne savoient cevalchier, *Wace*, l. 11,415.)

On fote by-houed þem bere þer armes,[1]
with spears, battle-axes, &c. Dartes, gauelokes, & gysarmes;[1] 12,000
Þat was þe manere of þer lond,[1]
. Þey hadde non oþer, ne non þem fond.[1]
Normandy, Poitou, &c. ¶ Of Normandye & of Angeowe,
Of Pykardie & of Peytowe, 12,004
And out of fflaundres & of Brabant,[2] [leaf 52.]
send 80,000. ffour score þousand wyþouten want,[3]
So mykel scholde þey fynde of fe,[1]
. & namore was þer ryght to be.[1] 12,008
In ffraunce were þanne twelue lordes fers,[4]
The Douze Peers Þat men calle þe dusze[5] pers;
Þyse dusze pers, lordes of ffraunce,
To Gerny[6] of Chartres þey hadde alliaunce;
send 1,200 knights. Eche of hem[7] fond an hundred knyghtes 12,013
Þat fel to þer[8] fe at alle rightes.
Ohel 10,000, Ten þousand hette sire Ohel,
Agusel 2,000, & two þousand sire Agusel;[9] 12,016
Britain 60,000, & Arthur, of þys ilke lond
Sexti[10] þousand knyghtes he fond,
besides many archers and arbalisters. Wyþ-outen fot-folk & archers,
& seriauntz & arblasters; 12,020
Of þyse y ne fond no noumbre y-writen,
Ne of na mo ne couþe men witen.
Arthur bids them all meet him ¶ When Arthur wyste þe certeyn,
What ilk lord scholde brynge hym[11] ageyn 12,024
Of men of armes of god array,
He preied hem come, & sette a day,
at Barfleet; At Bareflete in Normandye,
Þider scholde come al þer nauye; 12,028

---

[1] P. leaves out these lines.
[2] *of fflandres & Boloyne.* (Bologne, *Wace*, l. 11,420.)
[3] *essoyne* (difficulty). essogne, *Wace*, l. 11421.
[4] *tuelfe lorde sers.*
[5] *cald duze.*
[6] *Geryn.* (Gérin, *Wace*, l. 11,426.)
[7] *Ilk of* þam.
[8] *felt* þer.
[9] *Auguisel* (or *Anguisel*).
[10] quarante, *Wace*, l. 11,435.
[11] *how fele ilk kyng suld bring.*

. & ilkon *cer*teynlike þey het[1] — and they promise so to do.
. To be þere at *þa*t day set.
þe*n* went alle hom, kyng & knyght,
& p*ur*ueyd hem *þa*t þey were dight. 12,032

∫ De Modredo, ffratre Walwyny, traditore.

Sire Arthur hadde a cosyn, — To Modred, a traitor,
Moddred he highte, a[2] trait*ur* fyn;
A noble knyght he was in stour,
But til his e[me] he was[3] traytour. 12,036
Arthur bitaughtym[4] his lond to kepe;— — Arthur entrusts his land.
. Hym hadde ben bett*er*e haue leid[5] to slepe;
ffor he had loued[6] þe quene[7] p*ri*uely, — But Modred had lain with Arthur's queen,—
Arthur*es* wyf, & leyn hure[8] by; 12,040
Nought was p*er*ceyued bytwyxte he*m* to:
Who schuld haue trowed hit had be[9] so?
. Who wold haue went so synful lyf,[10]
*þa*t þe cosyn had leyn by þe emes wyf?[10] 12,044 — the nephew with his uncle's wife!—
& namely of swylk a man?[10]
þorow al þe werld his los of ran.—[10]
Arthur bitaught hym Geneu*er*e[11] þe quen, — Yet Arthur entrusts Guenevere to Modred,
(Alas *þa*t eu*er*e hit scholde so ben!)[12] 12,048
& al þe lond saue[13] þe coroune,
& schop[14] his host to South*au*mptoune, — and marches to Southampton.
þ*er* schipes-y þe hauen ryden,
*þa*t Arthur & his folk abiden. 12,052

---

[1] *him certeynly hette.*

[2] *Modrede hight þat.* (A Mordret, un de ses nevos, *Wace*, ii. 138, l. 11,452.)

[3] *to his Eame was he.*

[4] *he betauht him.*

[5] *had bien better haf liggen.*

[6] *he lufed.*

[7] "Genievre estoit sa seror," says the MS. du Roi, 7515[3-3] Colb.; *Wace*, ii. 138, l. 11,458.

[8] *lay hir.*

[9] *wild haf wend it had bien.*[lf. 71.]

[10] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

[11] *Goneuere.*

[12] *allas if myght oþer wais bien.*

[13] *þe lond att bot.*

[14] *dight.*

There are mariners

þer myghte men se þe mariners,
. Many wyght man in schipes fers,[1]

tying ropes to the banks,

Ropes to righte, lynes to leye,[2]
By banke & brymme[3] to tache & teye,

fastening sails on yards,

Cables to knytte aboute þe mast,
þe sail on ȝerde þey feste ful fast,
. Ancres, ores, redy to hande,

setting bowlines on bowsprits,

. Roþeres, helmes, right for to stande,
Bowlyne on bouspret to sette &[4] hale,
Cordes, kyuiles, atached þe[5] wale;
When al was redy in god point, [leaf 52, col. 2.]
Vnto þe lond þe schipes ioynt;
. Somme stode in schipe, somme on sand,[6]

running rails and planks ashore to get men and horses aboard.

Brygges & plankes þey caste to land,[7]
Wyþ men & hors[8] for to charge
Cogges, barges, &[9] schipes large;
Brought yn helmes, hauberks & scheldes,
. & al þat men yn bataille weldes,
Hors in to drawe, hors in to dryue;
Men hyed þer-after yn ful blyue.

When all are in,

When alle were inne,[10] and mad al ȝare,
& þey on þer wey[e] schuld[e] fare,

and greetings sent to friends at home,

To þeym o land þey preieden eft[11]
To grete þer frendes þat þey had[12] lefte:
. On boþe parties was heuy chere
. [Whan frendes departed leue & dere.][13]

the sailors

ſ When alle were ynne, & were o flote,
Mariners dighte þem to note,

---

[1] *sers.*

[2] *lay . . . tay.*

[3] *bi bro bi bankis.*

[4] *boulyne to set boulyne to.* (After they are on board, Wace has "Boe-" lines sachent et halent," ii. 141, l. 11,510, from MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé.

[5] *bordes keuiles atache to.* (? *kevil*: A.-Sax. *cæfli*, halter, bridle: Somner. But *kevel*, pole, Jamieson, and Atkinson's Cleveland Glossary.)

[6] *& som on land.*

[7] *kest to þe sand.*

[8] *with horses.*

[9] *Galeis cogges.*

[10] MS. *inme.*

[11] *spak to eft.*

[12] *& praied þam grete þer frendes.*

[13] From the Petyt MS. Left out in the Lambeth.

Þer takel for to righte[1] & taille,
By Þe wynd wel for to saylle;
Ancres o bord, sayl drowen heye,[2] — get the anchors on board,
Þe wynd blew wel, *þer* schipe gon fleye, 12,084 hoist sails,
& Þe mariners *þat* weren sleye,[3] — and the ships fly.
Ilkon dide *þer* maistrie:
Somme aforced Þe wyndas,
Somme Þe loof, somme Þe bytas;[4] 12,088
Þe mayster mariner was[5] byhynde, — The captains steer behind.
Þe schip to stere by[6] Þe wynde.
[7](Queynte he was, & right hardy, — (A quaint bold
& engynous man & sley, 12,092 man he was
Þat first fond schip on se to fare, — that first set a ship on the sea
& turnde wyþ Þe wynd *þer* he nyste whare,
Lond to seke *þat* he saw nought, — to seek unseen lands.)
Ne whiderward he schulde be brought.)[7] 12,096

∫ De Sompno Arthury.

Sire Arthur hadde weder at wille, — The weather is fair,
Saflyk he seyled, wythouten ylle;
Hys folk was ioiful & gl[a]dly let, — and the folk joyful.
ffor Þeire pathe fare to Bareflet.[8] 12,100
Atte midnyght men gaf god kep,
Arthur fel on slomber & slep; — Arthur dreams
In his slepyng als he gan[9] lye,
Hym Þoughte he sey a Bere flye 12,104 that a huge Bear flies east.
An hugely gret, a lothly best,[10]
& fley faste towardes[11] Þe est.

---

[1] *dight.*
[2] *ankers vpwond saile drouh hie.*
[3] *Þo maistres Þat were slie.*
[4] *som Þe lofe som Þe betas.* [leaf 71, col. 2.] (" betas," mot espagnol qui signifie les *manœuvres* (cordes): De Linçy, on the authority of M. Jal, historiographe de la Marine, *Wace*, i. 141, note. But?)
[5] *maryners stode.*
[6] *to.*
[7–7] Not in P., though in Wace. (Cp. Horace, Odes, I. iii. l. 9.)
[8] *Þei red Þam right to barhflete.*
[9] *slepe as he goñ.*
[10] *a long & an vgly beste.*
[11] *flouh fast toward.*

and a flaming Dragon flies west;

O þat oþer syde a Dragon vp stey;
In to þe west hym þoughte he fley;[1]
Of his mouþ a flaume cam out,
þe lond, þe water, schon al about.

that they fight,

þe bere assailled þe dragoun,
& he defended hym as a lyoun;
. Wonderly ilk oþer gan assaille,[2]
. & strong was þanne þer bataille;[2]
. Scharply þer ilk oþer smot,
. Bitterly boþe þey blewe & bot.

and the Dragon clips the Bear till he bursts.

þe dragon was swyft, & sleyly[3] swypte,
þe bere in his clawes he clypte,
& þriste hym so þat he to-barst,[4]
& doun vnto þe erþe hym cast.

Arthur wakes,

Arthur of his slepyng wok,
Gret tent of his drem he tok;

asks clerks whether his dream means

He askede clerkes sete[5] hym aboute, [lf. 52, bk., col. 1.]
Whether hit mente drede or doute:
. " Y wolde wyte what hit wolde[6] mene,

joy or trouble.

. " & whether hit tokned ioye or tene,
. " & whether hit was help or dere,
. " þat þe dragoun slow þe bere."

¶ Interpretacio Sompny Arthury.

Some say that Arthur is the dragon, and a giant is the bear.

Somme *per* were þus hit descried,
' Hym self þe dragon signefied,
' & þe bere som geaunt
. ' þat he schuld make[7] recreaunt,
' ffro fer schold come, & do gret wo,
' & þorow force he schulde hym slo.'

---

[1] *it flegh.*

[2] The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

[3] *suyftly.* (Wace has for the three lines before, only "Mais li dragons "l'ours enversoit," ii. 143, l. 12,540.)

[4] *to braste.*

[5] *sat.*

[6] *wild wit what it mot.*

[7] *He suld him mak.*

Somme oþer weys gan hit rede,
But alle þey seyde he schulde wel spede;
þen seide hym self, " y trowe hit menes
" þis werre, & manye oþer tenes
" Bytwyxt me & þe Emperour.
" Let God al worthe, my creatour!"
¶ At þat word þe day gan sprynge,
þe sonne ros faire y þe mornynge,
& at þe sonne rysyng in god tyme
þey come to Bareflete er pryme.
ffro[1] schip to londe ful sone þey 3ede,
& in þe contre aboute gon sprede;
He seide he wolde his folk abyde,
þo þat were nought come[2] þat tyde.
. Longe while[3] dwelled he nought,
þat tydynges men hym[4] brought,
þat þider was comen a geaunt,
& longe þer hadde ben his haunt;
Out of Spayne was he comen,[5]
& [had][6] Sire Oheles nece y-nomen;
Mayde Eleyne was hure name,
He had hure taken to do hure schame,
& had hure brought vnto an hil,
. þat non ne myghte ne durste[7] com til.—
Micheles Mount men calles[8] hit now,
. þere þe geaunt Eleyne slow;
Was þer non auter ne[9] no chapel
. þat ilke tyme þat þis chaunce fel;
Aboute þat hil þe water flowes,
. Comeþ þer non þat he ne rowes.—
þer[10] was non þat hadde þat myght
þat wyþ þe geaunt durst ones fight;

Arthur thinks the fight means his war with the Emperor.

At sunrise they reach Barfleet,

land, and spread about the country.

Arthur is told of a giant

from Spain, who has carried off Ohel's niece

to St. Michael's Mount,

which is surrounded by water.

No one dares fight the giant.

---

[1] *of.* [leaf 71, back.]
[2] *not comen.*
[3] *long stounde.*
[4] *tiþinges men to him.*
[5] MS. *comem.*
[6] *had.* [7] *dar.*
[8] *catt.*
[9] *altere no.* (mostier ne, *Wace*, ii. 145, l, 11,575.
[10] *it.*

Those who had tried it before

Somme þer were vmwhile wylde fonde,[1]
& hym assailled by water & londe,
But he gaf nought of þeir[2] assaut,
. ffor þey fulle euere in þeir[3] defaut;
ffor grete roches at þem he cast,
& þer schipes to-rof & brast.

were drowned or slain.

Many were drenkled, fele were slayn,
. þo þat ascaped, hit was wyþ payn;
þer-fore þe contre was ner al fled,

Men had left their dwellings, and the land was waste, for

þeir wonyng fursoke, þeir godes led,
& lefte þat lond wast & wylde,
ffor man or best, wyf or childe.

this giant Dynabrok.

þe geauntes name was Dynabrok,
. A grysly[4] man was on to loke.

∫ De Gygante Dynabroke. [lf. 52, bk., col. 2.]

Arthur calls

When Arthur hadde herd þe pleynt,
. How wyþ þe geaunt þe folk was teynt,

Kay and Beduer.

He calde sire Caye & Beduer,[5]
& ilk of þeym tok a squyer;

All three arm, and go

Armure dide þey wiþ hem lede,
& ilk of þeym tok hym a stede.
He nolde schewe hit to namo

after Dynabrok.

. þat he wolde[6] to þe geaunt go;
ȝyf alle had wyst he wente so one,
þe ost had ben abaischt ilkone;

Arthur trusts in God, and his

He tristed wel in[7] Godes grace
þat he durste hym schewe his face,
& on his grete[8] vaillauntise

own valiantness to fight the giant.

. Ar[9] he durst take þat emprise.

---

[1] *wold som tyme fond.*
[2] MS. *his.* P. þer.
[3] *fett in att.*
[4] *grimly.* [leaf 71, back, col. 2.]
[5] The three next lines are in De Lincy's MS. of Wace, though turned out by him in favour of another MS., vol. ii. p. 146, note [2].
[6] *suld.*
[7] *trasted wele oñ.*
[8] *owen.*
[9] þat.

Al þat ilke night þey ryden, — They ride all night,
þat þey no whar[1] stynte ne biden,
Til hit was y þe morn[e] tyde — and next morning,
þat þey seye wel þere bysyde
. A bot standynge at a stage;
þen hoped þey þere was þe passage. — see the crossing; but there is a small hill as well as a big one,
. Two hilles wyþynne þe water wore,
. þat on was lasse, þat oþer more;
O þe more hil þer was a fyr, — with a fire
ffro ferre þey sey hit brenne schir;
[2]þe lasse hil was nought so drey
ffro þe more, but euene ney;
An oþer fir was on þat hil;[2] — on each,
þer-fore Arthur was al wyl[3] — so that Arthur can't make out on which hill Dynabrok is.
On whilk hil þe geaunt was,
Ne non couþe kenne hym þe righte pas.
þen bad he sire Beduer "go — He sends Beduer to search both hills.
" To serche þe hilles to & fro;
" & when þou wost þe certeyn,
" Hye þe þanne to me a-geyn."

Þenne Beduer dide hym in þe bot, — Beduer rows to the nearest hill,
& on þe nexte hil he smot.
. Beduer stod,[4] & hym auysed
. Whider-ward þe weyes wysed;
þe nexte wey he tok vp hey, — goes high up it,
& als he wente he herde a cry; — and hears a cry of one plaining.
Gret pleynte he herde on make;
A party gan his herte quake;
He wende hit hadde þe geaunt ben, — He thinks it is Dynabrok,
. þat his comyng had wist or sen;
He drow hys swerd al so smert, — and draws his sword,
& gadered hardinesse of hert,

[1] *neuer.*
[2-2] *a noþer fire was oñ þe lesse hiłł.*
[3] *ałł wiłł.*
[4] *smote.*

& þought þat ȝyf he wyþ hym mette,
Wyþ hym to fighte he wolde nought lette.
But al þat þenkyng was in[1] vayn,
ffor on þe hil aboue þe playn
He fond a fir brennyng an hy,[2]
& a toumbe newe þer-by;
Als he bar his swerd in hande,
By þe toumbe he sey on sittande,
A womman, ner al naked,
Aboute hure hed hure her to-schaked;[3]
Biside þe toumbe þis womman lay,
& often cried "wey la way!"
& mente þe vilenye & þe peyne,
& seide, "alas for þe, Eleyne!"

but he soon finds a fire near a tomb,

with a woman sitting by

crying "Alas for thee, Eleyne!"

∫ De Tumba Elene, & de nutrice eius. [leaf 53.]

Beduer sey þe toumbe was newe,
& of hure deol his herte gan rewe.
Whan scheo perceyued sire Beduer,
Scheo saide, "cheytyf, what wiltow[4] her?
"Som synne haþ þe hyder y-brought,
"þat þy deþ her hastow[5] sought;
"þis day ys þe schape to deye,
"ȝyf þe geaunt þe se wyþ eye.
"þis ilke hil swyþe þou weyue,
"So þat he þe nought perceyue."
"∫ Wyf," he seide, "for[6] charite,
"Let þy gretyng, & spek wyþ me,
"& sey me what þou art, & why
"þou wepest here so delfully,
"& ho ys leyd here on þis graue;

Beduer pities her.

But she says "Miserable man, why are you come to your death?

Fly from this hill and the giant!"

Beduer asks her who she is, and why she weeps.

[1] *bot.* [leaf 72.]
[2] *brennand hie.*
[3] *hir haire schaked.*
[4] *caitife what dos þou.*
[5] *dede here has.*
[6] *par.*

" & sey me soþ, so God[1] þe saue!" 12,256
" I am," scheo seyde, " a wo-bygon," " I am a woe-begone,
" An helples þyng, a waryed on,
" & grete for a maydens[2] myshap who weeps for my foster-child—
" þat whilom y norisched at my pap, 12,260
" & souke y gaf hure of my brest;[3]
" & þis ys hure toumbe[4] þat þou sest; this is her tomb—
" Eleyne scheo highte, Oheles nece, Eleyne, Ohel's niece.
" Of flesche was non so fair a pece. 12,264
" To norische sche was me taught,[5]
" Alas þe while y euere hure aught! Alas that ever she was trusted to me!
" So cam þis fend to þys contre,
" & tok boþe Eleyne[6] & me, 12,268 This fiend Dynabrok seized her and me,
" & broughte vs here vnto þis hyl,
" So þat noman dar come vs tyl.
" Eleyne he wolde haue furlayn, and ravished her,—
" But sche ne myghte nought wyþ þat payn;
" He was so huge,[7] ouer mesure, 12,273 he so huge, she so young—
" & scheo so ȝong, þat myght nought dure.
" þorow gret destresse hire herte brast, so that she
" In his armes scheo ȝald þe gast, 12,276 died in his arms.
" & yn þys toumbe y haue hure leyd; I laid her in this tomb;
" & þus hit was[8] als y haue seid."
þen seid he, " wherto dwellest þou here, and I dwell here
" Syþen[9] sche ys ded þat was þe dere?" 12,280
" Sire," scheo seyde, " y wil þe telle
" ȝif þou durstest[10] so longe dwelle.
" Sire, for ý þe se of body auenaunt,
" & gentil man by [þi][11] semblaunt, 12,284
" When y sey Eleyne so schamely deye, because after my Eleyne's death, I lost my wit,
" My wit was lorn, & al a-weye;

---

[1] *criste.*
[2] *I grete for mayden.*
[3–3] *at souke .I. gaf hir of my pap. I. norissched hir of my breste.*
[4] One stroke too many for *um* in the MS.
[5] *to me scho was bitauht.* [lf. 72, col. 2.]
[6] *hir.*
[7] *grete.*
[8] *so it is.*
[9] *sen.*
[10] *durste.*
[11] *be þi.*

and Dynabrok forced me to stay, to satisfy his lust on me.

" Wyþ force he dide me leue stille,
" His lecherie in me to fulfille.
." On God hym selue y take witnes,
" þat al maugre myn hit es !
." & ilka tyme þat y him se,
." Y wilde be sonken, for y ne may fle;
" & y trowe he comeþ right[1] sone,
" His lecherie wyþ me to done.
" Y telle þe ded, ȝyf þou here bydes,
." No þyng ne saueþ þe, ne hides;
" Swyþe þou fle, y gyue þe red,
" Y wolde nought þou were so[2] ded.
" ȝonder ys he, y schal þe kenne,
" On ȝone hil þer þou sest brenne;
" Sone to come his tyme schal be, [leaf 53, col. 2.]
." þer-fore, sire knyght, y rede þou fle,
" & let me haue my self my sorewe,
" My wille ys to be ded[3] to morewe."
Of hure wo sore hym ouer þought;[4]
. But he ne wiste what hure dought,
Ne to make[5] long dwellyng.
He turned ageyn vnto þe kynge;
& als scheo seide, so he hym tolde,
How Eleyne deyde, & scheo in holde,
& he scholde fynde þe geaunt
Y þe more hil, þer was his haunt;
" Out of þat stede þe smoke cam[6] fro,
." We may hym fynde ȝif þat we go."
ſ ffor Eleyne had Arthur sorewe ynow,
& abod til þe flod wyþ-drow.[7]
Vntil[8] þe ebbe a stounde þey bod,
Wiþ þer hors þen ouer þey rod,

Would that I could sink into the earth ! He will come soon, and you are a dead man if you stay here. Flee at once !

He is on yon hill, by the fire you see.

Flee, and leave me to my sorrow. Would that I could die ! " Beduer grieves for her,

but turns back to Arthur,

tells him how Eleyne died, and that the giant is on the big hill whence the smoke comes.

Arthur waits

for the ebb of the tide; then he, Bed-

---

[1] *hope* [expect] *he comes.*
[2] *wild not se* þat þou *were.*
[3] *to die.*
[4] *forþouht.*
[5] *ne he to mak.* [leaf 72, back.]
[6] *comes.*
[7] *widrouh.*
[8] *vnto.*

& wenten bote a softe[1] pas
Tyl þei perceiued wher he[2] was.
þeir stedes & þer palfreys
þeir squiers helde, wiþ oþer harneys;
But sire Beduer & sire Kay
ȝede wiþ Arthur vp þe way.
Arthur seide, "y wil proue my might,
" Wiþ þe geaunt alone to fight;
" Hold ȝow here byhynde a lyte;
" Alone on hym wil y first smite;
" While[3] y may my selue saue,
" Oþer help wil y non haue;
" Me þynkeþ hit were no vasselage,
" þre til on; hit were outrage!
" Nere þe les, ȝyf þat ȝe se nede,
" Bettere ys help þan ouer drede;
" ffor men seye, 'hit ys folye[4]
" 'In strengthe to mikel for to affye.'"[4]
þey seide, 'for prowesse ne for ȝelp,
'ȝyf hit were ned, þey wolde hym help.'

uer, and Kay ride across to the giant's hill,

and Arthur says he'll fight Dynabrok alone;

three to one would be shameful. But still they may help him if they see need.

¶ De Occisione Gygantis Dynabrok per Arthurum.

Arthur alone þe hil he tok[5]
Vnto þe geaunt Dynabrok.
By a mykel fir he sat,
Rostyng a swyn gret &[6] fat,
& oþer flesche biside was sode;[7]
His bryn,[8] his berd, þer-wiþ al lothen,[9]

Arthur finds Dynabrok

roasting a fat pig,

his eyebrows and beard all

---

[1] *schorte.*
[2] MS. *scheo.* P. *he.*
[3] *tiłł.*
[4] P. leaves out these lines.
[5] Puis ont tot trois le mont puié, *Wace*, ii. 152, l. 11,867.
[6] *& roste suynes flesch fułł.*
[7] *som rosted & som was sothen.*
[8] les guernons (moustaches), *Wace*, ii. 153, l. 11,872.
[9] *his bryne his berde* þer *with was broþen.*

slobbered with the fat.

& al to-soilled[1] wyþ þe spyk :
. I trowe *þat* syght was ful loþlyk ;
But Arthur þoughte to haue þe *grace*
to smyte er he tok[2] his mace. 12,348

Dynabrok starts up to lift his mace, but as he's doing it,

When þe geaunt of hym was war,
fferly he hadde how he cam þar,
& stirte vp þe*nne* al o glyft/,
His grete mace[3] for to lyft ; 12,352
But Arthur auised hym wel ynow ;
Als he hys mace vpward drow,

Arthur thrusts at him with his lance.

. Arthur bar on hym wyþ his launce
. To combren hym, als of chaunce ; 12,356

They fight

. Longe þey foughte, a wel god while,
. But Arthur couþe mykel of gyle ;
. Nere sleighte & q*ue*yntise hadde ben, & gile,[4]
. So*m*me had be combred *þer* in a whyle ;[4] 12,360

and Arthur is hard bestead.

. ffor kyng Arthur neue*r*e er was[4] [lf. 53, back, col. 1.]
. Bystad in so hard a cas.[4]
. Dynabrok a-geyn hym stod
. Wyþ his mace, as geaunt wod, 12,364

No three men could lift Dynabrok's mace.

ffor þre men, wyþoute þe forþe,
Schuld nought haue stired his mace from[5] erþe ;
He sey wel how he made his mynt,

He aims a blow at Arthur,

& wiþ his mace he teysed[6] his dynt ; 12,368
. He wiste þe strok schulde be gret ;
Vnder his scheld al he schet,

who catches it on his shield,

& ageyn his[7] strok hit held.
þen smot þe geaunt on his scheld, 12,372
& wyþ *þat* dynt so[8] heuy & stronge
þe hilles alle aboute ronge,

---

[1] *to solied.*
[2] *come or he toke.*
[3] *& toke his mace vp.* [leaf 72, back, col. 2.]
[4] P. leaves out these lines.
[5] *suld not lifte it fro þe.*
[6] *teysed*, poised ; cp. *teyse & taisand*, Sevyn Sages, 1978, in Halliwell.
[7] *þe.*
[8] *so was þe dynt.*

. & al þat was þer-inne, hit schok [1]
. When Arthur þat dynt so huge tok.[1] 12,376
Arthur was stoneyd, stakered, & stynt, and staggers under it,
But ȝut fel he nought for þat dynt. but doesn't fall.
. Anoþer strok wold he nought byde,
. But peyned [2] hym to smyte a syde 12,380
. Wyþ his swerd Caliborne ; With Caliburn
. Scharply he gan hym torne ;
þat swerd he lifte wel on hey,
. & valede his scheld [3] a party ; 12,384
Endlong [4] his forehed he hym smot, he smites Dynabrok along the forehead,
. þe swerd bot wel, & he was hot,
& entamed boþe his bryn [5]
þat al þe skyn heng ouer hys eyn. 12,388 and the bleeding skin falls over his eyes.
Wyþ þat strok he hadde ben slayn : He'd have been killed if he hadn't put up his mace, and dodged his head.
His mace he held wel þer a-gayn,
& his heued a party glent,
þat som of þe strok hit hent ; 12,392
Netheles, wel was hit set ;
þe blod al ouer his eyen hit schet ; [6] The blood stops up Dynabrok's eyes,
þen lost he þer al his sight,
þen wax [7] he woder for to fyght, 12,396 he gets wilder and wilder,
þen was he woder þen he was or,[1]
ffightyng als a wylde bor,[1] and fights like a wild boar.
þe same weys so dide he ; [1]
When he sey þat he myghte nought se,[2] 12,400
He ne lefte for swerd ne oþer hirt
þat he vntil Arthur stirt ; Then he rushes at Arthur, seizes him by the middle,
Aboute his middel his armes he leyd,
& on Arthur so sore he breyd,[8] 12,404

---

[1] P. leaves out these lines.
[2] *etild.*
[3] *his schelde he auailed* (lowered).
[4] *& o long.*
[5] Les deus sorcils li entama, *Wace*, ii. 154, l. 11,896.
[6] *his Ine get.*
[7] *was.*
[8] *sare he braid.* [leaf 75.]

lifts him up,

. On heighte he lifte hym four fet;
. & als he þere hym doun let,

and throws him on his knees.

Vpon his knes he hym kast.
þen Arthur proued his force fast,

. Our lady hym halp, his wille was god,

Arthur gets up,

Wyþ force he ros, & he vp stod;
& Arthur was algate queynte,
& his wille was neuere feynte;

. On þat syde he bar his scheld,
. & þe geaunt nought ne[1] held,

twists round, forces the giant's arms open, gets free,

Wyþ þat he wroþ,[2] & turnde his syde,
& dide his armes[3] opene wyde.
When he hym self was fro hym broken,
& þat his body was nought loken,[4]
fful lyght hym þoughte þat he was oute;[5]

and smites the giant with his sword.

Wiþ Caliborne þen ran he aboute,[5]
And euere on þe geaunt[6] smot,
& Caliborne sore vpon hym bot.

Dynabrok, blinded by his blood, gropes about after Arthur;

þe geaunt glente hider & tyder,[7] [leaf 53, back, col. 2.]
þe blod so blent hym, he nyst whider;
He groped aboute hym for to[8] hent,
& Arthur aboute hym euere went/,
& smot hym sore woundes[9] fele,

. Nought of hym ne wolde he spele;[10]

then he stops still a second, and Arthur splits his head down to his shoulders.

. & at a turn þe geaunt stynt/,
Arthur gaf hym so gret a dynt
[11] O þe hed, þat in to þe nekke hit dref,
& in to þe schuldres þe panne he clef;[11]
. ȝyt he after Arthur raught,—
Arthur wyþ-drow[12] his swerd a draught,—

---

[1] þe *Geaunt nouht he ne.*
[2] *wroþe* (writhed).
[3] *armure.*
[4] *not stoken.*
[5] P. leaves out these lines.
[6] oñ þe *Geaunt with his suerd he.*
[7] *þider & þidere.*
[8] *grapte about if he mot.*
[9] *with wondes.*
[10] *spele* = spare.
[11–11] *þan doun in to þe hede it drafe. þe panne in to þe schuldres klafe.*
[12] *& Arthur drouh.*

Þat he stombled, & gaf a cry,[1]
A dredful & a loþly;[1]
When he fel, he gaf a lasche
As wyþ a blast had falle an asche;
& for þat fal Arthur low,
He was venged hym þoughte[2] y-now;
ffro ferre he stod, & loked on hym,[1]
& seyde he was a geaunt grym;[1]
He bad Beduer he schulde go
To smyte þe heued þe body fro,
& bytake[3] hit a squier
To schewe hit al þe host plener.

Dynabrok utters a dreadful cry,

and falls with a sound like an ash blown down.

Arthur laughs;

says he's a grim giant, tells Beduer to cut Dynabrok's head off, and have it shown to the army.

ſ Hic narrauit Arthur*us* Beduero & Kayo de giga*n*te Ryton*e*.

Þ*en* telde Arthur to Beduer &[4] Kay,
Þat he nadde neu*er*e suche affray,
Of no geaunt but of on,
& þat geaunt highte Ryton;[5]
fful manye kynges had he don slo,
& flow þe berdes of alle þo;
Til a pane, as a furo*ur*,[6] he did he*m* tewe:
Loke ȝif Ryton were nought[7] a schrewe!
Þat geaunt Riton sende his sonde
Til Arthur fro ferne[8] londe,
& seide he scholde make hym a-ferd
But he flowe of his owen[9] berd,
& sent hit hym vntil his pane,

Arthur says he never had such a fight,

except with the giant Ryton, who made the beards of the kings he slew into a trimming for his cloak.

"This Ryton sent to me,

and said that unless I flayed off my beard, and sent it him for his cloak,

---

[1] P. leaves out these lines.
[2] *venged wele.*
[3] *bitech.*
[4] *He teld Beduer & sir.*
[5] P. has for the next two lines,—
he did myket wonder & wo.
& many kynges did he slo.
& att þer berdes he did of flo.
a pane he mad of alle þo.
[leaf 73, col. 2.]
[6] And *as a forrour.*
[7] *se how Riton was.*
[8] *fer.*
[9] *awen.*

. To menske hit *þer* hit was wane;
& ȝyf he sent hit hym bleþely,
He schulde set hit most worschipfuly,[1]
ffor he wolde vrle his pane wyþ-al
. Aboute wiþ a ffylet smal;
And ȝyf Arthur wylde nought
Do als Ryton hym bisought,
Greyþe hym as sone as[2] he myght,
ffor Ryton wolde wyþ hym fight;
& whilk of *þem* might oþer slo,
His berd he scholde don of flo,
& haue þe pane ilka del,
Þer-wyþ aboute vrle hit wel.
Arthur *þen* til Ryton went,
In bataille he slow hym[3] & schent,
& wan þe pane & his berd;
O þe mount Derane[4] he was conquerd.
Siþen fond Arthur neu*ere* non
But Dynabrok, as was Ryton,
Þat neu*ere* dide til hym in dede,
Þat he had of so mykel drede.
. þer þey hym slowe, *þer* þey hym leued,
& Beduer tok a squier þe heued,
To ber*e* & schewe þe host aboute,
Wher *þat* þey were, & in what doute.
Sire Ohel ful sore byment[5] [leaf 54.]
Þat his nece was so schent;
A fair chapel for hur*e* dide make,
Of our*e* lady, for Eleynes[6] sake.
Siþen[7] *þat* tyme scheo was *þer* leyd,
ffor Eleyne,[6] 'Eleynes[6] toumbe' ys seid;

I was to get ready, and

fight him; and whoever won, should flay off the other's beard, and put it on the cloak.

So I went to him, slew him, and won his cloak on Mount Derane.

No one has given me such trouble since, save this Dynabrok."

Beduer gives Dynabrok's head to a squire, to show to the host.

Ohel laments Eleyne's fate,

and builds a fair chapel for her, wherein her corpse is laid, and it is called

---

[1] *suld do it most curteisy.*
[2] *Redy him sone als.*
[3] *bataile slouh Riton.*
[4] *de Rame.* (Et mont de Rave, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; d'Artane MS. de l'Ars., 171. B.-L.; *Wace*, ii. 158, note (*a*).)
[5] *it ment.*
[6] *Heleyn.*
[7] *sen.*

& so men han cald hit ay[1]
' Eleynes toumbe ' vnto þys day.[1] 12,492 Eleyne's tomb.

When þe host was al comen & ȝare, Arthur, with his host,
þo þat scholde wiþ Arthur fare,
. No þrowe[2] wolde he þare lye,
But passed sone al Normandie. 12,496 crosses Normandy,
. His folk wax[3] wher-so he cam,
. þe doughtiest wyþ hym he nam,
. Out of castel & of cite,
& passed Burgoyne, al þat contre; 12,500 and Burgundy,
Vntil Hostum,[4] þyder he þought; to Hostum, where he hears
& þennes tidynges men hym[5] brought, that the Romans are
þat þey of Rome com wyþ gret route, coming.
& tok þe contre al aboute. 12,504
ſſ Al as[6] Arthur schulde a water passe— As Arthur is crossing the
Albe,[7] hit seis þe name wasse— river Albe,
Al day til Arthur men tolde, spies tell him
Wiþ passand men[8] & spies bolde, 12,508
þat þe Emperour was þere bysyde; that the Roman Emperor
. To conseille what best myghte bytide,[9] is close by,
His pauilons, his penceles, þykke
Nought fer fro þenne had þey don wyk:[10] 12,512
" þer are so manye of[11] Romayns, with an army
" & þyn host may nought[12] þeym ageyns. of four to one against his.
" ffoure haþ he agayns[13] on of þyne;
" & ȝif ȝe assemble, þou[14] most[15] tyne." 12,516 Arthur answers "God's help is nigh,"
Arthur seide, "Godes help ys ney!
. " He wot ho schal haue þe maistri."

---

[1] P. leaves out these lines.
[2] *while.* [leaf 73, back.]
[3] *flok wex.*
[4] Ostun [Autun], *Wace*, ii. 160, 12,020.
[5] *þien tiþinges tiłł him men.*
[6] MS. *Alas.* P. has *Als.*
[7] Aube, *Wace*, ii. 160, l. 12,027.
[8] Li païsant, *Wace*, l. 12,028.
[9] *him how best mot tide.*
[10] *fer þien had þei doun pikke.* (A.-Sax., *wician*, to encamp.)
[11] *so many.*
[12] *& þou has non oste.*
[13] *ere agayn.* [14] MS. þi, or þi.
[15] *If bataile go þou sałł.*

He left nought for no manace;
raises a castle on the river, for refuge if he needs it, Vpon Albe[1] in a strong place
A castel he dide reyse & set,
. ȝyf he had nede to take recet;[2]
Smertly to make þei were al bon[3]
Wyþ folk ynow, & sone had don.[3]
When al was ended þe grete[4] tour,
and puts his arms and treasure there. He leyde in[5] his harneys & his tresour,
ȝyf chaunce come þei moste wyþdrawe[6]
To rest hem þere a litel þrawe.[7]

¶ Arthurus misit nuncios ad Inperatorem.

His castle being finished, . When þe castel was al dight,
. & defensable for kyng & knyght,
Arthur appoints messengers, He ordeynd messegers[8] to wende,
. To þe Emperour he þoughte to sende,
Two erles þat were of noble lynage,
& wel spekynge,[9] of god langage:
Geryn of Chartres, Beofs of Hampton, and Wawayn who knew Roman, Geryn of Chartres, a man of pris,
Wiþ Beofs of Hamptone,[10] an oþer ful wys;
Wiþ þise two wente sire Wawayn,
ffor he spak wel þe speche Romayn;
ffor he had longe wiþ hem ben,[3]
& his connynge þey hadde wel sen;[3]
. ffor þat skile Arthur hym sent,[3]
. þat he wist best what þeir speche ment;[3]
to go and tell the Emperor: "I, Arthur, bid you back to Rome, out of & Arthur taughte þem þus to seye,
When þey schulde wende þer weye:
" Sey þemperour he go to Rome, [leaf 54, col. 2.]
" & to ffraunce non hender come,

---

[1] Aube, *Wace*, l. 12,041.
[2] *him were nede to haf resette.*
[3] P. leaves out these lines.
[4] *vp in þe.* [5] *He did.*
[6] *com þat him bord fle.*
[7] þer *in two daies or þre.* (R. Manning follows the Arsenal MS. of Wace (ii. 161, note (*c*)) in the last four lines.
[8] *sent messengers.*
[9] *wele spoken.*
[10] *Beus of Oxenford.*

. " Ne til no landes þat y wan,
. " Ne chalange hit as man[1] Romayn;
. " þo ar myne; & myne schul be;
. " Romayn of þeym schal neuere haue fee.
" ȝyf he wil nought turne ageyn,
" Byd hem abide þe[2] bataille pleyn,
" & auenture at alle[3] chaunce
" To dereyne þe ryght of Rome &[4] ffraunce.
" As longe as y may ffraunce[5] saue,
" þe Romayns schul hit[6] neuere haue.
" Wyþ bataille, sey hym, y hit wan,
. " & schal[7] defend hit fro ilka man.
" Wiþ force, þer-of had þey first fee,
. " Wyþ force þey les hit a-geyns me;
" & now wiþ bataille schal hit be[8] sene
" Who schal haue hit quyt & clene."

France and my lands; mine they are, and mine they shall be. If you won't go, then abide battle. As long as I can save France, the Romans shall never have it. Let a battle decide between us."

ſ De nunciis Regis Arthury ad Inperatorem.

Þe messegers þat wente þo nedes,
Horsed þem on gode stedes:
& armed þem at alle rightes,
As fel vnto noble knyghtes.
Oþer Bretons herd her-of seye,
& wente to mete hem bifore[9] on weye,
And preied hem[10] hertely for to do
Som þyng, or seye þe Romayns to,
þat þe werre myghte algate go
Er þey comen þe court fro:

Arthur's messengers get good steeds, and arm well. Britons ask them to insult the Romans so that the war may go on:

---

[1] *be chalenged þorgh no.*
[2] *stand to.*
[3] *vs att to.*
[4] *whilk satt derayne þe Reme of.*
[5] *may it.*
[6] *france satt he neuer.*
[7] *& so.*
[8] *satt be.*
[9] *& led þam alle þre.*
[10] à Gauvain, *Wace*, ii. 162, l. 12,080.

"It's been threatened, so long that it'd be a shame not to fight.

" Hit haþ be longe[1] manaced & þret,
" But so ney to-gydere were we nere[2] set;
" Schame hit were þat eyþer ȝede
" Wiþouten bataille or vaillaunte[3] dede.

Besides, we're sure to win;

. " ȝyf so bitide ȝe[4] hit bygynne,
. " ȝyt schul Bretons prowesse wynne;

so try to bring on the fight."

. " þer-to algate dos ȝour trauail,[5]
. " & þat we may, we wil ȝow vaille."[5]

Wawayn says, "You shall here of us,"

þen seide Wawayn, " in alle manere
" Of vs schul ȝe som tyding here;
. " & ȝyf ȝe se þat we ought dwelle,
. " Tydyng þer-of men schal telle."

and, with his fellows, rides

ſſ þe messegers passed a mountayne,
& þenne a wode, & syþen a playne;
ffro[6] þat playne a partye helded,
& þer-on were þe Romayns telded;
. fful semly wyþouten bost
þey come rydyng al[7] þorow þe host.

to and through the Roman host,

þe Romains on ilka side aboute,
Of þer tentes comen[8] oute
þo messegers to byholde,
. þat semed noble bodies[9] & bolde.
þey asked what tydynges þey brought,
Or þider for þe pes þey sought:
Wyþ non þey stode, ne tales helde,
Tyl þey come to þe Emperours telde.

till they reach Lucius's pavilion.

. When þey were at his pauyloun,

Here they alight,

þere-byfore þey lyghte alle doun,
& bitok þeir hors[10] þeir pages,
. To stande right stille at certeyn stages.

---

[1] *it has bien long.*
[2] *& now so nere togider ere.*
[3] *manly.*
[4] þat.
[5] P. leaves out these lines.
[6] *of.* [leaf 74.]
[7] *ridand.*
[8] þei com.
[9] *men.*
[10] *Bitauht* þer *hors.*

¶ **Hic venerunt Nuncii coram Inperatore.** [lf. 54, bk., col. 1.]

By-fore þe Emperour come alle þre,
& seide þeir message as men auise,
Geryn & Beofs[1] boþe ful wys;
And þe Emperour seide hem his auis,
& spak ageyn þeym[2] boþe fast.
But þenne spak Wawayn atte last:
" We ar come fro þe kyng Arthour
" To þe, sire Lucius, Emperour;
" We are his knyghte to lyue & deye;
" His message y schal þe holy[3] seye.
" Þys ys þe message[4] þat he þe sendes:
" He comaundes þe, & defendes,
" þat þou of ffraunce nought entremet,
" Ne no fot þideward ferrer[5] set;
" ffor Fraunce he holdes as his demeynes,[6]
" & euere schal, for alle Romeynes.[6]
" ȝyf þou of hym wilt ought chalenge,
" þorow bataille wil he hym venge.
" þorow bataille first wonne ȝe ffraunce,
" & les hit after þorow a chaunce;
" A-geyn Arthur ȝe hit les
" þorow bataille, as þe party ches,
" & now ys holde as his conqueste,[7]
" & schal while þe sonne ryseþ est.[7]
" & ȝyf þou sette chalange þer-ynne,
" þorow bataille byhoueþ þe hit wynne;[8]
" þorow bataille schal hit be dereynt,
" þy chalangyng & al þy pleynt,

go before the Emperor, and give him Arthur's message:

" King Arthur

forbids you, Lucius, to set foot farther in France,

which is his.

If you claim it he'll fight for it.

He won it of you;

and his it shall be while the sun rises in the east.

If you claim it,

come and fight for it

---

[1] *beus.*
[2] *& teld agayn.*
[3] *I satt þe.*
[4] *gretyng.*
[5] *þou.*
[6] *demeyng . . . romeyns.*
[7] P. leaves out these lines.
[8] *þorgh þe bihoues it wyn.*

. " & sone assigned[1] wyþoute delay,
to-morrow, and win it if you can!" " Com to morn, & prof[2] þy day,
" & wyn hit ȝyf þou wynne schal!
. " Or al to lese, or wynne[3] hit al!
" ȝyf þou wilt nought *tur*ne a-geyn,
" Al þy dwellyng is in veyn,
" ffor þou hast lorn, & we haue wo*n*nen,[4]
. " So ferre we haue þy lond ou*er* ro*n*nen." [4]

ſ Responcio Lucii Inp*er*atoris.

Lucius answers Þe*n*ne seyde þemp*er*our to þise þre,
" To t*ur*ne ageyn, hit schal nought be.
" France is mine. " ffr*a*unce ys myn, þider wol y go;
" ffor ȝif y lese hit, me schal be wo;
If I did lose it, I'll win it again." . " & ȝif y ha lore hit[5] at vnskyle,
" Y schal hit wynne eft when God[6] wyle."
þ*us* he seide, for wel he wende[4]
þey hadde no force Fr*a*unce to fende.[4]
A Roman knight Quyntalyn, taunts Wawayn: A knyght þ*er* was, hight Quyntalyn,
Syb þemp*er*our, & his cosyn,
Co*n*trariously to Wawayn spak,
& vyleynlike he gan hym lak:[7]
"Britons are but braggers, " Bretons," he saide, " ar bot auaunt*ur*s,
" & manace mikel at rebours;
in word. Their deeds arn't worth a leek. " þ*er* bostful wordes ar nought to seke,
" þer dedes ar nought worþ a leke.
You threaten . " ȝe manace ay 'hit schal ben so;'
. " ȝour dedes ar noughte þ*at* ȝe do.
all day. . " Al day bostfuly ȝe þrete;
Put it into deeds!" . " Doþ hit in dede! manace ȝe[8] lete!"
Wawayn cuts Wawayn hym listed, & gram low,[9] [lf. 54, bk., col. 2.]

---

[1] *set.* [leaf 74, col. 2.]
[2] *proue.* [3] *haf*
[4] P. leaves out these lines.
[5] *I. haf lorn.*
[6] *satt wyn it whan grace.*
[7] *vilensly behynd his bak.*
[8] *do in dede þe manace.*
[9] *listend him Inouh.*

But smertly out his swerd he drow,
& smot his hed of þer al quit,
& bad his felawes horse þem tyt,
. And seyde vnto þe Romaynes alle,
. " Bretons schul rise, & ȝe schul falle !
. " ȝow were wel bettere at Rome burgh,[1]
. " þan reyse baner a-geyn Arthurgh ! "[1]
þer-wyþ sire Wawayn his hors hent,
& homward alle þre þey went.

Quyntalyn's head right off,
tells the Romans they'd better go home,
and rides back with Geryn and Beofs.

¶ De probitate nunciorum Arthury.[2]

þe knyght[3] was frayed, no wonder was,
þe Emperour cried " alas ! alas !

Lucius says

" Slayn þey haue sire Quyntalyn
" Now right here byfore myn eyn !
" ȝyf þey a-scape vs alle fro,
" Merueille[4] may men telle of þo."
Romayns ronne out of pauylons,
& hasted fast[5] after þe Bretons.
Ilkon tok þat þey myght hent,
& after þem prykede faste, & went.
On þer was þat hadde a stede,
þat byfore alle þe opere ȝede,
& cried ful loude, " abyd ! abyd !
" ȝyf þou dar, turne, & to me ryd ! "
Sire Geryn herde what he seyde,
& turnde hym, & his spere forþ leyde,
& of his gode hors hym cast
Als fer as þe spere wold last.
þen seide Geryn als he lay þore,
" þyn hors bar þe ouer faste[6] byfore ;

they mustn't escape.
The Romans pursue Arthur's messengers ;
and one calls on them to turn and fight.
Geryn turns,
drives the Roman off his horse,

[1] P. leaves out these lines.
[2] This heading is two lines lower in the MS.
[3] *courte.*
[4] *mervaily.*
[5] *Suythe.*
[6] *fer.* [leaf 74, back.]

" ȝit were þe bettere ha ben at þe ost[1]
kills him, and taunts him. " þan fort ha foched þy deþ wyþ bost,[1]
." & haue holde þe fer o drey,[1]
." ffor now þe ouer-þynkeþ þou come so ney."[1]
Beofs of Oxford ſ Beofs[5] of Oxenforde þen loked bak, 12,693
& listned how þat Geryn spak,
. Saw þe Romayn ded þer lay,[1]
. & his hors wente forþ o stray;[1] 12,696
þen þoughte sire Beofs,[2] "y am to blame
" But y do til anoþer þe same."
turns too, His hors he turnd þen, and abod,
spears another Roman through the throat, & til anoþer Romayn rod; 12,700
& wyþ his spere[3] he bar hym yn
þorow-out þe þrote, byneþe þe chyn.
Gapyng he lay at erþe al[4] streked
Als he was wyþ þe launce cheked. 12,704
and chaffs him for gaping. þen seide sire Beofs,[2] for þat he gaped,[5]
" To þe mete fuer sone hym[6] raped,
" But ly now stille þer, ar[7] þou ete,
" & ȝif þy felawes þe ouer gete, 12,708
[8] " Sey, 'þe messegers wente here forþ god spede,
." ' & wiþ suche musseles he can ȝow fede.' "[8]
Then comes another Roman knight, ſ þen cam anoþer ride faste[9] byforn,
A noble knyght of Rome born,— 12,712
Marcels, Marcels, hit seyþ his name[10] hight,—
on a very fast horse; & hadde an hors was ferly lyght;[11]
Of þem alle last horsed he was,[1]
& passed þe formest a gret pas;[1] 12,716
and though And for gret haste, as of chaunce,

---

[1] P. leaves out these lines.
[2] *Beus.*
[3] *lance.*
[4] *gaspand he fell & lay all.*
[5] þou *gapid.*
[6] *full sone* þou. (De tex morsiax vous sai je pestre, *Wace*, ii. 168, l. 12,211.)
[7] *lig now still ore* þat.
[8-8] *to* þam *may* þou þe soþe *say.* þe *messengers went bi* þis *way.*
[9] *A* noþer *com ridand fast.*
[10] *Marcell it sais* þat *he.*
[11] *wyght.*

He hadde furgete at hom his launce.
He sporede his hors, forþ faste[1] gan schake, [lf. 55.]
Wel wende he Wawayn for to ha take,
& seyde, "hit were ful gret ferlik[2]
" But he broughte Wawayn to þem al quyk."[2]
. Wawayn wondred hym ferne[3] fro
. þat his hors myght so wel go.
ffor Marcel neyghed Wawayn right hende,
. Wawayn to take ful wel he wende;
. But his hors com so smertly,
& passed Wawayn fast hym by,
& als he by Wawayn glent,
Wawayn had his swerd out hent,
And clef his heued at o dynt,
þorow helm, þat at þe breste[4] hit stynt;
His gode armure auailled nought,
Wyþ þat strok to[5] þe erþe he sought.
In his fallynge, seide Wawayn,
" Marcel, y rede þou turne a-gayn,
" & go to Quyntalyn to helle,
" & on myn half þou hym telle,
" þat þe Bretons þat ȝe þus chace,
" Wel more con do þan[6] manace.
7. " Sey Quyntalyn, 'we hym by þe grete,
" '& more wol gyue þan we wol hete!'"[7]
Now to-gydere þey gonne þem drawe,
& oþer þre þey dide of dawe;
Lenger to iuste myght þey nought stande,
But þem defended al wyþdrawande.[8]
þe Romayns on alle halue hem[9] went,
Wiþ swerd & spere strokes þey[10] lent,

he's forgot his lance,
he thinks he'll take Wawayn prisoner.
But as he gallops by,
Wawayn cleaves his head down to his chest,
and he falls to the ground.
" Go to hell," says Wawayn, " and tell Quyntalyn that the Britons can do something more than threaten."
They kill three more Romans;
and though the Romans attack them on all sides,

[1] *with sporse he smote þe hors.*
[2] P. leaves out these lines.
[3] *hed selcouth fer.*
[4] *þorgh þe helme to þe saditt.*
[5] *with* þe *drauht.* [lf. 74, bk., col. 2.]
[6] *more do þan þai.*
[7–7] *& more þai gife þan þei hete. bi þe Marcett Quintelyn .I. grete.*
[8] *& were fleand.*
[9] *ilk half þam.*
[10] *suerdes & lances strokes.*

they come off unharmed.

But neuere for strok þat þey þer tok,[1]
Of stirop ne sadel out ne schok,[1]
Ne drowen blod, ne gof þem wounde,[1]
Ne stopped *þem þer* wey no stounde.[1] 12,752

A nephew of Marcel's sees

¶ Þenne had Marcel a neuew
þat was horsed vntil his prew:

his uncle lying dead,

In his wey Marcel he fond,
Liggyng slayn *þer*[2] on a lond. 12,756

and rides after Arthur's messengers.

After þe messegers trauersed [he] þe feld;
& Wawayn houed, & byheld
þat he cam so gret a spurne,
. He had no leyser his hors to turne 12,760
. Vntil he cam among þem alle,
& of his hand his spere[3] let falle,
& drow his swerd, scharp to byte:[4]

He raises his sword to strike,

He wende Wawayn wel to smyte;[4] 12,764
& as he lifte his swerd vp heye,

but Wawayn lets fly at his hand, cuts off his arm,

At his hand Wawayn let fleye,
& smot of boþe hand & arm,
. So þat he dide namore harm. 12,768

and would have finished him, but that the Romans crowd on them. However, they gain the wood next Arthur's castle.

Anoþer strok he scholde haue had,
But wiþ þe Romayns þey were ouerstad,
So ferly fele after þem schok.
But for al hem,[5] þe wode þey tok, 12,772
þat was bitwixt hem & Arthures hold,
þe newe castel y lang er told.[6]

¶ **Hic misit Arthurus in obuiam sex millę armatos.**

Arthur sends out 6,000 men to help his messengers.

Arthur our kyng, þat was at home,
. Wondred þe messegers nought ne come; 12,776
Sex þousand sent he for drede,
To socoure þeym ȝyf þey had nede.

---

[1] P. leaves out these lines.
[2] *Slayn he lay.*
[3] *lance.*
[4] P. transposes these lines.
[5] *þat alle gate.*
[6] *.I. ore of told.* (p. 438, l. 12,521).

Þey come & passed to þe wodes side,
& þere wyþstode[1] for to abyde. 12,780
After þer messegers þey gaf þer tent, [lf. 55, col. 2.]
. ȝyf þey of hem had any glent;
Þey seye gret folk in partyes sprede, The 6,000 see the Romans pursuing the three messengers;
Þat folewede þre þat to þe wode ȝede. 12,784
. Þen perceyued knyghtes & squiers
. Þat þo þre were messegers
. Þat þey come fore, & after sought.
. Pryuely þey stode, auised þer þought, 12,788
Siþen þey gaue a cri ful gret, they shout,
At ones vpon þe Romayns þei schet, dash on the Romans unawares,
. Al vnwarned in þer vys.
Þenne sprad þe Romayns in partis; 12,792
Somme þat fledde were ouer-taken, rout,
& somme prisoned, & halden[2] waken, take,
Somme slayn & beten doun, and kill them,
. fful fewe were leten to [3]raunsoun; 12,796
. Wiþ mikel wo any ascaped,[4] so that very few escape.
. Þat he ne was fruscht & al to-fraped.[4]

∫ Petreus, Romanorum tribunus.

A noble man was þere of Rome, A noble Roman, Petreus,
Of alle þer knyghtes he bar þe blome, 12,800
Petreus[5] his name hight,
. A worthi man, & mykel of myght;
. What for his prowesse[6] & god knyght,
Ten þousand men he ladde in fyght.[7] 12,804
He herde of þe Bretons assaut, hears of the Britons' assault,
. & how þer men were att defaut;

---

[1] *stode.* [leaf 75.]
[2] *prisonde holden.*
[3] *fult was giffen for.*
[4] P. leaves out these lines.
[5] Peredur, MS. du Roi, 27; Petreius, MS. du Roi. 73, Cangé; *Wace*, ii. 172, l. 12,310, and note.
[6] *for richesse.*
[7] *had þorh right.*

takes 10,000 men,

" Smertly wyþ ten þousand scheldes
" To sokere hem go we to[1] þe feldes."
Wyþ þo ten þousand þat he brought,

and drives the Britons back to their wood.

Vpon þe Bretons harde he sought,
þat maugre þeires he dide þem go
In to þe wode þer þey come fro;
O þe playne myghte þey holde no place,[2]
þat to þe wode he gan þem chace;[2]

There they hold their own, though Petreus tries to force them out.

& when þey were in wode teld,
Ageyn Petron þer owen þey held.
Petrens often on þem gan pres,[3]
But mikel of his folk he les,[3]
ffor þe Bretons stirt out & slow,
& eft in to þe wode þem drow;
By þe wodes side in a busch[4]
Was many a stour & many a frusch.[5]

ſ Iterum misit Arthurus quinque mille armatos.

Arthur wonders what has become of his messengers

Arthur merueilled ferly strong
þat þe messegers dwelled so long,

and his 6,000 men.

& what þem letted, & þorow wham,[6]
þat þe sex þousand hom ne cam.[7]

He sends Sir Ider and 5,000 more men to see.

þen cald he swyþe[8] sire Ider
þat was a doughti bacheler:
" Tak fyf þousand,[9] & smartly fare,
" þe sex þousand sekeþ, wher þey are."

Ider and his men

Sire Ider dide as Arthur bad,
& for his wendyng fele were glad.
Als Ider & his folk forþ ferde,

hear a noise in the wood,

Gret noise vnder a wode þey herde;

---

[1] *socoured* þer *men in.*
[2] P. leaves out these lines.
[3] *presse . . . lesse.*
[4] *brusse.*
[5] *many fight & many frusse.*
[6] *or for whome.* [leaf 75, col. 2.]
[7] *home ne come.*
[8] *he cald Nu sonne.* (Ider le fil Nut apela, *Wace*, ii. 173, l. 12,336.)
[9] Set mil, *Wace*, l. 12,337.

. þey hied þem þanne, & wel go[d][1] pas,
. þey dredde þem sore of som mys cas.[2] 12,836
þen say Ider þat sire Wawayn — see Wawayn, Geryn, and Beof fighting, rush, with a shout, to their help,
& Geryn, & Beof,[3] foughte oþer a-geyn.
In to þe most pres Ider þen sprong,
& gaf a cri, þe wode al rong. 12,840
þanne were þe Bretons alle abouen,
þe Romayns route bakward schouen : — and shove the Romans back.
When Ider had met wyþ þe Romains route, [lf. 55, bk., col. 1.]
. Of dynt ne deþ[4] had he no doute ; 12,844 The Britons fight fearlessly,
. Lytel þey þoughte hem self to saue,[5]
. So fayn þey wolde þe werre haue ; [5]
þe Romayns þey ouer ryden & ronne, — and ride over the Romans.
& þer gode stedes wonne ; 12,848
. & þe Romayns atter power [5]
. Stryken & stoden ageyns Ider ; [5]
Manye were on boþe partys — Many are slain on both sides.
Slayn þer for to wynne pris. 12,852

. Petreus, he þat y of tolde, — Petreus
þe noble Romayn fers & [6] bolde,
He mayntende þer [7] bataille, — commands the Romans well ;
& sette his folk wysly [8] to assaille ; 12,856
Wel couþe he stande, wel couþe he scurne,[5] — knows when to stand, when to retire, and charge again.
& faire wyþdrawe hym, & eft returne.[5]
Bytwyxt þem [9] were many chaces,
ffele turnynges & fele wanlaces : 12,860
þat hardy was, he fond hardy ; — There's plenty of fighting of all kinds for those who want it.
Who so couþe iuste, he fond redy ;
þat wel couþe fighte, þer fond his fere ; [5]
. þat nought ne couþe, þer myght he lere.[5] 12,864

---

[1] *a full gode.*
[2] *dred sore* þer *was som has.*
[3] *beus.*
[4] *no dede.*
[5] P. leaves out these lines.
[6] *riche romeyn & so.*
[7] *was mayntenure.*
[8] *his folk he set right.*
[9] *with him & þam.*

But the Britons keep no formation; they think only of doing separately brave

Al þe Bretons, oft astray þey rod,
Non held to-gydere, ne oþer abod.
[1] ffor prowesse þat þey ȝernde al day,
Þer-fore þey nere of non array;
Þey nadde warde how þat þey ȝede,
But þat prowesse wer do of armes dede.[1]

deeds of arms.

Petreus, on the other hand, with his best men,

¶ Petreus bygan auise hym[2] more,
Hys beste men a-boute hym wore,
He coupe in werre wel stonde in stour,
& at his nede gete[3] hym socour;

helps his others whenever they need it,

fful wel he halp þere help failled,[4]
& wel hym rescowed when he was sailled;[4]
God tent til[5] al his men he tok,

and rallies his fugitives.

. When þey astraied, whideward[6] þey schok,
& alle relyed þem wel ageyn,
. þat ilkon wyste his certeyn.

Beofs sees how well Petreus manages, and that he must be killed if the Britons are to be saved

Beofs[7] of Oxenforde perceiued wel
þe comynges of Petron ilka del,
þat wyþoute los schold[8] þey nought go
But ȝyf þey mighte Petron slo,—
. Sle, or take in pleyn[e] feld,—
ffor his confort þe Romayns[9] vp held.

from their disordered array.

Hider & þider þe Bretons went,
Al out of array, & were ney schent.

So Beofs calls the best British

þe beste barons[10] of þem alle,
Beofs[7] to consail gon þey[m][11] calle:

[1–1] For these four lines P. has four at the bottom of the page in a fresh hand (or with a fresh pen), and then two over leaf in the same hand and with the old pen:—

& to do som dede þat day.
þerfor þe rode on þat aray.
þei ne rouht how þei ȝede.
bot þat þei did of armes dede.
to do som þei ȝerned att day. [lf. 75, back.]
þerfor þei rode at non aray.

[2] *was auised.*
[3] *at nede seke.*
[4] P. leaves out these lines.
[5] *oñ.*
[6] *where þei straied whidire.*
[7] *Beus.*
[8] *losse suld.*
[9] MS. *Bretons.* P. *comyng þe romeyns.*
[10] *bretons.*
[11] See l. 12,896. P. *gon þam.*

ſſ " Lordes," he seyde, "spekeþ wyþ me, — lords together,
" þo þat til Arthur wol leaute. — and says
" Bygonne we haue a cuntek,
" But Arthur wot nought of þis chek ; — " We've got into this contest without
. " Wyþoute his wityng is þis tyrpeyl, — Arthur's
. " þer-fore y cald ȝow to conseil ; — knowledge.
" ȝyf hit falle wel, wel schal vs be ;
" ȝyf hit ne do, we gete maugre.
" But ȝyf we in þys firste stour — It's our first ;
" Haue þe pris,[1] & bere þe flour, — and if we don't win it we're
" I telle vs schent, ilka man, — done for.
" & mikel maugre þat we hit gan.[2]
. " Hit was ȝour conseil as wel as oures,
. " ȝe preied vs to bygynne þyse stoures : — You wanted to fight.
. " þe bettere þer-fore peyne ȝow to do — Mind, then ;
. " þyng þat y schal conseille to ;
" ffonde we now euer-ilkon [leaf 55, back, col. 2.] — we *must* take
" ffort acombre þylke[3] Petron ; — that Petreus, alive or dead,
" Quik or ded, vs bos[4] hym haue,
. " ȝyf [we] þis[5] day our folk schul saue ;
. " & elles schul we nere gon heþen, — or *we* shall
" þat we ne schul myl[6] be byneþen. — never go hence alive.
" þer-for, lordynges, alle to-gyder
" ffolewes whar y turne, or whider, — All of you,
. " & helpeþ wel when ȝe se nede : — follow me, and help when
. " ȝyf we gete hym, ful wel we spede." — I want you to."
Alle þey seide, " what so bitydes, — They all agree
" We schul þe folewe wher[7] þou rydes ; — to do so.
. " Go we þanne, þat God vs a-vaille,[8]
. " So þat we of hym ne faille."[8]
Beofs[9] aspied & saw hym[10] sone : — And Beofs
. " I se Petron ! make ȝow al bone ! " — spurs after Petreus, the

---

[1] *haf þe gre.*
[2] *we it began.*
[3] *for to slo ȝon ilk.*
[4] *bus.*
[5] *If we to.*
[6] *satt mykett.*
[7] *satt ride þat way.* [lf. 75, bk., cl. 2.]
[8] P. leaves out these lines.
[9] *Beus.*
[10] *futt.*

British lords following him.

Beofs[1] smot þe hors wyþ þe spores,
& þey after, ouer feld & fores;[2]
Wilde he nere stynte ne ses
Vntil he cam in to alle þe pres
Beofs rides up to Petreus, þer Petron was, & til hym rod,
. Hors til hors þat þey bistrod;
Til hym ful faste Beofs[3] allied,
. & on hys felawes wel hym affied.
seizes him by the neck; and down they both fall. ſ Beof[1] by þe nekke Petron hent,
& doun til erthe boþe þey went;
Beofs holds Petreus stone-still. Beof[1] fel doun al by hys wylle,
& held Petron al ston[e][4] stille;
Beof[1] dide þere a ful gret wyle,
. & putte hym self in gret perile.
Petreus struggles, but Beofs is tough, Beofs held sore, & Petron drow;[5]
Petron had go, nad Beofs be tow.[6]
and the Britons stop the Romans from rescuing Petreus. þe Romayns Petron wilde rescouse,[7]
[8] But Bretons a-geyn þem faste gan brouse,
A fierce fight with spears, and then with swords, follows. Wyþ scharpe speres to-gidere sett,[8]
& al to-frusched þat þey wiþ[9] mett:
[10] When speres myghte namore serue,
þer swerdes drowe, ful faste to kerue;
Wyþ hardy herte ilk oþer on hew,
In armes hente, of sadeles þrew,
Helms are pierced, shields cloven, hauberks stript of mail, Helmes bowed, & þorow were steke,
Scheldes clef, & swerdes breke,
Hauberks ryuen & al fur-mailled,
. Stedes slayn, stumbled & failled,
men slain. Men were slayn, & feld to grounde,
. & manye cast þat hadde no wounde;
. So þykke þey were to-gydere in þrong,

[1] *Beus.*
[2] *fors* (? not A.-Sax. *for*, way; but *fur*, *furh*, E.-Engl. *fore*, furrow: Stratmann's Dict., p. 228).
[3] *Beus tiłł him fast was.*
[4] *stone.*
[5] P. leaves out this line.
[6] *wild go but Beus was touh.*
[7] *rescouh.*
[8–8] *þe bretons ageyn þam fast sette.*
[9] *with scharp lances togider mette.*
[10] The Petyt MS. leaves out the lines from here to l. 13,058; and then puts lines 13,061-62, before lines 13,059–60.

. Ilk oþer wroþ, ilk oþer swong,
. & ilk oþer of sadeles wrast,
. & vnder ho[r]se fet wer cast;
Non knew oþer, þey were so ney,
But by þer speche or by þer cry:
Bretons cried "[1] kyng Arthour,"
& Romayns, "Lucius[1] Emperour."
þe Bretons faste on þem abated,
& þe Romayns ful sore þem hated;
. þer couþe non knowe[2] for certeyn
. Whilk was Breton, whilk was Romeyn,
. But by þer speche þat þey spak,
. Or any out of þe pres ought[3] brak.
ffayn wolde Wawayn Petron haue,
. & Beofs[4] wold þey al-gate saue;
He brak in to þe[5] mykel pres,
To smyte sore wold he nought ses;
On alle sides he smot aboute,[6]
& made þeym rounn[7] þorow-out þe route;[6]
Was þer non stod in his weye,[6]
þat his dynt ne dide hym deye.[6]
Sire Ider on þat oþer[8] syde,
ffor Geryn durste no Romayn byde;[9]
Ilk on for oþer bolded here hert,
. & smyten strokes so grete &[10] smert
þat no Romayn durst bide þer dynt,
. But fer on bak dide þem stynt;
þen was Petron alle a-glyft.
þe Bretons vp sire Beofs[11] lyft,
& horsed hym ful wel a-geyn,
& toke Petron, þe maister Romayn;

13,056 They twist one another out of their saddles.

13,060 The Britons cry "Arthur;" the Romans "Lucius."

13,064 By speech alone is Briton known from Roman.

13,068 Wawayn charges into the press to secure Petreus,

13,072 and slays all in his way.

[leaf 56.]

13,076 Ider and Geryn smite so that

13,080 no Roman dares abide them.

1,3084 The Britons rescue Beofs, and take Petreus prisoner

---

[1] P. inserts þe here.
[2] *Non kouth knaw.*
[3] *ony out of þe pres.*
[4] *Beus.*
[5] *tuo þer.*
[6] P. leaves out these lines.
[7] for *roume*; or *roum*, room, space.
[8] *on þe toþer side.*
[9] *& Gerin durst non abide.*
[10] *& þer strokes were so*
[11] *vp Beus.*

Þorow al þe pres þey hym led,[1]
to their wood. & wiþ hym vntil wode þey fled,[1]
& dide hym *per* he mighte be syker,
The fight begins again, but the Romans & eft al newe bygonne to[2] byker. 13,088
But þen had þey no gouernour
Þat couþe meyntene þem in stour, **Vassalacio**
are like a barge without a steerer. Namore þan schip or barge[3] can, **Brytonum.**
Þere hym wanteþ a steres[4] man. 13,092
The Britons rout the Romans, ¶ Þenne broched þe Bretons among þem alle,
Man & hors[5] þey dide doun falle;
Þat were fallen, þey ouer schok;
capture, & þo þat fledde,[6] þey ouer-tok; 13,096
slay, and Somme þey slowe, & somme þey held,
spoil them; & somme þey spoyled[7] y þe feld;
Al were slayn þe moste frape,[8]
ffayn wer þey þat myghte a-scape.[9] 13,100
then turn back to the wood, and take Petreus and the prisoners to Arthur. Þen turnde a-geyn alle þe Bretons,
& come to wode to þer prisons,
& led[10] þem alle wiþ sire Petron,
& presented Arthur wiþ ilkon. 13,104
Arthur thanks them all, Þen þanked he his messegers,
& alle þe opere þat were þer pers,
& seide hem, "ȝyf hit may be wonne,[11]
" Þe game þat we haue by-gonne,[12] 13,108
and promises them rewards if he wins his battle. " He wolde[13] amende þer rente & fe,
" ȝyf þat tyme myghte bitide or[14] be."

[1] P. transposes these lines. [lf. 76.]
[2] *new bigan þe.*
[3] *þe schip.*
[4] *þore it failes steris.*
[5] *many hors.*
[6] *þe fleand.*
[7] *spoiled.*
[8] *maste frap.*
[9] *fo þei were þat myght it scap.*
[10] *laid.*
[11] *if it be wonnen.*
[12] *þe werre þat was begonnen.*
[13] *suld.*
[14] *mot tide.*

LONDON: Printed by EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[11422.—750.—5/87.]

CATALOGUE

OF

ENGLISH, SCOTCH, AND IRISH RECORD PUBLICATIONS,

REPORTS OF THE HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS COMMISSION,

AND

ANNUAL REPORTS OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS,

Printed for

HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE,

And to be purchased,

Either directly or through any Bookseller, from

EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE, EAST HARDING STREET, FLEET STREET, E.C., or

ADAM AND CHARLES BLACK, 6, NORTH BRIDGE, EDINBURGH; or

HODGES, FIGGIS, & Co., 104, GRAFTON STREET, DUBLIN.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Calendars of State Papers, &c.	3
Chronicles and Memorials of Great Britain and Ireland during the Middle Ages	9
Publications of the Record Commissioners, &c.	26
Works Published in Photozincography	29
Historical Manuscripts Commission	31
Reports of the Deputy Keeper of the Public Records	35
Scotch Record Publications	39
Irish Record Publications	40

ENGLAND.

CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c.

[IMPERIAL 8vo., cloth. *Price* 15*s*. each Volume or Part.]

As far back as the year 1800, a Committee of the House of Commons recommended that Indexes and Calendars should be made to the Public Records, and thirty-six years afterwards another Committee of the House of Commons reiterated that recommendation in more forcible words; but it was not until the incorporation of the State Paper Office with the Public Record Office that the Master of the Rolls found himself in a position to take the necessary steps for carrying out the wishes of the House of Commons.

On 7 December 1855, he stated to the Lords of the Treasury that although "the Records, State Papers, and Documents in his charge constitute the most "complete and perfect series of their kind in the civilized world," and although "they are of the greatest value in a historical and constitutional point of view, "yet they are comparatively useless to the public, from the want of proper "Calendars and Indexes." Acting upon the recommendations of the Committees of the House of Commons above referred to, he suggested to the Lords of the Treasury that to effect the object he had in view it would be necessary for him to employ a few Persons fully qualified to perform the work which he contemplated.

Their Lordships assented to the necessity of having Calendars prepared and printed, and empowered the Master of the Rolls to take such steps as might be necessary for this purpose.

The following Works have been already published under the direction of the Master of the Rolls:—

CALENDARIUM GENEALOGICUM; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office, 2 Vols. 1865.

This is a work of great value for elucidating the early history of our nobility and landed gentry.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, ELIZABETH, and JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A. (Vols. I. and II.), *and by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN, (Vols. III.–XII.). 1856–1872.

Vol. I.—1547–1580.
Vol. II.—1581–1590.
Vol. III.—1591–1594.
Vol. IV.—1595–1597.
Vol. V.—1598–1601.
Vol. VI.—1601–1603, with Addenda, 1547–1565.
Vol. VII.—Addenda, 1566–1579.
Vol. VIII.—1603–1610.
Vol. IX.—1611–1618.
Vol. X.—1619–1623.
Vol. XI.—1623–1625, with Addenda, 1603–1625.
Vol. XII.—Addenda, 1580–1625.

These Calendars render accessible to investigation a large and important mass of historical materials. The Northern Rebellion of 1566-67; the plots of the Catholic fugitives in the Low Countries; numerous designs against Queen Elizabeth and in favour of a Catholic succession; the Gunpowder-plot; the rise and fall of Somerset; the Overbury murder; the disgrace of Sir Edward

Coke; the rise of the Duke of Buckingham, &c., and numerous other subjects, few of which have been previously known.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A., (Vols. I.–XII.); *by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A., and WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vol. XIII.); and *by* WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vols. XIV.–XVII., 1858–1882.

Vol. I.—1625–1626.
Vol. II.—1627–1628.
Vol. III.—1628–1629.
Vol. IV.—1629–1631.
Vol. V.—1631–1633.
Vol. VI.—1633–1634.
Vol. VII.—1634–1635.
Vol. VIII.—1635.
Vol. IX.—1635–1636.
Vol. X.—1636–1637.
Vol. XI.—1637.
Vol. XII.—1637–1638.
Vol. XIII.—1638–1639.
Vol. XIV.—1639.
Vol. XV.—1639–1640.
Vol. XVI.—1640.
Vol. XVII.—1640–41.
Vol. XVIII.—1641–43.

This Calendar presents notices of a large number of original documents of great value to all inquirers relative to the history of the period to which it refers, many hitherto unknown.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, DURING THE COMMONWEALTH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1875–1885.

Vol. I.—1649–1649.
Vol. II.—1650.
Vol. III.—1651.
Vol. IV.—1651–1652.
Vol. V.—1652–1653.
Vol. VI.—1653–1654.
Vol. VII.—1654.
Vol. VIII.—1655.
Vol. IX.—1655–1656.
Vol. X.—1656–1657.
Vol. XI.—1657–1658.
Vol. XII.—1658–1659.
Vol. XIII.—1659–1660.

This Calendar is in continuation of those during the reigns from Edward VI. to Charles I., and contains a mass of new information.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860–1866.

Vol. I.—1660–1661.
Vol. II.—1661–1662.
Vol. III.—1663–1664.
Vol. IV.—1664–1665.
Vol. V.—1665–1666.
Vol. VI.—1666–1667.
Vol. VII.—1667.

CALENDAR OF HOME OFFICE PAPERS OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE III., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. 1878–1879. Vol. III. *Edited by* RICHARD ARTHUR ROBERTS, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. 1881.

Vol. I.—1760 (25 Oct.)–1765.
Vol. II.—1766–1769.
Vol. III.—1770–1772.

These are the first three volumes of the modern series of Domestic Papers, commencing with the accession of George III.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509–1589.

Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589–1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543–1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots.

These volumes relate to Scotland, between 1509 and 1603. In the second volume are Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568–1587.

CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS relating to IRELAND, in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, London. *Edited by* HENRY SAVAGE SWEETMAN, Esq., B.A., Trinity College, Dublin, Barrister-at-Law (Ireland); *continued by* GUSTAVUS FREDERICK HANDCOCK, Esq. 1875–1886.

Vol. I.—1171–1251.
Vol. II.—1252–1284.
Vol. III.—1285–1292.
Vol. IV.—1293–1301.
Vol. V.—1302–1307.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI., MARY, AND ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1860–1885.

Vol. I.—1509–1573.
Vol. II.—1574–1585.
Vol. III.—1586–1588.
Vol. IV.—1588–1592.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* the Rev. C. W. RUSSELL, D.D., and JOHN P. PRENDERGAST, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. 1872–1880.

Vol. I.—1603–1606.
Vol. II.—1606–1608.
Vol. III.—1608–1610.
Vol. IV.—1611–1614.
Vol. V.—1615–1625.

This series is in continuation of the Irish State Papers commencing with the reign of Henry VIII.; but for the reign of James I., the Papers are not confined to those in the Public Record Office, London.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. 1860–1884.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574–1660.
Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513–1616.
Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1617–1621.
Vol. IV.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1622–1624.
Vol. V.—America and West Indies, 1661–1668.
Vol. VI.—East Indies, 1625–1629.

These volumes include an analysis of early Colonial Papers in the Public Record Office, the India Office, and the British Museum.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London (Vols. I.–IV.); and *by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq., (Vols. V., VI., VII., VIII., and IX.) 1862–1886.

Vol. I.—1509–1514.
Vol. II. (in Two Parts)—1515–1518.
Vol. III. (in Two Parts)—1519–1523.
Vol. IV.—Introduction.
Vol. IV., Part 1.—1524–1526.
Vol. IV., Part 2.—1526–1528.
Vol. IV., Part 3.—1529–1530.
Vol. V.—1531–1532.
Vol. VI.—1533.
Vol. VII.—1534.
Vol. VIII.—1535, to July.
Vol. IX.—1535, Aug. to Dec.
Vol. X.—1536, Jan. to June.

These volumes contain summaries of all State Papers and Correspondence relating to the reign of Henry VIII., in the Public Record Office, of those formerly in the State Paper Office, in the British Museum, the Libraries of Oxford and Cambridge, and other Public Libraries; and of all letters that have appeared in print in the works of Burnet, Strype, and others. Whatever authentic original material exists in England relative to the religious, political, parliamentary, or social history of the country during the reign of Henry VIII., whether despatches of ambassadors, or proceedings of the army, navy, treasury, or ordnance, or records of Parliament, appointments of officers, grants from the Crown, &c., will be found calendared in these volumes.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1547–1553. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, &c. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1553–1558. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, &c. 1861.

The two preceding volumes exhibit the negotiations of the English ambassadors with the courts of the Emperor Charles V. of Germany, of Henry II. of France, and of Philip II. of Spain. The affairs of several of the minor continental states also find various incidental illustrations of much interest. The Papers descriptive of the circumstances which attended the loss of Calais merit a special notice; while the progress of the wars in the north of France, into which England was dragged by her union with Spain, is narrated at some length. These volumes treat only of the relations of England with foreign powers.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, &c. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, (Vols. I.–VII.), and ALLAN JAMES CROSBY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law, (Vols. VIII.–XI.) 1863–1880.

Vol. I.—1558–1559.
Vol. II.—1559–1560.
Vol. III.—1560–1561.
Vol. IV.—1561–1562.
Vol. V.—1562.
Vol. VI.—1563.
Vol. VII.—1564–1565.
Vol. VIII.—1566–1568.
Vol. IX.—1569–1571.
Vol. X.—1572–1574.
Vol. XI.—1575–1577.

These volumes contain a Calendar of the Foreign Correspondence during the early portion of the reign of Elizabeth. They illustrate not only the external but also the domestic affairs of Foreign Countries during that period.

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. 1868–1883.

Vol. I.—1557–1696.
Vol. II.—1697–1702.
Vol. III.—1702–1707.
Vol. IV.—1708–1714.
Vol. V.—1714–1719.

The above Papers connected with the affairs of the Treasury comprise petitions, reports, and other documents relating to services rendered to the State, grants of money and pensions, appointments to offices, remissions of fines and duties, &c. They illustrate civil and military events, finance, the administration in Ireland and the Colonies, &c., and afford information nowhere else recorded.

CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS, preserved in the Lambeth Library. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq. 1867–1873.

Vol. I.—1515–1574.
Vol. II.—1575–1588.
Vol. III.—1589–1600.
Vol. IV.—1601–1603.
Vol. V.—Book of Howth; Miscellaneous.
Vol. VI.—1603–1624.

The Carew Papers relating to Ireland, in the Lambeth Library, are unique and of great importance to all students of Irish history.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH 1862–1868.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485–1509.
Vol. II.—Hen. VIII.—1509–1525.
Supplement to Vol. I. and Vol. II.

Mr. Bergenroth was engaged in compiling a Calendar of the Papers relating to England preserved in the archives of Simancas in Spain and the corresponding portion removed from Simancas to Paris. Mr. Bergenroth also visited Madrid, and examined the Papers there, bearing on the reign of Henry VIII. The first volume contains the Spanish Papers of the reign of Henry VII.; the second volume, those of the first portion of the reign of Henry VIII. The Supplement contains new information relating to the private life of Queen Katherine of England; and to the projected marriage of Henry VII. with Queen Juana, widow of King Philip of Castile, and mother of the Emperor Charles V.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS. 1873–1886.

Vol. III., Part 1.—Hen. VIII.—1525–1526.
Vol. III., Part 2.—Hen. VIII.—1527–1529.
Vol. IV., Part 1.—Hen. VIII.—1529–1530.
Vol. IV., Part 2.—Hen. VIII.—1531–1533.
Vol. IV., Part 2.—*continued*.—Hen. VIII.—1531–1533.
Vol. V., Part 1.—Hen. VIII.—1534–1536.

Upon the death of Mr. Bergenroth, Don Pascual de Gayangos was appointed to continue the Calendar of the Spanish State Papers. He has pursued a similar plan to that of his predecessor, but has been able to add much valuable matter from Brussels and Vienna, with which Mr. Bergenroth was unacquainted.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. 1864–1884.

Vol. I.—1202–1509.
Vol. II.—1509–1519.
Vol. III.—1520–1526.
Vol. IV.—1527–1533.
Vol. V.—1534–1554.
Vol. VI., Part I.—1555–1556.
Vol. VI., Part II.—1556–1557.
Vol. VI., Part III.—1557–1558.

Mr. Rawdon Brown's researches have brought to light a number of valuable documents relating to various periods of English history; his contributions to historical literature are of the most interesting and important character.

SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S FŒDERA. *By* Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. Vol. I.—Will. I.–Edw. III., 1066–1377. Vol. II.—Ric. II.–Chas. II. 1377–1654. Vol. III., Appendix and Index. 1869–1885.

The "Fœdera," or "Rymer's Fœdera," is a collection of miscellaneous documents illustrative of the History of Great Britain and Ireland, from the Norman Conquest to the reign of Charles II. Several editions of the "Fœdera" have been published, and the present Syllabus was undertaken to make the contents of this great National Work more generally known.

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS AND THE REV. J. S. BREWER TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Carte and Carew Papers in the Bodleian and Lambeth Libraries. 1864. *Price* 2*s*. 6*d*.

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Documents in the Archives and Public Libraries of Venice. 1866. *Price* 2*s*. 6*d*.

In the Press.

Calendar of State Papers and Manuscripts, relating to English Affairs, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. Vol. VII.—1559, &c.

Calendar of Letters, Despatches, and State Papers, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* Don Pascual de Gayangos. Vol. V., Part 2.—1537, &c.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, during the Commonwealth, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Mary Anne Everett Green. Vol. XIV.

Calendar of State Papers relating to Ireland, of the Reign of Elizabeth, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Hans Claude Hamilton, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. V.—1592–1594.

In Progress.

Calendar of State Papers, Colonial Series, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. Noel Sainsbury, Esq. Vol. VII.—America and West Indies, 1669, &c. Vol. VIII.—East Indies, 1630, &c.

Calendar of Treasury Papers, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Joseph Redington, Esq. Vol. VI.—1720, &c.

Calendar of Letters and Papers, Foreign and Domestic, of the Reign of Henry VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* James Gairdner, Esq. Vol. XI.—1536.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[Royal 8vo. half-bound. *Price* 10*s.* each Volume or Part.]

On 25 July 1822, the House of Commons presented an address to the Crown, stating that the editions of the works of our ancient historians were inconvenient and defective; that many of their writings still remained in manuscript, and, in some cases, in a single copy only. They added, "that an uniform and convenient edition of the whole, published under His Majesty's royal sanction, would be an undertaking honourable to His Majesty's reign, and conducive to the advancement of historical and constitutional knowledge; that the House therefore humbly besought His Majesty, that He would be graciously pleased to give such directions as His Majesty, in His wisdom, might think fit, for the publication of a complete edition of the ancient historians of this realm, and assured His Majesty that whatever expense might be necessary for this purpose would be made good."

The Master of the Rolls, being very desirous that effect should be given to the resolution of the House of Commons, submitted to Her Majesty's Treasury in 1857 a plan for the publication of the ancient chronicles and memorials of the United Kingdom, and it was adopted accordingly. In selecting these works, it was considered right, in the first instance, to give preference to those of which the manuscripts were unique, or the materials of which would help to fill up blanks in English history for which no satisfactory and authentic information hitherto existed in any accessible form. One great object the Master of the Rolls had in view was to form a *corpus historicum* within reasonable limits, and which should be as complete as possible. In a subject of so vast a range, it was important that the historical student should be able to select such volumes as conformed with his own peculiar tastes and studies, and not be put to the expense of purchasing the whole collection; an inconvenience inseparable from any other plan than that which has been in this instance adopted.

Of the Chronicles and Memorials, the following volumes have been published. They embrace the period from the earliest time of British history down to the end of the reign of Henry VII.

1. The Chronicle of England, by John Capgrave. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

   Capgrave was prior of Lynn, in Norfolk, and provincial of the order of the Friars Hermits of England shortly before the year 1464. His Chronicle extends from the creation of the world to the year 1417. As a record of the language spoken in Norfolk (being written in English), it is of considerable value.

2. Chronicon Monasterii de Abingdon. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1858.

   This Chronicle traces the history of the great Benedictine monastery of Abingdon in Berkshire, from its foundation by King Ina of Wessex, to the reign of Richard I., shortly after which period the present narrative was drawn up by an inmate of the establishment. The author had access to the title-deeds of the house; and incorporates into his history various charters of the Saxon kings, of great importance as illustrating not only the history of the locality but that of the kingdom. The work is printed for the first time.

3. Lives of Edward the Confessor. I.—La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei II.—Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris. III.—Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.

   The first is a poem in Norman French, containing 4,686 lines, addressed to Alianor, Queen of Henry III., probably written in 1245, on the restoration of the church of Westminster. Nothing is known of the author. The second is an anonymous poem, containing 536 lines, written between 1440 and 1450, by command of Henry VI., to whom it is dedicated. It does not throw any new light on the reign of Edward the Confessor, but is valuable as a specimen of the Latin poetry of the time. The third, also by an anonymous author, was apparently written for Queen Edith, between 1066 and 1074, during the pressure of the suffering brought on the Saxons by the Norman conquest. It notices many facts not found in other writers, and some which differ considerably from the usual accounts.

4. Monumenta Franciscana. Vol. I.—Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ. Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. II.—De Adventu Minorum; re-edited, with additions. Chronicle of the Grey Friars. The ancient English version of the Rule of St. Francis. Abbreviatio Statutorum, 1451, &c. *Edited by* Richard Howlett, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1858, 1882.

   The first volume contains original materials for the history of the settlement of the order of Saint Francis in England, the letters of Adam de Marisco, and other papers connected with the foundation and diffusion of this great body. It was the aim of the editor to collect whatever historical information could be found in this country, towards illustrating a period of the national history for which only scanty materials exist. None of these have been before printed. The second volume contains materials found, since the first volume was published, among the MSS. of Sir Charles Isham, and in various libraries.

5. Fasciculi Zizaniorum Magistri Johannis Wyclif cum Tritico. Ascribed to Thomas Netter, of Walden, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.

   This work derives its principal value from being the only contemporaneous account of the rise of the Lollards. When written, the disputes of the schoolmen had been extended to the field of theology, and they appear both in the writings of Wycliff and in those of his adversaries. Wycliff's little bundles of tares are not less metaphysical than theological, and the conflict between Nominalists and Realists rages side by side with the conflict between the different interpreters of Scripture. The work gives a good idea of the controversies at the end of the 14th and the beginning of the 15th centuries.

6. The Buik of the Croniclis of Scotland; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece; by William Stewart. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. Turnbull, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, 1858.

   This is a metrical translation of a Latin Prose Chronicle, written in the first half of the 16th century. The narrative begins with the earliest legends and ends with the death of James I. of Scotland, and the "evil ending of the traitors that slew him." Strict accuracy of statement is not to be looked for; but the stories of the colonization of Spain, Ireland, and Scotland are interesting if not true; and the chronicle reflects the manners, sentiments, and character of the age in which it was composed. The peculiarities of the Scottish dialect are well illustrated in this version, and the student of language will find ample materials for comparison with the English dialects of the same period, and with modern lowland Scotch.

7. Johannis Cabgrave Liber de Illustribus Henricis. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

This work is dedicated to Henry VI. of England, who appears to have been, in the author's estimation, the greatest of all the Henries. It is divided into three parts, each having a separate dedication. The first part relates only to the history of the Empire, from the election of Henry I., the Fowler, to the end of the reign of the Emperor Henry VI. The second part is devoted to English history, from the accession of Henry I. in 1100, to 1446, which was the twenty-fourth year of the reign of Henry VI. The third part contains the lives of illustrious men who have borne the name of Henry in various parts of the world. Capgrave was borne in 1393, in the reign of Richard II., and lived during the Wars of the Roses, for which period his work is of some value.

8. Historia Monasterii S. Augustini Cantuariensis, by Thomas of Elmham, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* Charles Hardwick, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

This history extends from the arrival of St. Augustine in Kent until 1191. Prefixed is a chronology as far as 1418, which shows in outline what was to have been the character of the work when completed. The only copy known is in the possession of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. The author was connected with Norfolk, and most probably with Elmham, whence he derived his name.

9. Eulogium (Historiarum sive Temporis): Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. Haydon, Esq., B.A. 1858–1863.

This is a Latin Chronicle extending from the Creation to the latter part of the reign of Edward III., and written by a monk of the Abbey of Malmesbury, in Wiltshire, about the year 1367. A continuation, carrying the history of England down to the year 1413, was added in the former half of the fifteenth century by an author whose name is not known. The original Chronicle is divided into five books, and contains a history of the world generally, but more especially of England to the year 1366. The continuation extends the history down to the coronation of Henry V. The Eulogium itself is chiefly valuable as containing a history, by a contemporary, of the period between 1356 and 1366. The notices of events appear to have been written very soon after their occurrence. Among other interesting matter, the Chronicle contains a diary of the Poitiers campaign, evidently furnished by some person who accompanied the army of the Black Prince. The continuation of the Chronicle is also the work of a contemporary, and gives a very interesting account of the reigns of Richard II. and Henry IV. It is believed to be the earliest authority for the statement that the latter monarch died in the Jerusalem Chamber at Westminster.

10. Memorials of Henry the Seventh: Bernardi Andreæ Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. *Edited by* James Gairdner, Esq. 1858.

The contents of this volume are—(1) a life of Henry VII., by his poet laureate and historiographer, Bernard André, of Toulouse, with some compositions in verse, of which he is supposed to have been the author; (2) the journals of Roger Machado during certain embassies on which he was sent by Henry VII. to Spain and Brittany, the first of which had reference to the marriage of the King's son, Arthur, with Catharine of Arragon; (3) two curious reports by envoys sent to Spain in 1505 touching the succession to the Crown of Castile, and a project of marriage between Henry VII. and the Queen of Naples; and (4) an account of Philip of Castile's reception in England in 1506. Other documents of interest are given in an appendix.

11. Memorials of Henry the Fifth. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. *Edited by* Charles A. Cole, Esq. 1858.

This volume contains three treatises which more or less illustrate the history of the reign of Henry V., viz.: A life by Robert Redman; a Metrical Chronicle by Thomas Elmham, prior of Lenton, a contemporary author; Versus Rhythmici, written apparently by a monk of Westminster Abbey, who was also a contemporary of Henry V. These works are printed for the first time.

12. Munimenta Gildhallæ Londoniensis; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* Henry Thomas Riley, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859–1862.

The manuscript of the *Liber Albus*, compiled by John Carpenter, Common Clerk of the City of London in the year 1419, a large folio volume, is preserved in the Record Room of the City of London. It gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of that City in the 12th, 13th, 14th, and early part of the 15th centuries. The *Liber Custumarum* was compiled probably by various hands in the early part of the 14th century during the reign of Edward II. The manuscript, a folio volume, is also preserved in the Record Room of the City of London, though some portion in its original state, borrowed from the City in the reign of Queen Elizabeth and never returned, forms part of the Cottonian MS. Claudius D. II. in the British Museum. It also gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of the City of London in the 12th, 13th, and early part of the 14th centuries.

13. Chronica Johannis de Oxenedes. *Edited by* Sir Henry Ellis, K.H. 1859.

Although this Chronicle tells of the arrival of Hengist and Horsa in England in 449, yet it substantially begins with the reign of King Alfred, and comes down to 1292, where it ends abruptly. The history is particularly valuable for notices of events in the eastern portions of the Kingdom, not to be elsewhere obtained. Some curious facts are mentioned relative to the floods in that part of England, which are confirmed in the Friesland Chronicle of Anthony Heinrich, pastor of the Island of Mohr.

14. A Collection of Political Poems and Songs relating to English History, from the Accession of Edward III. to the Reign of Henry VIII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A. 1859–1861.

These Poems are perhaps the most interesting of all the historical writings of the period, though they cannot be relied on for accuracy of statement. They are various in character; some are upon religious subjects, some may be called satires, and some give no more than a court scandal; but as a whole they present a very fair picture of society, and of the relations of the different classes to one another. The period comprised is in itself interesting, and brings us through the decline of the feudal system, to the beginning of our modern history. The songs in old English are of considerable value to the philologist.

15. The "Opus Tertium," "Opus Minus," &c., of Roger Bacon. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.

This is the celebrated treatise—never before printed—so frequently referred to by the great philosopher in his works. It contains the fullest details we possess of the life and labours of Roger Bacon: also a fragment by the same author, supposed to be unique, the "*Compendium Studii Theologiæ.*"

16. Bartholomæi de Cotton, Monachi Norwicensis, Historia Anglicana; 449–1298: necnon ejusdem Liber de Achiepiscopis et Episcopis Angliæ. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.

The author, a monk of Norwich, has here given us a Chronicle of England from the arrival of the Saxons in 449 to the year 1298, in or about which year it appears that he died. The latter portion of this history (the whole of the reign of Edward I. more especially) is of great value, as the writer was contemporary with the events which he records. An Appendix contains several illustrative documents connected with the previous narrative.

17. Brut y Tywysogion; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales. *Edited by* the Rev. John Williams ab Ithel, M.A. 1860.

This work, also known as "The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales," has been attributed to Caradoc of Llancarvan, who flourished about the middle of the twelfth century. It is written in the ancient Welsh language, begins with the abdication and death of Caedwala at Rome, in the year 681, and continues the history down to the subjugation of Wales by Edward I., about the year 1282.

18. A Collection of Royal and Historical Letters during the Reign of Henry IV. 1399–1404. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.

This volume, like all the others in the series containing a miscellaneous selection of letters, is valuable on account of the light it throws upon biographical history, and the familiar view it presents of characters, manners, and events. The period requires much elucidation; to which it will materially contribute.

19. The Repressor of over much Blaming of the Clergy. By Reginald Pecock, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Churchill Babington, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.

The "Repressor" may be considered the earliest piece of good theological disquisition of which our English prose literature can boast. The author was born about the end of the fourteenth century, consecrated Bishop of St. Asaph in the year 1444, and translated to the see of Chichester in 1450. While Bishop of St. Asaph, he zealously defended his brother prelates from the attacks of those who censured the bishops for their neglect of duty. He maintained that it was no part of a bishop's functions to appear in the pulpit, and that his time might be more profitably spent, and his dignity better maintained, in the performance of works of a higher character. Among those who thought differently were the Lollards, and against their general doctrines the "Repressor" is directed. Pecock took up a position midway between that of the Roman Church and that of the modern Anglican Church; but his work is interesting chiefly because it gives a full account of the views of the Lollards and of the arguments by which they were supported, and because it assists us to ascertain the state of feeling which ultimately led to the Reformation. Apart from religious matters, the light thrown upon contemporaneous history is very small, but the "Repressor" has great value for the philologist, as it tells us what were the characteristics of the language in use among the cultivated Englishmen of the fifteenth century. Pecock, though an opponent of the Lollards, showed a certain spirit of toleration, for which he received, towards the end of his life, the usual mediæval reward—persecution.

20. Annales Cambriæ. *Edited by* the Rev. John Williams ab Ithel, M.A. 1860.

These annals, which are in Latin, commence in 447, and come down to 1288. The earlier portion appears to be taken from an Irish Chronicle, used by Tigernach, and by the compiler of the Annals of Ulster. During its first century it contains scarcely anything relating to Britain, the earliest direct concurrence with English history is relative to the mission of Augustine. Its notices throughout, though brief, are valuable. The annals were probably written at St. Davids, by Blegewryd, Archdeacon of Llandaff, the most learned man in his day in all Cymru.

21. The Works of Giraldus Cambrensis. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vols. V., VI., and VII. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1861–1877.

These volumes contain the historical works of Gerald du Barry, who lived in the reigns of Henry II., Richard I., and John, and attempted to re-establish the independence of Wales by restoring the see of St. Davids to its ancient primacy. His works are of a very miscellaneous nature, both in prose and verse, and are remarkable chiefly for the racy and original anecdotes which they contain relating to contemporaries. He is the only Welsh writer of any importance who has contributed so much to the mediæval literature of this country, or assumed, in consequence of his nationality, so free and independent a tone. His frequent travels in Italy, in France, in Ireland, and in Wales, gave him opportunities for observation which did not generally fall to the lot of mediæval writers in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, and of these observations Giraldus has made due use. Only extracts from these treatises have been printed before and almost all of them are taken from unique manuscripts.

The Topographia Hibernica (in Vol. V.) is the result of Giraldus' two visits to Ireland. The first in 1183, the second in 1185–6, when he accompanied Prince John into that country. Curious as this treatise is, Mr. Dimock is of opinion that it ought not to be accepted as sober truthful history, for Giraldus himself states that truth was not his main object, and that he compiled the work for the purpose of sounding the praises of Henry the Second. Elsewhere, however, he declares that he had stated nothing in the Topographia of the truth of which he was not well assured, either by his own eyesight or by the testimony, with all diligence elicited, of the most trustworthy and authentic men in the country; that though he did not put just the same full faith in their reports as in what he had himself seen, yet, as they only related what they had themselves seen, he could not but believe such credible witnesses. A very interesting portion of this treatise is devoted to the animals of Ireland. It shows that he was a very accurate and acute observer, and his descriptions are given in a way that a scientific naturalist of the present day could hardly improve upon. The Expugnatio Hibernica was written about 1188 and may be regarded rather as a great epic than a sober relation of acts occurring in his own days. No one can peruse it without coming to the conclusion that it is rather a poetical fiction than a prosaic truthful history. Vol. VI. contains the Itinerarium Kambriæ et Descriptio Kambriæ: and Vol. VII., the lives of S. Re migius and S. Hugh.

22. Letters and Papers illustrative of the Wars of the English in France during the Reign of Henry the Sixth, King of England. Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861–1864.

These letters and papers are derived chiefly from originals or contemporary copies extant in the Bibliothèque Impériale, and the Depôt des Archives, in Paris. They illustrate the policy adopted by John Duke of Bedford and his successors during their government of Normandy, and other provinces of France acquired by Henry V. Here may be traced, step by step, the gradual declension of the English power, until we are prepared for its final overthrow.

23. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, according to the several Original Authorities. Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited and translated by* Benjamin Thorpe, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.

This Chronicle, extending from the earliest history of Britain to 1154, is justly the boast of England; no other nation can produce any history, written in its own vernacular, at all approaching it, in antiquity, truthfulness, or extent, the historical books of the Bible alone excepted. There are at present six independent manuscripts of the Saxon Chronicle, ending in different years, and written in different parts of the country. In this edition, the text of each manuscript is printed in columns on the same page, so that the student may see at a glance the various changes which occur in orthography, whether arising from locality or age.

24. Letters and Papers illustrative of the Reigns of Richard III. and Henry VII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* James Gairdner, Esq. 1861–1863.

The Papers are derived from the MSS. in Public Record Office, the British Museum, and other repositories. The period to which they refer is unusually destitute of chronicles and other sources of historical information, so that the light obtained from them is of special importance. The principal contents of the volumes are some diplomatic Papers of Richard III.; correspondence between Henry VII. and Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain; documents relating to Edmund de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk; and a portion of the correspondence of James IV. of Scotland.

25. Letters of Bishop Grosseteste, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.

The Letters of Robert Grosseteste (131 in number) are here collected from various sources, and a large portion of them is printed for the first time. They range in

date from about 1210 to 1253, and relate to various matters connected not only with the political history of England during the reign of Henry III., but with its ecclesiastical condition. They refer especially to the diocese of Lincoln, of which Grosseteste was bishop.

26. Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts relating to the History of Great Britain and Ireland. Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. Vol. II.; 1066–1200. Vol. III.; 1200–1327. *By* Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862–1871.

The object of this work is to publish notices of all known sources of British history, both printed and unprinted, in one continued sequence. The materials, when historical (as distinguished from biographical), are arranged under the year in which the latest event is recorded in the chronicle or history, and not under the period in which its author, real or supposed, flourished. Biographies are enumerated under the year in which the person commemorated died, and not under the year in which the life was written. This arrangement has two advantages; the materials for any given period may be seen at a glance; and if the reader knows the time when an author wrote, and the number of years that had elapsed between the date of the events and the time the writer flourished, he will generally be enabled to form a fair estimate of the comparative value of the narrative itself. A brief analysis of each work has been added when deserving it, in which original portions are distinguished from mere compilations. If possible, the sources are indicated from which compilations have been derived. A biographical sketch of the author of each piece has been added, and a brief notice of such British authors as have written on historical subjects.

27. Royal and other Historical Letters illustrative of the Reign of Henry III. Vol. I., 1216–1235. Vol. II., 1236–1272. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, D.D., Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford. 1862–1866.

The letters contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from the ancient correspondence formerly in the Tower of London, and now in the Public Record Office. They illustrate the political history of England during the growth of its liberties, and throw considerable light upon the personal history of Simon de Montfort. The affairs of France form the subject of many of them, especially in regard to the province of Gascony. The entire collection consists of nearly 700 documents, the greater portion of which is printed for the first time.

28. Chronica Monasterii S. Albani.—1. Thomæ Walsingham Historia Anglicana; Vol. I., 1272–1381: Vol. II., 1381–1422. 2. Willelmi Rishanger Chronica et Annales, 1259–1307. 3. Johannis de Trokelowe et Henrici de Blaneforde Chronica et Annales, 1259–1296; 1307–1324; 1392–1406. 4. Gesta Abbatum Monasterii S. Albani, a Thoma Walsingham, regnante Ricardo Secundo, ejusdem Ecclesiæ Præcentore, compilata; Vol. I., 793–1290: Vol. II., 1290–1349: Vol. III., 1349–1411. 5. Johannis Amundesham, Monachi Monasterii S. Albani, ut videtur, Annales; Vols. I. and II. 6. Registra quorundam Abbatum Monasterii S. Albani, qui sæculo xv^mo^ floruere; Vol. I., Registrum Abbatiæ Johannis Whethamstede, Abbatis Monasterii Sancti Albani, iterum susceptæ; Roberto Blakeney, Capellano, quondam adscriptum: Vol. II., Registra Johannis Whethamstede, Willelmi Albon, et Willelmi Walingforde, Abbatum Monasterii Sancti Albani, cum Appendice, continente quasdam Epistolas, a Johanne Whethamstede Conscriptas. 7. Ypodigma Neustriæ a Thoma Walsingham, quondam Monacho Monasterii S. Albani, conscriptum. *Edited by* Henry Thomas Riley, Esq., M.A., Cambridge and Oxford; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1876.

In the first two volumes is a History of England, from the death of Henry III. to the death of Henry V., by Thomas Walsingham, Precentor of St. Albans, from MS. VII. in the Arundel Collection in the College of Arms, London, a manuscript of the fifteenth century, collated with MS. 13 E. IX. in the King's Library in the British Museum, and MS. VII. in the Parker Collection of Manuscripts at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

In the 3rd volume is a Chronicle of English History, attributed to William Rishanger, who lived in the reign of Edward I., from the Cotton MS. Faustina B. IX. in the British Museum, collated with MS. 14 C. VII. (fols. 219–231) in the King's Library, British Museum, and the Cotton MS. Claudius E. III. fols. 306–331 : an account of transactions attending the award of the kingdom of Scotland to John Balliol, 1291–1292, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., also attributed to William Rishanger, but on no sufficient ground : a short Chronicle of English History, 1292 to 1300, by an unknown hand, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : a short Chronicle Willelmi Rishanger Gesta Edwardi Primi, Regis Angliæ, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library, and MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., with Annales Regum Angliæ, probably by the same hand : and fragments of three Chronicles of English History, 1285 to 1307.

In the 4th volume is a Chronicle of English History, 1259 to 1296, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : Annals of Edward II., 1307 to 1323, by John de Trokelowe, a monk of St. Albans, and a continuation of Trokelowe's Annals, 1323, 1324, by Henry de Blaneforde, both from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : a full Chronicle of English History, 1392 to 1406, from MS. VII. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and an account of the Benefactors of St. Albans, written in the early part of the 15th century from MS. VI. in the same Library.

The 5th, 6th, and 7th volumes contain a history of the Abbots of St. Albans, 793 to 1411, mainly compiled by Thomas Walsingham, from MS. Cotton. Claudius E. IV., in the British Museum : with a Continuation, from the closing pages of Parker MS. VII., in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

The 8th and 9th volumes, in continuation of the Anuals, contain a Chronicle, probably by John Amundesham, a monk of St. Albans.

The 10th and 11th volumes relate especially to the acts and proceedings of Abbots Whethamstede, Albon, and Wallingford, and may be considered as a memorial of the chief historical and domestic events during those periods.

The 12th volume contains a compendious History of England to the reign of Henry V., and of Normandy in early times, also by Thomas Walsingham, and dedicated to Henry V. The compiler has often substituted other authorities in place of those consulted in the preparation of his larger work.

29. Chronicon Abbatiæ Eveshamensis, Auctoribus Dominico Priore Eveshamiæ et Thoma de Marleberge Abbate, a Fundatione ad Annum 1213, una cum Continuatione ad Annum 1418. *Edited by* the Rev. W. D. Macray, Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.

The Chronicle of Evesham illustrates the history of that important monastery from its foundation by Egwin, about 690, to the year 1418. Its chief feature is an autobiography, which makes us acquainted with the inner daily life of a great abbey, such as but rarely has been recorded. Interspersed are many notices of general, personal, and local history which will be read with much interest. This work exists in a single MS., and is for the first time printed.

30. Ricardi de Cirencestria Speculum Historiale de Gestis Regum Angliæ. Vol. I., 447–871. Vol. II., 872–1066. *Edited by* John E. B. Mayor, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863–1869.

The compiler, Richard of Cirencester, was a monk of Westminster, 1355–1400. In 1391 he obtained a licence to make a pilgrimage to Rome. His history, in four books, extends from 447 to 1066. He announces his intention of continuing it, but there is no evidence that he completed any more. This chronicle gives many charters in favour of Westminster Abbey, and a very full account of the lives and miracles of the saints, especially of Edward the Confessor, whose reign occupies the fourth book. A treatise on the Coronation, by William of Sudbury, a monk of Westminster, fills book iii. c. 3. It was on this author that C. J. Bertram fathered his forgery, *De Situ Brittaniæ*, in 1747.

31. Year Books of the Reign of Edward the First. Years 20–21, 21–22, 30–31, 32–33, and 33–35 Edw. I.; and 11–12 Edw. III. *Edited and translated by* Alfred John Horwood, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-

at-Law. Years 12–13, 13–14 Edward III. *Edited and translated by* Luke Owen Pike, Esq., M.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1886.

The volumes known as the "Year Books" contain reports in Norman-French of Cases argued and decided in the Courts of Common Law. They may be considered to a great extent as the "lex non scripta" of England, held in the highest veneration by the ancient sages of the law, and received by them as the repositories of the first recorded judgments and dicta of the great legal luminaries of past ages. They are also worthy of attention on account of the historical information and the notices of public and private persons which they contain, as well as the light which they throw on ancient manners and customs.

32. Narratives of the Expulsion of the English from Normandy 1449–1450. —Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ: Le Recouvrement de Normendie, par Berry, Hérault du Roy: Conferences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863.

This volume contains the narrative of an eye-witness who details with considerable power and minuteness the circumstances which attended the final expulsion of the English from Normandy in 1450. Commencing with the infringement of the truce by the capture of Fougères, and ending with the battle of Formigny and the embarkation of the Duke of Somerset. The period embraced is less than two years.

33. Historia et Cartularium Monasterii S. Petri Gloucestriæ. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. H. Hart, Esq., F.S.A., Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie. 1863–1867.

This work consists of two parts, the History and the Cartulary of the Monastery of St. Peter, Gloucester. The history furnishes an account of the monastery from its foundation, in the year 681, to the early part of the reign of Richard II., together with a calendar of donations and benefactions. It treats principally of the affairs of the monastery, but occasionally matters of general history are introduced. Its authorship has generally been assigned to Walter Froucester the twentieth abbot, but without any foundation.

34. Alexandri Neckam de Naturis Rerum libri duo; with Neckam's Poem, De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A. 1863.

Neckam was a man who devoted himself to science, such as it was in the twelfth centuary. In the "De Naturis Rerum" are to be found what may be called the rudiments of many sciences mixed up with much error and ignorance. Neckham was not thought infallible, even by his contemporaries, for Roger Bacon remarks of him, "this Alexander in many things wrote what was true and useful; "but he neither can nor ought by just title to be reckoned among authorities." Neckam, however, had sufficient independence of thought to differ from some of the schoolmen who in his time considered themselves the only judges of literature. He had his own views in morals, and in giving us a glimpse of them, as well as of his other opinions, he throws much light upon the manners, customs, and general tone of thought prevalent in the twelfth century. The poem entitled "De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ" appears to be a metrical paraphrase or abridgment of the "De Naturis Rerum." It is written in the elegiac metre, and though there are many lines which violate classical rules, it is, as a whole, above the ordinary standard of mediæval Latin.

35. Leechdoms, Wortcunning, and Starcraft of Early England; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vols. I., II., and III. *Collected and edited by* the Rev. T. Oswald Cockayne, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge, 1864–1866.

This work illustrates not only the history of science, but the history of superstition. In addition to the information bearing directly upon the medical skill and medical faith of the times, there are many passages which incidentally throw light upon the general mode of life and ordinary diet. The volumes are interesting

not only in their scientific, but also in their social aspect. The manuscripts from which they have been printed are valuable to the Anglo-Saxon scholar for the illustrations they afford of Anglo-Saxon orthography.

36. Annales Monastici. Vol. I.:—Annales de Margan, 1066–1232; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066–1263; Annales de Burton, 1004–1263. Vol. II.:—Annales Monasterii de Wintonia. 519–1277; Annales Monasterii de Waverleia, 1–1291. Vol. III.:—Annales Prioratus de Dunstaplia, 1–1297. Annales Monasterii de Bermundeseia, 1042–1432. Vol. IV.:—Annales Monasterii de Oseneia, 1016–1347; Chronicon vulgo dictum Chronicon Thomæ Wykes, 1066–1289; Annales Prioratus de Wigornia, 1–1377. Vol. V.:—Index and Glossary. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrary of the University, Cambridge. 1864–1869.

The present collection of Monastic Annals embraces all the more important chronicles compiled in religious houses in England during the thirteenth century. These distinct works are ten in number. The extreme period which they embrace ranges from the year 1 to 1432, although they refer more especially to the reigns of John, Henry III., and Edward I. Some of these narratives have already appeared in print, but others are printed for the first time.

37. Magna Vita S. Hugonis Episcopi Lincolniensis. From MSS. in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1864.

This work contains a number of very curious and interesting incidents, and being the work of a contemporary, is very valuable, not only as a truthful biography of a celebrated ecclesiastic, but as the work of a man, who, from personal knowledge, gives notices of passing events, as well as of individuals who were then taking active part in public affairs. The author, in all probability, was Adam Abbot of Evesham. He was domestic chaplain and private confessor of Bishop Hugh, and in these capacities was admitted to the closest intimacy. Bishop Hugh was Prior of Witham for 11 years before he became Bishop of Lincoln. His consecration took place on the 21st September 1186; he died on the 16th of November 1200; and was canonized in 1220.

38. Chronicles and Memorials of the Reign of Richard the First. Vol. I.:—Itinerarium Peregrinorum et Gesta Regis Ricardi. Vol. II.:—Epistolæ Cantuarienses; the Letters of the Prior and Convent of Christ Church, Canterbury; 1187 to 1199. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864–1865.

The authorship of the Chronicle in Vol. I., hitherto ascribed to Geoffrey Vinesauf, is now more correctly ascribed to Richard, Canon of the Holy Trinity of London. The narrative extends from 1187 to 1199; but its chief interest consists in the minute and authentic narrative which it furnishes of the exploits of Richard I., from his departure from England in Decembar 1189 to his death in 1199. The author states in his prologue that he was an eye-witness of much that he records; and various incidental circumstances which occur in the course of the narrative confirm this assertion.

The letters in Vol. II., written between 1187 and 1199, are of value as furnishing authentic materials for the history of the ecclesiastical condition of England during the reign of Richard I. They had their origin in a dispute which arose from the attempts of Baldwin and Hubert, archbishops of Canterbury, to found a college of secular canons, a project which gave great umbrage to the monks of Canterbury, who saw in it a design to supplant them in their function of metropolitan chapter. These letters are printed, for the first time, from a MS. belonging to the archiepiscopal library at Lambeth.

39. Recueil des Croniques et anchiennes Istories de la Grant Bretaigne a present nomme Engleterre, par Jehan de Waurin. Vol. I. Albina to 688. Vol. II., 1399–1422. Vol. III., 1422–1431. *Edited by* Sir William Hardy, F.S.A. 1864–1879. Vol. IV. 1431–1443. *Edited by* Sir William Hardy, F.S.A., and Edward L. C. P. Hardy, Esq., F.S.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-law. 1884.

40. A Collection of the Chronicles and ancient Histories of Great Britain, now called England, by John de Wavrin. Albina to 688. (Translation

of the preceding Vol. I.) *Edited and translated by* Sir WILLIAM HARDY, F.S.A. 1864.

This curious chronicle extends from the fabulous period of history down to the return of Edward IV. to England in the year 1471 after the second deposition of Henry VI. The manuscript from which the text of the work is taken is preserved in the Imperial Library at Paris, and is believed to be the only complete and nearly contemporary copy in existence. The work, as originally bound, was comprised in six volumes, since rebound in morocco in 12 volumes, folio maximo, vellum, and is illustrated with exquisite miniatures, vignettes, and initial letters. It was written towards the end of the fifteenth century, having been expressly executed for Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruthuyse and Earl of Winchester, from whose cabinet it passed into the library of Louis XII. at Blois.

41. POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, with Trevisa's Translation. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Vols. III., IV., V., VI., VII., VIII., and IX. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, D.D., Norrisian Professor of Divinity, Vicar of St. Edward's, Fellow of St. Catharine's College, and late Fellow of Magdalene College, Cambridge. 1865–1886.

This is one of the many mediæval chronicles which assume the character of a history of the world. It begins with the creation, and is brought down to the author's own time, the reign of Edward III. Prefixed to the historical portion, is a chapter devoted to geography, in which is given a description of every known land. To say that the Polychronicon was written in the fourteenth century is to say that it is not free from inaccuracies. It has, however, a value apart from its intrinsic merits. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography which well-informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed, for it was then the standard work on general history.

The two English translations, which are printed with the original Latin, afford interesting illustrations of the gradual change of our language, for one was made in the fourteenth century, the other in the fifteenth. The differences between Trevisa's version and that of the unknown writer are often considerable.

42. LE LIVERE DE REIS DE BRITTANIE E LE LIVERE DE REIS DE ENGLETERE. *Edited by* JOHN GLOVER, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1865.

These two treatises, though they cannot rank as independent narratives, are nevertheless valuable as careful abstracts of previous historians, especially "Le Livere de Reis de Engletere." Some various readings are given which are interesting to the philologist as instances of semi-Saxonized French. It is supposed that Peter of Ickham was the supposed author.

43. CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1406. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant-Keeper of Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum. 1866–1868.

The Abbey of Meaux was a Cistercian house, and the work of its abbot is both curious and valuable. It is a faithful and often minute record of the establishment of a religious community, of its progress in forming an ample revenue, of its struggles to maintain its acquisitions, and of its relations to the governing institutions of the country. In addition to the private affairs of the monastery, some light is thrown upon the public events of the time, which are however kept distinct, and appear at the end of the history of each abbot's administration. The text has been printed from what is said to be the autograph of the original compiler, Thomas de Burton, the nineteenth abbot.

44. MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM, SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR, HISTORIA MINOR. Vols. I., II., and III. 1067–1253. *Edited by* Sir FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H., Keeper of the Manuscript Department of British Museum. 1866–1869.

The exact date at which this work was written is, according to the chronicler, 1250. The history is of considerable value as an illustration of the period during which the author lived, and contains a good summary of the events which followed

the Conquest. This minor chronicle is, however, based on another work (also written by Matthew Paris) giving fuller details, which has been called the "Historia Major." The chronicle here published, nevertheless, gives some information not to be found in the greater history.

45. Liber Monasterii de Hyda: a Chronicle and Chartulary of Hyde Abbey, Winchester, 455–1023. *Edited, from a Manuscript in the Library of the Earl of Macclesfield, by* Edward Edwards, Esq. 1866.

The "Book of Hyde" is a compilation from much earlier sources which are usually indicated with considerable care and precision. In many cases, however, the Hyde Chronicler appears to correct, to qualify, or to amplify—either from traditition or from sources of information not now discoverable—the statements, which, in substance, he adopts. He also mentions, and frequently quotes from writers whose works are either entirely lost or at present known only by fragments.

There is to be found, in the "Book of Hyde," much information relating to the reign of King Alfred which is not known to exist elsewhere. The volume contains some curious specimens of Anglo-Saxon and Mediæval English

46. Chronicon Scotorum: a Chronicle of Irish Affairs, from the Earliest Times to 1135; and Supplement, containing the Events from 1141 to 1150. *Edited, with Translation, by* William Maunsell Hennessy, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1866.

There is, in this volume, a legendary account of the peopling of Ireland and of the adventures which befell the various heroes who are said to have been connected with Irish history. The details are, however, very meagre both for this period and for the time when history becomes more authentic. The plan adopted in the chronicle gives the appearance of an accuracy to which the earlier portions of the work cannot have any claim. The succession of events is marked year by year, from A.M. 1599 to A.D. 1150. The principal events narrated in the later portion of the work are, the invasions of foreigners, and the wars of the Irish among themselves. The text has been printed from a MS. preserved in the library of Trinity College, Dublin, written partly in Latin, partly in Irish.

47. The Chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft, in French Verse, from the earliest Period to the Death of Edward I. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A. 1866–1868.

It is probable that Pierre de Langtoft was a canon of Bridlington, in Yorkshire, and lived in the reign of Edward I., and during a portion of the reign of Edward II. This chronicle is divided into three parts; in the first, is an abridgment of Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Historia Britonum;" in the second, a history of the Anglo-Saxon and Norman kings, to the death of Henry III.; in the third, a history of the reign of Edward I. The principal object of the work was apparently to show the justice of Edward's Scottish wars. The language is singularly corrupt, and a curious specimen of the French of Yorkshire.

48. The War of the Gaedhil with the Gaill, or The Invasions of Ireland by the Danes and other Norsemen. *Edited, with a Translation, by* James Henthorn Todd, D.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, and Regius Professor of Hebrew in the University, Dublin. 1867.

The work in its present form, in the editor's opinion, is a comparatively modern version of an undoubtedly ancient original. That it was compiled from contemporary materials has been proved by curious incidental evidence. It is stated in the account given of the battle of Clontarf that the full tide in Dublin Bay on the day of the battle (23 April 1014) coincided with sunrise; and that the returning tide in the evening aided considerably in the defeat of the Danes. The fact has been verified by astronomical calculations, and the inference is that the author of the chronicle, if not an eye-witness, must have derived his information from eye-witnesses. The contents of the work are sufficiently described in its title. The story is told after the manner of the Scandinavian Sagas, with poems and fragments of poems introduced into the prose narrative.

49. Gesta Regis Henrici Secundi Benedicti Abbatis. Chronicle of the Reigns of Henry II. and Richard I., 1169–1192, known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, Oxford, and Lambeth Librarian. 1867.

This chronicle of the reigns of Henry II. and Richard I., known commonly under the name of Benedict of Peterborough, is one of the best existing specimens of a class of historical compositions of the first importance to the student.

50. Munimenta Academica, or, Documents illustrative of Academical Life and Studies at Oxford (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. Henry Anstey, M.A., Vicar of St. Wendron, Cornwall, and lately Vice-Principal of St. Mary Hall, Oxford. 1868.

This work will supply materials for a History of Academical Life and Studies in the University of Oxford during the 13th, 14th, and 15th centuries.

51. Chronica Magistri Rogeri de Houedene. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1868–1871.

This work has long been justly celebrated, but not thoroughly understood until Mr. Stubbs' edition. The earlier portion, extending from 732 to 1148, appears to be a copy of a compilation made in Northumbria about 1161, to which Hoveden added little. From 1148 to 1169—a very valuable portion of this work—the matter is derived from another source, to which Hoveden appears to have supplied little, and not always judiciously. From 1170 to 1192 is the portion which corresponds with the Chronicle known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough (*see* No. 49); but it is not a copy, being sometimes an abridgment, at others a paraphrase; occasionally the two works entirely agree; showing that both writers had access to the same materials, but dealt with them differently. From 1192 to 1201 may be said to be wholly Hoveden's work; it is extremely valuable, and an authority of the first importance.

52. Willelmi Malmesbiriensis Monachi de Gestis Pontificum Anglorum Libri Quinque. *Edited, from William of Malmesbury's Autograph MS., by* N. E. S. A. Hamilton, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1870.

William of Malmesbury's "Gesta Pontificum" is the principal foundation of English Ecclesiastical Biography, down to the year 1122. The manuscript which has been followed in this Edition is supposed by Mr. Hamilton to be the author's autograph, containing his latest additions and amendments.

53. Historic and Municipal Documents of Ireland, from the Archives of the City of Dublin, &c. 1172–1320. *Edited by* John T. Gilbert, Esq., F.S.A., Secretary of the Public Record Office of Ireland. 1870.

A collection of original documents, elucidating mainly the history and condition of the municipal, middle, and trading classes under or in relation with the rule of England in Ireland,—a subject hitherto in almost total obscurity. Extending over the first hundred and fifty years of the Anglo-Norman settlement, the series includes charters, municipal laws and regulations, rolls of names of citizens and members of merchant-guilds, lists of commodities with their rates, correspondence, illustrations of relations between ecclesiastics and laity; together with many documents exhibiting the state of Ireland during the presence there of the Scots under Robert and Edward Bruce.

54. The Annals of Loch Cé. A Chronicle of Irish Affairs, from 1041 to 1590. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, with a Translation, by* William Maunsell Hennessy, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1871.

The original of this chronicle has passed under various names. The title of "Annals of Loch Cé" was given to it by Professor O'Curry, on the ground that it was transcribed for Brian Mac Dermot, an Irish chieftain, who resided on the island in Loch Cé, in the county of Roscommon. It adds much to the materials for the civil and ecclesiastical history of Ireland; and contains many curious references to English and foreign affairs, not noticed in any other chronicle.

55. Monumenta Juridica. The Black Book of the Admiralty, with Appendices. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* Sir Travers Twiss, Q.C., D.C.L. 1871–1876.

This book contains the ancient ordinances and laws relating to the navy, and was probably compiled for the use of the Lord High Admiral of England. Selden calls it the "jewel of the Admiralty Records." Prynne ascribes to the Black Book the same authority in the Admiralty as the Black and Red Rocks have in the Court of Exchequer, and most English writers on maritime law recognize its importance.

56. Memorials of the Reign of Henry VI.:—Official Correspondence of Thomas Bekynton, Secretary to Henry VI., and Bishop of Bath and Wells. *Edited, from a MS. in the Archiepiscopal Library at Lambeth, with an Appendix of Illustrative Documents, by* the Rev. George Williams, B.D., Vicar of Ringwood, late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. Vols. I. and II. 1872.

These curious volumes are of a miscellaneous character, and were probably compiled under the immediate direction of Beckynton before he had attained to the Episcopate. They contain many of the Bishop's own letters, and several written by him in the King's name; also letters to himself while Royal Secretary, and others addressed to the King. This work elucidates some points in the history of the nation during the first half of the fifteenth century.

57. Matthæi Parisiensis, Monachi Sancti Albani, Chronica Majora. Vol. I. The Creation to A.D. 1066. Vol. II. A.D. 1067 to A.D. 1216. Vol. III. A.D. 1216 to A.D. 1239. Vol. IV. A.D. 1240 to A.D. 1247. Vol. V. A.D. 1248 to A.D. 1259. Vol. VI. Additamenta. Vol. VII. Index. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, D.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Registrary of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge. 1872–1884.

This work contains the "Chronica Majora" of Matthew Paris, one of the most valuable and frequently consulted of the ancient English Chronicles. It is published from its commencement, for the first time. The editions by Archbishop Parker, and William Wats, severally begin at the Norman Conquest.

58. Memoriale Fratris Walteri de Coventria.—The Historical Collections of Walter of Coventry. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, from the MS. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1872–1873.

This work, now printed in full for the first time, has long been a *desideratum* by Historical Scholars. The first portion, however, is not of much importance, being only a compilation from earlier writers. The part relating to the first quarter of the thirteenth century is the most valuable and interesting.

59. The Anglo-Latin Satirical Poets and Epigrammatists of the Twelfth Century. Vols. I. and II. *Collected and edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A., Corresponding Member of the National Institute of France (Académie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres). 1872

The Poems contained in these volumes have long been known and appreciated as the best satires of the age in which their authors flourished, and were deservedly popular during the 13th and 14th centuries.

60. Materials for a History of the Reign of Henry VII., from original Documents preserved in the Public Record Office. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. William Campbell, M.A., one of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools. 1873–1877.

These volumes are valuable as illustrating the acts and proceedings of Henry VII. on ascending the throne, and shadow out the policy he afterwards adopted.

61. Historical Papers and Letters from the Northern Registers. *Edited by* James Raine, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society. 1873.

The documents in this volume illustrate, for the most part, the general history of the north of England, particularly in its relation to Scotland.

62. Registrum Palatinum Dunelmense. The Register of Richard de Kellawe, Lord Palatine and Bishop of Durham; 1311–1316. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1873–1878.

Bishop Kellawe's Register contains the proceedings of his prelacy, both lay and ecclesiastical, and is the earliest Register of the Palatinate of Durham.

63. Memorials of Saint Dunstan, Archbishop of Canterbury. *Edited, from various MSS., by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1874.

This volume contains several lives of Archbishop Dunstan, one of the most celebrated Primates of Canterbury. They open various points of Historical and Literary interest, without which our knowledge of the period would be more incomplete than it is at present.

64. Chronicon Angliæ, ab Anno Domini 1328 usque ad Annum 1388, Auctore Monacho quodam Sancti Albani. *Edited by* Edward Maunde Thompson, Esq., Barrister-at-Law, and Assistant-Keeper of the Manuscripts in the British Museum. 1874.

This chronicle gives a circumstantial history of the close of the reign of Edward III. which has hitherto been considered lost.

65. Thómas Saga Erkibyskups. A Life of Archbishop Thomas Becket, in Icelandic. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, with English Translation, Notes, and Glossary by* M. Eiríkr Magnússon, M.A., Sub-Librarian of the University Library, Cambridge. 1875–1884.

This work is derived from the Life of Becket written by Benedict of Peterborough, and apparently supplies the missing portions in Benedict's biography.

66. Radulphi de Coggeshall Chronicon Anglicanum. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A. 1875.

This volume contains the "Chronicon Anglicanum," by Ralph of Coggleshall, the "Libellus de Expugnatione Terræ Sanctæ per Saladinum," usually ascribed to the same author, and other pieces of an interesting character.

67. Materials for the History of Thomas Becket, Archbishop of Canterbury. Vols. I., II., III., IV., V., and VI. *Edited by* the Rev. James Craigie Robertson, M.A., Canon of Canterbury. 1875–1883. Vol. VII. *Edited by* Joseph Brigstocke Sheppard, Esq., LL.D. 1885.

This publication comprises all contemporary materials for the history of Archbishop Thomas Becket. The first volume contains the life of that celebrated man, and the miracles after his death, by William, a monk of Canterbury. The second, the life by Benedict of Peterborough; John of Salisbury; Alan of Tewkesbury; and Edward Grim. The third, the life by William Fitzstephen; and Herbert of Bosham. The fourth, anonymous lives, Quadrilogus, &c. The fifth, sixth, and seventh, the Epistles, and known letters.

68. Radulfi de Diceto Decani Lundoniensis Opera Historica. The Historical Works of Master Ralph de Diceto, Dean of London. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, from the Original Manuscripts, by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1876.

The Historical Works of Ralph de Diceto are some of the most valuable materials for British History. The Abbreviationes Chronicorum extend from the Creation to 1147, and the Ymagines Historiarum to 1201.

69. Roll of the Proceedings of the King's Council in Ireland, for a Portion of the 16th Year of the Reign of Richard II. 1392–93. *Edited by* the Rev. James Graves, A.B. 1877.

This Roll throws considerable light on the History of Ireland at a period little known. It seems the only document of the kind extant.

70. Henrici de Bracton de Legibus et Consuetudinibus Angliæ Libri Quinque in Varios Tractatus Distincti. Ad Diversorum et Vetustissimorum Codicum Collationem Typis Vulgati. Vols. I., II., III., IV., V., and VI. *Edited by* Sir Travers Twiss, Q.C., D.C.L. 1878–1883.

This is a new edition of Bracton's celebrated work, collated with MSS. in the British Museum; the Libraries of Lincoln's Inn, Middle Temple, and Gray's Inn; Bodelian Library, Oxford; the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris; &c.

71. The Historians of the Church of York, and its Archbishops. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* James Raine, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society. 1879–1886.

This will form a complete "Corpus Historicum Eboracense," a work very much needed, and of great value to the Historical Inquirer.

72. Registrum Malmesburiense. The Register of Malmesbury Abbey; Preserved in the Public Record Office. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Preacher at the Rolls, and Rector of Toppesfield; and Charles Trice Martin, Esq., B.A. 1879, 1880.

This work illustrates many curious points of history, the growth of society, the distribution of land, the relations of landlord and tenant, national customs, &c.

73. Historical Works of Gervase of Canterbury. Vols. I. and II. The Chronicle of the Reigns of Stephen, Henry II., and Richard I., by Gervase, the Monk of Canterbury. *Edited by* William Stubbs, D.D.; Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's, London; Regius Professor of Modern History and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford; &c. 1879, 1880.

The Historical Works of Gervase of Canterbury are of great importance as regards the questions of Church and State, during the period in which he wrote. This work was printed by Twysden, in the "Historiæ Anglicanæ Scriptores X.," more than two centuries ago. The present edition has received critical examination and illustration.

74. Henrici Archidiaconi Huntendunensis Historia Anglorum. The History of the English, by Henry, Archdeacon of Huntingdon, from A.D. 55 to A.D. 1154, in Eight Books. *Edited by* Thomas Arnold, Esq., M.A., of University College, Oxford. 1879.

Henry of Huntingdon's work was first printed by Sir Henry Savile, in 1596, in his "Scriptores post Bedam," and reprinted at Frankfort in 1601. Both editions are very rare and inaccurate. The first five books of the History were published in 1848 in the "Monumenta Historica Britannica," which is out of print The present volume contains the whole of the manuscript of Huntingdon's History in eight books, collated with a manuscript lately discovered at Paris.

75. The Historical Works of Symeon of Durham. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Thomas Arnold, Esq., M.A., of University College, Oxford. 1882–1885.

The first volume of this edition of the Historical Works of Symeon of Durham, contains the "Historia Dunelmensis Ecclesiæ," and other Works. The second volume contains the "Historia Regum," &c.

76. Chronicles of the Reigns of Edward I. and Edward II. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* William Stubbs, D.D., Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's, London; Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford, &c. 1882, 1883.

The first volume of these Chronicles contains the "Annales Londonienses" and the "Annales Paulini:" the second, I.—Commendatio Lamentabilis in Transitu magni Regis Edwardi. II.—Gesta Edwardi de Carnarvan Auctore Canonico Bridlingtoniensi. III.—Monachi cujusdam Malmesberiensis Vita, Edwardi II. IV.—Vita et Mors Edwardi II. Conscripta a Thoma de la Moore.

77. Registrum Epistolarum Fratris Johannis Peckham, Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* Charles Trice Martin, Esq., B.A., F.S.A., 1882–1886.

These Letters are of great value for illustrating English Ecclesiastical History.

78. Register of S. Osmund. *Edited by* the Rev. W. H. Rich Jones, M.A., F.S.A., Canon of Salisbury, Vicar of Bradford-on-Avon. Vols. I. and II. 1883, 1884.

This Register, of which a complete copy is here printed for the first time, is among the most ancient, and certainly the most treasured, of the muniments of the Bishops of Salisbury. It derives its name from containing the statutes, rules, and orders made or compiled by S. Osmund, to be observed in the Cathedral and diocese of Salisbury. The first 19 folios contain the "Consuetudinary," the exposition, as regards ritual, of the "Use of Sarum."

79. Chartulary of the Ancient Benedictine Abbey of Ramsey, from the MS. in the Public Record Office. Vols. I. and II. 1884, 1886. *Edited by* William Henry Hart, Esq., F.S.A., and the Rev. Ponsonby Annesley Lyons.

This Chartulary of the Ancient Benedictine Monastery of Ramsey, Huntingdonshire, came to the Crown on the Dissolution of Monasteries, was afterwards preserved in the Stone Tower, Westminster Hall, and thence transferred to the Public Record Office.

80. Chartularies of St. Mary's Abbey, Dublin, &c., preserved in the Bodleian Library and British Museum. *Edited by* John Thomas Gilbert, Esq., F.S.A., M.R.I.A. Vols. I. & II. 1884 and 1885.

These Chartularies, published for the first time, are the only documents of that description known to exist of the ancient establishments of the Cistercian Order in Ireland; two being of St. Mary's Abbey, Dublin, and one of the House at Dunbrody, Wexford. One Chartulary is in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, together with that of Dunbrody; the second is in the British Museum.

81. Eadmeri Historia Novorum in Anglia, et opuscula duo de Vita Sancti Anselmi et quibusdam Miraculis ejus. 1884. *Edited by* the Rev. Martin Rule, M.A.

This volume contains the "Historiæ Novorum in Anglia," of Eadmer; his treatise "De Vita et conversatione Anselmi Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis," and a Tract entitled "Quaedam Parva Descriptio Miraculorum gloriosi Patris "Anselmi Cantuariensis."

82. Chronicles of the Reigns of Stephen, Henry II., and Richard I. Vols. I. II., and III., 1884–1886. *Edited by* Richard Howlett, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-law.

Vol. I. contains Books I.–IV. of the "Historia Rerum Anglicarum" of William of Newburgh; Vol. II. contains Book V. of that work, the continuation of the same to A.D. 1298, and the "Draco Normannicus" of Etienne de Rouen. Vol. III. contains the "Gesta Stephani Regis," the Chronicle of Richard of Hexham, the "Relatio de Standardo" of St. Aelred of Rievaulx, the poem of Jordan Fantosme, and the Chronicle of Richard of Devizes.

83. Chronicle of the Ancient Abbey of Ramsey, from the Chartulary of that Abbey, in the Public Record Office. 1886. *Edited by* the Rev. William Dunn Macray, M.A., F.S.A., Rector of Ducklington, Oxon.

This Chronicle forms part of the Chartulary of the Abbey of Ramsey, preserved in the Public Record Office (*see* No. 79).

84. Chronica Rogeri de Wendover, sive Flores Historiarum. Vol. I. *Edited by* Henry Gay Hewlett, Esq., Keeper of the Records of the Land Revenue.

This edition gives that portion only of Roger of Wendover's Chronicle which can be accounted an original authority.

85. The Registers of the Monastery of Christ Church, Canterbury. *Edited by* Joseph Brigstocke Sheppard, Esq., LL.D. Vol. I., 1887.

86. The Metrical Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester. *Edited by* William Aldis Wright, Esq., M.A. Parts I. and II., 1887.

87. Chronicle of Robert of Brunne. *Edited by* Frederick James Furnivall, Esq., M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law. Parts I and II. 1887.

In the Press.

A Collection of Sagas and other Historical Documents relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by* Sir George Webbe Dasent, D.C.L., Oxon., and M. Gudbrand Vigfusson, M.A. Vols. I.—IV.

Lestorie des Engles solum Geffrei Gaimar. *Edited by* the late Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records; *continued and translated by* Charles Trice Martin, Esq., B.A., F.S.A. Vols. I. and II.

The Tripartite Life of St. Patrick, with other documents relating to that Saint. *Edited by* Whitley Stokes, Esq., LL.D., D.C.L., Honorary Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford; and Corresponding Member of the Institute of France. Parts I. and II.

Chartulary of the Ancient Benedictine Abbey of Ramsey, from the MS. in the Public Record Office. Vol. III. *Edited by* William Henry Hart, Esq., F.S.A., and the Rev. Ponsonby Annesley Lyons.

Willelmi Monachi Malmesbiriensis de Regum Gestis Anglorum, libri V.; et Historiæ Novellæ, libri III. *Edited by* William Stubbs, D.D., Bishop of Chester. Vols. I. and II.

Charters and Documents, illustrating the History of the Cathedral and City of Sarum, 1100–1300; forming an Appendix to the Register of S. Osmund. Vol. III. *Edited by* the Rev. W. H. Rich Jones, M.A., F.S.A., Canon of Salisbury, Vicar of Bradford-on-Avon.

A Collection of the Chronicles and Ancient Histories of Great Britain now called England, by John de Waurin. 1399–1422. (Translation of Vol. II). *Edited and translated by* the late Sir William Hardy, F.S.A., and Edward L. C. P. Hardy, Esq., F.S.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law.

Flores Historiarum, per Matthæum Westmonasteriensem collecti. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, D.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Registrary of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge.

Ranulf de Glanvill; Tractatus de legibus et consuetudinibus Angliæ, &c. *Edited and translated by* Sir Travers Twiss, Q.C., D.C.L.

CHRONICLE OF ADAM MURIMUTH, with the CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF AVESBURY. *Edited by* EDWARD MAUNDE THOMPSON, Esq., Keeper and Egerton Librarian of the Manuscript Department in the British Museum.

YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD III. *Edited and translated by* LUKE OWEN PIKE, Esq., M.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law.

In Progress.

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. IV.; 1327, &c. *Edited by* the late Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records, and C. TRICE MARTIN, Esq., B.A., F.S.A.

THE TREATISE "DE PRINCIPUM INSTRUCTIONE," of GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS; with an Index to the first four volumes of the "Works of Giraldus Cambrensis," edited by the Rev. J. S. Brewer. *Edited by* GEORGE F. WARNER, Esq., of the Department of MSS., British Museum.

RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAIGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. Vol. V. 1443–1461. *Edited by* Sir WILLIAM HARDY, F.S.A., and EDWARD L. C. P. HARDY, Esq., F.S.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law.

THE RED BOOK OF THE EXCHEQUER, preserved in the Public Record Office. *Edited by* WALFORD DAKING SELBY, Esq., of the Public Record Office.

ANNALS OR MEMORIALS OF ST. EDMONDSBURY. *Edited by* THOMAS ARNOLD, Esq., M.A., of University College, Oxford.

CHRONICLE OF HENRY KNIGHTON, Canon of Leicester, to the death of RICHARD II. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, D.D.

LEXICON GEOGRAPHICUM. From a Manuscript of the 14th century. *Edited by* FRANK SCOTT HAYDON, Esq., B.A., Assistant Keeper of the Public Records.

CHRONICA ROGERI DE WENDOVER, SIVE FLORES HISTORIARUM. *Edited by* HENRY GAY HEWLETT, Esq., Keeper of the Records of the Land Revenue. Vol. II.

THE REGISTERS OF THE MONASTERY OF CHRIST CHURCH, CANTERBURY. *Edited by* JOSEPH BRIGSTOCKE SHEPPARD, Esq., LL.D. Vol. II.

PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c.

[In boards or cloth.]

ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIÂ SCACCARII ABBREVIATIO. Hen. III.—Edw. III. *Edited by* HENRY PLAYFORD, Esq. 2 Vols. folio (1805—1810). 12*s*. 6*d*. each.

CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM. Hen. III.—Ric. III. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and JOHN BAYLEY, Esqrs. Folio (1821—1828): Vol. 3, 21*s*.; Vol. 4, 24*s*.

LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS. Vol. 4. *Edited by* the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. Folio (1812), 18*s*.

ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM. Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* the Right Hon. GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1811), 18*s*.

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), (Domesday-Book, Vol. 3). 21*s*.

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), (Domesday-Book, Vol. 4), 21*s*.

STATUTES OF THE REALM. *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHBY, JOHN CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. Vols. 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, folio (1819—1828). 31*s*. 6*d*. each; Indices, 30*s*. each.

VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Hen. VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1817–1834). 25*s.* each. The Introduction, separately, 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENS ASSERVATI. 19 Edw. I.—Hen. VIII. *Edited by* D. MACPHERSON, J. CALEY, W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and Rev. T. H. HORNE. Vol. 2. folio (1818). 21*s.*

FŒDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ, &c.; or, RYMER'S FŒDERA, New Edition, folio. Vol. 3, Part 2, 1361—1377 (1830): Vol. 4, 1377—1383 (1869). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. Vol. 3, Part 2, 21*s.*; Vol. 4, 6*s.*

DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to Pleadings, &c., Hen. VII.—13 Eliz. Part 4, Calendar to Pleadings, to end of Eliz. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio. Part 3 (or Vol. 2), 31*s.* 6*d.*; Part 4 (or Vol. 3), 21*s.*

CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, ELIZ.; with Examples of Proceedings from Ric. II. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vol. 3 (1832), folio, 21*s.*

PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, with Records and Muniments relating to Suit and Service to Parliament, &c. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834.) Folio. Vol. 2, Div. 1, Edw. II., 21*s.*; Vol. 2, Div. 2, 21*s.*; Vol. 2, Div. 3, 42*s.*

ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 Vols. folio (1833, 1844). Vol. 1, 1204—1224. Vol. 2, 1224—1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. Vol. 1, 63*s.*; Vol. 2, 18*s.*

PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND. 10 Ric. II.—33 Hen. VIII. *Edited by* Sir NICHOLAS HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 Vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837). 14*s.* each.

ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LOND. ASSERVATI. 1201—1216. *Edited by* T. DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1835), 31*s.* 6*d.* The Introduction, separately, 8vo. 9*s.*

ROTULI CURIÆ REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835). 28*s.*

ROTULI NORMANNIÆ IN TURRI LOND. ASSERVATI. 1200—1205; 1417—1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835). 12*s.* 6*d.*

ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LOND. ASSERVATI, temp. Regis Johannis. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835). 18*s.*

EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836); Vol. 1, 14*s.*; Vol. 2, 18*s.*

FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIÆ IN CURIÂ DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John, 1195—1214. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844); Vol. 1, 8*s.* 6*d.*; Vol. 2, 2*s.* 6*d.*

ANCIENT KALENDARS AND INVENTORIES OF THE TREASURY OF HIS MAJESTY'S EXCHEQUER; with Documents illustrating its History. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 3 Vols. royal 8vo. (1836). 42*s.*

DOCUMENTS AND RECORDS illustrating the History of Scotland, and Transactions between Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1837). 18*s.*

ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1199—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1837). 30*s.*

REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, 1831—1837. 1 Vol. folio (1837). 8*s.*

REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 Vol. folio (1838), 31*s.* 6*d.*

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, with Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry I.; Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from 7th to 10th century; and Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1840), 40*s*. 2 Vols. royal 8vo, 30*s*.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good, modified by Regulations prior to the Conquest by Edward I.; and anomalous Laws, principally of Institutions which continued in force. With Translation. Also, Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1841), 44*s*. 2 Vols. royal 8vo., 36*s*.

ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844). 6*s*.

THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE, 2, 3, 4 HEN. II., 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844). 4*s*. 6*d*.

THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE, 1 RIC. I., 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844). 6*s*.

DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, from the Records of the Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE, Esq. 1 Vol. fcp. folio (1844). 5*s*. 6*d*.

MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. 8vo. (1846). 2*s*. 6*d*.

REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REG. SCOT. in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1814). 10*s*. 6*d*.

ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. Folio) 1814—1875). *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES, Esqrs. Vol. 1, 42*s*. Vols. 5 and 6 (in three Parts), 21*s*. each Part; Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, 10*s*. 6*d*. each; Vol. 12 (Index), 63*s*. Or, 12 Volumes in 13, 12*l*. 12*s*.

ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS (ACTA DOMINORUM AUDITORUM). 1466—1494. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). 10*s*. 6*d*.

ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES (ACTA DOMINORUM CONCILII), 1478—1495. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). 10*s*. 6*d*.

ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer, containing Payments out of the Revenue, 44 Edw. III., 1370. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1835), 35*s*. Or, royal 8vo., 25*s*.

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, James I.; from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1836), 30*s*. Or, royal 8vo., 21*s*.

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, Henry III.—Henry VI.; from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1837), 40*s*. Or, royal 8vo., 30*s*.

HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1853). 12*s*.

HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND. Henry VIII.—Anne (1509—1714). A Book of Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. 3 Vols. 8vo. (1856). 40*s*.

STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH: with Indices of Persons and Places. 11 Vols. 4to. (1830—1852), 10*s*. 6*d*. each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.
Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.
Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.
Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY.

DOMESDAY BOOK, or the GREAT SURVEY OF ENGLAND OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR, 1086; fac-simile of the Part relating to each county, separately (with a few exceptions of double counties). Photozincographed, by Her Majesty's Command, at the Ordnance Survey Office, Southampton, Colonel Sir HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., &c., DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, under the Superintendence of W. BASEVI SANDERS, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. 35 Parts, imperial quarto and demy quarto (1861–1863), boards. *Price* 8*s.* to 1*l.* 3*s.* each Part, according to size; or, bound in 2 Vols., 20*l.* (*The edition in two volumes is out of print.*)

This important and unique survey of the greater portion of England* is the oldest and most valuable record in the national archives. It was commenced about the year 1084 and finished in 1086. Its compilation was determined upon at Gloucester by William the Conqueror, in council, in order that he might know what was due to him, in the way of tax, from his subjects, and that each at the same time might know what he had to pay. It was compiled as much for their protection as for the benefit of the sovereign. The nobility and people had been grievously distressed at the time by the king bringing over large numbers of French and Bretons, and quartering them on his subjects, "each "according to the measure of his land," for the purpose of resisting the invasion of Cnut, King of Denmark, which was apprehended. The Commissioners appointed to make the survey were to inquire the name of each place; who held it in the time of King Edward the Confessor; the present possessor; how many hides were in the manor; how many ploughs were in the demesne; how many homagers; how many villeins; how many cottars; how many serving men; how many free tenants; how many tenants in soccage; how much wood, meadow, and pasture; the number of mills and fish ponds; what had been added or taken away from the place; what was the gross value in the time of Edward the Confessor; the present value; and how much each free man or soc-man had, and whether any advance could be made in the value. Thus could be ascertained who held the estate in the time of King Edward; who then held it; its value in the time of the late King; and its value as it stood at the formation of the survey. So minute was the survey, that the writer of the contemporary portion of the Saxon Chronicle records, with some asperity—"So very narrowly he caused it to be "traced out, that there was not a single hide, nor one virgate of land, nor even, "it is shame to tell, though it seemed to him no shame to do, an ox, nor a cow, "nor a swine was left, that was not set down."

Domesday Survey is in two parts or volumes. The first, in folio, contains the counties of Bedford, Berks, Bucks, Cambridge, Chester, and Lancaster, Cornwall, Derby, Devon, Dorset, Gloucester, Hants, Hereford, Herts, Huntingdon, Kent, Leicester and Rutland, Lincoln, Middlesex, Northampton, Nottingham, Oxford, Salop, Somerset, Stafford, Surrey, Sussex, Warwick, Wilts, Worcester, and York. The second volume, in quarto, contains the counties of Essex, Norfolk and Suffolk.

Domesday Book was printed *verbatim et literatim* during the last century, in consequence of an address of the House of Lords to King George III. in 1767. It was not, however, commenced until 1773, and was completed early in 1783. In 1860, Her Majesty's Government, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls, determined to apply the art of photozincography to the production of a fac-simile of Domesday Book, under the superintendence of Colonel Sir Henry James, R.E., Director-General of the Ordnance Survey, Southampton. The fac-simile was completed in 1863.

---

* For some reason left unexplained, many parts were left unsurveyed; Northumberland, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Durham, are not described in the survey; nor does Lancashire appear under its proper name; but Furness, and the northern part of Lancashire, as well as the south of Westmoreland, with a part of Cumberland, are included within the West Riding of Yorkshire. That part of Lancashire which lies between the Ribble and Mersey, and which at the time of the survey comprehended 688 manors, is joined to Cheshire. Part of Rutland is described in the counties of Northampton and Lincoln.

FAC-SIMILES OF NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS, from WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR to QUEEN ANNE, selected under the direction of the Master of the Rolls, and Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, by Colonel Sir HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. *Price*, each Part, with translations and notes, double foolscap folio, 16*s*.

Part I. (William the Conqueror to Henry VII.). 1865. (*Out of print.*)
Part II. (Henry VIII. and Edward VI.) 1866.
Part III. (Mary and Elizabeth). 1867.
Part IV. (James I. to Anne). 1868.

The first Part extends from William the Conqueror to Henry VII., and contains autographs of the kings of England, as well as of many other illustrious personages famous in history, and some interesting charters, letters patent, and state papers. The second Part, for the reigns of Henry VIII. and Edward VI., consists principally of holograph letters, and autographs of kings, princes, statesmen, and other persons of great historical interest, who lived during those reigns. The third Part contains similar documents for the reigns of Mary and Elizabeth, including a signed bill of Lady Jane Grey. The fourth Part concludes the series, and comprises a number of documents taken from the originals belonging to the Constable of the Tower of London; also several records illustrative of the Gunpowder Plot, and a woodcut containing portraits of Mary Queen of Scots and James VI., circulated by their adherents in England, 1580–3.

FAC-SIMILES OF ANGLO-SAXON MANUSCRIPTS. Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, upon the recommendation of the Master of the Rolls, by the DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, Lieut.-General J. CAMERON, R.E., C.B., F.R.S., and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. Part I. *Price* 2*l*. 10*s*.

The Anglo-Saxon MSS. represented in this volume form the earlier portions of the collection of archives belonging to the Dean and Chapter of Canterbury, and consist of a series of 25 charters, deeds, and wills, commencing with a record of proceedings at the first Synodal Council of Clovestho in 742, and terminating with the first part of a tripartite cheirograph, whereby Thurston conveyed to the Church of Canterbury land at Wimbish in Essex, in 1049, the sixth year of the reign of Edward the Confessor.

FAC-SIMILES OF ANGLO-SAXON MANUSCRIPTS. Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, upon the recommendation of the Master of the Rolls, by the DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, Major-General A. COOKE, R.E., C.B., and collected and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. Part II. *Price* 3*l*. 10*s*.

(Also, separately. Edward the Confessor's Charter. *Price* 2*s*.)

The originals of the Fac-similes contained in this volume belong to the Deans and Chapters of Westminster, Exeter, Wells, Winchester, and Worcester; the Marquis of Bath, the Earl of Ilchester, Winchester College, Her Majesty's Public Record Office, Bodleian Library, Somersetshire Archæological and National History Society's Museum in Taunton Castle, and William Salt Library at Stafford. They consist of charters and other documents granted by, or during the reigns of, Baldred, Æthelred, Offa, and Burgred, Kings of Mercia; Uhtred of the Huiccas, Ceadwalla and Ini of Wessex; Æthelwulf, Eadward the Elder, Æthelstan, Eadmund the First, Eadred, Eadwig, Eadgar, Eadward the Second, Æthelred the Second, Cnut, Eadward the Confessor, and William the Conqueror, embracing altogether a period of nearly four hundred years.

FAC-SIMILES OF ANGLO-SAXON MANUSCRIPTS. Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, upon the recommendation of the Master of the Rolls, by the DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, Colonel R. H. STOTHERD, R.E., C.B., and collected and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. Part III. Price 3*l*. 10*s*.

This volume contains fac-similes of the Ashburnham collection of Anglo-Saxon Charters, &c., including King Alfred's Will. The MSS. represented in it, range from A.D. 697 to A.D. 1161, being charters, wills, deeds, and reports of Synodal transactions during the reigns of Kings Wihtred of Kent, Offa, Eardwulf, Coenwulf, Cuthred, Beornwulf, Æthelwulf, Ælfred, Eadward the Elder, Eadmund, Eadred, Queen Eadgifu, and Kings Eadgar, Æthelred the Second, Cnut, Henry the First, and Henry the Second. In addition to these are two belonging to the Marquis of Anglesey, one of them being the Foundation Charter of Burton Abbey by Æthelred the Second with the testament of its great benefactor Wulfric.

Public Record Office,
November 1886.

HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS COMMISSION.

REPORTS OF THE ROYAL COMMISSIONERS APPOINTED TO INQUIRE WHAT PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS BELONGING TO PRIVATE FAMILIES AND INSTITUTIONS ARE EXTANT WHICH WOULD BE OF UTILITY IN THE ILLUSTRATION OF HISTORY, CONSTITUTIONAL LAW, SCIENCE, AND GENERAL LITERATURE.

Date.	——	Size.	Sessional Paper.	Price.
				s. d.
1870 (Reprinted 1874.)	FIRST REPORT, WITH APPENDIX -	f'cap	C. 55	1 6
	Contents :—			
	ENGLAND. House of Lords; Cambridge Colleges; Abingdon, and other Corporations, &c.			
	SCOTLAND. Advocates' Library, Glasgow Corporation, &c.			
	IRELAND. Dublin, Cork, and other Corporations, &c.			
1871	SECOND REPORT, WITH APPENDIX, AND INDEX TO THE FIRST AND SECOND REPORTS - - - - - -	,,	C. 441	3 10
	Contents :—			
	ENGLAND. House of Lords; Cambridge Colleges; Oxford Colleges; Monastery of Dominican Friars at Woodchester, Duke of Bedford, Earl Spencer, &c.			
	SCOTLAND. Aberdeen and St. Andrew's Universities, &c.			
	IRELAND. Marquis of Ormonde; Dr. Lyons, &c.			
1872	THIRD REPORT, WITH APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - - - -	,,	C. 673	6 0
	Contents :—			
	ENGLAND. House of Lords; Cambridge Colleges; Stonyhurst College; Bridgewater and other Corporations; Duke of Northumberland, Marquis of Lansdowne, Marquis of Bath, &c.			
	SCOTLAND. University of Glasgow; Duke of Montrose, &c.			
	IRELAND. Marquis of Ormonde; Black Book of Limerick, &c.			

Date.	——	Size.	Sessional Paper.	Price.
				s. d.
1873	FOURTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX. PART I. - - - - - - Contents :— ENGLAND. House of Lords; Westminster Abbey; Cambridge and Oxford Colleges; Cinque Ports, Hythe, and other Corporations, Marquis of Bath, Earl of Denbigh, &c. SCOTLAND. Duke of Argyll, &c. IRELAND. Trinity College, Dublin; Marquis of Ormonde.	f'cap	C. 857	6 8
	DITTO. PART II. INDEX - - -	„	C. 857 i.	2 6
1876	FIFTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX. PART I. - Contents :— ENGLAND. House of Lords; Oxford and Cambridge Colleges; Dean and Chapter of Canterbury; Rye, Lydd, and other Corporations, Duke of Sutherland, Marquis of Lansdowne, Reginald Cholmondeley, Esq., &c. SCOTLAND. Earl of Aberdeen, &c.	„	C. 1432	7 0
	DITTO. PART II. INDEX - - -	„	C. 1432 i.	3 6
1877	SIXTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX. PART I. - Contents :— ENGLAND. House of Lords; Oxford and Cambridge Colleges; Lambeth Palace; Black Book of the Archdeacon of Canterbury; Bridport, Wallingford, and other Corporations; Lord Leconfield, Sir Reginald Graham, Sir Henry Ingilby, &c. SCOTLAND. Duke of Argyll, Earl of Moray, &c. IRELAND. Marquis of Ormonde.	„	C. 1745	8 6
	DITTO. PART II. INDEX - - -	„	C. 2102	1 10
1879	SEVENTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX. PART I. - - - - - - Contents :— House of Lords; County of Somerset; Earl of Egmont, Sir Frederick Graham, Sir Harry Verney, &c.	„	C. 2340	7 6
	DITTO. PART II. APPENDIX AND INDEX - Contents :— Duke of Athole, Marquis of Ormonde, S. F. Livingstone, Esq., &c.	„	C. 2340 i.	3 6
1881	EIGHTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX AND INDEX. PART I. - - - - Contents :— List of collections examined, 1869–1880. ENGLAND. House of Lords; Duke of Marlborough; Magdalen College, Oxford; Royal College of Physicians; Queen Anne's	„	C. 3040	8 6

Date.	——	Size.	Sessional Paper.	Price.
				s. *d.*
	Bounty Office; Corporations of Chester, Leicester, &c. IRELAND. Marquis of Ormonde, Lord Emly, The O'Conor Don, Trinity College, Dublin, &c.			
	DITTO. PART II. APPENDIX AND INDEX - Contents :— Duke of Manchester.	f'cap	C. 3040 i.	1 9
	DITTO. PART III. APPENDIX AND INDEX - Contents :— Earl of Ashburnham.	„	C. 3040 ii.	1 4
1883	CALENDAR OF THE MANUSCRIPTS OF THE MARQUIS OF SALISBURY, K.G. PART I. -	8vo.	C. 3777	3 5
„	NINTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX AND INDEX. PART I. - - - - Contents :— St. Paul's and Canterbury Cathedrals; Eton College ; Carlisle, Yarmouth, Canterbury, and Barnstaple Corporations, &c.	f'cap	C. 3773	5 2
	DITTO. PART II. APPENDIX AND INDEX - Contents :— ENGLAND. House of Lords; Earl of Leicester; C. Pole Gell, Alfred Morrison, Esquires, &c. SCOTLAND. Lord Elphinstone, H. C. Maxwell Stuart, Esq., &c. IRELAND. Duke of Leinster, Marquis of Drogheda, &c.	„	C. 3773 i.	6 3
	DITTO. PART III. APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - - - - Contents :— Mrs. Stopford Sackville.	„	C. 3773 ii.	1 7
1885	TENTH REPORT - - - - This is introductory to the following :—	8vo.	C. 4548	0 3½
„	(1.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - The Earl of Eglinton, Sir J. S. Maxwell, Bart., and C. S. H. D. Moray, C. F. Weston Underwood, G. W. Digby, Esquires.	„	C. 4575	3 7
„	(2.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - Wells Cathedral.	„	C. 4576 ii.	2 0
„	(3.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - The Family of Gawdy, formerly of Norfolk.	„	C. 4576 iii.	1 4
	(4.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - The Earl of Westmorland, Captain Stewart, Lord Muncaster. Shropshire Collections, &c. PART IV.	„	C. 4576	3 6

Date.	——	Size.	Sessional Paper.	Price.
				s. d.
–	(5.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - The Marquis of Ormonde, Earl of Fingall, Corporations of Galway, Waterford, the Sees of Dublin and of Ossory, Archives of the Jesuits in Ireland. PART V.	8vo.	4576 i.	2 10
–	(6.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - Marquis of Abergavenny, Lord Braye, &c. *In the Press.*	—	—	—
–	ELEVENTH REPORT. *In the Press.* This is introductory to the following :—	—	—	—
1887	(1.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - Salvetti Correspondence. *In the Press.*	—	—	—
1887	(2.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - The House of Lords. *In the Press.*	—	—	—
–	(3.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - The Corporations of Southampton and Lynn. *In the Press.*	—	—	—
–	(4.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - The Marquess Townshend. *In the Press.*	—	—	—
–	(5.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - The Earl of Dartmouth. *In the Press.*	—	—	—

Stationery Office,
July 1887.

ANNUAL REPORTS OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS.

REPORTS Nos. 1-22, IN FOLIO, PUBLISHED BETWEEN 1840 AND 1861, ARE NO LONGER ON SALE. SUBSEQUENT REPORTS ARE IN OCTAVO.

Date.	Number of Report.	Chief Contents of Appendices.	Price.
			s. *d.*
1862	23	Subjects of Research by Literary Inquirers, 1852–1861.—Attendances at the various Record Offices, previously to the passing of the Public Record Act.	0 4
1863	24	List of Calendars, Indexes, &c., in the Public Record Office.	0 7½
1864	25	Calendar of Crown Leases, 33–38 Hen. VIII.—Calendar of Bills and Answers, &c., Hen. VIII.–Ph. & Mary, for Cheshire and Flintshire.—List of Lords High Treasurers and Chief Commissioners of the Treasury, from Hen. VII.	0 8
1865	26	List of Plans annexed to Inclosure Awards, 31 Geo. II.–7 Will. IV.—Calendar of Privy Seals, &c., Hen. VI.–Eliz., for Cheshire and Flintshire.—Calendar of Writs of General Livery, &c., for Cheshire, Eliz.–Charles I.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Hen. III. and Edw. I.—List of Documents photozincographed, Will. I.–Hen. VII.	0 7
1866	27	List of Awards of Inclosure Commissioners.—References to Charters in the Cartæ Antiquæ and the Confirmation Rolls of Chancery, Ethelbert of Kent–James I.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Edw. II.—List of Documents photozincographed, Hen. VIII. and Edw. VI.	1 6
1867	28	Fees in the Public Record Office.—Calendar of Fines, Cheshire and Flintshire, Edw. I.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Edw. III.—List of Documents photozincographed, Mary and Eliz., and Scottish, Part I.—Table of Law Terms, from the Norman Conquest to 1 Will. IV.	0 10½

Date.	Number of Report.	Chief Contents of Appendices.	Price.
			s. *d.*
1868	29	Calendar of Royal Charters.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Richard II.–Hen. VII.—Durham Records, Letter and Report.	0 9
1869	30	Duchy of Lancaster Records, Inventory.—Durham Records, Inventory, Indexes to Kellawe's Register.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Hen. VIII.—Calendar of Decrees of Court of General Surveyors, 34–38 Hen. VIII.—Calendar of Royal Charters.—State Paper Office, Calendar of Documents relating to the History of, to 1800.—List of Documents photozincographed, Eliz.–Anne.—Tower of London, Index to Documents in custody of the Constable of.—Calendar of Dockets, &c., for Privy Seals, 1634–1711, in the British Museum. Report of the Commissioners on Carte Papers.—Venetian Ciphers.	3 0
1870	31	Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Royal Charters, Will. II.–Ric. II.—Durham Records, Calendar of Chancery Enrolments; Cursitor's Records.—List of Officers of Palatinate of Chester, in Cheshire and Flintshire, and North Wales.—List of Sheriffs of England, 31 Hen. I. to 4 Edw. III.—List of Documents photozincographed, Scottish, Part II.	2 3
1871	32	Part I.—Report of the Commissioners on Carte Papers.—Calendarium Genealogicum, 1 & 2 Edw. II.—Durham Records, Calendar of Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Rolls of the Chancery of the County Palatine.	2 2
1871	--	Part II.—Charities; Calendar of Trust Deeds enrolled on the Close Rolls of Chancery, subsequent to 9 Geo. II. c. xxxvi.	5 6
1872	33	Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Rolls of the Chancery of the County Palatine.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.—Venetian Transcripts.—Greek copies of the Athanasian Creed.	1 10
1873	34	Parliamentary Petitions; Index to the Petitions to the King in Council.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—List of Documents photozincographed, Scottish, Part III.—Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.	1 9
1874	35	Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Ancient Charters or Grants.—Palatinate of Lancaster; Inventory and Lists of Documents transferred to the Public Record Office.—Durham Records, Calendar of Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—List of Documents photozincographed, Irish, Part I.—Second Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.	1 6

Date.	Number of Report.	Chief Contents of Appendices.	Price.
			s. *d.*
1875	36	Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records; Calendar of Ancient Charters or Grants.—List of Documents photozincographed; Irish, Part II.—M. Armand Baschet's Report upon Documents in French Archives relating to British History.—Calendar of Recognizance Rolls of the Palatinate of Chester, to end of reign of Hen. IV.	4 4
1876	37	Part I.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Ancient Rolls of the Chancery of the County Palatine.—M. Baschet's list of French Ambassadors, &c., in England, 1509–1714.	1 2
1876	—	Part II.—Calendar of Recognizance Rolls of the Palatinate of Chester; Hen. V.–Hen. VII.	4 4
1877	38	Exchequer Records, Catalogue of Special Commissions, 1 Eliz. to 10 Vict., Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, 1 Eliz. to end of James I. —List of Representative Peers for Scotland and Ireland.	4 3
1878	39	Calendar of Recognizance Rolls of the Palatinate of Chester, 1 Hen. VIII.–11 Geo. IV.—Exchequer Records, Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, Charles I.—Duchy of Lancaster Records; Calendar of Lancashire Inquisitions post Mortem, &c.—Third Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—M. Baschet's List of Despatches of French Ambassadors to England, 1509–1714.	4 6
1879	40	Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission Commonwealth–James II.—Miscellaneous Records of Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer. —Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments. — Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Patent Rolls, 5 Ric. II.–21 Hen. VII.—Rules and Regulations respecting the public use of the Records.	3 0
1880	41	Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, William and Mary to George I.—Calendar of Norman Rolls, Hen. V., Part I.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Report from Rome. —List of Calendars, Indexes, &c. in the Public Record Office on 31st December 1879.	4 8
1881	42	Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, George II.—Calendar of Norman Rolls, Hen. V., Part II. and Glossary.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 1 Edw. I.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Transcripts from Paris.	4 0
1882	43	Calendar of Privy Seals, &c., 1–7 Charles I.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Inventory of Court Rolls, Hen. III.–Geo. IV., Calendar of Privy Seals,	3 10

Date.	Number of Report.	Chief Contents of Appendices.	Price.
			s. d.
		Ric. II.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 2 Edw. I.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Fourth Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.—Transcripts from Paris.—Report on Libraries in Sweden.—Report on Papers relating to English History in the State Archives, Stockholm.—Report on Canadian Archives.	
1883	44	Calendar of Patent Rolls, 3 Edw. I.—Durham Records, Cursitor's Records, Inquisitions post Mortem, &c.—Calendar of French Rolls, 1–10 Hen. V.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Report from Venice.—Transcripts from Paris.—Report from Rome.	3 6
1884	45	Duchy of Lancaster Records, Inventory of Ministers' and Receivers' Accounts, Edw. I.-Geo. III.—Durham Records, Cursitor's Records, Inquisitions post Mortem, &c.—Treasury of the Receipt of the Exchequer, Calendar of Diplomatic Documents.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Transcripts from Paris.—Reports from Rome and Stockholm.—Report on Archives of Denmark, &c.—Transcripts from Venice.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 4 Edw. I.	4 3
1885	46	Presentations to Offices on the Patent Rolls, Charles II.—Anglo-Saxon Charters, &c., photozincographed.—Transcripts from Paris.—Reports from Rome.—Second Report on Archives of Denmark, &c.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 5 Edw. I.—Catalogue of Venetian Manuscripts bequeathed by Mr. Rawdon Brown to the Public Record Office.	2 10
1886	47	Transcripts from Paris.—Reports from Rome.—Third Report on Archives of Denmark, &c.—List of Creations of Peers and Baronets, 1483–1646.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 6 Edw. I. There have also been printed Indexes to Reports 1–22, and Reports 23–39.	2 2

Public Record Office,
January 1887.

SCOTLAND.

CATALOGUE OF SCOTCH RECORD PUBLICATIONS

PUBLISHED UNDER THE DIRECTION OF

THE LORD CLERK REGISTER OF SCOTLAND.

[OTHER WORKS RELATING TO SCOTLAND WILL BE FOUND AMONG THE PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, *see* pp. 26–28.]

1. CHRONICLES OF THE PICTS AND SCOTS, AND OTHER EARLY MEMORIALS OF SCOTTISH HISTORY. Royal 8vo., half bound (1867). *Edited by* WILLIAM F. SKENE, LL.D. *Price* 10*s*. *Out of print.*

2. LEDGER OF ANDREW HALYBURTON, CONSERVATOR OF THE PRIVILEGES OF THE SCOTCH NATION IN THE NETHERLANDS (1492–1503); TOGETHER WITH THE BOOKS OF CUSTOMS AND VALUATION OF MERCHANDISES IN SCOTLAND. *Edited by* COSMO INNES. Royal 8vo., half bound (1867). *Price* 10*s*.

3. DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE HISTORY OF SCOTLAND FROM THE DEATH OF KING ALEXANDER THE THIRD TO THE ACCESSION OF ROBERT BRUCE, from original and authentic copies in London, Paris, Brussels, Lille, and Ghent. In 2 Vols. royal 8vo., half bound (1870). *Edited by* Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON. *Price* 10*s*. *each.*

4. ACCOUNTS OF THE LORD HIGH TREASURER OF SCOTLAND. Vol. 1, A.D. 1473–1498. *Edited by* THOMAS DICKSON. 1877. *Price* 10*s*.

5. REGISTER OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF SCOTLAND. *Edited and arranged by* J. H. BURTON, LL.D. Vol. 1, 1545–1569. Vol. 2, 1569–1578. Vol. 3, A.D. 1578–1585. Vol. 4, A.D. 1585–1592. Vol. 5, 1592–1599. Vol. 6, 1599–1604. Vol. 7, 1604–1607. Vol. 8 in progress. *Edited by* DAVID MASSON, LL.D. 1877–1884. *Price* 15*s*. *each.*

6. ROTULI SCACCARII REGUM SCOTORUM. THE EXCHEQUER ROLLS OF SCOTLAND Vol. 1, A.D. 1264–1359. Vol. 2, A.D. 1359–1379. *Edited by* JOHN STUART, LL.D., and GEORGE BURNETT, Lyon King of Arms. 1878–1880. Vol. 3, A.D. 1379–1406. Vol. 4, A.D. 1406–1436 (1880). Vol. 5, A.D. 1437–1454 (1882). Vol. 6, 1455–1460 (1883). Vol. 7, 1460–1469 (1884). Vol. 8, A.D. 1470–1479 (1885). Vol. 9, 1480–1487 Addenda, 1437–1487 (1886). Vol. 10, 1488–1496. Vol. 11 in progress. *Edited by* GEORGE BURNETT. *Price* 10*s*. *each.*

7. CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS RELATING TO SCOTLAND. *Edited by* JOSEPH BAIN. Vol. I (1881). Vol. II. 1272–1307 (1884). Vol. III. (in progress). *Price* 15*s*. *each.*

8. REGISTER OF THE GREAT SEAL OF SCOTLAND. A.D. 1424–1513 (1882). A.D. 1513–1546 (1883). A.D. 1546–1580 (1886). A.D. 1580 (in progress). *Edited by* JAMES BALFOUR PAUL and J. M. THOMSON. *Price* 15*s*. *each.*

FAC-SIMILES OF THE NATIONAL MSS. OF SCOTLAND. (*Out of print.*)
Parts I., II., and III. *Price* 21*s*. *each.*

Stationery Office,
July 1887.

IRELAND.

CATALOGUE OF IRISH RECORD PUBLICATIONS.

CALENDAR OF THE PATENT AND CLOSE ROLLS OF CHANCERY IN IRELAND. HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI., MARY, AND ELIZABETH. *Edited by* JAMES MORRIN, Royal 8vo. (1861–3). Vols. 1, 2, and 3. *Price* 11*s.* each.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF IRELAND.
Senchus Mor. (1865–1880.) Vols. 1, 2, 3, and 4. *Price* 10*s.* each.
Vol. 5 in progress.

Abstracts of the Irish Patent Rolls of James I. Unbound. *Price* 25*s.*

Abstracts of the Irish Patent Rolls of James I. With Supplement. *Price* 35*s.*

FAC-SIMILES of NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS of IRELAND, FROM THE EARLIEST EXTANT SPECIMENS TO A.D. 1719. *Edited by* JOHN T. GILBERT, F.S.A., M.R.I.A. *Part* 1 *is out of print.* Parts II. and III. *Price* 42*s.* each. *Part IV.* 1. *Price* 5*l.* 5*s.* *Part IV.* 2. *Price* 4*l.* 10*s.*

This work forms a comprehensive Palæographic Series for Ireland. It furnishes characteristic specimens of the documents which have come down from each of the classes which, in past ages, formed principal elements in the population of Ireland, or exercised an influence in her affairs. With these reproductions are combined fac-similes of writings connected with eminent personages or transactions of importance in the annals of the country to the early part of the eighteenth century.

The specimens have been reproduced as nearly as possible in accordance with the originals, in dimensions, colouring, and general appearance. Characteristic examples of styles of writing and caligraphic ornamentation are, so far as practicable, associated with subjects of historic and linguistic interest. Descriptions of the various manuscripts are given by the Editor in the Introduction. The contents of the specimens are fully elucidated and printed in the original languages, opposite to the Fac-similes—line for line—without contractions—thus facilitating reference and aiding effectively those interested in palæographic studies.

In the work are also printed in full, for the first time, many original and important historical documents.

Part I. commences with the earliest Irish MSS. extant.

Part II.: From the Twelfth Century to A.D. 1299.

Part III.: From A.D. 1300 to end of reign of Henry VIII.

Part IV. 1.: From reign of Edward VI. to that of James I.

In Part IV. 2.—the work is carried down to the early part of the eighteenth century, with Index to the entire publication.

ACCOUNT OF FAC-SIMILES OF NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS OF IRELAND. IN ONE VOLUME 8vo., WITH INDEX. *Price* 10*s.* Parts I. and II. together. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.* Part II. *Price* 1*s.* 6*d.* Part III. *Price* 1*s.* Part IV. 1. *Price* 2*s.* Part IV. 2. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

Stationery Office,
January 1887.